# INTERNATIONAL STANDARD

# ISO/IEC 9945-1

**Base Definitions,**
**IEEE Std 1003.1™, 2003 Edition**
**The Open Group Technical Standard**
**Includes IEEE Std 1003.1™-2001 and IEEE Std 1003.1™-2001/Cor 1-2002**

Fourth edition
2003-08-15

# Information technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX®) —

## Part 1: Base Definitions

*Technologies de l'information — Interface pour la portabilité des systèmes (POSIX®) —*

*Partie 1: Définitions de base*

Reference number
ISO/IEC 9945-1:2003(E)
Base Definitions, IEEE Std 1003.1, 2003 Edition
The Open Group Technical Standard, Issue 6

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

**ISO/IEC 9945-1:2003(E)**
**Base Definitions, IEEE Std 1003.1, 2003 Edition**
**The Open Group Technical Standard, Issue 6**


**PDF disclaimer**

This PDF file may contain embedded typefaces. In accordance with Adobe's licensing policy, this file may be printed or viewed but shall not be edited unless the typefaces which are embedded are licensed to and installed on the computer performing the editing. In downloading this file, parties accept therein the responsibility of not infringing Adobe's licensing policy. The ISO Central Secretariat accepts no liability in this area.

Adobe is a trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Details of the software products used to create this PDF file can be found in the General Info relative to the file; the PDF-creation parameters were optimized for printing. Every care has been taken to ensure that the file is suitable for use by ISO member bodies. In the unlikely event that a problem relating to it is found, please inform the Central Secretariat at the address given below.



ISO

Case postale 56 • CH-1211 Geneva 20

Tel. + 41 22 749 01 11

Fax + 41 22 749 09 47

E-mail copyright@iso.org



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

**ISO/IEC 9945-1:2003(E)**

**IEEE Std 1003.1™, 2003 Edition**

**The Open Group Technical Standard**
**Base Specifications, Issue 6**

**Includes IEEE Std 1003.1™-2001 and IEEE Std 1003.1™-2001/Cor 1-2002**

# Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX®)

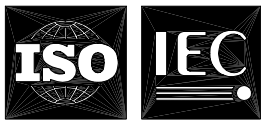
# Part 1: Base Definitions

Sponsor

**Portable Applications Standards Committee**
of the
**IEEE Computer Society**

and

**The Open Group**




**Adopted as an International Standard by the International Organization for Standardization and by the International Electrotechnical Commission**




THE *Open* GROUP




--`,,,-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

## International Standard ISO/IEC 9945-1:2003(E)

ISO (the International Organization for Standardization) and IEC (the International Electrotechnical Commission) form the specialized system for worldwide standardization. National bodies that are members of ISO or IEC participate in the development of International Standards through technical committees established by the respective organization to deal with particular fields of technical activity. ISO and IEC technical committees collaborate in fields of mutual interest. Other international organizations, governmental and non-governmental, in liaison with ISO and IEC, also take part in the work. In the field of information technology, ISO and IEC have established a joint technical committee, ISO/IEC JTC 1.

International Standards are drafted in accordance with the rules given in the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

The main task of the joint technical committee is to prepare International Standards. Draft International Standards adopted by the joint technical committee are circulated to national bodies for voting. Publication as an International Standard requires approval by at least 75% of the national bodies casting a vote.

Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this part of ISO/IEC 9945 may be the subject of patent rights. ISO and IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.

ISO/IEC 9945-1 was prepared by Joint Technical Committee ISO/IEC JTC 1, *Information technology*, Subcommittee SC 22, *Programming languages, their environments and system software interfaces*.

This fourth edition of ISO/IEC 9945-1 is a minor revision and, together with ISO/IEC 9945-2, ISO/IEC 9945-3, and ISO/IEC 9945-4, cancels and replaces ISO/IEC 9945-1:2002, ISO/IEC 9945-2:2002, ISO/IEC 9945-3:2002 and ISO/IEC 9945-4:2002.

ISO/IEC 9945 consists of the following parts, under the general title *Information technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX®)*:

- *Part 1: Base Definitions*
- *Part 2: System Interfaces*
- *Part 3: Shell and Utilities*
- *Part 4: Rationale*




International Organization for Standardization/International Electrotechnical Commission
Case postale 56 • CH-1211 Genève 20 • Switzerland

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

**Abstract**

This standard is simultaneously ISO/IEC 9945:2003, IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, and forms the core of the Single UNIX Specification, Version 3.

The IEEE Std 1003.1, 2003 Edition includes IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002 incorporated into IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 (base document). The Corrigendum addresses problems discovered since the approval of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. These changes are mainly due to resolving integration issues raised by the merger of the base documents that were incorporated into IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, which is the single common revision to IEEE Std 1003.1™-1996, IEEE Std 1003.2™-1992, ISO/IEC 9945-1:1996, ISO/IEC 9945-2:1993, and the Base Specifications of The Open Group Single UNIX® Specification, Version 2.

This standard defines a standard operating system interface and environment, including a command interpreter (or ''shell''), and common utility programs to support applications portability at the source code level. This standard is intended to be used by both applications developers and system implementors and comprises four major components (each in an associated volume):

- General terms, concepts, and interfaces common to all volumes of this standard, including utility conventions and C-language header definitions, are included in the Base Definitions volume.
- Definitions for system service functions and subroutines, language-specific system services for the C programming language, function issues, including portability, error handling, and error recovery, are included in the System Interfaces volume.
- Definitions for a standard source code-level interface to command interpretation services (a ''shell'') and common utility programs for application programs are included in the Shell and Utilities volume.
- Extended rationale that did not fit well into the rest of the document structure, which contains historical information concerning the contents of this standard and why features were included or discarded by the standard developers, is included in the Rationale (Informative) volume.

The following areas are outside the scope of this standard:

- Graphics interfaces
- Database management system interfaces
- Record I/O considerations
- Object or binary code portability
- System configuration and resource availability

This standard describes the external characteristics and facilities that are of importance to applications developers, rather than the internal construction techniques employed to achieve these capabilities. Special emphasis is placed on those functions and facilities that are needed in a wide variety of commercial applications.

**Keywords**

application program interface (API), argument, asynchronous, basic regular expression (BRE), batch job, batch system, built-in utility, byte, child, command language interpreter, CPU, extended regular expression (ERE), FIFO, file access control mechanism, input/output (I/O), job control, network, portable operating system interface (POSIX®), parent, shell, stream, string, synchronous, system, thread, X/Open System Interface (XSI)

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved. 

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright © 2001-2003 by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. and The Open Group. All rights reserved. This printing is by the International Organization for Standardization with special permission of the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. and The Open Group. Published in Switzerland.

Base Definitions, Issue 6

Published 31 March 2003 by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.
3 Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5997, U.S.A.
ISBN: 0-7381-3435-X PDF 0-7381-3564-X / SS95078 CD-ROM 0-7381-3563-1 / SE95078
Printed in the United States of America by the IEEE.

Published 31 March 2003 by The Open Group
Apex Plaza, Forbury Road, Reading, Berkshire RG1 1AX, U.K.
Document Number: C031
ISBN: 1-931624-23-2
Printed in the U.K. by The Open Group.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form, in an electronic retrieval system or otherwise, without prior written permission from both the IEEE and The Open Group.

Portions of this standard are derived with permission from copyrighted material owned by Hewlett-Packard Company, International Business Machines Corporation, Novell Inc., The Open Software Foundation, and Sun Microsystems, Inc.

**Permissions**

Authorization to photocopy portions of this standard for internal or personal use is granted provided that the appropriate fee is paid to the Copyright Clearance Center or the equivalent body outside of the U.S. Permission to make multiple copies for educational purposes in the U.S. requires agreement and a license fee to be paid to the Copyright Clearance Center.

Beyond these provisions, permission to reproduce all or any part of this standard must be with the consent of both copyright holders and may be subject to a license fee. Both copyright holders will need to be satisfied that the other has granted permission. Requests to the copyright holders should be sent by email to *austin-group-permissions@opengroup.org*.

**Feedback**

This standard has been prepared by the Austin Group. Feedback relating to the material contained in this standard may be submitted using the Austin Group web site at *http://www.opengroup.org/austin/defectform.html*.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

**IEEE**

IEEE Standards documents are developed within the IEEE Societies and the Standards Coordinating Committees of the IEEE Standards Association (IEEE-SA) Standards Board. The IEEE develops its standards through a consensus development process, approved by the American National Standards Institute, which brings together volunteers representing varied viewpoints and interests to achieve the final product. Volunteers are not necessarily members of the Institute and serve without compensation. While the IEEE administers the process and establishes rules to promote fairness in the consensus development process, the IEEE does not independently evaluate, test, or verify the accuracy of any of the information contained in its standards.

Use of an IEEE Standard is wholly voluntary. The IEEE disclaims liability for any personal injury, property, or other damage, of any nature whatsoever, whether special, indirect, consequential, or compensatory, directly or indirectly resulting from the publication, use of, or reliance upon this, or any other IEEE Standard document.

**The IEEE does not warrant or represent the accuracy or content of the material contained herein, and expressly disclaims any express or implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a specific purpose, or that the use of the material contained herein is free from patent infringement. IEEE Standards documents are supplied "AS IS".**

The existence of an IEEE Standard does not imply that there are no other ways to produce, test, measure, purchase, market, or provide other goods and services related to the scope of the IEEE Standard. Furthermore, the viewpoint expressed at the time a standard is approved and issued is subject to change brought about through developments in the state of the art and comments received from users of the standard. Every IEEE Standard is subjected to review at least every five years for revision or reaffirmation. When a document is more than five years old and has not been reaffirmed, it is reasonable to conclude that its contents, although still of some value, do not wholly reflect the present state of the art. Users are cautioned to check to determine that they have the latest edition of any IEEE Standard.

In publishing and making this document available, the IEEE is not suggesting or rendering professional or other services for, or on behalf of, any person or entity. Nor is the IEEE undertaking to perform any duty owed by any other person or entity to another. Any person utilizing this, and any other IEEE Standards document, should rely upon the advice of a competent professional in determining the exercise of reasonable care in any given circumstances.

Interpretations: Occasionally questions may arise regarding the meaning of portions of standards as they relate to specific applications. When the need for interpretations is brought to the attention of the IEEE, the Institute will initiate action to prepare appropriate responses. Since IEEE Standards represent a consensus of concerned interests, it is important to ensure that any interpretation has also received the concurrence of a balance of interests. For this reason, IEEE and the members of its societies and Standards Coordinating Committees are not able to provide an instant response to interpretation requests except in those cases where the matter has previously received formal consideration.

Comments for revision of IEEE Standards are welcome from any interested party, regardless of membership affiliation with the IEEE.[1] Suggestions for changes in documents should be in the form of a proposed change of text, together with appropriate supporting comments. Comments on standards and requests for interpretations should be addressed to:

Secretary, IEEE-SA Standards Board, 445 Hoes Lane, P.O. Box 1331, Piscataway, NJ 08855-1331, U.S.A.

Attention is called to the possibility that implementation of this standard may require use of subject matter covered by patent rights. By publication of this standard, no position is taken with respect to the existence or validity of any patent rights in connection therewith. The IEEE shall not be responsible for identifying patents for which a license may be required by an IEEE Standard or for conducting inquiries into the legal validity or scope of those patents that are brought to its attention.

A patent holder has filed a statement of assurance that it will grant licenses under these rights without compensation or under reasonable rates and non-discriminatory, reasonable terms and conditions to all applicants desiring to obtain such licenses. The IEEE makes no representation as to the reasonableness of rates and/or terms and conditions of the license agreements offered by patent holders. Further information may be obtained from the IEEE Standards Department.

Authorization to photocopy portions of any individual standard for internal or personal use is granted in the U.S. by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc., provided that the appropriate fee is paid to the Copyright Clearance Center.[2] Permission to photocopy portions of any individual standard for educational classroom use can also be obtained through the Copyright Clearance Center. To arrange for payment of the licensing fee, please contact:

Copyright Clearance Center, Customer Service, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, U.S.A., Tel.: +1 978 750 8400

Amendments, corrigenda, and interpretations for this standard, or information about the IEEE standards development process, may be found at *http://standards.ieee.org*.

Full catalog and ordering information on all IEEE publications is available from the IEEE Online Catalog & Store at *http://shop.ieee.org/store*.

1. For this standard, please send comments via the Austin Group as requested on page iii.
2. Please refer to the special provisions for this standard on page iii concerning permissions from both copyright holders and arrangements to cover photocopying and reproduction across the world, as well as by commercial organizations wishing to license the material for use in product documentation.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

**The Open Group**

The Open Group, a vendor and technology-neutral consortium, is committed to delivering greater business efficiency by bringing together buyers and suppliers of information technology to lower the time, cost, and risks associated with integrating new technology across the enterprise.

The Open Group's mission is to offer all organizations concerned with open information infrastructures a forum to share knowledge, integrate open initiatives, and certify approved products and processes in a manner in which they continue to trust our impartiality.

In the global eCommerce world of today, no single economic entity can achieve independence while still ensuring interoperability. The assurance that products will interoperate with each other across differing systems and platforms is essential to the success of eCommerce and business workflow. The Open Group, with its proven testing and certification program, is the international guarantor of interoperability in the new century.

The Open Group provides opportunities to exchange information and shape the future of IT. The Open Group's members include some of the largest and most influential organizations in the world. The flexible structure of The Open Groups membership allows for almost any organization, no matter what their size, to join and have a voice in shaping the future of the IT world.

More information is available on The Open Group web site at *http://www.opengroup.org*.

The Open Group has over 15 years' experience in developing and operating certification programs and has extensive experience developing and facilitating industry adoption of test suites used to validate conformance to an open standard or specification. The Open Group portfolio of test suites includes the *Westwood* family of tests for this standard and the associated certification program for Version 3 of the Single UNIX Specification, as well tests for CDE, CORBA, Motif, Linux, LDAP, POSIX.1, POSIX.2, POSIX Realtime, Sockets, UNIX, XPG4, XNFS, XTI, and X11. The Open Group test tools are essential for proper development and maintenance of standards-based products, ensuring conformance of products to industry-standard APIs, applications portability, and interoperability. In-depth testing identifies defects at the earliest possible point in the development cycle, saving costs in development and quality assurance.

More information is available at *http://www.opengroup.org/testing*.

The Open Group publishes a wide range of technical documentation, the main part of which is focused on development of Technical and Product Standards and Guides, but which also includes white papers, technical studies, branding and testing documentation, and business titles. Full details and a catalog are available at *http://www.opengroup.org/pubs*.

As with all *live* documents, Technical Standards and Specifications require revision to align with new developments and associated international standards. To distinguish between revised specifications which are fully backwards compatible and those which are not:

- A new *Version* indicates there is no change to the definitive information contained in the previous publication of that title, but additions/extensions are included. As such, it *replaces* the previous publication.
- A new *Issue* indicates there is substantive change to the definitive information contained in the previous publication of that title, and there may also be additions/extensions. As such, both previous and new documents are maintained as current publications.

Readers should note that Corrigenda may apply to any publication. Corrigenda information is published at *http://www.opengroup.org/corrigenda*.

Full catalog and ordering information on all Open Group publications is available at *http://www.opengroup.org/pubs*.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

# Contents


**Chapter 1 Introduction ..... 1**
1.1 Scope ..... 1
1.2 Conformance ..... 4
1.3 Normative References ..... 4
1.4 Terminology ..... 5
1.5 Portability ..... 6
1.5.1 Codes ..... 6
1.5.2 Margin Code Notation ..... 14

**Chapter 2 Conformance ..... 17**
2.1 Implementation Conformance ..... 17
2.1.1 Requirements ..... 17
2.1.2 Documentation ..... 17
2.1.3 POSIX Conformance ..... 18
2.1.3.1 POSIX System Interfaces ..... 18
2.1.3.2 POSIX Shell and Utilities ..... 20
2.1.4 XSI Conformance ..... 21
2.1.4.1 XSI System Interfaces ..... 21
2.1.4.2 XSI Shell and Utilities Conformance ..... 22
2.1.5 Option Groups ..... 22
2.1.5.1 Subprofiling Considerations ..... 22
2.1.5.2 XSI Option Groups ..... 24
2.1.6 Options ..... 28
2.1.6.1 System Interfaces ..... 29
2.1.6.2 Shell and Utilities ..... 29
2.2 Application Conformance ..... 31
2.2.1 Strictly Conforming POSIX Application ..... 31
2.2.2 Conforming POSIX Application ..... 32
2.2.2.1 ISO / IEC Conforming POSIX Application ..... 32
2.2.2.2 <National Body> Conforming POSIX Application ..... 32
2.2.3 Conforming POSIX Application Using Extensions ..... 32
2.2.4 Strictly Conforming XSI Application ..... 32
2.2.5 Conforming XSI Application Using Extensions ..... 33
2.3 Language-Dependent Services for the C Programming Language .. 33
2.4 Other Language-Related Specifications ..... 33

**Chapter 3 Definitions ..... 35**
3.1 Abortive Release ..... 35
3.2 Absolute Pathname ..... 35
3.3 Access Mode ..... 35
3.4 Additional File Access Control Mechanism ..... 35
3.5 Address Space ..... 35




Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3.6 | Advisory Information | 35 |
| 3.7 | Affirmative Response | 36 |
| 3.8 | Alert | 36 |
| 3.9 | Alert Character (<alert>) | 36 |
| 3.10 | Alias Name | 36 |
| 3.11 | Alignment | 36 |
| 3.12 | Alternate File Access Control Mechanism | 36 |
| 3.13 | Alternate Signal Stack | 37 |
| 3.14 | Ancillary Data | 37 |
| 3.15 | Angle Brackets | 37 |
| 3.16 | Application | 37 |
| 3.17 | Application Address | 37 |
| 3.18 | Application Program Interface (API) | 37 |
| 3.19 | Appropriate Privileges | 37 |
| 3.20 | Argument | 38 |
| 3.21 | Arm (a Timer) | 38 |
| 3.22 | Asterisk | 38 |
| 3.23 | Async-Cancel-Safe Function | 38 |
| 3.24 | Asynchronous Events | 38 |
| 3.25 | Asynchronous Input and Output | 38 |
| 3.26 | Async-Signal-Safe Function | 38 |
| 3.27 | Asynchronously-Generated Signal | 39 |
| 3.28 | Asynchronous I/O Completion | 39 |
| 3.29 | Asynchronous I/O Operation | 39 |
| 3.30 | Authentication | 39 |
| 3.31 | Authorization | 39 |
| 3.32 | Background Job | 39 |
| 3.33 | Background Process | 39 |
| 3.34 | Background Process Group (or Background Job) | 39 |
| 3.35 | Backquote | 40 |
| 3.36 | Backslash | 40 |
| 3.37 | Backspace Character (<backspace>) | 40 |
| 3.38 | Barrier | 40 |
| 3.39 | Base Character | 40 |
| 3.40 | Basename | 40 |
| 3.41 | Basic Regular Expression (BRE) | 40 |
| 3.42 | Batch Access List | 40 |
| 3.43 | Batch Administrator | 41 |
| 3.44 | Batch Client | 41 |
| 3.45 | Batch Destination | 41 |
| 3.46 | Batch Destination Identifier | 41 |
| 3.47 | Batch Directive | 41 |
| 3.48 | Batch Job | 41 |
| 3.49 | Batch Job Attribute | 42 |
| 3.50 | Batch Job Identifier | 42 |
| 3.51 | Batch Job Name | 42 |
| 3.52 | Batch Job Owner | 42 |
| 3.53 | Batch Job Priority | 42 |



Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3.54 | Batch Job State | 42 |
| 3.55 | Batch Name Service | 42 |
| 3.56 | Batch Name Space | 42 |
| 3.57 | Batch Node | 43 |
| 3.58 | Batch Operator | 43 |
| 3.59 | Batch Queue | 43 |
| 3.60 | Batch Queue Attribute | 43 |
| 3.61 | Batch Queue Position | 43 |
| 3.62 | Batch Queue Priority | 43 |
| 3.63 | Batch Rerunability | 43 |
| 3.64 | Batch Restart | 44 |
| 3.65 | Batch Server | 44 |
| 3.66 | Batch Server Name | 44 |
| 3.67 | Batch Service | 44 |
| 3.68 | Batch Service Request | 44 |
| 3.69 | Batch Submission | 44 |
| 3.70 | Batch System | 44 |
| 3.71 | Batch Target User | 45 |
| 3.72 | Batch User | 45 |
| 3.73 | Bind | 45 |
| 3.74 | Blank Character (<blank>) | 45 |
| 3.75 | Blank Line | 45 |
| 3.76 | Blocked Process (or Thread) | 45 |
| 3.77 | Blocking | 45 |
| 3.78 | Block-Mode Terminal | 45 |
| 3.79 | Block Special File | 46 |
| 3.80 | Braces | 46 |
| 3.81 | Brackets | 46 |
| 3.82 | Broadcast | 46 |
| 3.83 | Built-In Utility (or Built-In) | 46 |
| 3.84 | Byte | 46 |
| 3.85 | Byte Input/Output Functions | 47 |
| 3.86 | Carriage-Return Character (<carriage-return>) | 47 |
| 3.87 | Character | 47 |
| 3.88 | Character Array | 47 |
| 3.89 | Character Class | 47 |
| 3.90 | Character Set | 47 |
| 3.91 | Character Special File | 48 |
| 3.92 | Character String | 48 |
| 3.93 | Child Process | 48 |
| 3.94 | Circumflex | 48 |
| 3.95 | Clock | 48 |
| 3.96 | Clock Jump | 48 |
| 3.97 | Clock Tick | 48 |
| 3.98 | Coded Character Set | 48 |
| 3.99 | Codeset | 49 |
| 3.100 | Collating Element | 49 |
| 3.101 | Collation | 49 |




--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3.102 | Collation Sequence | 49 |
| 3.103 | Column Position | 49 |
| 3.104 | Command | 50 |
| 3.105 | Command Language Interpreter | 50 |
| 3.106 | Composite Graphic Symbol | 50 |
| 3.107 | Condition Variable | 50 |
| 3.108 | Connection | 50 |
| 3.109 | Connection Mode | 50 |
| 3.110 | Connectionless Mode | 50 |
| 3.111 | Control Character | 51 |
| 3.112 | Control Operator | 51 |
| 3.113 | Controlling Process | 51 |
| 3.114 | Controlling Terminal | 51 |
| 3.115 | Conversion Descriptor | 51 |
| 3.116 | Core File | 51 |
| 3.117 | CPU Time (Execution Time) | 51 |
| 3.118 | CPU-Time Clock | 52 |
| 3.119 | CPU-Time Timer | 52 |
| 3.120 | Current Job | 52 |
| 3.121 | Current Working Directory | 52 |
| 3.122 | Cursor Position | 52 |
| 3.123 | Datagram | 52 |
| 3.124 | Data Segment | 52 |
| 3.125 | Deferred Batch Service | 52 |
| 3.126 | Device | 52 |
| 3.127 | Device ID | 52 |
| 3.128 | Directory | 53 |
| 3.129 | Directory Entry (or Link) | 53 |
| 3.130 | Directory Stream | 53 |
| 3.131 | Disarm (a Timer) | 53 |
| 3.132 | Display | 53 |
| 3.133 | Display Line | 53 |
| 3.134 | Dollar Sign | 53 |
| 3.135 | Dot | 53 |
| 3.136 | Dot-Dot | 54 |
| 3.137 | Double-Quote | 54 |
| 3.138 | Downshifting | 54 |
| 3.139 | Driver | 54 |
| 3.140 | Effective Group ID | 54 |
| 3.141 | Effective User ID | 54 |
| 3.142 | Eight-Bit Transparency | 54 |
| 3.143 | Empty Directory | 54 |
| 3.144 | Empty Line | 55 |
| 3.145 | Empty String (or Null String) | 55 |
| 3.146 | Empty Wide-Character String | 55 |
| 3.147 | Encoding Rule | 55 |
| 3.148 | Entire Regular Expression | 55 |
| 3.149 | Epoch | 55 |



Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.150 Equivalence Class ..... 55
3.151 Era ..... 55
3.152 Event Management ..... 56
3.153 Executable File ..... 56
3.154 Execute ..... 56
3.155 Execution Time ..... 56
3.156 Execution Time Monitoring ..... 56
3.157 Expand ..... 56
3.158 Extended Regular Expression (ERE) ..... 56
3.159 Extended Security Controls ..... 57
3.160 Feature Test Macro ..... 57
3.161 Field ..... 57
3.162 FIFO Special File (or FIFO) ..... 57
3.163 File ..... 57
3.164 File Description ..... 58
3.165 File Descriptor ..... 58
3.166 File Group Class ..... 58
3.167 File Mode ..... 58
3.168 File Mode Bits ..... 58
3.169 Filename ..... 58
3.170 Filename Portability ..... 58
3.171 File Offset ..... 59
3.172 File Other Class ..... 59
3.173 File Owner Class ..... 59
3.174 File Permission Bits ..... 59
3.175 File Serial Number ..... 59
3.176 File System ..... 59
3.177 File Type ..... 59
3.178 Filter ..... 60
3.179 First Open (of a File) ..... 60
3.180 Flow Control ..... 60
3.181 Foreground Job ..... 60
3.182 Foreground Process ..... 60
3.183 Foreground Process Group (or Foreground Job) ..... 60
3.184 Foreground Process Group ID ..... 60
3.185 Form-Feed Character (<form-feed>) ..... 60
3.186 Graphic Character ..... 61
3.187 Group Database ..... 61
3.188 Group ID ..... 61
3.189 Group Name ..... 61
3.190 Hard Limit ..... 61
3.191 Hard Link ..... 61
3.192 Home Directory ..... 61
3.193 Host Byte Order ..... 62
3.194 Incomplete Line ..... 62
3.195 Inf ..... 62
3.196 Instrumented Application ..... 62
3.197 Interactive Shell ..... 62




Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3.198 | Internationalization | 62 |
| 3.199 | Interprocess Communication | 62 |
| 3.200 | Invoke | 62 |
| 3.201 | Job | 63 |
| 3.202 | Job Control | 63 |
| 3.203 | Job Control Job ID | 63 |
| 3.204 | Last Close (of a File) | 63 |
| 3.205 | Line | 63 |
| 3.206 | Linger | 63 |
| 3.207 | Link | 63 |
| 3.208 | Link Count | 64 |
| 3.209 | Local Customs | 64 |
| 3.210 | Local Interprocess Communication (Local IPC) | 64 |
| 3.211 | Locale | 64 |
| 3.212 | Localization | 64 |
| 3.213 | Login | 64 |
| 3.214 | Login Name | 64 |
| 3.215 | Map | 64 |
| 3.216 | Marked Message | 65 |
| 3.217 | Matched | 65 |
| 3.218 | Memory Mapped Files | 65 |
| 3.219 | Memory Object | 65 |
| 3.220 | Memory-Resident | 65 |
| 3.221 | Message | 65 |
| 3.222 | Message Catalog | 66 |
| 3.223 | Message Catalog Descriptor | 66 |
| 3.224 | Message Queue | 66 |
| 3.225 | Mode | 66 |
| 3.226 | Monotonic Clock | 66 |
| 3.227 | Mount Point | 66 |
| 3.228 | Multi-Character Collating Element | 66 |
| 3.229 | Mutex | 66 |
| 3.230 | Name | 67 |
| 3.231 | Named STREAM | 67 |
| 3.232 | NaN (Not a Number) | 67 |
| 3.233 | Native Language | 67 |
| 3.234 | Negative Response | 67 |
| 3.235 | Network | 67 |
| 3.236 | Network Address | 67 |
| 3.237 | Network Byte Order | 68 |
| 3.238 | Newline Character (<newline>) | 68 |
| 3.239 | Nice Value | 68 |
| 3.240 | Non-Blocking | 68 |
| 3.241 | Non-Spacing Characters | 68 |
| 3.242 | NUL | 68 |
| 3.243 | Null Byte | 69 |
| 3.244 | Null Pointer | 69 |
| 3.245 | Null String | 69 |



Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3.246 | Null Wide-Character Code | 69 |
| 3.247 | Number Sign | 69 |
| 3.248 | Object File | 69 |
| 3.249 | Octet | 69 |
| 3.250 | Offset Maximum | 69 |
| 3.251 | Opaque Address | 69 |
| 3.252 | Open File | 70 |
| 3.253 | Open File Description | 70 |
| 3.254 | Operand | 70 |
| 3.255 | Operator | 70 |
| 3.256 | Option | 70 |
| 3.257 | Option-Argument | 70 |
| 3.258 | Orientation | 70 |
| 3.259 | Orphaned Process Group | 70 |
| 3.260 | Page | 71 |
| 3.261 | Page Size | 71 |
| 3.262 | Parameter | 71 |
| 3.263 | Parent Directory | 71 |
| 3.264 | Parent Process | 71 |
| 3.265 | Parent Process ID | 71 |
| 3.266 | Pathname | 72 |
| 3.267 | Pathname Component | 72 |
| 3.268 | Path Prefix | 72 |
| 3.269 | Pattern | 72 |
| 3.270 | Period | 72 |
| 3.271 | Permissions | 72 |
| 3.272 | Persistence | 72 |
| 3.273 | Pipe | 73 |
| 3.274 | Polling | 73 |
| 3.275 | Portable Character Set | 73 |
| 3.276 | Portable Filename Character Set | 73 |
| 3.277 | Positional Parameter | 73 |
| 3.278 | Preallocation | 73 |
| 3.279 | Preempted Process (or Thread) | 74 |
| 3.280 | Previous Job | 74 |
| 3.281 | Printable Character | 74 |
| 3.282 | Printable File | 74 |
| 3.283 | Priority | 74 |
| 3.284 | Priority Band | 74 |
| 3.285 | Priority Inversion | 74 |
| 3.286 | Priority Scheduling | 74 |
| 3.287 | Priority-Based Scheduling | 75 |
| 3.288 | Privilege | 75 |
| 3.289 | Process | 75 |
| 3.290 | Process Group | 75 |
| 3.291 | Process Group ID | 75 |
| 3.292 | Process Group Leader | 75 |
| 3.293 | Process Group Lifetime | 75 |




Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3.294 | Process ID | 76 |
| 3.295 | Process Lifetime | 76 |
| 3.296 | Process Memory Locking | 76 |
| 3.297 | Process Termination | 76 |
| 3.298 | Process-To-Process Communication | 76 |
| 3.299 | Process Virtual Time | 76 |
| 3.300 | Program | 77 |
| 3.301 | Protocol | 77 |
| 3.302 | Pseudo-Terminal | 77 |
| 3.303 | Radix Character | 77 |
| 3.304 | Read-Only File System | 77 |
| 3.305 | Read-Write Lock | 77 |
| 3.306 | Real Group ID | 77 |
| 3.307 | Real Time | 78 |
| 3.308 | Realtime Signal Extension | 78 |
| 3.309 | Real User ID | 78 |
| 3.310 | Record | 78 |
| 3.311 | Redirection | 78 |
| 3.312 | Redirection Operator | 78 |
| 3.313 | Reentrant Function | 78 |
| 3.314 | Referenced Shared Memory Object | 78 |
| 3.315 | Refresh | 79 |
| 3.316 | Regular Expression | 79 |
| 3.317 | Region | 79 |
| 3.318 | Regular File | 79 |
| 3.319 | Relative Pathname | 79 |
| 3.320 | Relocatable File | 79 |
| 3.321 | Relocation | 79 |
| 3.322 | Requested Batch Service | 79 |
| 3.323 | (Time) Resolution | 79 |
| 3.324 | Root Directory | 80 |
| 3.325 | Runnable Process (or Thread) | 80 |
| 3.326 | Running Process (or Thread) | 80 |
| 3.327 | Saved Resource Limits | 80 |
| 3.328 | Saved Set-Group-ID | 80 |
| 3.329 | Saved Set-User-ID | 80 |
| 3.330 | Scheduling | 80 |
| 3.331 | Scheduling Allocation Domain | 80 |
| 3.332 | Scheduling Contention Scope | 81 |
| 3.333 | Scheduling Policy | 81 |
| 3.334 | Screen | 81 |
| 3.335 | Scroll | 81 |
| 3.336 | Semaphore | 81 |
| 3.337 | Session | 81 |
| 3.338 | Session Leader | 82 |
| 3.339 | Session Lifetime | 82 |
| 3.340 | Shared Memory Object | 82 |
| 3.341 | Shell | 82 |



Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3.342 | Shell, the | 82 |
| 3.343 | Shell Script | 82 |
| 3.344 | Signal | 82 |
| 3.345 | Signal Stack | 83 |
| 3.346 | Single-Quote | 83 |
| 3.347 | Slash | 83 |
| 3.348 | Socket | 83 |
| 3.349 | Socket Address | 83 |
| 3.350 | Soft Limit | 83 |
| 3.351 | Source Code | 83 |
| 3.352 | Space Character (<space>) | 84 |
| 3.353 | Spawn | 84 |
| 3.354 | Special Built-In | 84 |
| 3.355 | Special Parameter | 84 |
| 3.356 | Spin Lock | 84 |
| 3.357 | Sporadic Server | 84 |
| 3.358 | Standard Error | 84 |
| 3.359 | Standard Input | 84 |
| 3.360 | Standard Output | 84 |
| 3.361 | Standard Utilities | 85 |
| 3.362 | Stream | 85 |
| 3.363 | STREAM | 85 |
| 3.364 | STREAM End | 85 |
| 3.365 | STREAM Head | 85 |
| 3.366 | STREAMS Multiplexor | 85 |
| 3.367 | String | 85 |
| 3.368 | Subshell | 86 |
| 3.369 | Successfully Transferred | 86 |
| 3.370 | Supplementary Group ID | 86 |
| 3.371 | Suspended Job | 86 |
| 3.372 | Symbolic Link | 86 |
| 3.373 | Synchronized Input and Output | 86 |
| 3.374 | Synchronized I/O Completion | 86 |
| 3.375 | Synchronized I/O Data Integrity Completion | 87 |
| 3.376 | Synchronized I/O File Integrity Completion | 87 |
| 3.377 | Synchronized I/O Operation | 87 |
| 3.378 | Synchronous I/O Operation | 87 |
| 3.379 | Synchronously-Generated Signal | 87 |
| 3.380 | System | 87 |
| 3.381 | System Crash | 88 |
| 3.382 | System Console | 88 |
| 3.383 | System Databases | 88 |
| 3.384 | System Documentation | 88 |
| 3.385 | System Process | 88 |
| 3.386 | System Reboot | 89 |
| 3.387 | System Trace Event | 89 |
| 3.388 | System-Wide | 89 |
| 3.389 | Tab Character (<tab>) | 89 |




Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3.390 | Terminal (or Terminal Device) | 89 |
| 3.391 | Text Column | 89 |
| 3.392 | Text File | 90 |
| 3.393 | Thread | 90 |
| 3.394 | Thread ID | 90 |
| 3.395 | Thread List | 90 |
| 3.396 | Thread-Safe | 90 |
| 3.397 | Thread-Specific Data Key | 90 |
| 3.398 | Tilde | 91 |
| 3.399 | Timeouts | 91 |
| 3.400 | Timer | 91 |
| 3.401 | Timer Overrun | 91 |
| 3.402 | Token | 91 |
| 3.403 | Trace Analyzer Process | 91 |
| 3.404 | Trace Controller Process | 91 |
| 3.405 | Trace Event | 91 |
| 3.406 | Trace Event Type | 91 |
| 3.407 | Trace Event Type Mapping | 92 |
| 3.408 | Trace Filter | 92 |
| 3.409 | Trace Generation Version | 92 |
| 3.410 | Trace Log | 92 |
| 3.411 | Trace Point | 92 |
| 3.412 | Trace Stream | 92 |
| 3.413 | Trace Stream Identifier | 92 |
| 3.414 | Trace System | 92 |
| 3.415 | Traced Process | 92 |
| 3.416 | Tracing Status of a Trace Stream | 93 |
| 3.417 | Typed Memory Name Space | 93 |
| 3.418 | Typed Memory Object | 93 |
| 3.419 | Typed Memory Pool | 93 |
| 3.420 | Typed Memory Port | 93 |
| 3.421 | Unbind | 93 |
| 3.422 | Unit Data | 93 |
| 3.423 | Upshifting | 93 |
| 3.424 | User Database | 94 |
| 3.425 | User ID | 94 |
| 3.426 | User Name | 94 |
| 3.427 | User Trace Event | 94 |
| 3.428 | Utility | 94 |
| 3.429 | Variable | 95 |
| 3.430 | Vertical-Tab Character (<vertical-tab>) | 95 |
| 3.431 | White Space | 95 |
| 3.432 | Wide-Character Code (C Language) | 95 |
| 3.433 | Wide-Character Input/Output Functions | 95 |
| 3.434 | Wide-Character String | 95 |
| 3.435 | Word | 96 |
| 3.436 | Working Directory (or Current Working Directory) | 96 |
| 3.437 | Worldwide Portability Interface | 96 |




Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3.438 Write ... 96
3.439 XSI ... 96
3.440 XSI-Conformant ... 96
3.441 Zombie Process ... 96
3.442 ±0 ... 97

**Chapter 4 General Concepts ... 99**
4.1 Concurrent Execution ... 99
4.2 Directory Protection ... 99
4.3 Extended Security Controls ... 99
4.4 File Access Permissions ... 99
4.5 File Hierarchy ... 100
4.6 Filenames ... 100
4.7 File Times Update ... 100
4.8 Host and Network Byte Orders ... 101
4.9 Measurement of Execution Time ... 101
4.10 Memory Synchronization ... 102
4.11 Pathname Resolution ... 102
4.12 Process ID Reuse ... 103
4.13 Scheduling Policy ... 103
4.14 Seconds Since the Epoch ... 104
4.15 Semaphore ... 104
4.16 Thread-Safety ... 105
4.17 Tracing ... 105
4.18 Treatment of Error Conditions for Mathematical Functions ... 107
4.18.1 Domain Error ... 107
4.18.2 Pole Error ... 108
4.18.3 Range Error ... 108
4.18.3.1 Result Overflows ... 108
4.18.3.2 Result Underflows ... 108
4.19 Treatment of NaN Arguments for the Mathematical Functions ... 108
4.20 Utility ... 109
4.21 Variable Assignment ... 109

**Chapter 5 File Format Notation ... 111**

**Chapter 6 Character Set ... 115**
6.1 Portable Character Set ... 115
6.2 Character Encoding ... 118
6.3 C Language Wide-Character Codes ... 119
6.4 Character Set Description File ... 119
6.4.1 State-Dependent Character Encodings ... 122

**Chapter 7 Locale ... 123**
7.1 General ... 123
7.2 POSIX Locale ... 124
7.3 Locale Definition ... 124
7.3.1 LC_CTYPE ... 126




--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

7.3.1.1 LC_CTYPE Category in the POSIX Locale ..... 130
7.3.2 LC_COLLATE ..... 134
7.3.2.1 The collating-element Keyword ..... 135
7.3.2.2 The collating-symbol Keyword ..... 136
7.3.2.3 The order_start Keyword ..... 136
7.3.2.4 Collation Order ..... 137
7.3.2.5 The order_end Keyword ..... 139
7.3.2.6 LC_COLLATE Category in the POSIX Locale ..... 139
7.3.3 LC_MONETARY ..... 142
7.3.3.1 LC_MONETARY Category in the POSIX Locale ..... 144
7.3.4 LC_NUMERIC ..... 145
7.3.4.1 LC_NUMERIC Category in the POSIX Locale ..... 146
7.3.5 LC_TIME ..... 147
7.3.5.1 LC_TIME Locale Definition ..... 147
7.3.5.2 LC_TIME C-Language Access ..... 149
7.3.5.3 LC_TIME Category in the POSIX Locale ..... 150
7.3.6 LC_MESSAGES ..... 152
7.3.6.1 LC_MESSAGES Category in the POSIX Locale ..... 153
7.4 Locale Definition Grammar ..... 153
7.4.1 Locale Lexical Conventions ..... 153
7.4.2 Locale Grammar ..... 154

**Chapter 8 Environment Variables ..... 161**
8.1 Environment Variable Definition ..... 161
8.2 Internationalization Variables ..... 162
8.3 Other Environment Variables ..... 165

**Chapter 9 Regular Expressions ..... 169**
9.1 Regular Expression Definitions ..... 169
9.2 Regular Expression General Requirements ..... 170
9.3 Basic Regular Expressions ..... 171
9.3.1 BREs Matching a Single Character or Collating Element ..... 171
9.3.2 BRE Ordinary Characters ..... 171
9.3.3 BRE Special Characters ..... 171
9.3.4 Periods in BREs ..... 172
9.3.5 RE Bracket Expression ..... 172
9.3.6 BREs Matching Multiple Characters ..... 174
9.3.7 BRE Precedence ..... 175
9.3.8 BRE Expression Anchoring ..... 175
9.4 Extended Regular Expressions ..... 175
9.4.1 EREs Matching a Single Character or Collating Element ..... 176
9.4.2 ERE Ordinary Characters ..... 176
9.4.3 ERE Special Characters ..... 176
9.4.4 Periods in EREs ..... 177
9.4.5 ERE Bracket Expression ..... 177
9.4.6 EREs Matching Multiple Characters ..... 177
9.4.7 ERE Alternation ..... 178
9.4.8 ERE Precedence ..... 178


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

9.4.9 ERE Expression Anchoring ..... 178
9.5 Regular Expression Grammar ..... 179
9.5.1 BRE/ERE Grammar Lexical Conventions ..... 179
9.5.2 RE and Bracket Expression Grammar ..... 180
9.5.3 ERE Grammar ..... 182

**Chapter 10 Directory Structure and Devices ..... 185**
10.1 Directory Structure and Files ..... 185
10.2 Output Devices and Terminal Types ..... 185

**Chapter 11 General Terminal Interface ..... 187**
11.1 Interface Characteristics ..... 187
11.1.1 Opening a Terminal Device File ..... 187
11.1.2 Process Groups ..... 187
11.1.3 The Controlling Terminal ..... 188
11.1.4 Terminal Access Control ..... 188
11.1.5 Input Processing and Reading Data ..... 189
11.1.6 Canonical Mode Input Processing ..... 189
11.1.7 Non-Canonical Mode Input Processing ..... 190
11.1.8 Writing Data and Output Processing ..... 191
11.1.9 Special Characters ..... 191
11.1.10 Modem Disconnect ..... 192
11.1.11 Closing a Terminal Device File ..... 192
11.2 Parameters that Can be Set ..... 193
11.2.1 The termios Structure ..... 193
11.2.2 Input Modes ..... 193
11.2.3 Output Modes ..... 194
11.2.4 Control Modes ..... 196
11.2.5 Local Modes ..... 197
11.2.6 Special Control Characters ..... 198

**Chapter 12 Utility Conventions ..... 201**
12.1 Utility Argument Syntax ..... 201
12.2 Utility Syntax Guidelines ..... 203

**Chapter 13 Headers ..... 205**
13.1 Format of Entries ..... 205

**Index ..... 431**


## List of Tables


3-1 Job Control Job ID Formats ..... 63
5-1 Escape Sequences and Associated Actions ..... 112
6-1 Portable Character Set ..... 115
6-2 Control Character Set ..... 120
7-1 Valid Character Class Combinations ..... 130
10-1 Control Character Names ..... 186




Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

# Foreword

## Structure of the Standard

This standard was originally developed by the Austin Group, a joint working group of members of the IEEE, members of The Open Group, and members of ISO/IEC Joint Technical Committee 1, as one of the four volumes of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. The standard was approved by ISO and IEC and published in four parts, correlating to the original volumes.

A mapping of the parts to the volumes is shown below:

| ISO/IEC 9945 Part | IEEE Std 1003.1 Volume | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 9945-1 | Base Definitions | Includes general terms, concepts, and interfaces common to all parts of ISO/IEC 9945, including utility conventions and C-language header definitions. |
| 9945-2 | System Interfaces | Includes definitions for system service functions and subroutines, language-specific system services for the C programming language, function issues, including portability, error handling, and error recovery. |
| 9945-3 | Shell and Utilities | Includes definitions for a standard source code-level interface to command interpretation services (a ''shell'') and common utility programs for application programs. |
| 9945-4 | Rationale | Includes extended rationale that did not fit well into the rest of the document structure, containing historical information concerning the contents of ISO/IEC 9945 and why features were included or discarded by the standard developers. |

All four parts comprise the entire standard, and are intended to be used together to accommodate significant internal referencing among them. POSIX-conforming systems are required to support all four parts.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

# Introduction

**Note:** This introduction is not part of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX).

This standard has been jointly developed by the IEEE and The Open Group. It is simultaneously an IEEE Standard, an ISO/IEC Standard, and an Open Group Technical Standard.

### The Austin Group

This standard was developed, and is maintained, by a joint working group of members of the IEEE Portable Applications Standards Committee, members of The Open Group, and members of ISO/IEC Joint Technical Committee 1. This joint working group is known as the Austin Group.[3] The Austin Group arose out of discussions amongst the parties which started in early 1998, leading to an initial meeting and formation of the group in September 1998. The purpose of the Austin Group has been to revise, combine, and update the following standards: ISO/IEC 9945-1, ISO/IEC 9945-2, IEEE Std 1003.1, IEEE Std 1003.2, and the Base Specifications of The Open Group Single UNIX Specification.

After two initial meetings, an agreement was signed in July 1999 between The Open Group and the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), Inc., to formalize the project with the first draft of the revised specifications being made available at the same time. Under this agreement, The Open Group and IEEE agreed to share joint copyright of the resulting work. The Open Group has provided the chair and secretariat for the Austin Group.

The base document for the revision was The Open Group's Base volumes of its Single UNIX Specification, Version 2. These were selected since they were a superset of the existing POSIX.1 and POSIX.2 specifications and had some organizational aspects that would benefit the audience for the new revision.

The approach to specification development has been one of ''write once, adopt everywhere'', with the deliverables being a set of specifications that carry the IEEE POSIX designation, The Open Group's Technical Standard designation, and an ISO/IEC designation. This set of specifications forms the core of the Single UNIX Specification, Version 3.

This unique development has combined both the industry-led efforts and the formal standardization activities into a single initiative, and included a wide spectrum of participants. The Austin Group continues as the maintenance body for this document.

Anyone wishing to participate in the Austin Group should contact the chair with their request. There are no fees for participation or membership. You may participate as an observer or as a contributor. You do not have to attend face-to-face meetings to participate; electronic participation is most welcome. For more information on the Austin Group and how to participate, see *http://www.opengroup.org/austin*.

3. The Austin Group is named after the location of the inaugural meeting held at the IBM facility in Austin, Texas in September 1998.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

### Background

The developers of this standard represent a cross section of hardware manufacturers, vendors of operating systems and other software development tools, software designers, consultants, academics, authors, applications programmers, and others.

Conceptually, this standard describes a set of fundamental services needed for the efficient construction of application programs. Access to these services has been provided by defining an interface, using the C programming language, a command interpreter, and common utility programs that establish standard semantics and syntax. Since this interface enables application writers to write portable applications—it was developed with that goal in mind—it has been designated POSIX,[4] an acronym for Portable Operating System Interface.

Although originated to refer to the original IEEE Std 1003.1-1988, the name POSIX more correctly refers to a *family* of related standards: IEEE Std 1003.*n* and the parts of ISO/IEC 9945. In earlier editions of the IEEE standard, the term POSIX was used as a synonym for IEEE Std 1003.1-1988. A preferred term, POSIX.1, emerged. This maintained the advantages of readability of the symbol ''POSIX'' without being ambiguous with the POSIX family of standards.

### Audience

The intended audience for this standard is all persons concerned with an industry-wide standard operating system based on the UNIX system. This includes at least four groups of people:

1. Persons buying hardware and software systems
2. Persons managing companies that are deciding on future corporate computing directions
3. Persons implementing operating systems, and especially
4. Persons developing applications where portability is an objective

### Purpose

Several principles guided the development of this standard:

- Application-Oriented

  The basic goal was to promote portability of application programs across UNIX system environments by developing a clear, consistent, and unambiguous standard for the interface specification of a portable operating system based on the UNIX system documentation. This standard codifies the common, existing definition of the UNIX system.

- Interface, Not Implementation

  This standard defines an interface, not an implementation. No distinction is made between library functions and system calls; both are referred to as functions. No details of the implementation of any function are given (although historical practice is sometimes indicated in the RATIONALE section). Symbolic names are given for constants (such as signals and error numbers) rather than numbers.

---

4. The name POSIX was suggested by Richard Stallman. It is expected to be pronounced *pahz-icks*, as in *positive*, not *poh-six*, or other variations. The pronunciation has been published in an attempt to promulgate a standardized way of referring to a standard operating system interface.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

- Source, Not Object, Portability

  This standard has been written so that a program written and translated for execution on one conforming implementation may also be translated for execution on another conforming implementation. This standard does not guarantee that executable (object or binary) code will execute under a different conforming implementation than that for which it was translated, even if the underlying hardware is identical.

- The C Language

  The system interfaces and header definitions are written in terms of the standard C language as specified in the ISO C standard.

- No Superuser, No System Administration

  There was no intention to specify all aspects of an operating system. System administration facilities and functions are excluded from this standard, and functions usable only by the superuser have not been included. Still, an implementation of the standard interface may also implement features not in this standard. This standard is also not concerned with hardware constraints or system maintenance.

- Minimal Interface, Minimally Defined

  In keeping with the historical design principles of the UNIX system, the mandatory core facilities of this standard have been kept as minimal as possible. Additional capabilities have been added as optional extensions.

- Broadly Implementable

  The developers of this standard endeavored to make all specified functions implementable across a wide range of existing and potential systems, including:

  1. All of the current major systems that are ultimately derived from the original UNIX system code (Version 7 or later)
  2. Compatible systems that are not derived from the original UNIX system code
  3. Emulations hosted on entirely different operating systems
  4. Networked systems
  5. Distributed systems
  6. Systems running on a broad range of hardware

  No direct references to this goal appear in this standard, but some results of it are mentioned in the Rationale (Informative) volume.

- Minimal Changes to Historical Implementations

  When the original version of IEEE Std 1003.1 was published, there were no known historical implementations that did not have to change. However, there was a broad consensus on a set of functions, types, definitions, and concepts that formed an interface that was common to most historical implementations.

  The adoption of the 1988 and 1990 IEEE system interface standards, the 1992 IEEE shell and utilities standard, the various Open Group (formerly X/Open) specifications, and the subsequent revisions and addenda to all of them have consolidated this consensus, and this revision reflects the significantly increased level of consensus arrived at since the original versions. The earlier standards and their modifications specified a number of areas where consensus had not been reached before, and these are now reflected in this revision. The authors of the original versions tried, as much as possible, to follow the principles below


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

when creating new specifications:

1. By standardizing an interface like one in an historical implementation; for example, directories
2. By specifying an interface that is readily implementable in terms of, and backwards-compatible with, historical implementations, such as the extended *tar* format defined in the *pax* utility
3. By specifying an interface that, when added to an historical implementation, will not conflict with it; for example, the *sigaction*( ) function

This revision tries to minimize the number of changes required to implementations which conform to the earlier versions of the approved standards to bring them into conformance with the current standard. Specifically, the scope of this work excluded doing any ''new'' work, but rather collecting into a single document what had been spread across a number of documents, and presenting it in what had been proven in practice to be a more effective way. Some changes to prior conforming implementations were unavoidable, primarily as a consequence of resolving conflicts found in prior revisions, or which became apparent when bringing the various pieces together.

However, since it references the 1999 version of the ISO C standard, and no longer supports ''Common Usage C'', there are a number of unavoidable changes. Applications portability is similarly affected.

This standard is specifically not a codification of a particular vendor's product.

It should be noted that implementations will have different kinds of extensions. Some will reflect ''historical usage'' and will be preserved for execution of pre-existing applications. These functions should be considered ''obsolescent'' and the standard functions used for new applications. Some extensions will represent functions beyond the scope of this standard. These need to be used with careful management to be able to adapt to future extensions of this standard and/or port to implementations that provide these services in a different manner.

- Minimal Changes to Existing Application Code

  A goal of this standard was to minimize additional work for the developers of applications. However, because every known historical implementation will have to change at least slightly to conform, some applications will have to change.

### This Standard

This standard defines the Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) requirements and consists of the following volumes:

- Base Definitions (this volume)
- Shell and Utilities
- System Interfaces
- Rationale (Informative)



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

### This Volume

The Base Definitions volume provides common definitions for this standard, therefore readers should be familiar with it before using the other volumes.

This volume is structured as follows:

- Chapter 1 is an introduction.
- Chapter 2 defines the conformance requirements.
- Chapter 3 defines general terms used.
- Chapter 4 describes general concepts used.
- Chapter 5 describes the notation used to specify file input and output formats in this volume and the Shell and Utilities volume.
- Chapter 6 describes the portable character set and the process of character set definition.
- Chapter 7 describes the syntax for defining internationalization locales as well as the POSIX locale provided on all systems.
- Chapter 8 describes the use of environment variables for internationalization and other purposes.
- Chapter 9 describes the syntax of pattern matching using regular expressions employed by many utilities and matched by the *regcomp*( ) and *regexec*( ) functions.
- Chapter 10 describes files and devices found on all systems.
- Chapter 11 describes the asynchronous terminal interface for many of the functions in the System Interfaces volume and the *stty* utility in the Shell and Utilities volume.
- Chapter 12 describes the policies for command line argument construction and parsing.
- Chapter 13 defines the contents of headers which declare constants, macros, and data structures that are needed by programs using the services provided by the System Interfaces volume.

Comprehensive references are available in the index.

### Typographical Conventions

The following typographical conventions are used throughout this standard. In the text, this standard is referred to as IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, which is technically identical to The Open Group Base Specifications, Issue 6.

The typographical conventions listed here are for ease of reading only. Editorial inconsistencies in the use of typography are unintentional and have no normative meaning in this standard.

| Reference | Example | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| C-Language Data Structure | **aiocb** | |
| C-Language Data Structure Member | *aio_lio_opcode* | |
| C-Language Data Type | **long** | |
| C-Language External Variable | *errno* | |
| C-Language Function | *system*( ) | |


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| Reference | Example | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| C-Language Function Argument | *arg1* | |
| C-Language Function Family | *exec* | |
| C-Language Header | **<sys/stat.h>** | |
| C-Language Keyword | **return** | |
| C-Language Macro with Argument | *assert*( ) | |
| C-Language Macro with No Argument | INET_ADDRSTRLEN | |
| C-Language Preprocessing Directive | **#define** | |
| Commands within a Utility | **a**, **c** | |
| Conversion Specification, Specifier / Modifier Character | `%A`, `g`, `E` | 1 |
| Environment Variable | *PATH* | |
| Error Number | [EINTR] | |
| Example Output | **`Hello, World`** | |
| Filename | **/tmp** | |
| Literal Character | `'c','\r','\''` | 2 |
| Literal String | `"abcde"` | 2 |
| Optional Items in Utility Syntax | **`[]`** | |
| Parameter | <*directory pathname*> | |
| Special Character | <newline> | 3 |
| Symbolic Constant | _POSIX_VDISABLE | |
| Symbolic Limit, Configuration Value | {LINE_MAX} | 4 |
| Syntax | `#include <sys/stat.h>` | |
| User Input and Example Code | `echo Hello, World` | 5 |
| Utility Name | *awk* | |
| Utility Operand | *file_name* | |
| Utility Option | **–c** | |
| Utility Option with Option-Argument | **–w** *width* | |

**Notes:**

1. Conversion specifications, specifier characters, and modifier characters are used primarily in date-related functions and utilities and the *fprintf* and *fscanf* formatting functions.
2. Unless otherwise noted, the quotes shall not be used as input or output. When used in a list item, the quotes are omitted. For literal characters, `'\'` (or any of the other sequences such as `'''`) is the same as the C constant `'\\'` (or `'\''`).
3. The style selected for some of the special characters, such as <newline>, matches the form of the input given to the *localedef* utility. Generally, the characters selected for this special treatment are those that are not visually distinct, such as the control characters <tab> or <newline>.
4. Names surrounded by braces represent symbolic limits or configuration values which may be declared in appropriate headers by means of the C **#define** construct.
5. Brackets shown in this font, `"[]"`, are part of the syntax and do *not* indicate optional items. In syntax the `'|'` symbol is used to separate alternatives, and ellipses (`"..."`) are used to show that additional arguments are optional.

Shading is used to identify extensions and options; see Section 1.5.1 (on page 6).

Footnotes and notes within the body of the normative text are for information only (informative).

Informative sections (such as Rationale, Change History, Application Usage, and so on) are denoted by continuous shading bars in the margins.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Ranges of values are indicated with parentheses or brackets as follows:

- (*a*,*b*) means the range of all values from *a* to *b*, including neither *a* nor *b*.
- [*a*,*b*] means the range of all values from *a* to *b*, including *a* and *b*.
- [*a*,*b*) means the range of all values from *a* to *b*, including *a*, but not *b*.
- (*a*,*b*] means the range of all values from *a* to *b*, including *b*, but not *a*.

**Note:** A symbolic limit beginning with POSIX is treated differently, depending on context. In a C-language header, the symbol POSIX*string* (where *string* may contain underscores) is represented by the C identifier _POSIX*string*, with a leading underscore required to prevent ISO C standard name space pollution. However, in other contexts, such as languages other than C, the leading underscore is not used because this requirement does not exist.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

# Participants

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 was prepared by the Austin Group, sponsored by the Portable Applications Standards Committee of the IEEE Computer Society, The Open Group, and ISO / SC22 WG15.

### The Austin Group

At the time of approval, the membership of the Austin Group was as follows:

**Andrew Josey**, Chair
**Donald W. Cragun**, Organizational Representative, IEEE PASC
**Nicholas Stoughton**, Organizational Representative, ISO / SC22 WG15
**Mark Brown**, Organizational Representative, The Open Group
**Cathy Hughes**, Technical Editor

### Austin Group Technical Reviewers

Peter Anvin
Bouazza Bachar
Theodore P. Baker
Walter Briscoe
Mark Brown
Dave Butenhof
Geoff Clare
Donald W. Cragun
Lee Damico
Ulrich Drepper
Paul Eggert
Joanna Farley
Clive D.W. Feather
Andrew Gollan
Michael Gonzalez
Joseph M. Gwinn
Jon Hitchcock
Yvette Ho Sang
Cathy Hughes
Lowell G. Johnson
Andrew Josey
Michael Kavanaugh
David Korn
Marc Aurele La France
Jim Meyering
Gary Miller
Finnbarr P. Murphy
Joseph S. Myers
Sandra O'Donnell
Frank Prindle
Curtis Royster Jr.
Glen Seeds
Keld Jorn Simonsen
Raja Srinivasan
Nicholas Stoughton
Donn S. Terry
Fred Tydeman
Peter Van Der Veen
James Youngman
Jim Zepeda
Jason Zions



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

**Austin Group Working Group Members**

Harold C. Adams
Peter Anvin
Pierre-Jean Arcos
Jay Ashford
Bouazza Bachar
Theodore P. Baker
Robert Barned
Joel Berman
David J. Blackwood
Shirley Bockstahler-Brandt
James Bottomley
Walter Briscoe
Andries Brouwer
Mark Brown
Eric W. Burger
Alan Burns
Andries Brouwer
Dave Butenhof
Keith Chow
Geoff Clare
Donald W. Cragun
Lee Damico
Juan Antonio De La Puente
Ming De Zhou
Steven J. Dovich
Richard P. Draves
Ulrich Drepper
Paul Eggert
Philip H. Enslow
Joanna Farley
Clive D.W. Feather
Pete Forman
Mark Funkenhauser
Lois Goldthwaite
Andrew Gollan
Michael Gonzalez
Karen D. Gordon
Joseph M. Gwinn
Steven A. Haaser
Charles E. Hammons
Chris J. Harding
Barry Hedquist
Vincent E. Henley
Karl Heubaum
Jon Hitchcock
Yvette Ho Sang
Niklas Holsti
Thomas Hosmer
Cathy Hughes
Jim D. Isaak
Lowell G. Johnson
Michael B. Jones
Andrew Josey
Michael J. Karels
Michael Kavanaugh
David Korn
Steven Kramer
Thomas M. Kurihara
Marc Aurele La France
C. Douglass Locke
Nick Maclaren
Roger J. Martin
Craig H. Meyer
Jim Meyering
Gary Miller
Finnbarr P. Murphy
Joseph S. Myers
John Napier
Peter E. Obermayer
James T. Oblinger
Sandra O'Donnell
Frank Prindle
Francois Riche
John D. Riley
Andrew K. Roach
Helmut Roth
Jaideep Roy
Curtis Royster Jr.
Stephen C. Schwarm
Glen Seeds
Richard Seibel
David L. Shroads Jr.
W. Olin Sibert
Keld Jorn Simonsen
Curtis Smith
Raja Srinivasan
Nicholas Stoughton
Marc J. Teller
Donn S. Terry
Fred Tydeman
Mark-Rene Uchida
Scott A. Valcourt
Peter Van Der Veen
Michael W. Vannier
Eric Vought
Frederick N. Webb
Paul A.T. Wolfgang
Garrett A. Wollman
James Youngman
Oren Yuen
Janusz Zalewski
Jim Zepeda
Jason Zions


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

**The Open Group**

When The Open Group approved the Base Specifications, Issue 6 on 12 September 2001, the membership of The Open Group Base Working Group was as follows:

**Andrew Josey**, Chair
**Finnbarr P. Murphy**, Vice-Chair
**Mark Brown**, Austin Group Liaison
**Cathy Hughes**, Technical Editor

**Base Working Group Members**

Bouazza Bachar
Mark Brown
Dave Butenhof
Donald W. Cragun
Larry Dwyer
Joanna Farley
Andrew Gollan
Karen D. Gordon
Gary Miller
Finnbarr P. Murphy
Frank Prindle
Andrew K. Roach
Curtis Royster Jr.
Nicholas Stoughton
Kenjiro Tsuji



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

**IEEE**

When the IEEE Standards Board approved IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 on 6 December 2001, the membership of the committees was as follows:

**Portable Applications Standards Committee (PASC)**

**Lowell G. Johnson**, Chair
**Joseph M. Gwinn**, Vice-Chair
**Jay Ashford**, Functional Chair
**Andrew Josey**, Functional Chair
**Curtis Royster Jr.**, Functional Chair
**Nicholas Stoughton**, Secretary

**Balloting Committee**

The following members of the balloting committee voted on IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. Balloters may have voted for approval, disapproval, or abstention:

Harold C. Adams
Pierre-Jean Arcos
Jay Ashford
Theodore P. Baker
Robert Barned
David J. Blackwood
Shirley Bockstahler-Brandt
James Bottomley
Mark Brown
Eric W. Burger
Alan Burns
Dave Butenhof
Keith Chow
Donald W. Cragun
Juan Antonio De La Puente
Ming De Zhou
Steven J. Dovich
Richard P. Draves
Philip H. Enslow
Michael Gonzalez
Karen D. Gordon
Joseph M. Gwinn
Steven A. Haaser
Charles E. Hammons
Chris J. Harding
Barry Hedquist
Vincent E. Henley
Karl Heubaum
Niklas Holsti
Thomas Hosmer
Jim D. Isaak
Lowell G. Johnson
Michael B. Jones
Andrew Josey
Michael J. Karels
Steven Kramer
Thomas M. Kurihara
C. Douglass Locke
Roger J. Martin
Craig H. Meyer
Finnbarr P. Murphy
John Napier
Peter E. Obermayer
James T. Oblinger
Frank Prindle
Francois Riche
John D. Riley
Andrew K. Roach
Helmut Roth
Jaideep Roy
Curtis Royster Jr.
Stephen C. Schwarm
Richard Seibel
David L. Shroads Jr.
W. Olin Sibert
Keld Jorn Simonsen
Nicholas Stoughton
Donn S. Terry
Mark-Rene Uchida
Scott A. Valcourt
Michael W. Vannier
Frederick N. Webb
Paul A.T. Wolfgang
Oren Yuen
Janusz Zalewski

The following organizational representative voted on this standard:

**Andrew Josey**, X/Open Company Ltd.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

**IEEE-SA Standards Board**

When the IEEE-SA Standards Board approved IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 on 6 December 2001, it had the following membership:

**Donald N. Heirman**, Chair
**James T. Carlo**, Vice-Chair
**Judith Gorman**, Secretary

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Satish K. Aggarwal | James H. Gurney | James W. Moore |
| Mark D. Bowman | Richard J. Holleman | Robert F. Munzner |
| Gary R. Engmann | Lowell G. Johnson | Ronald C. Petersen |
| Harold E. Epstein | Robert J. Kennelly | Gerald H. Peterson |
| H. Landis Floyd | Joseph L. Koepfinger* | John B. Posey |
| Jay Forster* | Peter H. Lips | Gary S. Robinson |
| Howard M. Frazier | L. Bruce McClung | Akio Tojo |
| Ruben D. Garzon | Daleep C. Mohla | Donald W. Zipse |

Also included are the following non-voting IEEE-SA Standards Board liaisons:

**Alan Cookson**, NIST Representative
**Donald R. Volzka**, TAB Representative
**Yvette Ho Sang**, **Don Messina**, **Savoula Amanatidis**, IEEE Project Editors

* Member Emeritus



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002 was prepared by the Austin Group, sponsored by the Portable Applications Standards Committee of the IEEE Computer Society, The Open Group, and ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC22/WG15.

### The Austin Group

At the time of approval, the membership of the Austin Group was as follows:

**Andrew Josey**, Chair
**Donald W. Cragun**, Organizational Representative, IEEE PASC
**Nicholas Stoughton**, Organizational Representative, ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC22/WG15
**Mark Brown**, Organizational Representative, The Open Group
**Cathy Fox**, Technical Editor

### Austin Group Technical Reviewers

Theodore P. Baker
Julian Blake
Andries Brouwer
Mark Brown
Dave Butenhof
Geoff Clare
Donald W. Cragun
Ken Dawson
Ulrich Drepper
Larry Dwyer
Paul Eggert
Joanna Farley
Clive D.W. Feather
Cathy Fox
Mark Funkenhauser
Lois Goldthwaite
Andrew Gollan
Michael Gonzalez
Bruno Haible
Ben Harris
Jon Hitchcock
Andreas Jaeger
Andrew Josey
Jonathan Lennox
Nick Maclaren
Jack McCann
Wilhelm Mueller
Joseph S. Myers
Frank Prindle
Kenneth Raeburn
Tim Robbins
Glen Seeds
Matthew Seitz
Keld Jorn Simonsen
Nicholas Stoughton
Alexander Terekhov
Donn S. Terry
Mike Wilson
Garrett A. Wollman
Mark Ziegast


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

**Austin Group Working Group Members**

Harold C. Adams
Alejandro Alonso
Jay Ashford
Theodore P. Baker
David J. Blackwood
Julian Blake
Mitchell Bonnett
Andries Brouwer
Mark Brown
Eric W. Burger
Alan Burns
Dave Butenhof
Keith Chow
Geoff Clare
Luis Cordova
Donald W. Cragun
Dragan Cvetkovic
Lee Damico
Ken Dawson
Jeroen Dekkers
Juan Antonio De La Puente
Steven J. Dovich
Ulrich Drepper
Dr. Sourav Dutta
Larry Dwyer
Paul Eggert
Joanna Farley
Clive D.W. Feather
Yaacov Fenster
Cathy Fox
Mark Funkenhauser
Lois Goldthwaite
Andrew Gollan
Michael Gonzalez
Karen D. Gordon
Scott Gudgel
Joseph M. Gwinn
Steven A. Haaser
Bruno Haible
Charles E. Hammons
Bryan Harold
Ben Harris
Barry Hedquist
Karl Heubaum
Jon Hitchcock
Andreas Jaeger
Andrew Josey
Kenneth Lang
Pi-Cheng Law
Jonathan Lennox
Nick Maclaren
Roger J. Martin
Jack McCann
George Miao
Wilhelm Mueller
Finnbarr P. Murphy
Joseph S. Myers
Alexey Neyman
Charles Ngethe
Peter Petrov
Frank Prindle
Vikram Punj
Kenneth Raeburn
Francois Riche
Tim Robbins
Curtis Royster Jr.
Diane Schleicher
Gil Shultz
Stephen C. Schwarm
Glen Seeds
Matthew Seitz
Keld Jorn Simonsen
Doug Stevenson
Nicholas Stoughton
Alexander Terekhov
Donn S. Terry
Mike Wilson
Garrett A. Wollman
Oren Yuen
Mark Ziegast



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

### The Open Group

When The Open Group approved the Base Specifications, Issue 6, Technical Corrigendum 1 on 7 February 2003, the membership of The Open Group Base Working Group was as follows:

**Andrew Josey**, Chair
**Finnbarr P. Murphy**, Vice-Chair
**Mark Brown**, Austin Group Liaison
**Cathy Fox**, Technical Editor

### Base Working Group Members

Mark Brown
Dave Butenhof
Donald W. Cragun
Larry Dwyer
Ulrich Drepper
Joanna Farley
Andrew Gollan
Finnbarr P. Murphy
Frank Prindle
Andrew K. Roach
Curtis Royster Jr.
Nicholas Stoughton
Kenjiro Tsuji


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

**IEEE**

When the IEEE Standards Board approved IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002 on 11 December 2002, the membership of the committees was as follows:

**Portable Applications Standards Committee (PASC)**

**Lowell G. Johnson**, Chair
**Joseph M. Gwinn**, Vice-Chair
**Jay Ashford**, Functional Chair
**Andrew Josey**, Functional Chair
**Curtis Royster Jr.**, Functional Chair
**Nicholas Stoughton**, Secretary

**Balloting Committee**

The following members of the balloting committee voted on IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002. Balloters may have voted for approval, disapproval, or abstention:

Alejandro Alonso
Jay Ashford
David J. Blackwood
Julian Blake
Mitchell Bonnett
Mark Brown
Dave Butenhof
Keith Chow
Luis Cordova
Donald W. Cragun
Steven J. Dovich
Dr. Sourav Dutta
Yaacov Fenster
Michael Gonzalez
Scott Gudgel
Charles E. Hammons
Bryan Harold
Barry Hedquist
Karl Heubaum
Lowell G. Johnson
Andrew Josey
Kenneth Lang
Pi-Cheng Law
George Miao
Roger J. Martin
Finnbarr P. Murphy
Charles Ngethe
Peter Petrov
Frank Prindle
Vikram Punj
Francois Riche
Curtis Royster Jr.
Diane Schleicher
Stephen C. Schwarm
Gil Shultz
Nicholas Stoughton
Donn S. Terry
Oren Yuen
Juan A. de la Puente



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

**IEEE-SA Standards Board**

When the IEEE-SA Standards Board approved IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002 on 11 December 2002, the membership was as follows:

**James T. Carlo**, Chair
**James H. Gurney**, Vice-Chair
**Judith Gorman**, Secretary

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sid Bennett | Arnold M. Greenspan | Daleep C. Mohla |
| H. Stephen Berger | Raymond Hapeman | William J. Moylan |
| Clyde R. Camp | Donald M. Heirman | Malcolm V. Thaden |
| Richard DeBlasio | Richard H. Hulett | Geoffrey O. Thompson |
| Harold E. Epstein | Lowell G. Johnson | Howard L. Wolfman |
| Julian Forster* | Joseph L. Koepfinger* | Don Wright |
| Howard M. Frazier | Peter H. Lips | |
| Toshio Fukuda | Nader Mehravari | |

Also included are the following non-voting IEEE-SA Standards Board liaisons:

**Alan Cookson**, NIST Representative
**Satish K. Aggarwal**, NRC Representative
**Savoula Amanatidis**, IEEE Standards Managing Editor

* Member Emeritus


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

# Trademarks

The following information is given for the convenience of users of this standard and does not constitute endorsement of these products by The Open Group or the IEEE. There may be other products mentioned in the text that might be covered by trademark protection and readers are advised to verify them independently.

1003.1™ is a trademark of the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, Inc.

AIX® is a registered trademark of IBM Corporation.

AT&T® is a registered trademark of AT&T in the U.S.A. and other countries.

BSD™ is a trademark of the University of California, Berkeley, U.S.A.

Hewlett-Packard®, HP®, and HP-UX® are registered trademarks of Hewlett-Packard Company.

IBM® is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation.

The Open Group and Boundaryless Information Flow are trademarks and UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

POSIX® is a registered trademark of the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, Inc.

Sun® and Sun Microsystems® are registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc.

/usr/group® is a registered trademark of UniForum, the International Network of UNIX System Users.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

# Acknowledgements

The contributions of the following organizations to the development of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 are gratefully acknowledged:

- AT&T for permission to reproduce portions of its copyrighted System V Interface Definition (SVID) and material from the UNIX System V Release 2.0 documentation.
- The SC22 WG14 Committees.

This standard was prepared by the Austin Group, a joint working group of the IEEE, The Open Group, and ISO SC22 WG15.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

# Referenced Documents

### Normative References

Normative references for this standard are defined in Section 1.3 (on page 4).

### Informative References

The following documents are referenced in this standard:


1984 /usr/group Standard
/usr/group Standards Committee, Santa Clara, CA, UniForum 1984.

Almasi and Gottlieb
George S. Almasi and Allan Gottlieb, *Highly Parallel Computing*, The Benjamin/Cummings Publishing Company, Inc., 1989, ISBN: 0-8053-0177-1.

ANSI C
American National Standard for Information Systems: Standard X3.159-1989, Programming Language C.

ANSI X3.226-1994
American National Standard for Information Systems: Standard X3.226-1994, Programming Language Common LISP.

Brawer
Steven Brawer, *Introduction to Parallel Programming*, Academic Press, 1989, ISBN: 0-12-128470-0.

DeRemer and Pennello Article
DeRemer, Frank and Pennello, Thomas J., *Efficient Computation of LALR(1) Look-Ahead Sets*, SigPlan Notices, Volume 15, No. 8, August 1979.

Draft ANSI X3J11.1
IEEE Floating Point draft report of ANSI X3J11.1 (NCEG).

FIPS 151-1
Federal Information Procurement Standard (FIPS) 151-1. Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX)—Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) [C Language].

FIPS 151-2
Federal Information Procurement Standards (FIPS) 151-2, Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX)— Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) [C Language].

HP-UX Manual
Hewlett-Packard HP-UX Release 9.0 Reference Manual, Third Edition, August 1992.

IEC 60559: 1989
IEC 60559: 1989, Binary Floating-Point Arithmetic for Microprocessor Systems (previously designated IEC 559: 1989).

IEEE Std 754-1985
IEEE Std 754-1985, IEEE Standard for Binary Floating-Point Arithmetic.

IEEE Std 854-1987
IEEE Std 854-1987, IEEE Standard for Radix-Independent Floating-Point Arithmetic.




Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

IEEE Std 1003.9-1992
IEEE Std 1003.9-1992, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — POSIX FORTRAN 77 Language Interfaces — Part 1: Binding for System Application Program Interface API.

IETF RFC 791
Internet Protocol, Version 4 (IPv4), September 1981.

IETF RFC 819
The Domain Naming Convention for Internet User Applications, Z. Su, J. Postel, August 1982.

IETF RFC 822
Standard for the Format of ARPA Internet Text Messages, D.H. Crocker, August 1982.

IETF RFC 919
Broadcasting Internet Datagrams, J. Mogul, October 1984.

IETF RFC 920
Domain Requirements, J. Postel, J. Reynolds, October 1984.

IETF RFC 921
Domain Name System Implementation Schedule, J. Postel, October 1984.

IETF RFC 922
Broadcasting Internet Datagrams in the Presence of Subnets, J. Mogul, October 1984.

IETF RFC 1034
Domain Names — Concepts and Facilities, P. Mockapetris, November 1987.

IETF RFC 1035
Domain Names — Implementation and Specification, P. Mockapetris, November 1987.

IETF RFC 1123
Requirements for Internet Hosts — Application and Support, R. Braden, October 1989.

IETF RFC 1886
DNS Extensions to Support Internet Protocol, Version 6 (IPv6), C. Huitema, S. Thomson, December 1995.

IETF RFC 2045
Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME), Part 1: Format of Internet Message Bodies, N. Freed, N. Borenstein, November 1996.

IETF RFC 2181
Clarifications to the DNS Specification, R. Elz, R. Bush, July 1997.

IETF RFC 2373
Internet Protocol, Version 6 (IPv6) Addressing Architecture, S. Deering, R. Hinden, July 1998.

IETF RFC 2460
Internet Protocol, Version 6 (IPv6), S. Deering, R. Hinden, December 1998.

Internationalisation Guide
Guide, July 1993, Internationalisation Guide, Version 2 (ISBN: 1-859120-02-4, G304), published by The Open Group.

ISO C (1990)
ISO/IEC 9899:1990, Programming Languages — C, including Amendment 1:1995 (E), C Integrity (Multibyte Support Extensions (MSE) for ISO C).


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

ISO 2375: 1985
ISO 2375: 1985, Data Processing — Procedure for Registration of Escape Sequences.

ISO 8652: 1987
ISO 8652: 1987, Programming Languages — Ada (technically identical to ANSI standard 1815A-1983).

ISO / IEC 1539: 1990
ISO / IEC 1539: 1990, Information Technology — Programming Languages — Fortran (technically identical to the ANSI X3.9-1978 standard [FORTRAN 77]).

ISO / IEC 4873: 1991
ISO / IEC 4873: 1991, Information Technology — ISO 8-bit Code for Information Interchange — Structure and Rules for Implementation.

ISO / IEC 6429: 1992
ISO / IEC 6429: 1992, Information Technology — Control Functions for Coded Character Sets.

ISO / IEC 6937: 1994
ISO / IEC 6937: 1994, Information Technology — Coded Character Set for Text Communication — Latin Alphabet.

ISO / IEC 8802-3: 1996
ISO / IEC 8802-3: 1996, Information Technology — Telecommunications and Information Exchange Between Systems — Local and Metropolitan Area Networks — Specific Requirements — Part 3: Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA / CD) Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications.

ISO / IEC 8859
ISO / IEC 8859, Information Technology — 8-Bit Single-Byte Coded Graphic Character Sets:

Part 1: Latin Alphabet No. 1
Part 2: Latin Alphabet No. 2
Part 3: Latin Alphabet No. 3
Part 4: Latin Alphabet No. 4
Part 5: Latin / Cyrillic Alphabet
Part 6: Latin / Arabic Alphabet
Part 7: Latin / Greek Alphabet
Part 8: Latin / Hebrew Alphabet
Part 9: Latin Alphabet No. 5
Part 10: Latin Alphabet No. 6
Part 13: Latin Alphabet No. 7
Part 14: Latin Alphabet No. 8
Part 15: Latin Alphabet No. 9

ISO POSIX-1: 1996
ISO / IEC 9945-1: 1996, Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) [C Language] (identical to ANSI / IEEE Std 1003.1-1996). Incorporating ANSI / IEEE Stds 1003.1-1990, 1003.1b-1993, 1003.1c-1995, and 1003.1i-1995.

ISO POSIX-2: 1993
ISO / IEC 9945-2: 1993, Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 2: Shell and Utilities (identical to ANSI / IEEE Std 1003.2-1992, as amended by ANSI / IEEE Std 1003.2a-1992).



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Issue 1

X/Open Portability Guide, July 1985 (ISBN: 0-444-87839-4).

Issue 2

X/Open Portability Guide, January 1987:

- Volume 1: XVS Commands and Utilities (ISBN: 0-444-70174-5)
- Volume 2: XVS System Calls and Libraries (ISBN: 0-444-70175-3)

Issue 3

X/Open Specification, 1988, 1989, February 1992:

- Commands and Utilities, Issue 3 (ISBN: 1-872630-36-7, C211); this specification was formerly X/Open Portability Guide, Issue 3, Volume 1, January 1989, XSI Commands and Utilities (ISBN: 0-13-685835-X, XO/XPG/89/002)
- System Interfaces and Headers, Issue 3 (ISBN: 1-872630-37-5, C212); this specification was formerly X/Open Portability Guide, Issue 3, Volume 2, January 1989, XSI System Interface and Headers (ISBN: 0-13-685843-0, XO/XPG/89/003)
- Curses Interface, Issue 3, contained in Supplementary Definitions, Issue 3 (ISBN: 1-872630-38-3, C213), Chapters 9 to 14 inclusive; this specification was formerly X/Open Portability Guide, Issue 3, Volume 3, January 1989, XSI Supplementary Definitions (ISBN: 0-13-685850-3, XO/XPG/89/004)
- Headers Interface, Issue 3, contained in Supplementary Definitions, Issue 3 (ISBN: 1-872630-38-3, C213), Chapter 19, Cpio and Tar Headers; this specification was formerly X/Open Portability Guide Issue 3, Volume 3, January 1989, XSI Supplementary Definitions (ISBN: 0-13-685850-3, XO/XPG/89/004)

Issue 4

CAE Specification, July 1992, published by The Open Group:

- System Interface Definitions (XBD), Issue 4 (ISBN: 1-872630-46-4, C204)
- Commands and Utilities (XCU), Issue 4 (ISBN: 1-872630-48-0, C203)
- System Interfaces and Headers (XSH), Issue 4 (ISBN: 1-872630-47-2, C202)

Issue 4, Version 2

CAE Specification, August 1994, published by The Open Group:

- System Interface Definitions (XBD), Issue 4, Version 2 (ISBN: 1-85912-036-9, C434)
- Commands and Utilities (XCU), Issue 4, Version 2 (ISBN: 1-85912-034-2, C436)
- System Interfaces and Headers (XSH), Issue 4, Version 2 (ISBN: 1-85912-037-7, C435)

Issue 5

Technical Standard, February 1997, published by The Open Group:

- System Interface Definitions (XBD), Issue 5 (ISBN: 1-85912-186-1, C605)
- Commands and Utilities (XCU), Issue 5 (ISBN: 1-85912-191-8, C604)
- System Interfaces and Headers (XSH), Issue 5 (ISBN: 1-85912-181-0, C606)

Knuth Article

Knuth, Donald E., *On the Translation of Languages from Left to Right*, Information and Control, Volume 8, No. 6, October 1965.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

KornShell
: Bolsky, Morris I. and Korn, David G., *The New KornShell Command and Programming Language*, March 1995, Prentice Hall.

MSE Working Draft
: Working draft of ISO/IEC 9899:1990/Add3:Draft, Addendum 3 — Multibyte Support Extensions (MSE) as documented in the ISO Working Paper SC22/WG14/N205 dated 31 March 1992.

POSIX.0:1995
: IEEE Std 1003.0-1995, IEEE Guide to the POSIX Open System Environment (OSE) (identical to ISO/IEC TR 14252).

POSIX.1:1988
: IEEE Std 1003.1-1988, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) [C Language].

POSIX.1:1990
: IEEE Std 1003.1-1990, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) [C Language].

POSIX.1a
: P1003.1a, Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) — (C Language) Amendment.

POSIX.1d:1999
: IEEE Std 1003.1d-1999, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) — Amendment 4: Additional Realtime Extensions [C Language].

POSIX.1g:2000
: IEEE Std 1003.1g-2000, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) — Amendment 6: Protocol-Independent Interfaces (PII).

POSIX.1j:2000
: IEEE Std 1003.1j-2000, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) — Amendment 5: Advanced Realtime Extensions [C Language].

POSIX.1q:2000
: IEEE Std 1003.1q-2000, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 1: System Application Program Interface (API) — Amendment 7: Tracing [C Language].

POSIX.2b
: P1003.2b, Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 2: Shell and Utilities — Amendment.

POSIX.2d:-1994
: IEEE Std 1003.2d-1994, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX) — Part 2: Shell and Utilities — Amendment 1: Batch Environment.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

POSIX.13:-1998

IEEE Std 1003.13:1998, IEEE Standard for Information Technology — Standardized Application Environment Profile (AEP) — POSIX Realtime Application Support.

Sarwate Article

Sarwate, Dilip V., *Computation of Cyclic Redundancy Checks via Table Lookup*, Communications of the ACM, Volume 30, No. 8, August 1988.

Sprunt, Sha, and Lehoczky

Sprunt, B., Sha, L., and Lehoczky, J.P., *Aperiodic Task Scheduling for Hard Real-Time Systems*, The Journal of Real-Time Systems, Volume 1, 1989, Pages 27-60.

SVID, Issue 1

American Telephone and Telegraph Company, System V Interface Definition (SVID), Issue 1; Morristown, NJ, UNIX Press, 1985.

SVID, Issue 2

American Telephone and Telegraph Company, System V Interface Definition (SVID), Issue 2; Morristown, NJ, UNIX Press, 1986.

SVID, Issue 3

American Telephone and Telegraph Company, System V Interface Definition (SVID), Issue 3; Morristown, NJ, UNIX Press, 1989.

The AWK Programming Language

Aho, Alfred V., Kernighan, Brian W., and Weinberger, Peter J., *The AWK Programming Language*, Reading, MA, Addison-Wesley 1988.

UNIX Programmer's Manual

American Telephone and Telegraph Company, *UNIX Time-Sharing System: UNIX Programmer's Manual*, 7th Edition, Murray Hill, NJ, Bell Telephone Laboratories, January 1979.

XNS, Issue 4

CAE Specification, August 1994, Networking Services, Issue 4 (ISBN: 1-85912-049-0, C438), published by The Open Group.

XNS, Issue 5

CAE Specification, February 1997, Networking Services, Issue 5 (ISBN: 1-85912-165-9, C523), published by The Open Group.

XNS, Issue 5.2

Technical Standard, January 2000, Networking Services (XNS), Issue 5.2 (ISBN: 1-85912-241-8, C808), published by The Open Group.

X/Open Curses, Issue 4, Version 2

CAE Specification, May 1996, X/Open Curses, Issue 4, Version 2 (ISBN: 1-85912-171-3, C610), published by The Open Group.

Yacc

*Yacc: Yet Another Compiler Compiler*, Stephen C. Johnson, 1978.



Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

**Source Documents**

Parts of the following documents were used to create the base documents for this standard:

AIX 3.2 Manual

AIX Version 3.2 For RISC System/6000, Technical Reference: Base Operating System and Extensions, 1990, 1992 (Part No. SC23-2382-00).

OSF/1

OSF/1 Programmer's Reference, Release 1.2 (ISBN: 0-13-020579-6).

OSF AES

Application Environment Specification (AES) Operating System Programming Interfaces Volume, Revision A (ISBN: 0-13-043522-8).

System V Release 2.0

— UNIX System V Release 2.0 Programmer's Reference Manual (April 1984 - Issue 2).

— UNIX System V Release 2.0 Programming Guide (April 1984 - Issue 2).

System V Release 4.2

Operating System API Reference, UNIX SVR4.2 (1992) (ISBN: 0-13-017658-3).

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved. 

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Chapter 1

# Introduction

## 1.1 Scope

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 defines a standard operating system interface and environment, including a command interpreter (or ‘‘shell’’), and common utility programs to support applications portability at the source code level. It is intended to be used by both applications developers and system implementors.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 comprises four major components (each in an associated volume):

1. General terms, concepts, and interfaces common to all volumes of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, including utility conventions and C-language header definitions, are included in the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.
2. Definitions for system service functions and subroutines, language-specific system services for the C programming language, function issues, including portability, error handling, and error recovery, are included in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.
3. Definitions for a standard source code-level interface to command interpretation services (a ‘‘shell’’) and common utility programs for application programs are included in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.
4. Extended rationale that did not fit well into the rest of the document structure, containing historical information concerning the contents of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 and why features were included or discarded by the standard developers, is included in the Rationale (Informative) volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

The following areas are outside of the scope of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001:

- Graphics interfaces
- Database management system interfaces
- Record I/O considerations
- Object or binary code portability
- System configuration and resource availability

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 describes the external characteristics and facilities that are of importance to applications developers, rather than the internal construction techniques employed to achieve these capabilities. Special emphasis is placed on those functions and facilities that are needed in a wide variety of commercial applications.

The facilities provided in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 are drawn from the following base documents:

- IEEE Std 1003.1-1996 (POSIX-1) (incorporating IEEE Stds 1003.1-1990, 1003.1b-1993, 1003.1c-1995, and 1003.1i-1995)
- The following amendments to the POSIX.1-1990 standard:
  - IEEE P1003.1a draft standard (Additional System Services)
  - IEEE Std 1003.1d-1999 (Additional Realtime Extensions)



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

— IEEE Std 1003.1g-2000 (Protocol-Independent Interfaces (PII))

— IEEE Std 1003.1j-2000 (Advanced Realtime Extensions)

— IEEE Std 1003.1q-2000 (Tracing)

- IEEE Std 1003.2-1992 (POSIX-2) (includes IEEE Std 1003.2a-1992)
- The following amendments to the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard:

  — IEEE P1003.2b draft standard (Additional Utilities)

  — IEEE Std 1003.2d-1994 (Batch Environment)

- Open Group Technical Standard, February 1997, System Interface Definitions, Issue 5 (XBD5) (ISBN: 1-85912-186-1, C605)
- Open Group Technical Standard, February 1997, Commands and Utilities, Issue 5 (XCU5) (ISBN: 1-85912-191-8, C604)
- Open Group Technical Standard, February 1997, System Interfaces and Headers, Issue 5 (XSH5) (in 2 Volumes) (ISBN: 1-85912-181-0, C606)

  **Note:** XBD5, XCU5, and XSH5 are collectively referred to as the *Base Specifications*.

- Open Group Technical Standard, January 2000, Networking Services, Issue 5.2 (XNS5.2) (ISBN: 1-85912-241-8, C808)
- ISO / IEC 9899: 1999, Programming Languages — C.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 uses the Base Specifications as its organizational basis and adds the following additional functionality to them, drawn from the base documents above:

- Normative text from the ISO POSIX-1: 1996 standard and the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard not included in the Base Specifications
- The amendments to the POSIX.1-1990 standard and the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard listed above, except for parts of IEEE Std 1003.1g-2000
- Portability Considerations
- Additional rationale and notes

The following features, marked legacy or obsolescent in the base documents, are not carried forward into IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. Other features from the base documents marked legacy or obsolescent are carried forward unless otherwise noted.

From XSH5, the following legacy interfaces, headers, and external variables are not carried forward:

*advance*( ), *brk*( ), *chroot*( ), *compile*( ), *cuserid*( ), *gamma*( ), *getdtablesize*( ), *getpagesize*( ), *getpass*( ), *getw*( ), *putw*( ), *re_comp*( ), *re_exec*( ), *regcmp*( ), *regex*( ), *sbrk*( ), *sigstack*( ), *step*( ), *ttyslot*( ), *valloc*( ), *wait3*( ), **<re_comp.h>**, **<regexp.h>**, **<varargs.h>**, *loc1*, *__loc1*, *loc2*, *locs*

From XCU5, the following legacy utilities are not carried forward:

*calendar*, *cancel*, *cc*, *col*, *cpio*, *cu*, *dircmp*, *dis*, *egrep*, *fgrep*, *line*, *lint*, *lpstat*, *mail*, *pack*, *pcat*, *pg*, *spell*, *sum*, *tar*, *unpack*, *uulog*, *uuname*, *uupick*, *uuto*

In addition, legacy features within non-legacy reference pages (for example, headers) are not carried forward.

From the ISO POSIX-1: 1996 standard, the following obsolescent features are not carried forward:


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Page 112, CLK_TCK
Page 197 *tcgetattr*( ) rate returned option

From the ISO POSIX-2: 1993 standard, obsolescent features within the following pages are not carried forward:

Page 75, zero-length prefix within *PATH*
Page 156, 159 *set*
Page 178, *awk*, use of no argument and no parentheses with length
Page 259, *ed*
Page 272, *env*
Page 282, *find* –**perm**[–]*onum*
Page 295-296, *egrep*
Page 299-300, *head*
Page 305-306, *join*
Page 309-310, *kill*
Page 431-433, 435-436, *sort*
Page 444-445, *tail*
Page 453, 455-456, *touch*
Page 464-465, *tty*
Page 472, *uniq*
Page 515-516, *ex*
Page 542-543, *expand*
Page 563-565, *more*
Page 574-576, *newgrp*
Page 578, *nice*
Page 594-596, *renice*
Page 597-598, *split*
Page 600-601, *strings*
Page 624-625, *vi*
Page 693, *lex*

The *c89* utility (which specified a compiler for the C Language specified by the ISO / IEC 9899: 1990 standard) has been replaced by a *c99* utility (which specifies a compiler for the C Language specified by the ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard).

From XSH5, text marked OH (Optional Header) has been reviewed on a case-by-case basis and removed where appropriate. The XCU5 text marked OF (Output Format Incompletely Specified) and UN (Possibly Unsupportable Feature) has been reviewed on a case-by-case basis and removed where appropriate.

For the networking interfaces, the base document is the XNS, Issue 5.2 specification. The following parts of the XNS, Issue 5.2 specification are out of scope and not included in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001:

- Part 3 (XTI)
- Part 4 (Appendixes)

Since there is much duplication between the XNS, Issue 5.2 specification and IEEE Std 1003.1g-2000, material only from the following sections of IEEE Std 1003.1g-2000 has been included:

- General terms related to sockets (Section 2.2.2)
- Socket concepts (Sections 5.1 through 5.3, inclusive)



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

- The *pselect*( ) function (Sections 6.2.2.1 and 6.2.3)
- The *sockatmark*( ) function (Section 5.4.13)
- The **<sys/select.h>** header (Section 6.2)

Emphasis is placed on standardizing existing practice for existing users, with changes and additions limited to correcting deficiencies in the following areas:

- Issues raised by IEEE or ISO / IEC Interpretations against IEEE Std 1003.1 and IEEE Std 1003.2
- Issues raised in corrigenda for the Base Specifications and working group resolutions from The Open Group
- Corrigenda and resolutions passed by The Open Group for the XNS, Issue 5.2 specification
- Changes to make the text self-consistent with the additional material merged
- A reorganization of the options in order to facilitate profiling, both for smaller profiles such as IEEE Std 1003.13, and larger profiles such as the Single UNIX Specification
- Alignment with the ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard

## 1.2 Conformance

Conformance requirements for IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 are defined in Chapter 2 (on page 17).

## 1.3 Normative References

The following standards contain provisions which, through references in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, constitute provisions of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. At the time of publication, the editions indicated were valid. All standards are subject to revision, and parties to agreements based on IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the standards listed below. Members of IEC and ISO maintain registers of currently valid International Standards.

ANS X3.9-1978
: (Reaffirmed 1989) American National Standard for Information Systems: Standard X3.9-1978, Programming Language FORTRAN.[1]

ISO / IEC 646: 1991
: ISO / IEC 646: 1991, Information Processing — ISO 7-Bit Coded Character Set for Information Interchange.[2]

ISO 4217: 2001
: ISO 4217: 2001, Codes for the Representation of Currencies and Funds.

ISO 8601: 2000
: ISO 8601: 2000, Data Elements and Interchange Formats — Information Interchange —

---

1. ANSI documents can be obtained from the Sales Department, American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018, U.S.A.
2. ISO / IEC documents can be obtained from the ISO office: 1 Rue de Varembé, Case Postale 56, CH-1211, Genève 20, Switzerland / Suisse



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Representation of Dates and Times.

ISO C (1999)
ISO/IEC 9899:1999, Programming Languages — C, including Technical Corrigendum 1.

ISO/IEC 10646-1:2000
ISO/IEC 10646-1:2000, Information Technology — Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character Set (UCS) — Part 1: Architecture and Basic Multilingual Plane.

## 1.4 Terminology

For the purposes of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, the following terminology definitions apply:

**can**
Describes a permissible optional feature or behavior available to the user or application. The feature or behavior is mandatory for an implementation that conforms to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. An application can rely on the existence of the feature or behavior.

**implementation-defined**
Describes a value or behavior that is not defined by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 but is selected by an implementor. The value or behavior may vary among implementations that conform to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. An application should not rely on the existence of the value or behavior. An application that relies on such a value or behavior cannot be assured to be portable across conforming implementations.

The implementor shall document such a value or behavior so that it can be used correctly by an application.

**legacy**
Describes a feature or behavior that is being retained for compatibility with older applications, but which has limitations which make it inappropriate for developing portable applications. New applications should use alternative means of obtaining equivalent functionality.

**may**
Describes a feature or behavior that is optional for an implementation that conforms to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. An application should not rely on the existence of the feature or behavior. An application that relies on such a feature or behavior cannot be assured to be portable across conforming implementations.

To avoid ambiguity, the opposite of *may* is expressed as *need not*, instead of *may not*.

**shall**
For an implementation that conforms to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, describes a feature or behavior that is mandatory. An application can rely on the existence of the feature or behavior.

For an application or user, describes a behavior that is mandatory.

**should**
For an implementation that conforms to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, describes a feature or behavior that is recommended but not mandatory. An application should not rely on the existence of the feature or behavior. An application that relies on such a feature or behavior cannot be assured to be portable across conforming implementations.

For an application, describes a feature or behavior that is recommended programming practice for optimum portability.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

**undefined**

Describes the nature of a value or behavior not defined by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 which results from use of an invalid program construct or invalid data input.

The value or behavior may vary among implementations that conform to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. An application should not rely on the existence or validity of the value or behavior. An application that relies on any particular value or behavior cannot be assured to be portable across conforming implementations.

**unspecified**

Describes the nature of a value or behavior not specified by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 which results from use of a valid program construct or valid data input.

The value or behavior may vary among implementations that conform to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. An application should not rely on the existence or validity of the value or behavior. An application that relies on any particular value or behavior cannot be assured to be portable across conforming implementations.

## 1.5 Portability

Some of the utilities in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 and functions in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 describe functionality that might not be fully portable to systems meeting the requirements for POSIX conformance (see the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Chapter 2, Conformance).

Where optional, enhanced, or reduced functionality is specified, the text is shaded and a code in the margin identifies the nature of the option, extension, or warning (see Section 1.5.1). For maximum portability, an application should avoid such functionality.

Unless the primary task of a utility is to produce textual material on its standard output, application developers should not rely on the format or content of any such material that may be produced. Where the primary task *is* to provide such material, but the output format is incompletely specified, the description is marked with the OF margin code and shading. Application developers are warned not to expect that the output of such an interface on one system is any guide to its behavior on another system.

### 1.5.1 Codes

The codes and their meanings are as follows. See also Section 1.5.2 (on page 14).

ADV Advisory Information

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the ADV margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the ADV margin legend.

AIO Asynchronous Input and Output

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the AIO margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the AIO margin legend.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

BAR Barriers

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the BAR margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the BAR margin legend.

BE Batch Environment Services and Utilities

The functionality described is optional.

Where applicable, utilities are marked with the BE margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a utility, the material is identified by use of the BE margin legend.

CD C-Language Development Utilities

The functionality described is optional.

Where applicable, utilities are marked with the CD margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a utility, the material is identified by use of the CD margin legend.

CPT Process CPU-Time Clocks

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the CPT margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the CPT margin legend.

CS Clock Selection

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the CS margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the CS margin legend.

CX Extension to the ISO C standard

The functionality described is an extension to the ISO C standard. Application writers may make use of an extension as it is supported on all IEEE Std 1003.1-2001-conforming systems.

With each function or header from the ISO C standard, a statement to the effect that ‘‘any conflict is unintentional’’ is included. That is intended to refer to a direct conflict. IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 acts in part as a profile of the ISO C standard, and it may choose to further constrain behaviors allowed to vary by the ISO C standard. Such limitations are not considered conflicts.

Where additional semantics apply to a function or header, the material is identified by use of the CX margin legend.

FD FORTRAN Development Utilities

The functionality described is optional.

Where applicable, utilities are marked with the FD margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a utility, the material is identified by use of the FD margin legend.

FR FORTRAN Runtime Utilities

The functionality described is optional.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Where applicable, utilities are marked with the FR margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a utility, the material is identified by use of the FR margin legend.

FSC File Synchronization
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the FSC margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the FSC margin legend.

IP6 IPV6
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the IP6 margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the IP6 margin legend.

MC1 Advisory Information and either Memory Mapped Files or Shared Memory Objects
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

This is a shorthand notation for combinations of multiple option codes.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the MC1 margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the MC1 margin legend.

Refer to Section 1.5.2 (on page 14).

MC2 Memory Mapped Files, Shared Memory Objects, or Memory Protection
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

This is a shorthand notation for combinations of multiple option codes.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the MC2 margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the MC2 margin legend.

Refer to Section 1.5.2 (on page 14).

MC3 Memory Mapped Files, Shared Memory Objects, or Typed Memory Objects
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

This is a shorthand notation for combinations of multiple option codes.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the MC3 margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the MC3 margin legend.

Refer to Section 1.5.2 (on page 14).

MF Memory Mapped Files
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Where applicable, functions are marked with the MF margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the MF margin legend.

ML Process Memory Locking

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the ML margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the ML margin legend.

MLR Range Memory Locking

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the MLR margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the MLR margin legend.

MON Monotonic Clock

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the MON margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the MON margin legend.

MPR Memory Protection

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the MPR margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the MPR margin legend.

MSG Message Passing

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the MSG margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the MSG margin legend.

MX IEC 60559 Floating-Point Option

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the MX margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the MX margin legend.

OB Obsolescent

The functionality described may be withdrawn in a future version of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. Strictly Conforming POSIX Applications and Strictly Conforming XSI Applications shall not use obsolescent features.

Where applicable, the material is identified by use of the OB margin legend.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

OF **Output Format Incompletely Specified**

The functionality described is an XSI extension. The format of the output produced by the utility is not fully specified. It is therefore not possible to post-process this output in a consistent fashion. Typical problems include unknown length of strings and unspecified field delimiters.

Where applicable, the material is identified by use of the OF margin legend.

OH **Optional Header**

In the SYNOPSIS section of some interfaces in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 an included header is marked as in the following example:

OH
```
#include <sys/types.h>
#include <grp.h>
struct group *getgrnam(const char *name);
```

The OH margin legend indicates that the marked header is not required on XSI-conformant systems.

PIO **Prioritized Input and Output**

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the PIO margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the PIO margin legend.

PS **Process Scheduling**

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the PS margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the PS margin legend.

RS **Raw Sockets**

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the RS margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the RS margin legend.

RTS **Realtime Signals Extension**

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the RTS margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the RTS margin legend.

SD **Software Development Utilities**

The functionality described is optional.

Where applicable, utilities are marked with the SD margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a utility, the material is identified by use of the SD margin legend.

SEM **Semaphores**

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Where applicable, functions are marked with the SEM margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the SEM margin legend.

SHM Shared Memory Objects

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the SHM margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the SHM margin legend.

SIO Synchronized Input and Output

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the SIO margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the SIO margin legend.

SPI Spin Locks

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the SPI margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the SPI margin legend.

SPN Spawn

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the SPN margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the SPN margin legend.

SS Process Sporadic Server

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the SS margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the SS margin legend.

TCT Thread CPU-Time Clocks

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TCT margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TCT margin legend.

TEF Trace Event Filter

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TEF margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TEF margin legend.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

THR **Threads**

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the THR margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the THR margin legend.

TMO **Timeouts**

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TMO margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TMO margin legend.

TMR **Timers**

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TMR margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TMR margin legend.

TPI **Thread Priority Inheritance**

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TPI margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TPI margin legend.

TPP **Thread Priority Protection**

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TPP margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TPP margin legend.

TPS **Thread Execution Scheduling**

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TPS margin legend for the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TPS margin legend.

TRC **Trace**

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TRC margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TRC margin legend.

TRI **Trace Inherit**

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TRI margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TRI margin legend.

TRL Trace Log

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TRL margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TRL margin legend.

TSA Thread Stack Address Attribute

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TSA margin legend for the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TSA margin legend.

TSF Thread-Safe Functions

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TSF margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TSF margin legend.

TSH Thread Process-Shared Synchronization

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TSH margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TSH margin legend.

TSP Thread Sporadic Server

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TSP margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TSP margin legend.

TSS Thread Stack Size Attribute

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TSS margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TSS margin legend.

TYM Typed Memory Objects

The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the TYM margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the TYM margin legend.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

UP User Portability Utilities
The functionality described is optional.

Where applicable, utilities are marked with the UP margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a utility, the material is identified by use of the UP margin legend.

XSI Extension
The functionality described is an XSI extension. Functionality marked XSI is also an extension to the ISO C standard. Application writers may confidently make use of an extension on all systems supporting the X/Open System Interfaces Extension.

If an entire SYNOPSIS section is shaded and marked XSI, all the functionality described in that reference page is an extension. See Section 2.1.4 (on page 21).

XSR XSI STREAMS
The functionality described is optional. The functionality described is also an extension to the ISO C standard.

Where applicable, functions are marked with the XSR margin legend in the SYNOPSIS section. Where additional semantics apply to a function, the material is identified by use of the XSR margin legend.

### 1.5.2 Margin Code Notation

Some of the functionality described in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 depends on support of more than one option, or independently may depend on several options. The following notation for margin codes is used to denote the following cases.

#### A Feature Dependent on One or Two Options

In this case, margin codes have a <space> separator; for example:

MF This feature requires support for only the Memory Mapped Files option.

MF SHM This feature requires support for both the Memory Mapped Files and the Shared Memory Objects options; that is, an application which uses this feature is portable only between implementations that provide both options.

#### A Feature Dependent on Either of the Options Denoted

In this case, margin codes have a '|' separator to denote the logical OR; for example:

MF|SHM This feature is dependent on support for either the Memory Mapped Files option or the Shared Memory Objects option; that is, an application which uses this feature is portable between implementations that provide any (or all) of the options.

#### A Feature Dependent on More than Two Options

The following shorthand notations are used:

MC1 The MC1 margin code is shorthand for ADV (MF|SHM). Features which are shaded with this margin code require support of the Advisory Information option and either the Memory Mapped Files or Shared Memory Objects option.

MC2 The MC2 margin code is shorthand for MF|SHM|MPR. Features which are shaded with this margin code require support of either the Memory Mapped Files, Shared Memory Objects, or Memory Protection options.

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

MC3 The MC3 margin code is shorthand for MF|SHM|TYM. Features which are shaded with this margin code require support of either the Memory Mapped Files, Shared Memory Objects, or Typed Memory Objects options.

**Large Sections Dependent on an Option**

Where large sections of text are dependent on support for an option, a lead-in text block is provided and shaded accordingly; for example:

TRC This section describes extensions to support tracing of user applications. This functionality is dependent on support of the Trace option (and the rest of this section is not further shaded for this option).



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Chapter 2

# Conformance

## 2.1 Implementation Conformance

### 2.1.1 Requirements

A *conforming implementation* shall meet all of the following criteria:

1. The system shall support all utilities, functions, and facilities defined within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 that are required for POSIX conformance (see Section 2.1.3 (on page 18)). These interfaces shall support the functional behavior described herein.

2. The system may support one or more options as described under Section 2.1.5 (on page 22). When an implementation claims that an option is supported, all of its constituent parts shall be provided.

3. The system may support the X/Open System Interface Extension (XSI) as described under Section 2.1.4 (on page 21).

4. The system may provide additional utilities, functions, or facilities not required by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. Non-standard extensions of the utilities, functions, or facilities specified in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 should be identified as such in the system documentation. Non-standard extensions, when used, may change the behavior of utilities, functions, or facilities defined by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. The conformance document shall define an environment in which an application can be run with the behavior specified by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. In no case shall such an environment require modification of a Strictly Conforming POSIX Application (see Section 2.2.1 (on page 31)).

### 2.1.2 Documentation

A conformance document with the following information shall be available for an implementation claiming conformance to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. The conformance document shall have the same structure as IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, with the information presented in the appropriate sections and subsections. Sections and subsections that consist solely of subordinate section titles, with no other information, are not required. The conformance document shall not contain information about extended facilities or capabilities outside the scope of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

The conformance document shall contain a statement that indicates the full name, number, and date of the standard that applies. The conformance document may also list international software standards that are available for use by a Conforming POSIX Application. Applicable characteristics where documentation is required by one of these standards, or by standards of government bodies, may also be included.

The conformance document shall describe the limit values found in the headers **<limits.h>** (on page 249) and **<unistd.h>** (on page 400), stating values, the conditions under which those values may change, and the limits of such variations, if any.

The conformance document shall describe the behavior of the implementation for all implementation-defined features defined in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. This requirement shall be met by listing these features and providing either a specific reference to the system documentation or providing full syntax and semantics of these features. When the value or behavior in the



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

implementation is designed to be variable or customized on each instantiation of the system, the implementation provider shall document the nature and permissible ranges of this variation.

The conformance document may specify the behavior of the implementation for those features where IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 states that implementations may vary or where features are identified as undefined or unspecified.

The conformance document shall not contain documentation other than that specified in the preceding paragraphs except where such documentation is specifically allowed or required by other provisions of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

The phrases ‘‘shall document’’ or ‘‘shall be documented’’ in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 mean that documentation of the feature shall appear in the conformance document, as described previously, unless there is an explicit reference in the conformance document to show where the information can be found in the system documentation.

The system documentation should also contain the information found in the conformance document.

### 2.1.3 POSIX Conformance

A conforming implementation shall meet the following criteria for POSIX conformance.

#### *2.1.3.1 POSIX System Interfaces*

- The system shall support all the mandatory functions and headers defined in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, and shall set the symbolic constant _POSIX_VERSION to the value 200112L.
- Although all implementations conforming to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 support all the features described below, there may be system-dependent or file system-dependent configuration procedures that can remove or modify any or all of these features. Such configurations should not be made if strict compliance is required.

  The following symbolic constants shall either be undefined or defined with a value other than −1. If a constant is undefined, an application should use the *sysconf*( ), *pathconf*( ), or *fpathconf*( ) functions, or the *getconf* utility, to determine which features are present on the system at that time or for the particular pathname in question.

  — _POSIX_CHOWN_RESTRICTED

  The use of *chown*( ) is restricted to a process with appropriate privileges, and to changing the group ID of a file only to the effective group ID of the process or to one of its supplementary group IDs.

  — _POSIX_NO_TRUNC

  Pathname components longer than {NAME_MAX} generate an error.
- The following symbolic constants shall be defined as follows:
  - _POSIX_JOB_CONTROL shall have a value greater than zero.
  - _POSIX_SAVED_IDS shall have a value greater than zero.
  - _POSIX_VDISABLE shall have a value other than −1.

**Note:** The symbols above represent historical options that are no longer allowed as options, but are retained here for backwards-compatibility of applications.

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

- The system may support one or more options (see Section 2.1.6 (on page 28)) denoted by the following symbolic constants:
  - — _POSIX_ADVISORY_INFO
  - — _POSIX_ASYNCHRONOUS_IO
  - — _POSIX_BARRIERS
  - — _POSIX_CLOCK_SELECTION
  - — _POSIX_CPUTIME
  - — _POSIX_FSYNC
  - — _POSIX_IPV6
  - — _POSIX_MAPPED_FILES
  - — _POSIX_MEMLOCK
  - — _POSIX_MEMLOCK_RANGE
  - — _POSIX_MEMORY_PROTECTION
  - — _POSIX_MESSAGE_PASSING
  - — _POSIX_MONOTONIC_CLOCK
  - — _POSIX_PRIORITIZED_IO
  - — _POSIX_PRIORITY_SCHEDULING
  - — _POSIX_RAW_SOCKETS
  - — _POSIX_REALTIME_SIGNALS
  - — _POSIX_SEMAPHORES
  - — _POSIX_SHARED_MEMORY_OBJECTS
  - — _POSIX_SPAWN
  - — _POSIX_SPIN_LOCKS
  - — _POSIX_SPORADIC_SERVER
  - — _POSIX_SYNCHRONIZED_IO
  - — _POSIX_THREAD_ATTR_STACKADDR
  - — _POSIX_THREAD_CPUTIME
  - — _POSIX_THREAD_ATTR_STACKSIZE
  - — _POSIX_THREAD_PRIO_INHERIT
  - — _POSIX_THREAD_PRIO_PROTECT
  - — _POSIX_THREAD_PRIORITY_SCHEDULING
  - — _POSIX_THREAD_PROCESS_SHARED
  - — _POSIX_THREAD_SAFE_FUNCTIONS
  - — _POSIX_THREAD_SPORADIC_SERVER
  - — _POSIX_THREADS



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

— _POSIX_TIMEOUTS

— _POSIX_TIMERS

— _POSIX_TRACE

— _POSIX_TRACE_EVENT_FILTER

— _POSIX_TRACE_INHERIT

— _POSIX_TRACE_LOG

— _POSIX_TYPED_MEMORY_OBJECTS

If any of the symbolic constants _POSIX_TRACE_EVENT_FILTER, _POSIX_TRACE_LOG, or _POSIX_TRACE_INHERIT is defined to have a value other than –1, then the symbolic constant _POSIX_TRACE shall also be defined to have a value other than –1.

XSI • The system may support the XSI extensions (see Section 2.1.5.2 (on page 24)) denoted by the following symbolic constants:

— _XOPEN_CRYPT

— _XOPEN_LEGACY

— _XOPEN_REALTIME

— _XOPEN_REALTIME_THREADS

— _XOPEN_UNIX

### *2.1.3.2 POSIX Shell and Utilities*

- The system shall provide all the mandatory utilities in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 with all the functional behavior described therein.
- The system shall support the Large File capabilities described in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.
- The system may support one or more options (see Section 2.1.6 (on page 28)) denoted by the following symbolic constants. (The literal names below apply to the *getconf* utility.)

— POSIX2_C_DEV

— POSIX2_CHAR_TERM

— POSIX2_FORT_DEV

— POSIX2_FORT_RUN

— POSIX2_LOCALEDEF

— POSIX2_PBS

— POSIX2_PBS_ACCOUNTING

— POSIX2_PBS_LOCATE

— POSIX2_PBS_MESSAGE

— POSIX2_PBS_TRACK

— POSIX2_SW_DEV

— POSIX2_UPE

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

- The system may support the XSI extensions (see Section 2.1.4).

Additional language bindings and development utility options may be provided in other related standards or in a future version of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. In the former case, additional symbolic constants of the same general form as shown in this subsection should be defined by the related standard document and made available to the application without requiring IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 to be updated.

### 2.1.4 XSI Conformance

XSI This section describes the criteria for implementations conforming to the XSI extension (see Section 3.439 (on page 96)). This functionality is dependent on the support of the XSI extension (and the rest of this section is not further shaded).

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 describes utilities, functions, and facilities offered to application programs by the X/Open System Interface (XSI). An XSI-conforming implementation shall meet the criteria for POSIX conformance and the following requirements.

#### *2.1.4.1 XSI System Interfaces*

- The system shall support all the functions and headers defined in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 as part of the XSI extension denoted by the symbolic constant _XOPEN_UNIX and any extensions marked with the XSI extension marking (see Section 1.5.1 (on page 6)).
- The system shall support the *mmap*( ), *munmap*( ), and *msync*( ) functions.
- The system shall support the following options defined within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 (see Section 2.1.6 (on page 28)):
  - — _POSIX_FSYNC
  - — _POSIX_MAPPED_FILES
  - — _POSIX_MEMORY_PROTECTION
  - — _POSIX_THREAD_ATTR_STACKADDR
  - — _POSIX_THREAD_ATTR_STACKSIZE
  - — _POSIX_THREAD_PROCESS_SHARED
  - — _POSIX_THREAD_SAFE_FUNCTIONS
  - — _POSIX_THREADS
- The system may support the following XSI Option Groups (see Section 2.1.5.2 (on page 24)) defined within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001:
  - — Encryption
  - — Realtime
  - — Advanced Realtime
  - — Realtime Threads
  - — Advanced Realtime Threads
  - — Tracing
  - — XSI STREAMS
  - — Legacy



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

#### 2.1.4.2 XSI Shell and Utilities Conformance

- The system shall support all the utilities defined in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 as part of the XSI extension denoted by the XSI marking in the SYNOPSIS section, and any extensions marked with the XSI extension marking (see Section 1.5.1 (on page 6)) within the text.
- The system shall support the User Portability Utilities option.
- The system shall support creation of locales (see Chapter 7 (on page 123)).
- The C-language Development utility *c99* shall be supported.
- The XSI Development Utilities option may be supported. It consists of the following software development utilities:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *admin* | *delta* | *prs* | *unget* |
| *cflow* | *get* | *rmdel* | *val* |
| *ctags* | *m4* | *sact* | *what* |
| *cxref* | *nm* | *sccs* | |

- Within the utilities that are provided, functionality marked by the code OF (see Section 1.5.1 (on page 6)) need not be provided.

## 2.1.5 Option Groups

An Option Group is a group of related functions or options defined within the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

If an implementation supports an Option Group, then the system shall support the functional behavior described herein.

If an implementation does not support an Option Group, then the system need not support the functional behavior described herein.

#### 2.1.5.1 Subprofiling Considerations

Profiling standards supporting functional requirements less than that required in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 may subset both mandatory and optional functionality required for POSIX Conformance (see Section 2.1.3 (on page 18)) or XSI Conformance (see Section 2.1.4 (on page 21)). Such profiles shall organize the subsets into Subprofiling Option Groups.

The Rationale (Informative) volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Appendix E, Subprofiling Considerations (Informative) describes a representative set of such Subprofiling Option Groups for use by profiles applicable to specialized realtime systems. IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 does not require that the presence of Subprofiling Option Groups be testable at compile-time (as symbols defined in any header) or at runtime (via *sysconf*( ) or *getconf*).

A Subprofiling Option Group may provide basic system functionality that other Subprofiling Option Groups and other options depend upon.[3] If a profile of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 does not

---

3. As an example, the File System profiling option group provides underlying support for pathname resolution and file creation which are needed by any interface in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 that parses a *path* argument. If a profile requires support for the Device Input and Output profiling option group but does not require support for the File System profiling option group, the profile must specify how pathname resolution is to behave in that profile, how the O_CREAT flag to *open*( ) is to be handled (and the use of the character `'a'` in the *mode* argument of *fopen*( ) when a filename argument names a file that does not exist), and specify lots of other details.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

require an implementation to provide a Subprofiling Option Group that provides features utilized by a required Subprofiling Option Group (or option),[4] the profile shall specify[5] all of the following:

- Restricted or altered behavior of interfaces defined in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 that may differ on an implementation of the profile
- Additional behaviors that may produce undefined or unspecified results
- Additional implementation-defined behavior that implementations shall be required to document in the profile's conformance document

if any of the above is a result of the profile not requiring an interface required by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

The following additional rules shall apply to all profiles of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001:

- Any application that conforms to that profile shall also conform to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 (that is, a profile shall not require restricted, altered, or extended behaviors of an implementation of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001).
- Profiles are permitted to add additional requirements to the limits defined in **<limits.h>** and **<stdint.h>**, subject to the following:

  For the limits in **<limits.h>** and **<stdint.h>**:

  — If the limit is specified as having a fixed value, it shall not be changed by a profile.

  — If a limit is specified as having a minimum or maximum acceptable value, it may be changed by a profile as follows:

    — A profile may increase a minimum acceptable value, but shall not make a minimum acceptable value smaller.

    — A profile may reduce a maximum acceptable value, but shall not make a maximum acceptable value larger.

- A profile shall not change a limit specified as having a minimum or maximum value into a limit specified as having a fixed value.
- A profile shall not create new limits.
- Any implementation that conforms to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 (including all options and extended limits required by the profile) shall also conform to that profile.

---

4. As an example, IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 requires that implementations claiming to support the Range Memory Locking option also support the Process Memory Locking option. A profile could require that the Range Memory Locking option had to be supplied without requiring that the Process Memory Locking option be supplied as long as the profile specifies everything an application writer or system implementor would have to know to build an application or implementation conforming to the profile.
5. Note that the profile could just specify that any use of the features not specified by the profile would produce undefined or unspecified results.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

873 *2.1.5.2 XSI Option Groups*

874 XSI This section describes Option Groups to support the definition of XSI conformance within the
875 System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. This functionality is dependent on the
876 support of the XSI extension (and the rest of this section is not further shaded).

877 The following Option Groups are defined.

878 **Encryption**

879 The Encryption Option Group is denoted by the symbolic constant _XOPEN_CRYPT. It includes
880 the following functions:

881 *crypt*( ), *encrypt*( ), *setkey*( )

882 These functions are marked CRYPT.

883 Due to export restrictions on the decoding algorithm in some countries, implementations may be
884 restricted in making these functions available. All the functions in the Encryption Option Group
885 may therefore return [ENOSYS] or, alternatively, *encrypt*( ) shall return [ENOSYS] for the
886 decryption operation.

887 An implementation that claims conformance to this Option Group shall set _XOPEN_CRYPT to
888 a value other than –1.

889 **Realtime**

890 The Realtime Option Group is denoted by the symbolic constant _XOPEN_REALTIME.

891 This Option Group includes a set of realtime functions drawn from options within
892 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 (see Section 2.1.6 (on page 28)).

893 Where entire functions are included in the Option Group, the NAME section is marked with
894 REALTIME. Where additional semantics have been added to existing pages, the new material is
895 identified by use of the appropriate margin legend for the underlying option defined within
896 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

897 An implementation that claims conformance to this Option Group shall set
898 _XOPEN_REALTIME to a value other than –1.

899 This Option Group consists of the set of the following options from within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001
900 (see Section 2.1.6 (on page 28)):

901 _POSIX_ASYNCHRONOUS_IO
902 _POSIX_FSYNC
903 _POSIX_MAPPED_FILES
904 _POSIX_MEMLOCK
905 _POSIX_MEMLOCK_RANGE
906 _POSIX_MEMORY_PROTECTION
907 _POSIX_MESSAGE_PASSING
908 _POSIX_PRIORITIZED_IO
909 _POSIX_PRIORITY_SCHEDULING
910 _POSIX_REALTIME_SIGNALS
911 _POSIX_SEMAPHORES
912 _POSIX_SHARED_MEMORY_OBJECTS
913 _POSIX_SYNCHRONIZED_IO
914 _POSIX_TIMERS

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

If the symbolic constant _XOPEN_REALTIME is defined to have a value other than –1, then the following symbolic constants shall be defined by the implementation to have the value 200112L:

_POSIX_ASYNCHRONOUS_IO
_POSIX_MEMLOCK
_POSIX_MEMLOCK_RANGE
_POSIX_MESSAGE_PASSING
_POSIX_PRIORITY_SCHEDULING
_POSIX_REALTIME_SIGNALS
_POSIX_SEMAPHORES
_POSIX_SHARED_MEMORY_OBJECTS
_POSIX_SYNCHRONIZED_IO
_POSIX_TIMERS

The functionality associated with _POSIX_MAPPED_FILES, _POSIX_MEMORY_PROTECTION, and _POSIX_FSYNC is always supported on XSI-conformant systems.

Support of _POSIX_PRIORITIZED_IO on XSI-conformant systems is optional. If this functionality is supported, then _POSIX_PRIORITIZED_IO shall be set to a value other than –1. Otherwise, it shall be undefined.

If _POSIX_PRIORITIZED_IO is supported, then asynchronous I/O operations performed by *aio_read*( ), *aio_write*( ), and *lio_listio*( ) shall be submitted at a priority equal to the scheduling priority of the process minus *aiocbp->aio_reqprio*. The implementation shall also document for which files I/O prioritization is supported.

**Advanced Realtime**

An implementation that claims conformance to this Option Group shall also support the Realtime Option Group.

Where entire functions are included in the Option Group, the NAME section is marked with ADVANCED REALTIME. Where additional semantics have been added to existing pages, the new material is identified by use of the appropriate margin legend for the underlying option defined within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

This Option Group consists of the set of the following options from within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 (see Section 2.1.6 (on page 28)):

_POSIX_ADVISORY_INFO
_POSIX_CLOCK_SELECTION
_POSIX_CPUTIME
_POSIX_MONOTONIC_CLOCK
_POSIX_SPAWN
_POSIX_SPORADIC_SERVER
_POSIX_TIMEOUTS
_POSIX_TYPED_MEMORY_OBJECTS

If the implementation supports the Advanced Realtime Option Group, then the following symbolic constants shall be defined by the implementation to have the value 200112L:



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

955 _POSIX_ADVISORY_INFO
956 _POSIX_CLOCK_SELECTION
957 _POSIX_CPUTIME
958 _POSIX_MONOTONIC_CLOCK
959 _POSIX_SPAWN
960 _POSIX_SPORADIC_SERVER
961 _POSIX_TIMEOUTS
962 _POSIX_TYPED_MEMORY_OBJECTS

963 If the symbolic constant _POSIX_SPORADIC_SERVER is defined, then the symbolic constant
964 _POSIX_PRIORITY_SCHEDULING shall also be defined by the implementation to have the
965 value 200112L.

966 If the symbolic constant _POSIX_CPUTIME is defined, then the symbolic constant
967 _POSIX_TIMERS shall also be defined by the implementation to have the value 200112L.

968 If the symbolic constant _POSIX_MONOTONIC_CLOCK is defined, then the symbolic constant
969 _POSIX_TIMERS shall also be defined by the implementation to have the value 200112L.

970 If the symbolic constant _POSIX_CLOCK_SELECTION is defined, then the symbolic constant
971 _POSIX_TIMERS shall also be defined by the implementation to have the value 200112L.

972 **Realtime Threads**

973 The Realtime Threads Option Group is denoted by the symbolic constant
974 _XOPEN_REALTIME_THREADS.

975 This Option Group consists of the set of the following options from within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001
976 (see Section 2.1.6 (on page 28)):

977 _POSIX_THREAD_PRIO_INHERIT
978 _POSIX_THREAD_PRIO_PROTECT
979 _POSIX_THREAD_PRIORITY_SCHEDULING

980 Where applicable, whole pages are marked REALTIME THREADS, together with the
981 appropriate option margin legend for the SYNOPSIS section (see Section 1.5.1 (on page 6)).

982 An implementation that claims conformance to this Option Group shall set
983 _XOPEN_REALTIME_THREADS to a value other than –1.

984 If the symbol _XOPEN_REALTIME_THREADS is defined to have a value other than –1, then the
985 following options shall also be defined by the implementation to have the value 200112L:

986 _POSIX_THREAD_PRIO_INHERIT
987 _POSIX_THREAD_PRIO_PROTECT
988 _POSIX_THREAD_PRIORITY_SCHEDULING

989 **Advanced Realtime Threads**

990 An implementation that claims conformance to this Option Group shall also support the
991 Realtime Threads Option Group.

992 Where entire functions are included in the Option Group, the NAME section is marked with
993 ADVANCED REALTIME THREADS. Where additional semantics have been added to existing
994 pages, the new material is identified by use of the appropriate margin legend for the underlying
995 option defined within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

996 This Option Group consists of the set of the following options from within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001
997 (see Section 2.1.6 (on page 28)):



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

998 _POSIX_BARRIERS
999 _POSIX_SPIN_LOCKS
1000 _POSIX_THREAD_CPUTIME
1001 _POSIX_THREAD_SPORADIC_SERVER

1002 If the symbolic constant _POSIX_THREAD_SPORADIC_SERVER is defined to have the value
1003 200112L, then the symbolic constant _POSIX_THREAD_PRIORITY_SCHEDULING shall also be
1004 defined by the implementation to have the value 200112L.

1005 If the symbolic constant _POSIX_THREAD_CPUTIME is defined to have the value 200112L,
1006 then the symbolic constant _POSIX_TIMERS shall also be defined by the implementation to have
1007 the value 200112L.

1008 If the symbolic constant _POSIX_BARRIERS is defined to have the value 200112L, then the
1009 symbolic constants _POSIX_THREADS and _POSIX_THREAD_SAFE_FUNCTIONS shall also
1010 be defined by the implementation to have the value 200112L.

1011 If the symbolic constant _POSIX_SPIN_LOCKS is defined to have the value 200112L, then the
1012 symbolic constants _POSIX_THREADS and _POSIX_THREAD_SAFE_FUNCTIONS shall also
1013 be defined by the implementation to have the value 200112L.

1014 If the implementation supports the Advanced Realtime Threads Option Group, then the
1015 following symbolic constants shall be defined by the implementation to have the value 200112L:

1016 _POSIX_BARRIERS
1017 _POSIX_SPIN_LOCKS
1018 _POSIX_THREAD_CPUTIME
1019 _POSIX_THREAD_SPORADIC_SERVER

1020 **Tracing**

1021 This Option Group includes a set of tracing functions drawn from options within
1022 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 (see Section 2.1.6 (on page 28)).

1023 Where entire functions are included in the Option Group, the NAME section is marked with
1024 TRACING. Where additional semantics have been added to existing pages, the new material is
1025 identified by use of the appropriate margin legend for the underlying option defined within
1026 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

1027 This Option Group consists of the set of the following options from within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001
1028 (see Section 2.1.6 (on page 28)):

1029 _POSIX_TRACE
1030 _POSIX_TRACE_EVENT_FILTER
1031 _POSIX_TRACE_LOG
1032 _POSIX_TRACE_INHERIT

1033 If the implementation supports the Tracing Option Group, then the following symbolic
1034 constants shall be defined by the implementation to have the value 200112L:

1035 _POSIX_TRACE
1036 _POSIX_TRACE_EVENT_FILTER
1037 _POSIX_TRACE_LOG
1038 _POSIX_TRACE_INHERIT



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

**XSI STREAMS**

The XSI STREAMS Option Group is denoted by the symbolic constant _XOPEN_STREAMS.

This Option Group includes functionality related to STREAMS, a uniform mechanism for implementing networking services and other character-based I/O as described in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.6, STREAMS.

It includes the following functions:

*fattach*( ), *fdetach*( ), *getmsg*( ), *getpmsg*( ), *ioctl*( ), *isastream*( ), *putmsg*( ), *putpmsg*( )

and the **<stropts.h>** header.

Where applicable, whole pages are marked STREAMS, together with the appropriate option margin legend for the SYNOPSIS section (see Section 1.5.1 (on page 6)). Where additional semantics have been added to existing pages, the new material is identified by use of the appropriate margin legend for the underlying option defined within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

An implementation that claims conformance to this Option Group shall set _XOPEN_STREAMS to a value other than –1.

**Legacy**

The Legacy Option Group is denoted by the symbolic constant _XOPEN_LEGACY.

The Legacy Option Group includes the functions and headers which were mandatory in previous versions of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 but are optional in this version.

These functions and headers are retained in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 because of their widespread use. Application writers should not rely on the existence of these functions or headers in new applications, but should follow the migration path detailed in the APPLICATION USAGE sections of the relevant pages.

Various factors may have contributed to the decision to mark a function or header LEGACY. In all cases, the specific reasons for the withdrawal of a function or header are documented on the relevant pages.

Once a function or header is marked LEGACY, no modifications are made to the specifications of such functions or headers other than to the APPLICATION USAGE sections of the relevant pages.

The functions and headers which form this Option Group are as follows:

*bcmp*( ), *bcopy*( ), *bzero*( ), *ecvt*( ), *fcvt*( ), *ftime*( ), *gcvt*( ), *getwd*( ), *index*( ), *mktemp*( ), *rindex*( ), *utimes*( ), *wcswcs*( )

An implementation that claims conformance to this Option Group shall set _XOPEN_LEGACY to a value other than –1.

### 2.1.6 Options

The symbolic constants defined in **<unistd.h>**, **Constants for Options and Option Groups** (on page 400) reflect implementation options for IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. These symbols can be used by the application to determine which optional facilities are present on the implementation. The *sysconf*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 or the *getconf* utility defined in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 can be used to retrieve the value of each symbol on each specific implementation to determine whether the option is supported.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Where an option is not supported, the associated utilities, functions, or facilities need not be present.

Margin codes are defined for each option (see Section 1.5.1 (on page 6)).

#### 2.1.6.1 *System Interfaces*

Refer to **<unistd.h>**, **Constants for Options and Option Groups** (on page 400) for the list of options.

#### 2.1.6.2 *Shell and Utilities*

Each of these symbols shall be considered valid names by the implementation. Refer to **<unistd.h>**, **Constants for Options and Option Groups** (on page 400).

The literal names shown below apply only to the *getconf* utility.

CD POSIX2_C_DEV

The system supports the C-Language Development Utilities option.

The utilities in the C-Language Development Utilities option are used for the development of C-language applications, including compilation or translation of C source code and complex program generators for simple lexical tasks and processing of context-free grammars.

The utilities listed below may be provided by a conforming system; however, any system claiming conformance to the C-Language Development Utilities option shall provide all of the utilities listed.

*c99*
*lex*
*yacc*

POSIX2_CHAR_TERM

The system supports the Terminal Characteristics option. This value need not be present on a system not supporting the User Portability Utilities option.

Where applicable, the dependency is noted within the description of the utility.

This option applies only to systems supporting the User Portability Utilities option. If supported, then the system supports at least one terminal type capable of all operations described in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001; see Section 10.2 (on page 185).

FD POSIX2_FORT_DEV

The system supports the FORTRAN Development Utilities option.

The *fort77* FORTRAN compiler is the only utility in the FORTRAN Development Utilities option. This is used for the development of FORTRAN language applications, including compilation or translation of FORTRAN source code.

The *fort77* utility may be provided by a conforming system; however, any system claiming conformance to the FORTRAN Development Utilities option shall provide the *fort77* utility.

FR POSIX2_FORT_RUN

The system supports the FORTRAN Runtime Utilities option.

The *asa* utility is the only utility in the FORTRAN Runtime Utilities option.

The *asa* utility may be provided by a conforming system; however, any system claiming conformance to the FORTRAN Runtime Utilities option shall provide the *asa* utility.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

POSIX2_LOCALEDEF

The system supports the Locale Creation Utilities option.

If supported, the system supports the creation of locales as described in the *localedef* utility.

The *localedef* utility may be provided by a conforming system; however, any system claiming conformance to the Locale Creation Utilities option shall provide the *localedef* utility.

BE POSIX2_PBS

The system supports the Batch Environment Services and Utilities option (see the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Chapter 3, Batch Environment Services).

**Note:** The Batch Environment Services and Utilities option is a combination of mandatory and optional batch services and utilities. The POSIX_PBS symbolic constant implies the system supports all the mandatory batch services and utilities.

POSIX2_PBS_ACCOUNTING

The system supports the Batch Accounting option.

POSIX2_PBS_CHECKPOINT

The system supports the Batch Checkpoint/Restart option.

POSIX2_PBS_LOCATE

The system supports the Locate Batch Job Request option.

POSIX2_PBS_MESSAGE

The system supports the Batch Job Message Request option.

POSIX2_PBS_TRACK

The system supports the Track Batch Job Request option.

SD POSIX2_SW_DEV

The system supports the Software Development Utilities option.

The utilities in the Software Development Utilities option are used for the development of applications, including compilation or translation of source code, the creation and maintenance of library archives, and the maintenance of groups of inter-dependent programs.

The utilities listed below may be provided by the conforming system; however, any system claiming conformance to the Software Development Utilities option shall provide all of the utilities listed here.

*ar*
*make*
*nm*
*strip*

UP POSIX2_UPE

The system supports the User Portability Utilities option.

The utilities in the User Portability Utilities option shall be implemented on all systems that claim conformance to this option. Certain utilities are noted as having features that cannot be implemented on all terminal types; if the POSIX2_CHAR_TERM option is supported, the system shall support all such features on at least one terminal type; see Section 10.2 (on page 185).

Some of the utilities are required only on systems that also support the Software Development Utilities option, or the character-at-a-time terminal option (see Section 10.2 (on page 185)); such utilities have this noted in their DESCRIPTION sections. All of the

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

other utilities listed are required only on systems that claim conformance to the User Portability Utilities option.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *alias* | *expand* | *nm* | *unalias* |
| *at* | *fc* | *patch* | *unexpand* |
| *batch* | *fg* | *ps* | *uudecode* |
| *bg* | *file* | *renice* | *uuencode* |
| *crontab* | *jobs* | *split* | *vi* |
| *split* | *man* | *strings* | *who* |
| *ctags* | *mesg* | *tabs* | *write* |
| *df* | *more* | *talk* | |
| *du* | *newgrp* | *time* | |
| *ex* | *nice* | *tput* | |

## 2.2 Application Conformance

All applications claiming conformance to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 shall use only language-dependent services for the C programming language described in Section 2.3 (on page 33), shall use only the utilities and facilities defined in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, and shall fall within one of the following categories.

### 2.2.1 Strictly Conforming POSIX Application

A Strictly Conforming POSIX Application is an application that requires only the facilities described in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. Such an application:

1. Shall accept any implementation behavior that results from actions it takes in areas described in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 as *implementation-defined* or *unspecified*, or where IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 indicates that implementations may vary
2. Shall not perform any actions that are described as producing *undefined* results
3. For symbolic constants, shall accept any value in the range permitted by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, but shall not rely on any value in the range being greater than the minimums listed or being less than the maximums listed in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001
4. Shall not use facilities designated as *obsolescent*
5. Is required to tolerate and permitted to adapt to the presence or absence of optional facilities whose availability is indicated by Section 2.1.3 (on page 18)
6. For the C programming language, shall not produce any output dependent on any behavior described in the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard as *unspecified*, *undefined*, or *implementation-defined*, unless the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 specifies the behavior
7. For the C programming language, shall not exceed any minimum implementation limit defined in the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard, unless the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 specifies a higher minimum implementation limit
8. For the C programming language, shall define _POSIX_C_SOURCE to be 200112L before any header is included

Within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, any restrictions placed upon a Conforming POSIX Application shall restrict a Strictly Conforming POSIX Application.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

### 2.2.2 Conforming POSIX Application

#### *2.2.2.1 ISO/IEC Conforming POSIX Application*

An ISO/IEC Conforming POSIX Application is an application that uses only the facilities described in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 and approved Conforming Language bindings for any ISO or IEC standard. Such an application shall include a statement of conformance that documents all options and limit dependencies, and all other ISO or IEC standards used.

#### *2.2.2.2 <National Body> Conforming POSIX Application*

A <National Body> Conforming POSIX Application differs from an ISO/IEC Conforming POSIX Application in that it also may use specific standards of a single ISO/IEC member body referred to here as *<National Body>*. Such an application shall include a statement of conformance that documents all options and limit dependencies, and all other <National Body> standards used.

### 2.2.3 Conforming POSIX Application Using Extensions

A Conforming POSIX Application Using Extensions is an application that differs from a Conforming POSIX Application only in that it uses non-standard facilities that are consistent with IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. Such an application shall fully document its requirements for these extended facilities, in addition to the documentation required of a Conforming POSIX Application. A Conforming POSIX Application Using Extensions shall be either an ISO/IEC Conforming POSIX Application Using Extensions or a <National Body> Conforming POSIX Application Using Extensions (see Section 2.2.2.1 and Section 2.2.2.2).

### 2.2.4 Strictly Conforming XSI Application

A Strictly Conforming XSI Application is an application that requires only the facilities described in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. Such an application:

1. Shall accept any implementation behavior that results from actions it takes in areas described in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 as *implementation-defined* or *unspecified*, or where IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 indicates that implementations may vary
2. Shall not perform any actions that are described as producing *undefined* results
3. For symbolic constants, shall accept any value in the range permitted by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, but shall not rely on any value in the range being greater than the minimums listed or being less than the maximums listed in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001
4. Shall not use facilities designated as *obsolescent*
5. Is required to tolerate and permitted to adapt to the presence or absence of optional facilities whose availability is indicated by Section 2.1.4 (on page 21)
6. For the C programming language, shall not produce any output dependent on any behavior described in the ISO C standard as *unspecified*, *undefined*, or *implementation-defined*, unless the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 specifies the behavior
7. For the C programming language, shall not exceed any minimum implementation limit defined in the ISO C standard, unless the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 specifies a higher minimum implementation limit
8. For the C programming language, shall define _XOPEN_SOURCE to be 600 before any header is included

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, any restrictions placed upon a Conforming POSIX Application shall restrict a Strictly Conforming XSI Application.

### 2.2.5 Conforming XSI Application Using Extensions

A Conforming XSI Application Using Extensions is an application that differs from a Strictly Conforming XSI Application only in that it uses non-standard facilities that are consistent with IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. Such an application shall fully document its requirements for these extended facilities, in addition to the documentation required of a Strictly Conforming XSI Application.

## 2.3 Language-Dependent Services for the C Programming Language

Implementors seeking to claim conformance using the ISO C standard shall claim POSIX conformance as described in Section 2.1.3 (on page 18).

## 2.4 Other Language-Related Specifications

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 is currently specified in terms of the shell command language and ISO C. Bindings to other programming languages are being developed.

If conformance to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 is claimed for implementation of any programming language, the implementation of that language shall support the use of external symbols distinct to at least 31 bytes in length in the source program text. (That is, identifiers that differ at or before the thirty-first byte shall be distinct.) If a national or international standard governing a language defines a maximum length that is less than this value, the language-defined maximum shall be supported. External symbols that differ only by case shall be distinct when the character set in use distinguishes uppercase and lowercase characters and the language permits (or requires) uppercase and lowercase characters to be distinct in external symbols.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

1270

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Chapter 3

# Definitions

For the purposes of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, the terms and definitions given in Chapter 3 apply.

**Note:** No shading to denote extensions or options occurs in this chapter. Where the terms and definitions given in this chapter are used elsewhere in text related to extensions and options, they are shaded as appropriate.

## 3.1 Abortive Release

An abrupt termination of a network connection that may result in the loss of data.

## 3.2 Absolute Pathname

A pathname beginning with a single or more than two slashes; see also Section 3.266 (on page 72).

**Note:** Pathname Resolution is defined in detail in Section 4.11 (on page 102).

## 3.3 Access Mode

A particular form of access permitted to a file.

## 3.4 Additional File Access Control Mechanism

An implementation-defined mechanism that is layered upon the access control mechanisms defined here, but which do not grant permissions beyond those defined herein, although they may further restrict them.

**Note:** File Access Permissions are defined in detail in Section 4.4 (on page 99).

## 3.5 Address Space

The memory locations that can be referenced by a process or the threads of a process.

## 3.6 Advisory Information

An interface that advises the implementation on (portable) application behavior so that it can optimize the system.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.7 Affirmative Response

An input string that matches one of the responses acceptable to the *LC_MESSAGES* category keyword **yesexpr**, matching an extended regular expression in the current locale.

**Note:** The *LC_MESSAGES* category is defined in detail in Section 7.3.6 (on page 152).

## 3.8 Alert

To cause the user's terminal to give some audible or visual indication that an error or some other event has occurred. When the standard output is directed to a terminal device, the method for alerting the terminal user is unspecified. When the standard output is not directed to a terminal device, the alert is accomplished by writing the <alert> to standard output (unless the utility description indicates that the use of standard output produces undefined results in this case).

## 3.9 Alert Character (<alert>)

A character that in the output stream should cause a terminal to alert its user via a visual or audible notification. It is the character designated by `'\a'` in the C language. It is unspecified whether this character is the exact sequence transmitted to an output device by the system to accomplish the alert function.

## 3.10 Alias Name

In the shell command language, a word consisting solely of underscores, digits, and alphabetics from the portable character set and any of the following characters: `'!'`, `'%'`, `','`, `'@'`.

Implementations may allow other characters within alias names as an extension.

**Note:** The Portable Character Set is defined in detail in Section 6.1 (on page 115).

## 3.11 Alignment

A requirement that objects of a particular type be located on storage boundaries with addresses that are particular multiples of a byte address.

**Note:** See also the ISO C standard, Section B3.

## 3.12 Alternate File Access Control Mechanism

An implementation-defined mechanism that is independent of the access control mechanisms defined herein, and which if enabled on a file may either restrict or extend the permissions of a given user. IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 defines when such mechanisms can be enabled and when they are disabled.

**Note:** File Access Permissions are defined in detail in Section 4.4 (on page 99).

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.13 Alternate Signal Stack

Memory associated with a thread, established upon request by the implementation for a thread, separate from the thread signal stack, in which signal handlers responding to signals sent to that thread may be executed.

## 3.14 Ancillary Data

Protocol-specific, local system-specific, or optional information. The information can be both local or end-to-end significant, header information, part of a data portion, protocol-specific, and implementation or system-specific.

## 3.15 Angle Brackets

The characters '<' (left-angle-bracket) and '>' (right-angle-bracket). When used in the phrase ''enclosed in angle brackets'', the symbol '<' immediately precedes the object to be enclosed, and '>' immediately follows it. When describing these characters in the portable character set, the names <less-than-sign> and <greater-than-sign> are used.

## 3.16 Application

A computer program that performs some desired function.

## 3.17 Application Address

Endpoint address of a specific application.

## 3.18 Application Program Interface (API)

The definition of syntax and semantics for providing computer system services.

## 3.19 Appropriate Privileges

An implementation-defined means of associating privileges with a process with regard to the function calls, function call options, and the commands that need special privileges. There may be zero or more such means. These means (or lack thereof) are described in the conformance document.

**Note:** Function calls are defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, and commands are defined in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.20 Argument

In the shell command language, a parameter passed to a utility as the equivalent of a single string in the *argv* array created by one of the *exec* functions. An argument is one of the options, option-arguments, or operands following the command name.

**Note:** The Utility Argument Syntax is defined in detail in Section 12.1 (on page 201) and the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.9.1.1, Command Search and Execution.

In the C language, an expression in a function call expression or a sequence of preprocessing tokens in a function-like macro invocation.

## 3.21 Arm (a Timer)

To start a timer measuring the passage of time, enabling notifying a process when the specified time or time interval has passed.

## 3.22 Asterisk

The character '*'.

## 3.23 Async-Cancel-Safe Function

A function that may be safely invoked by an application while the asynchronous form of cancellation is enabled. No function is async-cancel-safe unless explicitly described as such.

## 3.24 Asynchronous Events

Events that occur independently of the execution of the application.

## 3.25 Asynchronous Input and Output

A functionality enhancement to allow an application process to queue data input and output commands with asynchronous notification of completion.

## 3.26 Async-Signal-Safe Function

A function that may be invoked, without restriction, from signal-catching functions. No function is async-signal-safe unless explicitly described as such.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.27 Asynchronously-Generated Signal

A signal that is not attributable to a specific thread. Examples are signals sent via *kill*( ), signals sent from the keyboard, and signals delivered to process groups. Being asynchronous is a property of how the signal was generated and not a property of the signal number. All signals may be generated asynchronously.

**Note:** The *kill*( ) function is defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.28 Asynchronous I/O Completion

For an asynchronous read or write operation, when a corresponding synchronous read or write would have completed and when any associated status fields have been updated.

## 3.29 Asynchronous I/O Operation

An I/O operation that does not of itself cause the thread requesting the I/O to be blocked from further use of the processor.

This implies that the process and the I/O operation may be running concurrently.

## 3.30 Authentication

The process of validating a user or process to verify that the user or process is not a counterfeit.

## 3.31 Authorization

The process of verifying that a user or process has permission to use a resource in the manner requested.

To ensure security, the user or process would also need to be authenticated before granting access.

## 3.32 Background Job

See *Background Process Group* in Section 3.34.

## 3.33 Background Process

A process that is a member of a background process group.

## 3.34 Background Process Group (or Background Job)

Any process group, other than a foreground process group, that is a member of a session that has established a connection with a controlling terminal.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.35 Backquote

The character '`', also known as a grave accent.

## 3.36 Backslash

The character '\', also known as a reverse solidus.

## 3.37 Backspace Character (<backspace>)

A character that, in the output stream, should cause printing (or displaying) to occur one column position previous to the position about to be printed. If the position about to be printed is at the beginning of the current line, the behavior is unspecified. It is the character designated by '\b' in the C language. It is unspecified whether this character is the exact sequence transmitted to an output device by the system to accomplish the backspace function. The <backspace> defined here is not necessarily the ERASE special character.

**Note:** Special Characters are defined in detail in Section 11.1.9 (on page 191).

## 3.38 Barrier

A synchronization object that allows multiple threads to synchronize at a particular point in their execution.

## 3.39 Base Character

One of the set of characters defined in the Latin alphabet. In Western European languages other than English, these characters are commonly used with diacritical marks (accents, cedilla, and so on) to extend the range of characters in an alphabet.

## 3.40 Basename

The final, or only, filename in a pathname.

## 3.41 Basic Regular Expression (BRE)

A regular expression (see Section 3.316 (on page 79)) used by the majority of utilities that select strings from a set of character strings.

**Note:** Basic Regular Expressions are described in detail in Section 9.3 (on page 171).

## 3.42 Batch Access List

A list of user IDs and group IDs of those users and groups authorized to place batch jobs in a batch queue.

A batch access list is associated with a batch queue. A batch server uses the batch access list of a batch queue as one of the criteria in deciding to put a batch job in a batch queue.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.43 Batch Administrator

A user that is authorized to modify all the attributes of queues and jobs and to change the status of a batch server.

## 3.44 Batch Client

A computational entity that utilizes batch services by making requests of batch servers.

Batch clients often provide the means by which users access batch services, although a batch server may act as a batch client by virtue of making requests of another batch server.

## 3.45 Batch Destination

The batch server in a batch system to which a batch job should be sent for processing.

Acceptance of a batch job at a batch destination is the responsibility of a receiving batch server. A batch destination may consist of a batch server-specific portion, a network-wide portion, or both. The batch server-specific portion is referred to as the ''batch queue''. The network-wide portion is referred to as a ''batch server name''.

## 3.46 Batch Destination Identifier

A string that identifies a specific batch destination.

A string of characters in the portable character set used to specify a particular batch destination.

**Note:** The Portable Character Set is defined in detail in Section 6.1 (on page 115).

## 3.47 Batch Directive

A line from a file that is interpreted by the batch server. The line is usually in the form of a comment and is an additional means of passing options to the *qsub* utility.

**Note:** The *qsub* utility is defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.48 Batch Job

A set of computational tasks for a computing system.

Batch jobs are managed by batch servers.

Once created, a batch job may be executing or pending execution. A batch job that is executing has an associated session leader (a process) that initiates and monitors the computational tasks of the batch job.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.49 Batch Job Attribute

A named data type whose value affects the processing of a batch job.

The values of the attributes of a batch job affect the processing of that job by the batch server that manages the batch job.

## 3.50 Batch Job Identifier

A unique name for a batch job. A name that is unique among all other batch job identifiers in a batch system and that identifies the batch server to which the batch job was originally submitted.

## 3.51 Batch Job Name

A label that is an attribute of a batch job. The batch job name is not necessarily unique.

## 3.52 Batch Job Owner

The *username@hostname* of the user submitting the batch job, where *username* is a user name (see also Section 3.426 (on page 94)) and *hostname* is a network host name.

## 3.53 Batch Job Priority

A value specified by the user that may be used by an implementation to determine the order in which batch jobs are selected to be executed. Job priority has a numeric value in the range –1 024 to 1 023.

**Note:** The batch job priority is not the execution priority (nice value) of the batch job.

## 3.54 Batch Job State

An attribute of a batch job which determines the types of requests that the batch server that manages the batch job can accept for the batch job. Valid states include QUEUED, RUNNING, HELD, WAITING, EXITING, and TRANSITING.

## 3.55 Batch Name Service

A service that assigns batch names that are unique within the batch name space, and that can translate a unique batch name into the location of the named batch entity.

## 3.56 Batch Name Space

The environment within which a batch name is known to be unique.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.57 Batch Node

A host containing part or all of a batch system.

A batch node is a host meeting at least one of the following conditions:

- Capable of executing a batch client
- Contains a routing batch queue
- Contains an execution batch queue

## 3.58 Batch Operator

A user that is authorized to modify some, but not all, of the attributes of jobs and queues, and may change the status of the batch server.

## 3.59 Batch Queue

A manageable object that represents a set of batch jobs and is managed by a single batch server.

**Note:** A set of batch jobs is called a batch queue largely for historical reasons. Jobs are selected from the batch queue for execution based on attributes such as priority, resource requirements, and hold conditions.

See also the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 3.1.2, Batch Queues.

## 3.60 Batch Queue Attribute

A named data type whose value affects the processing of all batch jobs that are members of the batch queue.

A batch queue has attributes that affect the processing of batch jobs that are members of the batch queue.

## 3.61 Batch Queue Position

The place, relative to other jobs in the batch queue, occupied by a particular job in a batch queue. This is defined in part by submission time and priority; see also Section 3.62.

## 3.62 Batch Queue Priority

The maximum job priority allowed for any batch job in a given batch queue.

The batch queue priority is set and may be changed by users with appropriate privilege. The priority is bounded in an implementation-defined manner.

## 3.63 Batch Rerunability

An attribute of a batch job indicating that it may be rerun after an abnormal termination from the beginning without affecting the validity of the results.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.64 Batch Restart

The action of resuming the processing of a batch job from the point of the last checkpoint. Typically, this is done if the batch job has been interrupted because of a system failure.

## 3.65 Batch Server

A computational entity that provides batch services.

## 3.66 Batch Server Name

A string of characters in the portable character set used to specify a particular server in a network.

**Note:** The Portable Character Set is defined in detail in Section 6.1 (on page 115).

## 3.67 Batch Service

Computational and organizational services performed by a batch system on behalf of batch jobs.

Batch services are of two types: requested and deferred.

**Note:** Batch Services are listed in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Table 3-5, Batch Services Summary.

## 3.68 Batch Service Request

A solicitation of services from a batch client to a batch server.

A batch service request may entail the exchange of any number of messages between the batch client and the batch server.

When naming specific types of service requests, the term ‘‘request’’ is qualified by the type of request, as in *Queue Batch Job Request* and *Delete Batch Job Request*.

## 3.69 Batch Submission

The process by which a batch client requests that a batch server create a batch job via a *Queue Job Request* to perform a specified computational task.

## 3.70 Batch System

A collection of one or more batch servers.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.71 Batch Target User

The name of a user on the batch destination batch server.

The target user is the user name under whose account the batch job is to execute on the destination batch server.

## 3.72 Batch User

A user who is authorized to make use of batch services.

## 3.73 Bind

The process of assigning a network address to an endpoint.

## 3.74 Blank Character (<blank>)

One of the characters that belong to the **blank** character class as defined via the *LC_CTYPE* category in the current locale. In the POSIX locale, a <blank> is either a <tab> or a <space>.

## 3.75 Blank Line

A line consisting solely of zero or more <blank>s terminated by a <newline>; see also Section 3.144 (on page 55).

## 3.76 Blocked Process (or Thread)

A process (or thread) that is waiting for some condition (other than the availability of a processor) to be satisfied before it can continue execution.

## 3.77 Blocking

A property of an open file description that causes function calls associated with it to wait for the requested action to be performed before returning.

## 3.78 Block-Mode Terminal

A terminal device operating in a mode incapable of the character-at-a-time input and output operations described by some of the standard utilities.

**Note:** Output Devices and Terminal Types are defined in detail in Section 10.2 (on page 185).



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.79 Block Special File

A file that refers to a device. A block special file is normally distinguished from a character special file by providing access to the device in a manner such that the hardware characteristics of the device are not visible.

## 3.80 Braces

The characters '{' (left brace) and '}' (right brace), also known as curly braces. When used in the phrase ''enclosed in (curly) braces'' the symbol '{' immediately precedes the object to be enclosed, and '}' immediately follows it. When describing these characters in the portable character set, the names <left-brace> and <right-brace> are used.

## 3.81 Brackets

The characters '[' (left-bracket) and ']' (right-bracket), also known as square brackets. When used in the phrase ''enclosed in (square) brackets'' the symbol '[' immediately precedes the object to be enclosed, and ']' immediately follows it. When describing these characters in the portable character set, the names <left-square-bracket> and <right-square-bracket> are used.

## 3.82 Broadcast

The transfer of data from one endpoint to several endpoints, as described in RFC 919 and RFC 922.

## 3.83 Built-In Utility (or Built-In)

A utility implemented within a shell. The utilities referred to as special built-ins have special qualities. Unless qualified, the term ''built-in'' includes the special built-in utilities. Regular built-ins are not required to be actually built into the shell on the implementation, but they do have special command-search qualities.

**Note:** Special Built-In Utilities are defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.14, Special Built-In Utilities.

Regular Built-In Utilities are defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.9.1.1, Command Search and Execution.

## 3.84 Byte

An individually addressable unit of data storage that is exactly an octet, used to store a character or a portion of a character; see also Section 3.87 (on page 47). A byte is composed of a contiguous sequence of 8 bits. The least significant bit is called the ''low-order'' bit; the most significant is called the ''high-order'' bit.

**Note:** The definition of byte from the ISO C standard is broader than the above and might accommodate hardware architectures with different sized addressable units than octets.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.85 Byte Input/Output Functions

The functions that perform byte-oriented input from streams or byte-oriented output to streams: *fgetc*( ), *fgets*( ), *fprintf*( ), *fputc*( ), *fputs*( ), *fread*( ), *fscanf*( ), *fwrite*( ), *getc*( ), *getchar*( ), *gets*( ), *printf*( ), *putc*( ), *putchar*( ), *puts*( ), *scanf*( ), *ungetc*( ), *vfprintf*( ), and *vprintf*( ).

**Note:** Functions are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.86 Carriage-Return Character (<carriage-return>)

A character that in the output stream indicates that printing should start at the beginning of the same physical line in which the <carriage-return> occurred. It is the character designated by `'\r'` in the C language. It is unspecified whether this character is the exact sequence transmitted to an output device by the system to accomplish the movement to the beginning of the line.

## 3.87 Character

A sequence of one or more bytes representing a single graphic symbol or control code.

**Note:** This term corresponds to the ISO C standard term multi-byte character, where a single-byte character is a special case of a multi-byte character. Unlike the usage in the ISO C standard, *character* here has no necessary relationship with storage space, and *byte* is used when storage space is discussed.

See the definition of the portable character set in Section 6.1 (on page 115) for a further explanation of the graphical representations of (abstract) characters, as opposed to character encodings.

## 3.88 Character Array

An array of elements of type **char**.

## 3.89 Character Class

A named set of characters sharing an attribute associated with the name of the class. The classes and the characters that they contain are dependent on the value of the *LC_CTYPE* category in the current locale.

**Note:** The *LC_CTYPE* category is defined in detail in Section 7.3.1 (on page 126).

## 3.90 Character Set

A finite set of different characters used for the representation, organization, or control of data.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.91 Character Special File

A file that refers to a device. One specific type of character special file is a terminal device file.

**Note:** The General Terminal Interface is defined in detail in Chapter 11 (on page 187).

## 3.92 Character String

A contiguous sequence of characters terminated by and including the first null byte.

## 3.93 Child Process

A new process created (by *fork*(), *posix_spawn*(), or *posix_spawnp*()) by a given process. A child process remains the child of the creating process as long as both processes continue to exist.

**Note:** The *fork*(), *posix_spawn*(), and *posix_spawnp*() functions are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.94 Circumflex

The character '^'.

## 3.95 Clock

A software or hardware object that can be used to measure the apparent or actual passage of time.

The current value of the time measured by a clock can be queried and, possibly, set to a value within the legal range of the clock.

## 3.96 Clock Jump

The difference between two successive distinct values of a clock, as observed from the application via one of the ''get time'' operations.

## 3.97 Clock Tick

An interval of time; an implementation-defined number of these occur each second. Clock ticks are one of the units that may be used to express a value found in type **clock_t**.

## 3.98 Coded Character Set

A set of unambiguous rules that establishes a character set and the one-to-one relationship between each character of the set and its bit representation.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.99 Codeset

The result of applying rules that map a numeric code value to each element of a character set. An element of a character set may be related to more than one numeric code value but the reverse is not true. However, for state-dependent encodings the relationship between numeric code values and elements of a character set may be further controlled by state information. The character set may contain fewer elements than the total number of possible numeric code values; that is, some code values may be unassigned.

**Note:** Character Encoding is defined in detail in Section 6.2 (on page 118).

## 3.100 Collating Element

The smallest entity used to determine the logical ordering of character or wide-character strings; see also Section 3.102. A collating element consists of either a single character, or two or more characters collating as a single entity. The value of the *LC_COLLATE* category in the current locale determines the current set of collating elements.

## 3.101 Collation

The logical ordering of character or wide-character strings according to defined precedence rules. These rules identify a collation sequence between the collating elements, and such additional rules that can be used to order strings consisting of multiple collating elements.

## 3.102 Collation Sequence

The relative order of collating elements as determined by the setting of the *LC_COLLATE* category in the current locale. The collation sequence is used for sorting and is determined from the collating weights assigned to each collating element. In the absence of weights, the collation sequence is the order in which collating elements are specified between **order_start** and **order_end** keywords in the *LC_COLLATE* category.

Multi-level sorting is accomplished by assigning elements one or more collation weights, up to the limit {COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX}. On each level, elements may be given the same weight (at the primary level, called an equivalence class; see also Section 3.150 (on page 55)) or be omitted from the sequence. Strings that collate equally using the first assigned weight (primary ordering) are then compared using the next assigned weight (secondary ordering), and so on.

**Note:** {COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX} is defined in detail in **<limits.h>**.

## 3.103 Column Position

A unit of horizontal measure related to characters in a line.

It is assumed that each character in a character set has an intrinsic column width independent of any output device. Each printable character in the portable character set has a column width of one. The standard utilities, when used as described in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, assume that all characters have integral column widths. The column width of a character is not necessarily related to the internal representation of the character (numbers of bits or bytes).

The column position of a character in a line is defined as one plus the sum of the column widths of the preceding characters in the line. Column positions are numbered starting from 1.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.104 Command

A directive to the shell to perform a particular task.

**Note:** Shell Commands are defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.9, Shell Commands.

## 3.105 Command Language Interpreter

An interface that interprets sequences of text input as commands. It may operate on an input stream or it may interactively prompt and read commands from a terminal. It is possible for applications to invoke utilities through a number of interfaces, which are collectively considered to act as command interpreters. The most obvious of these are the *sh* utility and the *system*( ) function, although *popen*( ) and the various forms of *exec* may also be considered to behave as interpreters.

**Note:** The *sh* utility is defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

The *system*( ), *popen*( ), and *exec* functions are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.106 Composite Graphic Symbol

A graphic symbol consisting of a combination of two or more other graphic symbols in a single character position, such as a diacritical mark and a base character.

## 3.107 Condition Variable

A synchronization object which allows a thread to suspend execution, repeatedly, until some associated predicate becomes true. A thread whose execution is suspended on a condition variable is said to be blocked on the condition variable.

## 3.108 Connection

An association established between two or more endpoints for the transfer of data

## 3.109 Connection Mode

The transfer of data in the context of a connection; see also Section 3.110.

## 3.110 Connectionless Mode

The transfer of data other than in the context of a connection; see also Section 3.109 and Section 3.123 (on page 52).

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.111 Control Character

A character, other than a graphic character, that affects the recording, processing, transmission, or interpretation of text.

## 3.112 Control Operator

In the shell command language, a token that performs a control function. It is one of the following symbols:

```
&    &&    (    )    ;    ;;    newline    |    ||
```

The end-of-input indicator used internally by the shell is also considered a control operator.

**Note:** Token Recognition is defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.3, Token Recognition.

## 3.113 Controlling Process

The session leader that established the connection to the controlling terminal. If the terminal subsequently ceases to be a controlling terminal for this session, the session leader ceases to be the controlling process.

## 3.114 Controlling Terminal

A terminal that is associated with a session. Each session may have at most one controlling terminal associated with it, and a controlling terminal is associated with exactly one session. Certain input sequences from the controlling terminal cause signals to be sent to all processes in the process group associated with the controlling terminal.

**Note:** The General Terminal Interface is defined in detail in Chapter 11 (on page 187).

## 3.115 Conversion Descriptor

A per-process unique value used to identify an open codeset conversion.

## 3.116 Core File

A file of unspecified format that may be generated when a process terminates abnormally.

## 3.117 CPU Time (Execution Time)

The time spent executing a process or thread, including the time spent executing system services on behalf of that process or thread. If the Threads option is supported, then the value of the CPU-time clock for a process is implementation-defined. With this definition the sum of all the execution times of all the threads in a process might not equal the process execution time, even in a single-threaded process, because implementations may differ in how they account for time during context switches or for other reasons.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.118 CPU-Time Clock

A clock that measures the execution time of a particular process or thread.

## 3.119 CPU-Time Timer

A timer attached to a CPU-time clock.

## 3.120 Current Job

In the context of job control, the job that will be used as the default for the *fg* or *bg* utilities. There is at most one current job; see also Section 3.203 (on page 63).

## 3.121 Current Working Directory

See *Working Directory* in Section 3.436 (on page 96).

## 3.122 Cursor Position

The line and column position on the screen denoted by the terminal's cursor.

## 3.123 Datagram

A unit of data transferred from one endpoint to another in connectionless mode service.

## 3.124 Data Segment

Memory associated with a process, that can contain dynamically allocated data.

## 3.125 Deferred Batch Service

A service that is performed as a result of events that are asynchronous with respect to requests.

**Note:** Once a batch job has been created, it is subject to deferred services.

## 3.126 Device

A computer peripheral or an object that appears to the application as such.

## 3.127 Device ID

A non-negative integer used to identify a device.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.128 Directory

A file that contains directory entries. No two directory entries in the same directory have the same name.

## 3.129 Directory Entry (or Link)

An object that associates a filename with a file. Several directory entries can associate names with the same file.

## 3.130 Directory Stream

A sequence of all the directory entries in a particular directory. An open directory stream may be implemented using a file descriptor.

## 3.131 Disarm (a Timer)

To stop a timer from measuring the passage of time, disabling any future process notifications (until the timer is armed again).

## 3.132 Display

To output to the user's terminal. If the output is not directed to a terminal, the results are undefined.

## 3.133 Display Line

A line of text on a physical device or an emulation thereof. Such a line will have a maximum number of characters which can be presented.

**Note:** This may also be written as ''line on the display''.

## 3.134 Dollar Sign

The character '$'.

## 3.135 Dot

In the context of naming files, the filename consisting of a single dot character ('.').

**Note:** In the context of shell special built-in utilities, see *dot* in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.14, Special Built-In Utilities.

Pathname Resolution is defined in detail in Section 4.11 (on page 102).



--`,,,`--`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.136 Dot-Dot

The filename consisting solely of two dot characters ("..").

**Note:** Pathname Resolution is defined in detail in Section 4.11 (on page 102).

## 3.137 Double-Quote

The character '"', also known as quotation-mark.

**Note:** The ''double'' adjective in this term refers to the two strokes in the character glyph. IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 never uses the term ''double-quote'' to refer to two apostrophes or quotation marks.

## 3.138 Downshifting

The conversion of an uppercase character that has a single-character lowercase representation into this lowercase representation.

## 3.139 Driver

A module that controls data transferred to and received from devices.

**Note:** Drivers are traditionally written to be a part of the system implementation, although they are frequently written separately from the writing of the implementation. A driver may contain processor-specific code, and therefore be non-portable.

## 3.140 Effective Group ID

An attribute of a process that is used in determining various permissions, including file access permissions; see also Section 3.188 (on page 61).

## 3.141 Effective User ID

An attribute of a process that is used in determining various permissions, including file access permissions; see also Section 3.425 (on page 94).

## 3.142 Eight-Bit Transparency

The ability of a software component to process 8-bit characters without modifying or utilizing any part of the character in a way that is inconsistent with the rules of the current coded character set.

## 3.143 Empty Directory

A directory that contains, at most, directory entries for dot and dot-dot, and has exactly one link to it, in dot-dot. No other links to the directory may exist. It is unspecified whether an implementation can ever consider the root directory to be empty.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.144 Empty Line

A line consisting of only a <newline>; see also Section 3.75 (on page 45).

## 3.145 Empty String (or Null String)

A string whose first byte is a null byte.

## 3.146 Empty Wide-Character String

A wide-character string whose first element is a null wide-character code.

## 3.147 Encoding Rule

The rules used to convert between wide-character codes and multi-byte character codes.

**Note:** Stream Orientation and Encoding Rules are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.5.2, Stream Orientation and Encoding Rules.

## 3.148 Entire Regular Expression

The concatenated set of one or more basic regular expressions or extended regular expressions that make up the pattern specified for string selection.

**Note:** Regular Expressions are defined in detail in Chapter 9 (on page 169).

## 3.149 Epoch

The time zero hours, zero minutes, zero seconds, on January 1, 1970 Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

**Note:** See also Seconds Since the Epoch defined in Section 4.14 (on page 104).

## 3.150 Equivalence Class

A set of collating elements with the same primary collation weight.

Elements in an equivalence class are typically elements that naturally group together, such as all accented letters based on the same base letter.

The collation order of elements within an equivalence class is determined by the weights assigned on any subsequent levels after the primary weight.

## 3.151 Era

A locale-specific method for counting and displaying years.

**Note:** The *LC_TIME* category is defined in detail in Section 7.3.5 (on page 147).



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.152 Event Management

The mechanism that enables applications to register for and be made aware of external events such as data becoming available for reading.

## 3.153 Executable File

A regular file acceptable as a new process image file by the equivalent of the *exec* family of functions, and thus usable as one form of a utility. The standard utilities described as compilers can produce executable files, but other unspecified methods of producing executable files may also be provided. The internal format of an executable file is unspecified, but a conforming application cannot assume an executable file is a text file.

## 3.154 Execute

To perform command search and execution actions, as defined in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001; see also Section 3.200 (on page 62).

**Note:** Command Search and Execution is defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.9.1.1, Command Search and Execution.

## 3.155 Execution Time

See *CPU Time* in Section 3.117 (on page 51).

## 3.156 Execution Time Monitoring

A set of execution time monitoring primitives that allow online measuring of thread and process execution times.

## 3.157 Expand

In the shell command language, when not qualified, the act of applying word expansions.

**Note:** Word Expansions are defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.6, Word Expansions.

## 3.158 Extended Regular Expression (ERE)

A regular expression (see also Section 3.316 (on page 79)) that is an alternative to the Basic Regular Expression using a more extensive syntax, occasionally used by some utilities.

**Note:** Extended Regular Expressions are described in detail in Section 9.4 (on page 175).

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.159 Extended Security Controls

Implementation-defined security controls allowed by the file access permission and appropriate privilege (see also Section 3.19 (on page 37)) mechanisms, through which an implementation can support different security policies from those described in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

**Note:** See also Extended Security Controls defined in Section 4.3 (on page 99).

File Access Permissions are defined in detail in Section 4.4 (on page 99).

## 3.160 Feature Test Macro

A macro used to determine whether a particular set of features is included from a header.

**Note:** See also the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment.

## 3.161 Field

In the shell command language, a unit of text that is the result of parameter expansion, arithmetic expansion, command substitution, or field splitting. During command processing, the resulting fields are used as the command name and its arguments.

**Note:** Parameter Expansion is defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.6.2, Parameter Expansion.

Arithmetic Expansion is defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.6.4, Arithmetic Expansion.

Command Substitution is defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.6.3, Command Substitution.

Field Splitting is defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.6.5, Field Splitting.

For further information on command processing, see the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.9.1, Simple Commands.

## 3.162 FIFO Special File (or FIFO)

A type of file with the property that data written to such a file is read on a first-in-first-out basis.

**Note:** Other characteristics of FIFOs are described in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *lseek*( ), *open*( ), *read*( ), and *write*( ).

## 3.163 File

An object that can be written to, or read from, or both. A file has certain attributes, including access permissions and type. File types include regular file, character special file, block special file, FIFO special file, symbolic link, socket, and directory. Other types of files may be supported by the implementation.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.164 File Description

See *Open File Description* in Section 3.253 (on page 70).

## 3.165 File Descriptor

A per-process unique, non-negative integer used to identify an open file for the purpose of file access. The value of a file descriptor is from zero to {OPEN_MAX}. A process can have no more than {OPEN_MAX} file descriptors open simultaneously. File descriptors may also be used to implement message catalog descriptors and directory streams; see also Section 3.253 (on page 70).

**Note:** {OPEN_MAX} is defined in detail in **<limits.h>**.

## 3.166 File Group Class

The property of a file indicating access permissions for a process related to the group identification of a process. A process is in the file group class of a file if the process is not in the file owner class and if the effective group ID or one of the supplementary group IDs of the process matches the group ID associated with the file. Other members of the class may be implementation-defined.

## 3.167 File Mode

An object containing the file mode bits and file type of a file.

**Note:** File mode bits and file types are defined in detail in **<sys/stat.h>**.

## 3.168 File Mode Bits

A file's file permission bits: set-user-ID-on-execution bit (S_ISUID), set-group-ID-on-execution bit (S_ISGID), and, on directories, the restricted deletion flag bit (S_ISVTX).

**Note:** File Mode Bits are defined in detail in **<sys/stat.h>**.

## 3.169 Filename

A name consisting of 1 to {NAME_MAX} bytes used to name a file. The characters composing the name may be selected from the set of all character values excluding the slash character and the null byte. The filenames dot and dot-dot have special meaning. A filename is sometimes referred to as a ''pathname component''.

**Note:** Pathname Resolution is defined in detail in Section 4.11 (on page 102).

## 3.170 Filename Portability

Filenames should be constructed from the portable filename character set because the use of other characters can be confusing or ambiguous in certain contexts. (For example, the use of a colon (':') in a pathname could cause ambiguity if that pathname were included in a *PATH* definition.)

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.171 File Offset

The byte position in the file where the next I/O operation begins. Each open file description associated with a regular file, block special file, or directory has a file offset. A character special file that does not refer to a terminal device may have a file offset. There is no file offset specified for a pipe or FIFO.

## 3.172 File Other Class

The property of a file indicating access permissions for a process related to the user and group identification of a process. A process is in the file other class of a file if the process is not in the file owner class or file group class.

## 3.173 File Owner Class

The property of a file indicating access permissions for a process related to the user identification of a process. A process is in the file owner class of a file if the effective user ID of the process matches the user ID of the file.

## 3.174 File Permission Bits

Information about a file that is used, along with other information, to determine whether a process has read, write, or execute/search permission to a file. The bits are divided into three parts: owner, group, and other. Each part is used with the corresponding file class of processes. These bits are contained in the file mode.

**Note:** File modes are defined in detail in **<sys/stat.h>**.

File Access Permissions are defined in detail in Section 4.4 (on page 99).

## 3.175 File Serial Number

A per-file system unique identifier for a file.

## 3.176 File System

A collection of files and certain of their attributes. It provides a name space for file serial numbers referring to those files.

## 3.177 File Type

See *File* in Section 3.163 (on page 57).



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.178 Filter

A command whose operation consists of reading data from standard input or a list of input files and writing data to standard output. Typically, its function is to perform some transformation on the data stream.

## 3.179 First Open (of a File)

When a process opens a file that is not currently an open file within any process.

## 3.180 Flow Control

The mechanism employed by a communications provider that constrains a sending entity to wait until the receiving entities can safely receive additional data without loss.

## 3.181 Foreground Job

See *Foreground Process Group* in Section 3.183.

## 3.182 Foreground Process

A process that is a member of a foreground process group.

## 3.183 Foreground Process Group (or Foreground Job)

A process group whose member processes have certain privileges, denied to processes in background process groups, when accessing their controlling terminal. Each session that has established a connection with a controlling terminal has at most one process group of the session as the foreground process group of that controlling terminal.

**Note:** The General Terminal Interface is defined in detail in Chapter 11.

## 3.184 Foreground Process Group ID

The process group ID of the foreground process group.

## 3.185 Form-Feed Character (<form-feed>)

A character that in the output stream indicates that printing should start on the next page of an output device. It is the character designated by '\f' in the C language. If the <form-feed> is not the first character of an output line, the result is unspecified. It is unspecified whether this character is the exact sequence transmitted to an output device by the system to accomplish the movement to the next page.

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.186 Graphic Character

A member of the **graph** character class of the current locale.

**Note:** The **graph** character class is defined in detail in Section 7.3.1 (on page 126).

## 3.187 Group Database

A system database of implementation-defined format that contains at least the following information for each group ID:

- Group name
- Numerical group ID
- List of users allowed in the group

The list of users allowed in the group is used by the *newgrp* utility.

**Note:** The *newgrp* utility is defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.188 Group ID

A non-negative integer, which can be contained in an object of type **gid_t**, that is used to identify a group of system users. Each system user is a member of at least one group. When the identity of a group is associated with a process, a group ID value is referred to as a real group ID, an effective group ID, one of the supplementary group IDs, or a saved set-group-ID.

## 3.189 Group Name

A string that is used to identify a group; see also Section 3.187. To be portable across conforming systems, the value is composed of characters from the portable filename character set. The hyphen should not be used as the first character of a portable group name.

## 3.190 Hard Limit

A system resource limitation that may be reset to a lesser or greater limit by a privileged process. A non-privileged process is restricted to only lowering its hard limit.

## 3.191 Hard Link

The relationship between two directory entries that represent the same file; see also Section 3.129 (on page 53). The result of an execution of the *ln* utility (without the **–s** option) or the *link*( ) function. This term is contrasted against symbolic link; see also Section 3.372 (on page 86).

## 3.192 Home Directory

The directory specified by the *HOME* environment variable.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.193 Host Byte Order

The arrangement of bytes in any integer type when using a specific machine architecture.

**Note:** Two common methods of byte ordering are big-endian and little-endian. Big-endian is a format for storage of binary data in which the most significant byte is placed first, with the rest in descending order. Little-endian is a format for storage or transmission of binary data in which the least significant byte is placed first, with the rest in ascending order. See also Section 4.8 (on page 101).

## 3.194 Incomplete Line

A sequence of one or more non-<newline>s at the end of the file.

## 3.195 Inf

A value representing +infinity or a value representing –infinity that can be stored in a floating type. Not all systems support the Inf values.

## 3.196 Instrumented Application

An application that contains at least one call to the trace point function *posix_trace_event*( ). Each process of an instrumented application has a mapping of trace event names to trace event type identifiers. This mapping is used by the trace stream that is created for that process.

## 3.197 Interactive Shell

A processing mode of the shell that is suitable for direct user interaction.

## 3.198 Internationalization

The provision within a computer program of the capability of making itself adaptable to the requirements of different native languages, local customs, and coded character sets.

## 3.199 Interprocess Communication

A functionality enhancement to add a high-performance, deterministic interprocess communication facility for local communication.

## 3.200 Invoke

To perform command search and execution actions, except that searching for shell functions and special built-in utilities is suppressed; see also Section 3.154 (on page 56).

**Note:** Command Search and Execution is defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.9.1.1, Command Search and Execution.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.201 Job

A set of processes, comprising a shell pipeline, and any processes descended from it, that are all in the same process group.

**Note:** See also the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.9.2, Pipelines.

## 3.202 Job Control

A facility that allows users selectively to stop (suspend) the execution of processes and continue (resume) their execution at a later point. The user typically employs this facility via the interactive interface jointly supplied by the terminal I/O driver and a command interpreter.

## 3.203 Job Control Job ID

A handle that is used to refer to a job. The job control job ID can be any of the forms shown in the following table:

**Table 3-1** Job Control Job ID Formats

| Job Control Job ID | Meaning |
|---|---|
| %% | Current job. |
| %+ | Current job. |
| %– | Previous job. |
| %*n* | Job number *n*. |
| %*string* | Job whose command begins with *string*. |
| %?*string* | Job whose command contains *string*. |

## 3.204 Last Close (of a File)

When a process closes a file, resulting in the file not being an open file within any process.

## 3.205 Line

A sequence of zero or more non-<newline>s plus a terminating <newline>.

## 3.206 Linger

A period of time before terminating a connection, to allow outstanding data to be transferred.

## 3.207 Link

See *Directory Entry* in Section 3.129 (on page 53).



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.208 Link Count

The number of directory entries that refer to a particular file.

## 3.209 Local Customs

The conventions of a geographical area or territory for such things as date, time, and currency formats.

## 3.210 Local Interprocess Communication (Local IPC)

The transfer of data between processes in the same system.

## 3.211 Locale

The definition of the subset of a user's environment that depends on language and cultural conventions.

**Note:** Locales are defined in detail in Chapter 7 (on page 123).

## 3.212 Localization

The process of establishing information within a computer system specific to the operation of particular native languages, local customs, and coded character sets.

## 3.213 Login

The unspecified activity by which a user gains access to the system. Each login is associated with exactly one login name.

## 3.214 Login Name

A user name that is associated with a login.

## 3.215 Map

To create an association between a page-aligned range of the address space of a process and some memory object, such that a reference to an address in that range of the address space results in a reference to the associated memory object. The mapped memory object is not necessarily memory-resident.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.216 Marked Message

A STREAMs message on which a certain flag is set. Marking a message gives the application protocol-specific information. An application can use *ioctl*( ) to determine whether a given message is marked.

**Note:** The *ioctl*( ) function is defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.217 Matched

A state applying to a sequence of zero or more characters when the characters in the sequence correspond to a sequence of characters defined by a basic regular expression or extended regular expression pattern.

**Note:** Regular Expressions are defined in detail in Chapter 9 (on page 169).

## 3.218 Memory Mapped Files

A facility to allow applications to access files as part of the address space.

## 3.219 Memory Object

One of:

- A file (see Section 3.163 (on page 57))
- A shared memory object (see Section 3.340 (on page 82))
- A typed memory object (see Section 3.418 (on page 93))

When used in conjunction with *mmap*( ), a memory object appears in the address space of the calling process.

**Note:** The *mmap*( ) function is defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.220 Memory-Resident

The process of managing the implementation in such a way as to provide an upper bound on memory access times.

## 3.221 Message

In the context of programmatic message passing, information that can be transferred between processes or threads by being added to and removed from a message queue. A message consists of a fixed-size message buffer.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.222 Message Catalog

In the context of providing natural language messages to the user, a file or storage area containing program messages, command prompts, and responses to prompts for a particular native language, territory, and codeset.

## 3.223 Message Catalog Descriptor

In the context of providing natural language messages to the user, a per-process unique value used to identify an open message catalog. A message catalog descriptor may be implemented using a file descriptor.

## 3.224 Message Queue

In the context of programmatic message passing, an object to which messages can be added and removed. Messages may be removed in the order in which they were added or in priority order.

## 3.225 Mode

A collection of attributes that specifies a file's type and its access permissions.

**Note:** File Access Permissions are defined in detail in Section 4.4 (on page 99).

## 3.226 Monotonic Clock

A clock whose value cannot be set via *clock_settime*( ) and which cannot have negative clock jumps.

## 3.227 Mount Point

Either the system root directory or a directory for which the *st_dev* field of structure **stat** differs from that of its parent directory.

**Note:** The **stat** structure is defined in detail in **<sys/stat.h>**.

## 3.228 Multi-Character Collating Element

A sequence of two or more characters that collate as an entity. For example, in some coded character sets, an accented character is represented by a non-spacing accent, followed by the letter. Other examples are the Spanish elements *ch* and *ll*.

## 3.229 Mutex

A synchronization object used to allow multiple threads to serialize their access to shared data. The name derives from the capability it provides; namely, mutual-exclusion. The thread that has locked a mutex becomes its owner and remains the owner until that same thread unlocks the mutex.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.230 Name

In the shell command language, a word consisting solely of underscores, digits, and alphabetics from the portable character set. The first character of a name is not a digit.

**Note:** The Portable Character Set is defined in detail in Section 6.1 (on page 115).

## 3.231 Named STREAM

A STREAMS-based file descriptor that is attached to a name in the file system name space. All subsequent operations on the named STREAM act on the STREAM that was associated with the file descriptor until the name is disassociated from the STREAM.

## 3.232 NaN (Not a Number)

A set of values that may be stored in a floating type but that are neither Inf nor valid floating-point numbers. Not all systems support NaN values.

## 3.233 Native Language

A computer user's spoken or written language, such as American English, British English, Danish, Dutch, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Norwegian, or Swedish.

## 3.234 Negative Response

An input string that matches one of the responses acceptable to the *LC_MESSAGES* category keyword **noexpr**, matching an extended regular expression in the current locale.

**Note:** The *LC_MESSAGES* category is defined in detail in Section 7.3.6 (on page 152).

## 3.235 Network

A collection of interconnected hosts.

**Note:** The term ''network'' in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 is used to refer to the network of hosts. The term ''batch system'' is used to refer to the network of batch servers.

## 3.236 Network Address

A network-visible identifier used to designate specific endpoints in a network. Specific endpoints on host systems have addresses, and host systems may also have addresses.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.237 Network Byte Order

The way of representing any integer type such that, when transmitted over a network via a network endpoint, the **int** type is transmitted as an appropriate number of octets with the most significant octet first, followed by any other octets in descending order of significance.

**Note:** This order is more commonly known as big-endian ordering. See also Section 4.8 (on page 101).

## 3.238 Newline Character (<newline>)

A character that in the output stream indicates that printing should start at the beginning of the next line. It is the character designated by '\n' in the C language. It is unspecified whether this character is the exact sequence transmitted to an output device by the system to accomplish the movement to the next line.

## 3.239 Nice Value

A number used as advice to the system to alter process scheduling. Numerically smaller values give a process additional preference when scheduling a process to run. Numerically larger values reduce the preference and make a process less likely to run. Typically, a process with a smaller nice value runs to completion more quickly than an equivalent process with a higher nice value. The symbol {NZERO} specifies the default nice value of the system.

## 3.240 Non-Blocking

A property of an open file description that causes function calls involving it to return without delay when it is detected that the requested action associated with the function call cannot be completed without unknown delay.

**Note:** The exact semantics are dependent on the type of file associated with the open file description. For data reads from devices such as ttys and FIFOs, this property causes the read to return immediately when no data was available. Similarly, for writes, it causes the call to return immediately when the thread would otherwise be delayed in the write operation; for example, because no space was available. For networking, it causes functions not to await protocol events (for example, acknowledgements) to occur. See also the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.10.7, Socket I/O Mode.

## 3.241 Non-Spacing Characters

A character, such as a character representing a diacritical mark in the ISO/IEC 6937:1994 standard coded character set, which is used in combination with other characters to form composite graphic symbols.

## 3.242 NUL

A character with all bits set to zero.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.243 Null Byte

A byte with all bits set to zero.

## 3.244 Null Pointer

The value that is obtained by converting the number 0 into a pointer; for example, (**void** *) 0. The C language guarantees that this value does not match that of any legitimate pointer, so it is used by many functions that return pointers to indicate an error.

## 3.245 Null String

See *Empty String* in Section 3.145 (on page 55).

## 3.246 Null Wide-Character Code

A wide-character code with all bits set to zero.

## 3.247 Number Sign

The character '#', also known as hash sign.

## 3.248 Object File

A regular file containing the output of a compiler, formatted as input to a linkage editor for linking with other object files into an executable form. The methods of linking are unspecified and may involve the dynamic linking of objects at runtime. The internal format of an object file is unspecified, but a conforming application cannot assume an object file is a text file.

## 3.249 Octet

Unit of data representation that consists of eight contiguous bits.

## 3.250 Offset Maximum

An attribute of an open file description representing the largest value that can be used as a file offset.

## 3.251 Opaque Address

An address such that the entity making use of it requires no details about its contents or format.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.252 Open File

A file that is currently associated with a file descriptor.

## 3.253 Open File Description

A record of how a process or group of processes is accessing a file. Each file descriptor refers to exactly one open file description, but an open file description can be referred to by more than one file descriptor. The file offset, file status, and file access modes are attributes of an open file description.

## 3.254 Operand

An argument to a command that is generally used as an object supplying information to a utility necessary to complete its processing. Operands generally follow the options in a command line.

**Note:** Utility Argument Syntax is defined in detail in Section 12.1 (on page 201).

## 3.255 Operator

In the shell command language, either a control operator or a redirection operator.

## 3.256 Option

An argument to a command that is generally used to specify changes in the utility's default behavior.

**Note:** Utility Argument Syntax is defined in detail in Section 12.1 (on page 201).

## 3.257 Option-Argument

A parameter that follows certain options. In some cases an option-argument is included within the same argument string as the option—in most cases it is the next argument.

**Note:** Utility Argument Syntax is defined in detail in Section 12.1 (on page 201).

## 3.258 Orientation

A stream has one of three orientations: unoriented, byte-oriented, or wide-oriented.

**Note:** For further information, see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.5.2, Stream Orientation and Encoding Rules.

## 3.259 Orphaned Process Group

A process group in which the parent of every member is either itself a member of the group or is not a member of the group's session.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.260 Page

The granularity of process memory mapping or locking.

Physical memory and memory objects can be mapped into the address space of a process on page boundaries and in integral multiples of pages. Process address space can be locked into memory (made memory-resident) on page boundaries and in integral multiples of pages.

## 3.261 Page Size

The size, in bytes, of the system unit of memory allocation, protection, and mapping. On systems that have segment rather than page-based memory architectures, the term ‘‘page’’ means a segment.

## 3.262 Parameter

In the shell command language, an entity that stores values. There are three types of parameters: variables (named parameters), positional parameters, and special parameters. Parameter expansion is accomplished by introducing a parameter with the `'$'` character.

**Note:** See also the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.5, Parameters and Variables.

In the C language, an object declared as part of a function declaration or definition that acquires a value on entry to the function, or an identifier following the macro name in a function-like macro definition.

## 3.263 Parent Directory

When discussing a given directory, the directory that both contains a directory entry for the given directory and is represented by the pathname dot-dot in the given directory.

When discussing other types of files, a directory containing a directory entry for the file under discussion.

This concept does not apply to dot and dot-dot.

## 3.264 Parent Process

The process which created (or inherited) the process under discussion.

## 3.265 Parent Process ID

An attribute of a new process identifying the parent of the process. The parent process ID of a process is the process ID of its creator, for the lifetime of the creator. After the creator’s lifetime has ended, the parent process ID is the process ID of an implementation-defined system process.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.266 Pathname

A character string that is used to identify a file. In the context of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, a pathname consists of, at most, {PATH_MAX} bytes, including the terminating null byte. It has an optional beginning slash, followed by zero or more filenames separated by slashes. A pathname may optionally contain one or more trailing slashes. Multiple successive slashes are considered to be the same as one slash.

**Note:** Pathname Resolution is defined in detail in Section 4.11 (on page 102).

## 3.267 Pathname Component

See *Filename* in Section 3.169 (on page 58).

## 3.268 Path Prefix

A pathname, with an optional ending slash, that refers to a directory.

## 3.269 Pattern

A sequence of characters used either with regular expression notation or for pathname expansion, as a means of selecting various character strings or pathnames, respectively.

**Note:** Regular Expressions are defined in detail in Chapter 9 (on page 169).

See also the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.6.6, Pathname Expansion.

The syntaxes of the two types of patterns are similar, but not identical; IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 always indicates the type of pattern being referred to in the immediate context of the use of the term.

## 3.270 Period

The character '.'. The term ''period'' is contrasted with dot (see also Section 3.135 (on page 53)), which is used to describe a specific directory entry.

## 3.271 Permissions

Attributes of an object that determine the privilege necessary to access or manipulate the object.

**Note:** File Access Permissions are defined in detail in Section 4.4 (on page 99).

## 3.272 Persistence

A mode for semaphores, shared memory, and message queues requiring that the object and its state (including data, if any) are preserved after the object is no longer referenced by any process.

Persistence of an object does not imply that the state of the object is maintained across a system crash or a system reboot.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.273 Pipe

An object accessed by one of the pair of file descriptors created by the *pipe*( ) function. Once created, the file descriptors can be used to manipulate it, and it behaves identically to a FIFO special file when accessed in this way. It has no name in the file hierarchy.

**Note:** The *pipe*( ) function is defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.274 Polling

A scheduling scheme whereby the local process periodically checks until the pre-specified events (for example, read, write) have occurred.

## 3.275 Portable Character Set

The collection of characters that are required to be present in all locales supported by conforming systems.

**Note:** The Portable Character Set is defined in detail in Section 6.1 (on page 115).

This term is contrasted against the smaller portable filename character set; see also Section 3.276.

## 3.276 Portable Filename Character Set

The set of characters from which portable filenames are constructed.

```
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 . _ -
```

The last three characters are the period, underscore, and hyphen characters, respectively.

## 3.277 Positional Parameter

In the shell command language, a parameter denoted by a single digit or one or more digits in curly braces.

**Note:** For further information, see the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.5.1, Positional Parameters.

## 3.278 Preallocation

The reservation of resources in a system for a particular use.

Preallocation does not imply that the resources are immediately allocated to that use, but merely indicates that they are guaranteed to be available in bounded time when needed.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.279 Preempted Process (or Thread)

A running thread whose execution is suspended due to another thread becoming runnable at a higher priority.

## 3.280 Previous Job

In the context of job control, the job that will be used as the default for the *fg* or *bg* utilities if the current job exits. There is at most one previous job; see also Section 3.203 (on page 63).

## 3.281 Printable Character

One of the characters included in the **print** character classification of the *LC_CTYPE* category in the current locale.

**Note:** The *LC_CTYPE* category is defined in detail in Section 7.3.1 (on page 126).

## 3.282 Printable File

A text file consisting only of the characters included in the **print** and **space** character classifications of the *LC_CTYPE* category and the <backspace>, all in the current locale.

**Note:** The *LC_CTYPE* category is defined in detail in Section 7.3.1 (on page 126).

## 3.283 Priority

A non-negative integer associated with processes or threads whose value is constrained to a range defined by the applicable scheduling policy. Numerically higher values represent higher priorities.

## 3.284 Priority Band

The queuing order applied to normal priority STREAMS messages. High priority STREAMS messages are not grouped by priority bands. The only differentiation made by the STREAMS mechanism is between zero and non-zero bands, but specific protocol modules may differentiate between priority bands.

## 3.285 Priority Inversion

A condition in which a thread that is not voluntarily suspended (waiting for an event or time delay) is not running while a lower priority thread is running. Such blocking of the higher priority thread is often caused by contention for a shared resource.

## 3.286 Priority Scheduling

A performance and determinism improvement facility to allow applications to determine the order in which threads that are ready to run are granted access to processor resources.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.287 Priority-Based Scheduling

Scheduling in which the selection of a running thread is determined by the priorities of the runnable processes or threads.

## 3.288 Privilege

See *Appropriate Privileges* in Section 3.19 (on page 37).

## 3.289 Process

An address space with one or more threads executing within that address space, and the required system resources for those threads.

**Note:** Many of the system resources defined by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 are shared among all of the threads within a process. These include the process ID, the parent process ID, process group ID, session membership, real, effective, and saved set-user-ID, real, effective, and saved set-group-ID, supplementary group IDs, current working directory, root directory, file mode creation mask, and file descriptors.

## 3.290 Process Group

A collection of processes that permits the signaling of related processes. Each process in the system is a member of a process group that is identified by a process group ID. A newly created process joins the process group of its creator.

## 3.291 Process Group ID

The unique positive integer identifier representing a process group during its lifetime.

**Note:** See also Process Group ID Reuse defined in Section 4.12 (on page 103).

## 3.292 Process Group Leader

A process whose process ID is the same as its process group ID.

## 3.293 Process Group Lifetime

A period of time that begins when a process group is created and ends when the last remaining process in the group leaves the group, due either to the end of the last process' lifetime or to the last remaining process calling the *setsid*( ) or *setpgid*( ) functions.

**Note:** The *setsid*( ) and *setpgid*( ) functions are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.294 Process ID

The unique positive integer identifier representing a process during its lifetime.

**Note:** See also Process ID Reuse defined in Section 4.12 (on page 103).

## 3.295 Process Lifetime

The period of time that begins when a process is created and ends when its process ID is returned to the system. After a process is created with a *fork*( ) function, it is considered active. At least one thread of control and address space exist until it terminates. It then enters an inactive state where certain resources may be returned to the system, although some resources, such as the process ID, are still in use. When another process executes a *wait*( ), *waitid*( ), or *waitpid*( ) function for an inactive process, the remaining resources are returned to the system. The last resource to be returned to the system is the process ID. At this time, the lifetime of the process ends.

**Note:** The *fork*( ), *wait*( ), *waitid*( ), and *waitpid*( ) functions are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.296 Process Memory Locking

A performance improvement facility to bind application programs into the high-performance random access memory of a computer system. This avoids potential latencies introduced by the operating system in storing parts of a program that were not recently referenced on secondary memory devices.

## 3.297 Process Termination

There are two kinds of process termination:

1. Normal termination occurs by a return from *main*( ) or when requested with the *exit*( ) or *_exit*( ) functions.
2. Abnormal termination occurs when requested by the *abort*( ) function or when some signals are received.

**Note:** The *_exit*( ), *abort*( ), and *exit*( ) functions are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.298 Process-To-Process Communication

The transfer of data between processes.

## 3.299 Process Virtual Time

The measurement of time in units elapsed by the system clock while a process is executing.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.300 Program

A prepared sequence of instructions to the system to accomplish a defined task. The term ''program'' in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 encompasses applications written in the Shell Command Language, complex utility input languages (for example, *awk*, *lex*, *sed*, and so on), and high-level languages.

## 3.301 Protocol

A set of semantic and syntactic rules for exchanging information.

## 3.302 Pseudo-Terminal

A facility that provides an interface that is identical to the terminal subsystem. A pseudo-terminal is composed of two devices: the ''master device'' and a ''slave device''. The slave device provides processes with an interface that is identical to the terminal interface, although there need not be hardware behind that interface. Anything written on the master device is presented to the slave as an input and anything written on the slave device is presented as an input on the master side.

## 3.303 Radix Character

The character that separates the integer part of a number from the fractional part.

## 3.304 Read-Only File System

A file system that has implementation-defined characteristics restricting modifications.

**Note:** File Times Update is described in detail in Section 4.7 (on page 100).

## 3.305 Read-Write Lock

Multiple readers, single writer (read-write) locks allow many threads to have simultaneous read-only access to data while allowing only one thread to have write access at any given time. They are typically used to protect data that is read-only more frequently than it is changed.

Read-write locks can be used to synchronize threads in the current process and other processes if they are allocated in memory that is writable and shared among the cooperating processes and have been initialized for this behavior.

## 3.306 Real Group ID

The attribute of a process that, at the time of process creation, identifies the group of the user who created the process; see also Section 3.188 (on page 61).



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.307 Real Time

Time measured as total units elapsed by the system clock without regard to which thread is executing.

## 3.308 Realtime Signal Extension

A determinism improvement facility to enable asynchronous signal notifications to an application to be queued without impacting compatibility with the existing signal functions.

## 3.309 Real User ID

The attribute of a process that, at the time of process creation, identifies the user who created the process; see also Section 3.425 (on page 94).

## 3.310 Record

A collection of related data units or words which is treated as a unit.

## 3.311 Redirection

In the shell command language, a method of associating files with the input or output of commands.

**Note:** For further information, see the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.7, Redirection.

## 3.312 Redirection Operator

In the shell command language, a token that performs a redirection function. It is one of the following symbols:

`<` `>` `>|` `<<` `>>` `<&` `>&` `<<-` `<>`

## 3.313 Reentrant Function

A function whose effect, when called by two or more threads, is guaranteed to be as if the threads each executed the function one after another in an undefined order, even if the actual execution is interleaved.

## 3.314 Referenced Shared Memory Object

A shared memory object that is open or has one or more mappings defined on it.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.315 Refresh

To ensure that the information on the user's terminal screen is up-to-date.

## 3.316 Regular Expression

A pattern that selects specific strings from a set of character strings.

**Note:** Regular Expressions are described in detail in Chapter 9 (on page 169).

## 3.317 Region

In the context of the address space of a process, a sequence of addresses.

In the context of a file, a sequence of offsets.

## 3.318 Regular File

A file that is a randomly accessible sequence of bytes, with no further structure imposed by the system.

## 3.319 Relative Pathname

A pathname not beginning with a slash.

**Note:** Pathname Resolution is defined in detail in Section 4.11 (on page 102).

## 3.320 Relocatable File

A file holding code or data suitable for linking with other object files to create an executable or a shared object file.

## 3.321 Relocation

The process of connecting symbolic references with symbolic definitions. For example, when a program calls a function, the associated call instruction transfers control to the proper destination address at execution.

## 3.322 Requested Batch Service

A service that is either rejected or performed prior to a response from the service to the requester.

## 3.323 (Time) Resolution

The minimum time interval that a clock can measure or whose passage a timer can detect.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.324 Root Directory

A directory, associated with a process, that is used in pathname resolution for pathnames that begin with a slash.

## 3.325 Runnable Process (or Thread)

A thread that is capable of being a running thread, but for which no processor is available.

## 3.326 Running Process (or Thread)

A thread currently executing on a processor. On multi-processor systems there may be more than one such thread in a system at a time.

## 3.327 Saved Resource Limits

An attribute of a process that provides some flexibility in the handling of unrepresentable resource limits, as described in the *exec* family of functions and *setrlimit*( ).

**Note:** The *exec* and *setrlimit*( ) functions are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.328 Saved Set-Group-ID

An attribute of a process that allows some flexibility in the assignment of the effective group ID attribute, as described in the *exec* family of functions and *setgid*( ).

**Note:** The *exec* and *setgid*( ) functions are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.329 Saved Set-User-ID

An attribute of a process that allows some flexibility in the assignment of the effective user ID attribute, as described in the *exec* family of functions and *setuid*( ).

**Note:** The *exec* and *setuid*( ) functions are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.330 Scheduling

The application of a policy to select a runnable process or thread to become a running process or thread, or to alter one or more of the thread lists.

## 3.331 Scheduling Allocation Domain

The set of processors on which an individual thread can be scheduled at any given time.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.332 Scheduling Contention Scope

A property of a thread that defines the set of threads against which that thread competes for resources.

For example, in a scheduling decision, threads sharing scheduling contention scope compete for processor resources. In IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, a thread has scheduling contention scope of either PTHREAD_SCOPE_SYSTEM or PTHREAD_SCOPE_PROCESS.

## 3.333 Scheduling Policy

A set of rules that is used to determine the order of execution of processes or threads to achieve some goal.

**Note:** Scheduling Policy is defined in detail in Section 4.13 (on page 103).

## 3.334 Screen

A rectangular region of columns and lines on a terminal display. A screen may be a portion of a physical display device or may occupy the entire physical area of the display device.

## 3.335 Scroll

To move the representation of data vertically or horizontally relative to the terminal screen. There are two types of scrolling:

1. The cursor moves with the data.
2. The cursor remains stationary while the data moves.

## 3.336 Semaphore

A minimum synchronization primitive to serve as a basis for more complex synchronization mechanisms to be defined by the application program.

**Note:** Semaphores are defined in detail in Section 4.15 (on page 104).

## 3.337 Session

A collection of process groups established for job control purposes. Each process group is a member of a session. A process is considered to be a member of the session of which its process group is a member. A newly created process joins the session of its creator. A process can alter its session membership; see *setsid*( ). There can be multiple process groups in the same session.

**Note:** The *setsid*( ) function is defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.338 Session Leader

A process that has created a session.

**Note:** For further information, see the *setsid*( ) function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.339 Session Lifetime

The period between when a session is created and the end of the lifetime of all the process groups that remain as members of the session.

## 3.340 Shared Memory Object

An object that represents memory that can be mapped concurrently into the address space of more than one process.

## 3.341 Shell

A program that interprets sequences of text input as commands. It may operate on an input stream or it may interactively prompt and read commands from a terminal.

## 3.342 Shell, the

The Shell Command Language Interpreter; a specific instance of a shell.

**Note:** For further information, see the *sh* utility defined in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.343 Shell Script

A file containing shell commands. If the file is made executable, it can be executed by specifying its name as a simple command. Execution of a shell script causes a shell to execute the commands within the script. Alternatively, a shell can be requested to execute the commands in a shell script by specifying the name of the shell script as the operand to the *sh* utility.

**Note:** Simple Commands are defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.9.1, Simple Commands.

The *sh* utility is defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.344 Signal

A mechanism by which a process or thread may be notified of, or affected by, an event occurring in the system. Examples of such events include hardware exceptions and specific actions by processes. The term signal is also used to refer to the event itself.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.345 Signal Stack

Memory established for a thread, in which signal handlers catching signals sent to that thread are executed.

## 3.346 Single-Quote

The character ''', also known as apostrophe.

## 3.347 Slash

The character '/', also known as solidus.

## 3.348 Socket

A file of a particular type that is used as a communications endpoint for process-to-process communication as described in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.349 Socket Address

An address associated with a socket or remote endpoint, including an address family identifier and addressing information specific to that address family. The address may include multiple parts, such as a network address associated with a host system and an identifier for a specific endpoint.

## 3.350 Soft Limit

A resource limitation established for each process that the process may set to any value less than or equal to the hard limit.

## 3.351 Source Code

When dealing with the Shell Command Language, input to the command language interpreter. The term ''shell script'' is synonymous with this meaning.

When dealing with an ISO/IEC-conforming programming language, source code is input to a compiler conforming to that ISO/IEC standard.

Source code also refers to the input statements prepared for the following standard utilities: *awk*, *bc*, *ed*, *lex*, *localedef*, *make*, *sed*, and *yacc*.

Source code can also refer to a collection of sources meeting any or all of these meanings.

**Note:** The *awk*, *bc*, *ed*, *lex*, *localedef*, *make*, *sed*, and *yacc* utilities are defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.352 Space Character (<space>)

The character defined in the portable character set as <space>. The <space> is a member of the **space** character class of the current locale, but represents the single character, and not all of the possible members of the class; see also Section 3.431 (on page 95).

## 3.353 Spawn

A process creation primitive useful for systems that have difficulty with *fork*( ) and as an efficient replacement for *fork*( )/*exec*.

## 3.354 Special Built-In

See *Built-In Utility* in Section 3.83 (on page 46).

## 3.355 Special Parameter

In the shell command language, a parameter named by a single character from the following list:

```
*   @   #   ?   !   -   $   0
```

**Note:** For further information, see the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.5.2, Special Parameters.

## 3.356 Spin Lock

A synchronization object used to allow multiple threads to serialize their access to shared data.

## 3.357 Sporadic Server

A scheduling policy for threads and processes that reserves a certain amount of execution capacity for processing aperiodic events at a given priority level.

## 3.358 Standard Error

An output stream usually intended to be used for diagnostic messages.

## 3.359 Standard Input

An input stream usually intended to be used for primary data input.

## 3.360 Standard Output

An output stream usually intended to be used for primary data output.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.361 Standard Utilities

The utilities described in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.362 Stream

Appearing in lowercase, a stream is a file access object that allows access to an ordered sequence of characters, as described by the ISO C standard. Such objects can be created by the *fdopen*( ), *fopen*( ), or *popen*( ) functions, and are associated with a file descriptor. A stream provides the additional services of user-selectable buffering and formatted input and output; see also Section 3.363.

**Note:** For further information, see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.5, Standard I/O Streams.

The *fdopen*( ), *fopen*( ), or *popen*( ) functions are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.363 STREAM

Appearing in uppercase, STREAM refers to a full-duplex connection between a process and an open device or pseudo-device. It optionally includes one or more intermediate processing modules that are interposed between the process end of the STREAM and the device driver (or pseudo-device driver) end of the STREAM; see also Section 3.362.

**Note:** For further information, see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.6, STREAMS.

## 3.364 STREAM End

The STREAM end is the driver end of the STREAM and is also known as the downstream end of the STREAM.

## 3.365 STREAM Head

The STREAM head is the beginning of the STREAM and is at the boundary between the system and the application process. This is also known as the upstream end of the STREAM.

## 3.366 STREAMS Multiplexor

A driver with multiple STREAMS connected to it. Multiplexing with STREAMS connected above is referred to as N-to-1, or ‘‘upper multiplexing’’. Multiplexing with STREAMS connected below is referred to as 1-to-N or ‘‘lower multiplexing’’.

## 3.367 String

A contiguous sequence of bytes terminated by and including the first null byte.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.368 Subshell

A shell execution environment, distinguished from the main or current shell execution environment.

**Note:** For further information, see the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.12, Shell Execution Environment.

## 3.369 Successfully Transferred

For a write operation to a regular file, when the system ensures that all data written is readable on any subsequent open of the file (even one that follows a system or power failure) in the absence of a failure of the physical storage medium.

For a read operation, when an image of the data on the physical storage medium is available to the requesting process.

## 3.370 Supplementary Group ID

An attribute of a process used in determining file access permissions. A process has up to {NGROUPS_MAX} supplementary group IDs in addition to the effective group ID. The supplementary group IDs of a process are set to the supplementary group IDs of the parent process when the process is created.

## 3.371 Suspended Job

A job that has received a SIGSTOP, SIGTSTP, SIGTTIN, or SIGTTOU signal that caused the process group to stop. A suspended job is a background job, but a background job is not necessarily a suspended job.

## 3.372 Symbolic Link

A type of file with the property that when the file is encountered during pathname resolution, a string stored by the file is used to modify the pathname resolution. The stored string has a length of {SYMLINK_MAX} bytes or fewer.

**Note:** Pathname Resolution is defined in detail in Section 4.11 (on page 102).

## 3.373 Synchronized Input and Output

A determinism and robustness improvement mechanism to enhance the data input and output mechanisms, so that an application can ensure that the data being manipulated is physically present on secondary mass storage devices.

## 3.374 Synchronized I/O Completion

The state of an I/O operation that has either been successfully transferred or diagnosed as unsuccessful.

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.375 Synchronized I/O Data Integrity Completion

For read, when the operation has been completed or diagnosed if unsuccessful. The read is complete only when an image of the data has been successfully transferred to the requesting process. If there were any pending write requests affecting the data to be read at the time that the synchronized read operation was requested, these write requests are successfully transferred prior to reading the data.

For write, when the operation has been completed or diagnosed if unsuccessful. The write is complete only when the data specified in the write request is successfully transferred and all file system information required to retrieve the data is successfully transferred.

File attributes that are not necessary for data retrieval (access time, modification time, status change time) need not be successfully transferred prior to returning to the calling process.

## 3.376 Synchronized I/O File Integrity Completion

Identical to a synchronized I/O data integrity completion with the addition that all file attributes relative to the I/O operation (including access time, modification time, status change time) are successfully transferred prior to returning to the calling process.

## 3.377 Synchronized I/O Operation

An I/O operation performed on a file that provides the application assurance of the integrity of its data and files.

## 3.378 Synchronous I/O Operation

An I/O operation that causes the thread requesting the I/O to be blocked from further use of the processor until that I/O operation completes.

**Note:** A synchronous I/O operation does not imply synchronized I/O data integrity completion or synchronized I/O file integrity completion.

## 3.379 Synchronously-Generated Signal

A signal that is attributable to a specific thread.

For example, a thread executing an illegal instruction or touching invalid memory causes a synchronously-generated signal. Being synchronous is a property of how the signal was generated and not a property of the signal number.

## 3.380 System

An implementation of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.381 System Crash

An interval initiated by an unspecified circumstance that causes all processes (possibly other than special system processes) to be terminated in an undefined manner, after which any changes to the state and contents of files created or written to by an application prior to the interval are undefined, except as required elsewhere in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.382 System Console

An implementation-defined device that receives messages sent by the *syslog*( ) function, and the *fmtmsg*( ) function when the MM_CONSOLE flat is set.

**Note:** The *syslog*( ) and *fmtmsg*( ) functions are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.383 System Databases

An implementation provides two system databases.

The ‘‘group database’’ contains the following information for each group:

1. Group name
2. Numerical group ID
3. List of all users allowed in the group

The ‘‘user database’’ contains the following information for each user:

1. User name
2. Numerical user ID
3. Numerical group ID
4. Initial working directory
5. Initial user program

If the initial user program field is null, the system default is used. If the initial working directory field is null, the interpretation of that field is implementation-defined. These databases may contain other fields that are unspecified by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.384 System Documentation

All documentation provided with an implementation except for the conformance document. Electronically distributed documents for an implementation are considered part of the system documentation.

## 3.385 System Process

An implementation-defined object, other than a process executing an application, that has a process ID.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.386 System Reboot

An implementation-defined sequence of events that may result in the loss of transitory data; that is, data that is not saved in permanent storage. For example, message queues, shared memory, semaphores, and processes.

## 3.387 System Trace Event

A trace event that is generated by the implementation, in response either to a system-initiated action or to an application-requested action, except for a call to *posix_trace_event*( ). When supported by the implementation, a system-initiated action generates a process-independent system trace event and an application-requested action generates a process-dependent system trace event. For a system trace event not defined by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, the associated trace event type identifier is derived from the implementation-defined name for this trace event, and the associated data is of implementation-defined content and length.

## 3.388 System-Wide

Pertaining to events occurring in all processes existing in an implementation at a given point in time.

## 3.389 Tab Character (<tab>)

A character that in the output stream indicates that printing or displaying should start at the next horizontal tabulation position on the current line. It is the character designated by `'\t'` in the C language. If the current position is at or past the last defined horizontal tabulation position, the behavior is unspecified. It is unspecified whether this character is the exact sequence transmitted to an output device by the system to accomplish the tabulation.

## 3.390 Terminal (or Terminal Device)

A character special file that obeys the specifications of the general terminal interface.

**Note:** The General Terminal Interface is defined in detail in Chapter 11 (on page 187).

## 3.391 Text Column

A roughly rectangular block of characters capable of being laid out side-by-side next to other text columns on an output page or terminal screen. The widths of text columns are measured in column positions.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.392 Text File

A file that contains characters organized into one or more lines. The lines do not contain NUL characters and none can exceed {LINE_MAX} bytes in length, including the <newline>. Although IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 does not distinguish between text files and binary files (see the ISO C standard), many utilities only produce predictable or meaningful output when operating on text files. The standard utilities that have such restrictions always specify ''text files'' in their STDIN or INPUT FILES sections.

## 3.393 Thread

A single flow of control within a process. Each thread has its own thread ID, scheduling priority and policy, *errno* value, thread-specific key/value bindings, and the required system resources to support a flow of control. Anything whose address may be determined by a thread, including but not limited to static variables, storage obtained via *malloc*( ), directly addressable storage obtained through implementation-defined functions, and automatic variables, are accessible to all threads in the same process.

**Note:** The *malloc*( ) function is defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.394 Thread ID

Each thread in a process is uniquely identified during its lifetime by a value of type **pthread_t** called a thread ID.

## 3.395 Thread List

An ordered set of runnable threads that all have the same ordinal value for their priority.

The ordering of threads on the list is determined by a scheduling policy or policies. The set of thread lists includes all runnable threads in the system.

## 3.396 Thread-Safe

A function that may be safely invoked concurrently by multiple threads. Each function defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 is thread-safe unless explicitly stated otherwise. Examples are any ''pure'' function, a function which holds a mutex locked while it is accessing static storage, or objects shared among threads.

## 3.397 Thread-Specific Data Key

A process global handle of type **pthread_key_t** which is used for naming thread-specific data.

Although the same key value may be used by different threads, the values bound to the key by *pthread_setspecific*( ) and accessed by *pthread_getspecific*( ) are maintained on a per-thread basis and persist for the life of the calling thread.

**Note:** The *pthread_getspecific*( ) and *pthread_setspecific*( ) functions are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.398 Tilde

The character '~'.

## 3.399 Timeouts

A method of limiting the length of time an interface will block; see also Section 3.76 (on page 45).

## 3.400 Timer

A mechanism that can notify a thread when the time as measured by a particular clock has reached or passed a specified value, or when a specified amount of time has passed.

## 3.401 Timer Overrun

A condition that occurs each time a timer, for which there is already an expiration signal queued to the process, expires.

## 3.402 Token

In the shell command language, a sequence of characters that the shell considers as a single unit when reading input. A token is either an operator or a word.

**Note:** The rules for reading input are defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.3, Token Recognition.

## 3.403 Trace Analyzer Process

A process that extracts trace events from a trace stream to retrieve information about the behavior of an application.

## 3.404 Trace Controller Process

A process that creates a trace stream for tracing a process.

## 3.405 Trace Event

A data object that represents an action executed by the system, and that is recorded in a trace stream.

## 3.406 Trace Event Type

A data object type that defines a class of trace event.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.407 Trace Event Type Mapping

A one-to-one mapping between trace event types and trace event names.

## 3.408 Trace Filter

A filter that allows the trace controller process to specify those trace event types that are to be ignored; that is, not generated.

## 3.409 Trace Generation Version

A data object that is an implementation-defined character string, generated by the trace system and describing the origin and version of the trace system.

## 3.410 Trace Log

The flushed image of a trace stream, if the trace stream is created with a trace log.

## 3.411 Trace Point

An action that may cause a trace event to be generated.

## 3.412 Trace Stream

An opaque object that contains trace events plus internal data needed to interpret those trace events.

## 3.413 Trace Stream Identifier

A handle to manage tracing operations in a trace stream.

## 3.414 Trace System

A system that allows both system and user trace events to be generated into a trace stream. These trace events can be retrieved later.

## 3.415 Traced Process

A process for which at least one trace stream has been created. A traced process is also called a target process.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.416 Tracing Status of a Trace Stream

A status that describes the state of an active trace stream. The tracing status of a trace stream can be retrieved from the trace stream attributes. An active trace stream can be in one of two states: running or suspended.

## 3.417 Typed Memory Name Space

A system-wide name space that contains the names of the typed memory objects present in the system. It is configurable for a given implementation.

## 3.418 Typed Memory Object

A combination of a typed memory pool and a typed memory port. The entire contents of the pool are accessible from the port. The typed memory object is identified through a name that belongs to the typed memory name space.

## 3.419 Typed Memory Pool

An extent of memory with the same operational characteristics. Typed memory pools may be contained within each other.

## 3.420 Typed Memory Port

A hardware access path to one or more typed memory pools.

## 3.421 Unbind

Remove the association between a network address and an endpoint.

## 3.422 Unit Data

See *Datagram* in Section 3.123 (on page 52).

## 3.423 Upshifting

The conversion of a lowercase character that has a single-character uppercase representation into this uppercase representation.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.424 User Database

A system database of implementation-defined format that contains at least the following information for each user ID:

- User name
- Numerical user ID
- Initial numerical group ID
- Initial working directory
- Initial user program

The initial numerical group ID is used by the *newgrp* utility. Any other circumstances under which the initial values are operative are implementation-defined.

If the initial user program field is null, an implementation-defined program is used.

If the initial working directory field is null, the interpretation of that field is implementation-defined.

**Note:** The *newgrp* utility is defined in detail in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.425 User ID

A non-negative integer that is used to identify a system user. When the identity of a user is associated with a process, a user ID value is referred to as a real user ID, an effective user ID, or a saved set-user-ID.

## 3.426 User Name

A string that is used to identify a user; see also Section 3.424. To be portable across systems conforming to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, the value is composed of characters from the portable filename character set. The hyphen should not be used as the first character of a portable user name.

## 3.427 User Trace Event

A trace event that is generated explicitly by the application as a result of a call to *posix_trace_event*( ).

## 3.428 Utility

A program, excluding special built-in utilities provided as part of the Shell Command Language, that can be called by name from a shell to perform a specific task, or related set of tasks.

**Note:** For further information on special built-in utilities, see the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.14, Special Built-In Utilities.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.429 Variable

In the shell command language, a named parameter.

**Note:** For further information, see the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.5, Parameters and Variables.

## 3.430 Vertical-Tab Character (<vertical-tab>)

A character that in the output stream indicates that printing should start at the next vertical tabulation position. It is the character designated by `'\v'` in the C language. If the current position is at or past the last defined vertical tabulation position, the behavior is unspecified. It is unspecified whether this character is the exact sequence transmitted to an output device by the system to accomplish the tabulation.

## 3.431 White Space

A sequence of one or more characters that belong to the **space** character class as defined via the *LC_CTYPE* category in the current locale.

In the POSIX locale, white space consists of one or more <blank>s (<space>s and <tab>s), <newline>s, <carriage-return>s, <form-feed>s, and <vertical-tab>s.

## 3.432 Wide-Character Code (C Language)

An integer value corresponding to a single graphic symbol or control code.

**Note:** C Language Wide-Character Codes are defined in detail in Section 6.3 (on page 119).

## 3.433 Wide-Character Input/Output Functions

The functions that perform wide-oriented input from streams or wide-oriented output to streams: *fgetwc*( ), *fgetws*( ), *fputwc*( ), *fputws*( ), *fwprintf*( ), *fwscanf*( ), *getwc*( ), *getwchar*( ), *putwc*( ), *putwchar*( ), *ungetwc*( ), *vfwprintf*( ), *vfwscanf*( ), *vwprintf*( ), *vwscanf*( ), *wprintf*( ), and *wscanf*( ).

**Note:** These functions are defined in detail in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.434 Wide-Character String

A contiguous sequence of wide-character codes terminated by and including the first null wide-character code.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 3.435 Word

In the shell command language, a token other than an operator. In some cases a word is also a portion of a word token: in the various forms of parameter expansion, such as ${*name–word*}, and variable assignment, such as *name=word*, the word is the portion of the token depicted by *word*. The concept of a word is no longer applicable following word expansions—only fields remain.

**Note:** For further information, see the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.6.2, Parameter Expansion and the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.6, Word Expansions.

## 3.436 Working Directory (or Current Working Directory)

A directory, associated with a process, that is used in pathname resolution for pathnames that do not begin with a slash.

## 3.437 Worldwide Portability Interface

Functions for handling characters in a codeset-independent manner.

## 3.438 Write

To output characters to a file, such as standard output or standard error. Unless otherwise stated, standard output is the default output destination for all uses of the term ‘‘write’’; see the distinction between display and write in Section 3.132 (on page 53).

## 3.439 XSI

The X/Open System Interface is the core application programming interface for C and *sh* programming for systems conforming to the Single UNIX Specification. This is a superset of the mandatory requirements for conformance to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 3.440 XSI-Conformant

A system which allows an application to be built using a set of services that are consistent across all systems that conform to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 and that support the XSI extension.

**Note:** See also Chapter 2 (on page 17).

## 3.441 Zombie Process

A process that has terminated and that is deleted when its exit status has been reported to another process which is waiting for that process to terminate.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 3.442 ±0

The algebraic sign provides additional information about any variable that has the value zero when the representation allows the sign to be determined.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3026


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Chapter 4

# General Concepts

For the purposes of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, the general concepts given in Chapter 4 apply.

**Note:** No shading to denote extensions or options occurs in this chapter. Where the terms and definitions given in this chapter are used elsewhere in text related to extensions and options, they are shaded as appropriate.

## 4.1 Concurrent Execution

Functions that suspend the execution of the calling thread shall not cause the execution of other threads to be indefinitely suspended.

## 4.2 Directory Protection

If a directory is writable and the mode bit S_ISVTX is set on the directory, a process may remove or rename files within that directory only if one or more of the following is true:

- The effective user ID of the process is the same as that of the owner ID of the file.
- The effective user ID of the process is the same as that of the owner ID of the directory.
- The process has appropriate privileges.

If the S_ISVTX bit is set on a non-directory file, the behavior is unspecified.

## 4.3 Extended Security Controls

An implementation may provide implementation-defined extended security controls (see Section 3.159 (on page 57)). These permit an implementation to provide security mechanisms to implement different security policies than those described in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. These mechanisms shall not alter or override the defined semantics of any of the interfaces in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## 4.4 File Access Permissions

The standard file access control mechanism uses the file permission bits, as described below.

Implementations may provide *additional* or *alternate* file access control mechanisms, or both. An additional access control mechanism shall only further restrict the access permissions defined by the file permission bits. An alternate file access control mechanism shall:

- Specify file permission bits for the file owner class, file group class, and file other class of that file, corresponding to the access permissions.
- Be enabled only by explicit user action, on a per-file basis by the file owner or a user with the appropriate privilege.
- Be disabled for a file after the file permission bits are changed for that file with *chmod*( ). The disabling of the alternate mechanism need not disable any additional mechanisms supported



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

by an implementation.

Whenever a process requests file access permission for read, write, or execute/search, if no additional mechanism denies access, access shall be determined as follows:

- If a process has the appropriate privilege:
  - — If read, write, or directory search permission is requested, access shall be granted.
  - — If execute permission is requested, access shall be granted if execute permission is granted to at least one user by the file permission bits or by an alternate access control mechanism; otherwise, access shall be denied.
- Otherwise:
  - — The file permission bits of a file contain read, write, and execute/search permissions for the file owner class, file group class, and file other class.
  - — Access shall be granted if an alternate access control mechanism is not enabled and the requested access permission bit is set for the class (file owner class, file group class, or file other class) to which the process belongs, or if an alternate access control mechanism is enabled and it allows the requested access; otherwise, access shall be denied.

## 4.5 File Hierarchy

Files in the system are organized in a hierarchical structure in which all of the non-terminal nodes are directories and all of the terminal nodes are any other type of file. Since multiple directory entries may refer to the same file, the hierarchy is properly described as a ‘‘directed graph’’.

## 4.6 Filenames

For a filename to be portable across implementations conforming to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, it shall consist only of the portable filename character set as defined in Section 3.276 (on page 73).

The hyphen character shall not be used as the first character of a portable filename. Uppercase and lowercase letters shall retain their unique identities between conforming implementations. In the case of a portable pathname, the slash character may also be used.

## 4.7 File Times Update

Each file has three distinct associated time values: *st_atime*, *st_mtime*, and *st_ctime*. The *st_atime* field is associated with the times that the file data is accessed; *st_mtime* is associated with the times that the file data is modified; and *st_ctime* is associated with the times that the file status is changed. These values are returned in the file characteristics structure, as described in **<sys/stat.h>**.

Each function or utility in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 that reads or writes data or changes file status indicates which of the appropriate time-related fields shall be ‘‘marked for update’’. If an implementation of such a function or utility marks for update a time-related field not specified by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, this shall be documented, except that any changes caused by pathname resolution need not be documented. For the other functions or utilities in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 (those that are not explicitly required to read or write file data or change file status, but that in some implementations happen to do so), the effect is unspecified.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

An implementation may update fields that are marked for update immediately, or it may update such fields periodically. At an update point in time, any marked fields shall be set to the current time and the update marks shall be cleared. All fields that are marked for update shall be updated when the file ceases to be open by any process, or when a *stat*( ), *fstat*( ), or *lstat*( ) is performed on the file. Other times at which updates are done are unspecified. Marks for update, and updates themselves, are not done for files on read-only file systems; see Section 3.304 (on page 77).

## 4.8 Host and Network Byte Orders

When data is transmitted over the network, it is sent as a sequence of octets (8-bit unsigned values). If an entity (such as an address or a port number) can be larger than 8 bits, it needs to be stored in several octets. The convention is that all such values are stored with 8 bits in each octet, and with the first (lowest-addressed) octet holding the most-significant bits. This is called ''network byte order''.

Network byte order may not be convenient for processing actual values. For this, it is more sensible for values to be stored as ordinary integers. This is known as ''host byte order''. In host byte order:

- The most significant bit might not be stored in the first byte in address order.
- Bits might not be allocated to bytes in any obvious order at all.

8-bit values stored in **uint8_t** objects do not require conversion to or from host byte order, as they have the same representation. 16 and 32-bit values can be converted using the *htonl*( ), *htons*( ), *ntohl*( ), and *ntohs*( ) functions. When reading data that is to be converted to host byte order, it should either be received directly into a **uint16_t** or **uint32_t** object or should be copied from an array of bytes using *memcpy*( ) or similar. Passing the data through other types could cause the byte order to be changed. Similar considerations apply when sending data.

## 4.9 Measurement of Execution Time

The mechanism used to measure execution time shall be implementation-defined. The implementation shall also define to whom the CPU time that is consumed by interrupt handlers and system services on behalf of the operating system will be charged. See Section 3.117 (on page 51).



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 4.10 Memory Synchronization

Applications shall ensure that access to any memory location by more than one thread of control (threads or processes) is restricted such that no thread of control can read or modify a memory location while another thread of control may be modifying it. Such access is restricted using functions that synchronize thread execution and also synchronize memory with respect to other threads. The following functions synchronize memory with respect to other threads:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *fork*( ) | *pthread_mutex_timedlock*( ) | *pthread_rwlock_tryrdlock*( ) |
| *pthread_barrier_wait*( ) | *pthread_mutex_trylock*( ) | *pthread_rwlock_trywrlock*( ) |
| *pthread_cond_broadcast*( ) | *pthread_mutex_unlock*( ) | *pthread_rwlock_unlock*( ) |
| *pthread_cond_signal*( ) | *pthread_spin_lock*( ) | *pthread_rwlock_wrlock*( ) |
| *pthread_cond_timedwait*( ) | *pthread_spin_trylock*( ) | *sem_post*( ) |
| *pthread_cond_wait*( ) | *pthread_spin_unlock*( ) | *sem_trywait*( ) |
| *pthread_create*( ) | *pthread_rwlock_rdlock*( ) | *sem_wait*( ) |
| *pthread_join*( ) | *pthread_rwlock_timedrdlock*( ) | *wait*( ) |
| *pthread_mutex_lock*( ) | *pthread_rwlock_timedwrlock*( ) | *waitpid*( ) |

The *pthread_once*( ) function shall synchronize memory for the first call in each thread for a given **pthread_once_t** object.

Unless explicitly stated otherwise, if one of the above functions returns an error, it is unspecified whether the invocation causes memory to be synchronized.

Applications may allow more than one thread of control to read a memory location simultaneously.

## 4.11 Pathname Resolution

Pathname resolution is performed for a process to resolve a pathname to a particular file in a file hierarchy. There may be multiple pathnames that resolve to the same file.

Each filename in the pathname is located in the directory specified by its predecessor (for example, in the pathname fragment **a/b**, file **b** is located in directory **a**). Pathname resolution shall fail if this cannot be accomplished. If the pathname begins with a slash, the predecessor of the first filename in the pathname shall be taken to be the root directory of the process (such pathnames are referred to as ‘‘absolute pathnames’’). If the pathname does not begin with a slash, the predecessor of the first filename of the pathname shall be taken to be the current working directory of the process (such pathnames are referred to as ‘‘relative pathnames’’).

The interpretation of a pathname component is dependent on the value of {NAME_MAX} and _POSIX_NO_TRUNC associated with the path prefix of that component. If any pathname component is longer than {NAME_MAX}, the implementation shall consider this an error.

A pathname that contains at least one non-slash character and that ends with one or more trailing slashes shall be resolved as if a single dot character (’.’) were appended to the pathname.

If a symbolic link is encountered during pathname resolution, the behavior shall depend on whether the pathname component is at the end of the pathname and on the function being performed. If all of the following are true, then pathname resolution is complete:

1. This is the last pathname component of the pathname.
2. The pathname has no trailing slash.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

3. The function is required to act on the symbolic link itself, or certain arguments direct that the function act on the symbolic link itself.

In all other cases, the system shall prefix the remaining pathname, if any, with the contents of the symbolic link. If the combined length exceeds {PATH_MAX}, and the implementation considers this to be an error, *errno* shall be set to [ENAMETOOLONG] and an error indication shall be returned. Otherwise, the resolved pathname shall be the resolution of the pathname just created. If the resulting pathname does not begin with a slash, the predecessor of the first filename of the pathname is taken to be the directory containing the symbolic link.

If the system detects a loop in the pathname resolution process, it shall set *errno* to [ELOOP] and return an error indication. The same may happen if during the resolution process more symbolic links were followed than the implementation allows. This implementation-defined limit shall not be smaller than {SYMLOOP_MAX}.

The special filename dot shall refer to the directory specified by its predecessor. The special filename dot-dot shall refer to the parent directory of its predecessor directory. As a special case, in the root directory, dot-dot may refer to the root directory itself.

A pathname consisting of a single slash shall resolve to the root directory of the process. A null pathname shall not be successfully resolved. A pathname that begins with two successive slashes may be interpreted in an implementation-defined manner, although more than two leading slashes shall be treated as a single slash.

## 4.12 Process ID Reuse

A process group ID shall not be reused by the system until the process group lifetime ends.

A process ID shall not be reused by the system until the process lifetime ends. In addition, if there exists a process group whose process group ID is equal to that process ID, the process ID shall not be reused by the system until the process group lifetime ends. A process that is not a system process shall not have a process ID of 1.

## 4.13 Scheduling Policy

A scheduling policy affects process or thread ordering:

- When a process or thread is a running thread and it becomes a blocked thread
- When a process or thread is a running thread and it becomes a preempted thread
- When a process or thread is a blocked thread and it becomes a runnable thread
- When a running thread calls a function that can change the priority or scheduling policy of a process or thread
- In other scheduling policy-defined circumstances

Conforming implementations shall define the manner in which each of the scheduling policies may modify the priorities or otherwise affect the ordering of processes or threads at each of the occurrences listed above. Additionally, conforming implementations shall define in what other circumstances and in what manner each scheduling policy may modify the priorities or affect the ordering of processes or threads.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 4.14 Seconds Since the Epoch

A value that approximates the number of seconds that have elapsed since the Epoch. A Coordinated Universal Time name (specified in terms of seconds (*tm_sec*), minutes (*tm_min*), hours (*tm_hour*), days since January 1 of the year (*tm_yday*), and calendar year minus 1900 (*tm_year*)) is related to a time represented as seconds since the Epoch, according to the expression below.

If the year is <1970 or the value is negative, the relationship is undefined. If the year is ≥1970 and the value is non-negative, the value is related to a Coordinated Universal Time name according to the C-language expression, where *tm_sec*, *tm_min*, *tm_hour*, *tm_yday*, and *tm_year* are all integer types:

```
tm_sec + tm_min*60 + tm_hour*3600 + tm_yday*86400 +
    (tm_year–70)*31536000 + ((tm_year–69)/4)*86400 –
    ((tm_year–1)/100)*86400 + ((tm_year+299)/400)*86400
```

The relationship between the actual time of day and the current value for seconds since the Epoch is unspecified.

How any changes to the value of seconds since the Epoch are made to align to a desired relationship with the current actual time are made is implementation-defined. As represented in seconds since the Epoch, each and every day shall be accounted for by exactly 86 400 seconds.

**Note:** The last three terms of the expression add in a day for each year that follows a leap year starting with the first leap year since the Epoch. The first term adds a day every 4 years starting in 1973, the second subtracts a day back out every 100 years starting in 2001, and the third adds a day back in every 400 years starting in 2001. The divisions in the formula are integer divisions; that is, the remainder is discarded leaving only the integer quotient.

## 4.15 Semaphore

A minimum synchronization primitive to serve as a basis for more complex synchronization mechanisms to be defined by the application program.

For the semaphores associated with the Semaphores option, a semaphore is represented as a shareable resource that has a non-negative integer value. When the value is zero, there is a (possibly empty) set of threads awaiting the availability of the semaphore.

For the semaphores associated with the X/Open System Interface Extension (XSI), a semaphore is a positive integer (0 through 32767). The *semget*( ) function can be called to create a set or array of semaphores. A semaphore set can contain one or more semaphores up to an implementation-defined value.

**Semaphore Lock Operation**

An operation that is applied to a semaphore. If, prior to the operation, the value of the semaphore is zero, the semaphore lock operation shall cause the calling thread to be blocked and added to the set of threads awaiting the semaphore; otherwise, the value shall be decremented.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

**Semaphore Unlock Operation**

An operation that is applied to a semaphore. If, prior to the operation, there are any threads in the set of threads awaiting the semaphore, then some thread from that set shall be removed from the set and becomes unblocked; otherwise, the semaphore value shall be incremented.

## 4.16 Thread-Safety

Refer to the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.9, Threads.

## 4.17 Tracing

The trace system allows a traced process to have a selection of events created for it. Traces consist of streams of trace event types.

A trace event type is identified on the one hand by a trace event type name, also referenced as a trace event name, and on the other hand by a trace event type identifier. A trace event name is a human-readable string. A trace event type identifier is an opaque identifier used by the trace system. There shall be a one-to-one relationship between trace event type identifiers and trace event names for a given trace stream and also for a given traced process. The trace event type identifier shall be generated automatically from a trace event name by the trace system either when a trace controller process invokes *posix_trace_trid_eventid_open*( ) or when an instrumented application process invokes *posix_trace_eventid_open*( ). Trace event type identifiers are used to filter trace event types, to allow interpretation of user data, and to identify the kind of trace point that generated a trace event.

Each trace event shall be of a particular trace event type, and associated with a trace event type identifier. The execution of a trace point shall generate a trace event if a trace stream has been created and started for the process that executed the trace point and if the corresponding trace event type identifier is not ignored by filtering.

A generated trace event shall be recorded in a trace stream, and optionally also in a trace log if a trace log is associated with the trace stream, except that:

- For a trace stream, if no resources are available for the event, the event is lost.
- For a trace log, if no resources are available for the event, or a flush operation does not succeed, the event is lost.

A trace event recorded in an active trace stream may be retrieved by an application having the appropriate privileges.

A trace event recorded in a trace log may be retrieved by an application having the appropriate privileges after opening the trace log as a pre-recorded trace stream, with the function *posix_trace_open*( ).

When a trace event is reported it is possible to retrieve the following:

- A trace event type identifier
- A timestamp
- The process ID of the traced process, if the trace event is process-dependent
- Any optional trace event data including its length



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

- If the Threads option is supported, the thread ID, if the trace event is process-dependent
- The program address at which the trace point was invoked

Trace events may be mapped from trace event types to trace event names. One such mapping shall be associated with each trace stream. An active trace stream is associated with a traced process, and also with its children if the Trace Inherit option is supported and also the inheritance policy is set to _POSIX_TRACE_INHERIT. Therefore each traced process has a mapping of the trace event names to trace event type identifiers that have been defined for that process.

Traces can be recorded into either trace streams or trace logs.

The implementation and format of a trace stream are unspecified. A trace stream need not be and generally is not persistent. A trace stream may be either active or pre-recorded:

- An active trace stream is a trace stream that has been created and has not yet been shut down. It can be of one of the two following classes:
  1. An active trace stream without a trace log that was created with the *posix_trace_create*( ) function
  2. If the Trace Log option is supported, an active trace stream with a trace log that was created with the *posix_trace_create_withlog*( ) function
- A pre-recorded trace stream is a trace stream that was opened from a trace log object using the *posix_trace_open*( ) function.

An active trace stream can loop. This behavior means that when the resources allocated by the trace system for the trace stream are exhausted, the trace system reuses the resources associated with the oldest recorded trace events to record new trace events.

If the Trace Log option is supported, an active trace stream with a trace log can be flushed. This operation causes the trace system to write trace events from the trace stream to the associated trace log, following the defined policies or using an explicit function call. After this operation, the trace system may reuse the resources associated with the flushed trace events.

An active trace stream with or without a trace log can be cleared. This operation shall cause all the resources associated with this trace stream to be reinitialized. The trace stream shall behave as if it was returning from its creation, except that the mapping of trace event type identifiers to trace event names shall not be cleared. If a trace log was associated with this trace stream, the trace log shall also be reinitialized.

A trace log shall be recorded when the *posix_trace_shutdown*( ) operation is invoked or during tracing, depending on the tracing strategy which is defined by a log policy. After the trace stream has been shut down, the trace information can be retrieved from the associated trace log using the same interface used to retrieve information from an active trace stream.

For a traced process, if the Trace Inherit option is supported and the trace stream's inheritance attribute is _POSIX_TRACE_INHERIT, the initial targeted traced process shall be traced together with all of its future children. The *posix_pid* member of each trace event in a trace stream shall be the process ID of the traced process.

Each trace point may be an implementation-defined action such as a context switch, or an application-programmed action such as a call to a specific operating system service (for example, *fork*( )) or a call to *posix_trace_event*( ).

Trace points may be filtered. The operation of the filter is to filter out (ignore) selected trace events. By default, no trace events are filtered.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

The results of the tracing operations can be analyzed and monitored by a trace controller process or a trace analyzer process.

Only the trace controller process has control of the trace stream it has created. The control of the operation of a trace stream is done using its corresponding trace stream identifier. The trace controller process is able to:

- Initialize the attributes of a trace stream
- Create the trace stream
- Start and stop tracing
- Know the mapping of the traced process
- If the Trace Event Filter option is supported, filter the type of trace events to be recorded
- Shut the trace stream down

A traced process may also be a trace controller process. Only the trace controller process can control its trace stream(s). A trace stream created by a trace controller process shall be shut down if its controller process terminates or executes another file.

A trace controller process may also be a trace analyzer process. Trace analysis can be done concurrently with the traced process or can be done off-line, in the same or in a different platform.

## 4.18 Treatment of Error Conditions for Mathematical Functions

For all the functions in the **<math.h>** header, an application wishing to check for error situations should set *errno* to 0 and call *feclearexcept*(FE_ALL_EXCEPT) before calling the function. On return, if *errno* is non-zero or *fetestexcept*(FE_INVALID | FE_DIVBYZERO | FE_OVERFLOW | FE_UNDERFLOW) is non-zero, an error has occurred.

The following error conditions are defined for all functions in the **<math.h>** header.

### 4.18.1 Domain Error

A ‘‘domain error’’ shall occur if an input argument is outside the domain over which the mathematical function is defined. The description of each function lists any required domain errors; an implementation may define additional domain errors, provided that such errors are consistent with the mathematical definition of the function.

On a domain error, the function shall return an implementation-defined value; if the integer expression (math_errhandling & MATH_ERRNO) is non-zero, *errno* shall be set to [EDOM]; if the integer expression (math_errhandling & MATH_ERREXCEPT) is non-zero, the ‘‘invalid’’ floating-point exception shall be raised.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

### 4.18.2 Pole Error

A ‘‘pole error’’ occurs if the mathematical result of the function is an exact infinity (for example, log(0.0)).

On a pole error, the function shall return the value of the macro HUGE_VAL, HUGE_VALF, or HUGE_VALL according to the return type, with the same sign as the correct value of the function; if the integer expression (math_errhandling & MATH_ERRNO) is non-zero, *errno* shall be set to [ERANGE]; if the integer expression (math_errhandling & MATH_ERREXCEPT) is non-zero, the ‘‘divide-by-zero’’ floating-point exception shall be raised.

### 4.18.3 Range Error

A ‘‘range error’’ shall occur if the finite mathematical result of the function cannot be represented in an object of the specified type, due to extreme magnitude.

#### *4.18.3.1 Result Overflows*

A floating result overflows if the magnitude of the mathematical result is finite but so large that the mathematical result cannot be represented without extraordinary roundoff error in an object of the specified type. If a floating result overflows and default rounding is in effect, then the function shall return the value of the macro HUGE_VAL, HUGE_VALF, or HUGE_VALL according to the return type, with the same sign as the correct value of the function; if the integer expression (math_errhandling & MATH_ERRNO) is non-zero, *errno* shall be set to [ERANGE]; if the integer expression (math_errhandling & MATH_ERREXCEPT) is non-zero, the ‘‘overflow’’ floating-point exception shall be raised.

#### *4.18.3.2 Result Underflows*

The result underflows if the magnitude of the mathematical result is so small that the mathematical result cannot be represented, without extraordinary roundoff error, in an object of the specified type. If the result underflows, the function shall return an implementation-defined value whose magnitude is no greater than the smallest normalized positive number in the specified type; if the integer expression (math_errhandling & MATH_ERRNO) is non-zero, whether *errno* is set to [ERANGE] is implementation-defined; if the integer expression (math_errhandling & MATH_ERREXCEPT) is non-zero, whether the ‘‘underflow’’ floating-point exception is raised is implementation-defined.

## 4.19 Treatment of NaN Arguments for the Mathematical Functions

For functions called with a NaN argument, no errors shall occur and a NaN shall be returned, except where stated otherwise.

If a function with one or more NaN arguments returns a NaN result, the result should be the same as one of the NaN arguments (after possible type conversion), except perhaps for the sign.

On implementations that support the IEC 60559:1989 standard floating point, functions with signaling NaN argument(s) shall be treated as if the function were called with an argument that is a required domain error and shall return a quiet NaN result, except where stated otherwise.

**Note:** The function might never see the signaling NaN, since it might trigger when the arguments are evaluated during the function call.

On implementations that support the IEC 60559:1989 standard floating point, for those functions that do not have a documented domain error, the following shall apply:


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

These functions shall fail if:

Domain Error Any argument is a signaling NaN.

Either, the integer expression (math_errhandling & MATH_ERRNO) is non-zero and *errno* shall be set to [EDOM], or the integer expression (math_errhandling & MATH_ERREXCEPT) is non-zero and the invalid floating-point exception shall be raised.

## 4.20 Utility

A utility program shall be either an executable file, such as might be produced by a compiler or linker system from computer source code, or a file of shell source code, directly interpreted by the shell. The program may have been produced by the user, provided by the system implementor, or acquired from an independent distributor.

The system may implement certain utilities as shell functions (see the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.9.5, Function Definition Command) or built-in utilities, but only an application that is aware of the command search order described in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.9.1.1, Command Search and Execution or of performance characteristics can discern differences between the behavior of such a function or built-in utility and that of an executable file.

## 4.21 Variable Assignment

In the shell command language, a word consisting of the following parts:

```
varname=value
```

When used in a context where assignment is defined to occur and at no other time, the *value* (representing a word or field) shall be assigned as the value of the variable denoted by *varname*.

**Note:** For further information, see the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.9.1, Simple Commands.

The *varname* and *value* parts shall meet the requirements for a name and a word, respectively, except that they are delimited by the embedded unquoted equals-sign, in addition to other delimiters.

**Note:** Additional delimiters are described in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.3, Token Recognition.

When a variable assignment is done, the variable shall be created if it did not already exist. If *value* is not specified, the variable shall be given a null value.

**Note:** An alternative form of variable assignment:

```
symbol=value
```

(where *symbol* is a valid word delimited by an equals-sign, but not a valid name) produces unspecified results. The form *symbol=value* is used by the KornShell *name*[*expression*]=*value* syntax.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

3434

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Chapter 5

# File Format Notation

The STDIN, STDOUT, STDERR, INPUT FILES, and OUTPUT FILES sections of the utility descriptions use a syntax to describe the data organization within the files, when that organization is not otherwise obvious. The syntax is similar to that used by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 *printf*( ) function, as described in this chapter. When used in STDIN or INPUT FILES sections of the utility descriptions, this syntax describes the format that could have been used to write the text to be read, not a format that could be used by the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 *scanf*( ) function to read the input file.

The description of an individual record is as follows:

```
"<format>", [<arg1>, <arg2>,..., <argn>]
```

The *format* is a character string that contains three types of objects defined below:

1. *Characters* that are not ‘‘escape sequences’’ or ‘‘conversion specifications’’, as described below, shall be copied to the output.
2. *Escape Sequences* represent non-graphic characters.
3. *Conversion Specifications* specify the output format of each argument; see below.

The following characters have the following special meaning in the format string:

’ ’ (An empty character position.) Represents one or more <blank>s.

Δ Represents exactly one <space>.

Table 5-1 lists escape sequences and associated actions on display devices capable of the action.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

**Table 5-1** Escape Sequences and Associated Actions

| Escape Sequence | Represents Character | Terminal Action |
|---|---|---|
| '\\' | backslash | Print the character '\'. |
| '\a' | alert | Attempt to alert the user through audible or visible notification. |
| '\b' | backspace | Move the printing position to one column before the current position, unless the current position is the start of a line. |
| '\f' | form-feed | Move the printing position to the initial printing position of the next logical page. |
| '\n' | newline | Move the printing position to the start of the next line. |
| '\r' | carriage-return | Move the printing position to the start of the current line. |
| '\t' | tab | Move the printing position to the next tab position on the current line. If there are no more tab positions remaining on the line, the behavior is undefined. |
| '\v' | vertical-tab | Move the printing position to the start of the next vertical tab position. If there are no more vertical tab positions left on the page, the behavior is undefined. |

Each conversion specification is introduced by the percent-sign character ('%'). After the character '%', the following shall appear in sequence:

*flags* Zero or more *flags*, in any order, that modify the meaning of the conversion specification.

*field width* An optional string of decimal digits to specify a minimum field width. For an output field, if the converted value has fewer bytes than the field width, it shall be padded on the left (or right, if the left-adjustment flag ('−'), described below, has been given) to the field width.

*precision* Gives the minimum number of digits to appear for the d, o, i, u, x, or X conversion specifiers (the field is padded with leading zeros), the number of digits to appear after the radix character for the e and f conversion specifiers, the maximum number of significant digits for the g conversion specifier; or the maximum number of bytes to be written from a string in the s conversion specifier. The precision shall take the form of a period ('.') followed by a decimal digit string; a null digit string is treated as zero.

*conversion specifier characters*
A conversion specifier character (see below) that indicates the type of conversion to be applied.

The *flag* characters and their meanings are:

− The result of the conversion shall be left-justified within the field.

+ The result of a signed conversion shall always begin with a sign ('+' or '−').

<space> If the first character of a signed conversion is not a sign, a <space> shall be prefixed to the result. This means that if the <space> and '+' flags both appear, the <space> flag shall be ignored.

# The value shall be converted to an alternative form. For c, d, i, u, and s conversion specifiers, the behavior is undefined. For the o conversion specifier, it shall increase the precision to force the first digit of the result to be a zero. For x or X conversion specifiers, a non-zero result has 0x or 0X prefixed to it, respectively. For


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

3499 e, E, f, g, and G conversion specifiers, the result shall always contain a radix
3500 character, even if no digits follow the radix character. For g and G conversion
3501 specifiers, trailing zeros shall not be removed from the result as they usually are.

3502 0 For d, i, o, u, x, X, e, E, f, g, and G conversion specifiers, leading zeros (following
3503 any indication of sign or base) shall be used to pad to the field width; no space
3504 padding is performed. If the '0' and '−' flags both appear, the '0' flag shall be
3505 ignored. For d, i, o, u, x, and X conversion specifiers, if a precision is specified, the
3506 '0' flag shall be ignored. For other conversion specifiers, the behavior is
3507 undefined.

3508 Each conversion specifier character shall result in fetching zero or more arguments. The results
3509 are undefined if there are insufficient arguments for the format. If the format is exhausted while
3510 arguments remain, the excess arguments shall be ignored.

3511 The conversion specifiers and their meanings are:

3512 d,i,o,u,x,X The integer argument shall be written as signed decimal (d or i), unsigned octal
3513 (o), unsigned decimal (u), or unsigned hexadecimal notation (x and X). The d and
3514 i specifiers shall convert to signed decimal in the style "[−]*dddd*". The x
3515 conversion specifier shall use the numbers and letters "0123456789abcdef" and
3516 the X conversion specifier shall use the numbers and letters
3517 "0123456789ABCDEF". The *precision* component of the argument shall specify
3518 the minimum number of digits to appear. If the value being converted can be
3519 represented in fewer digits than the specified minimum, it shall be expanded with
3520 leading zeros. The default precision shall be 1. The result of converting a zero
3521 value with a precision of 0 shall be no characters. If both the field width and
3522 precision are omitted, the implementation may precede, follow, or precede and
3523 follow numeric arguments of types d, i, and u with <blank>s; arguments of type o
3524 (octal) may be preceded with leading zeros.

3525 f The floating-point number argument shall be written in decimal notation in the
3526 style **[**–**]***ddd.ddd*, where the number of digits after the radix character (shown here
3527 as a decimal point) shall be equal to the *precision* specification. The *LC_NUMERIC*
3528 locale category shall determine the radix character to use in this format. If the
3529 *precision* is omitted from the argument, six digits shall be written after the radix
3530 character; if the *precision* is explicitly 0, no radix character shall appear.

3531 e,E The floating-point number argument shall be written in the style **[**–**]***d.ddd*e±*dd* (the
3532 symbol '±' indicates either a plus or minus sign), where there is one digit before
3533 the radix character (shown here as a decimal point) and the number of digits after
3534 it is equal to the precision. The *LC_NUMERIC* locale category shall determine the
3535 radix character to use in this format. When the precision is missing, six digits shall
3536 be written after the radix character; if the precision is 0, no radix character shall
3537 appear. The E conversion specifier shall produce a number with E instead of e
3538 introducing the exponent. The exponent shall always contain at least two digits.
3539 However, if the value to be written requires an exponent greater than two digits,
3540 additional exponent digits shall be written as necessary.

3541 g,G The floating-point number argument shall be written in style f or e (or in style F or
3542 E in the case of a G conversion specifier), with the precision specifying the number
3543 of significant digits. The style used depends on the value converted: style e (or E)
3544 shall be used only if the exponent resulting from the conversion is less than –4 or
3545 greater than or equal to the precision. Trailing zeros are removed from the result. A
3546 radix character shall appear only if it is followed by a digit.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

3547 `c` The integer argument shall be converted to an **unsigned char** and the resulting
3548 byte shall be written.

3549 `s` The argument shall be taken to be a string and bytes from the string shall be
3550 written until the end of the string or the number of bytes indicated by the *precision*
3551 specification of the argument is reached. If the precision is omitted from the
3552 argument, it shall be taken to be infinite, so all bytes up to the end of the string
3553 shall be written.

3554 `%` Write a `'%'` character; no argument is converted.

3555 In no case does a nonexistent or insufficient field width cause truncation of a field; if the result of
3556 a conversion is wider than the field width, the field is simply expanded to contain the conversion
3557 result. The term ‘‘field width’’ should not be confused with the term ‘‘precision’’ used in the
3558 description of `%s`.

3559 **Examples**

3560 To represent the output of a program that prints a date and time in the form Sunday, July 3,
3561 10:02, where *weekday* and *month* are strings:

3562 `"%s,Δ%sΔ%d,Δ%d:%.2d\n" <weekday>, <month>, <day>, <hour>, <min>`

3563 To show `'π'` written to 5 decimal places:

3564 `"piΔ=Δ%.5f\n",<value of π>`

3565 To show an input file format consisting of five colon-separated fields:

3566 `"%s:%s:%s:%s:%s\n", <arg1>, <arg2>, <arg3>, <arg4>, <arg5>`


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Chapter 6

# Character Set

## 6.1 Portable Character Set

Conforming implementations shall support one or more coded character sets. Each supported locale shall include the *portable character set*, which is the set of symbolic names for characters in Table 6-1. This is used to describe characters within the text of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. The first eight entries in Table 6-1 are defined in the ISO/IEC 6429:1992 standard and the rest of the characters are defined in the ISO/IEC 10646-1:2000 standard.

**Table 6-1** Portable Character Set

| Symbolic Name | Glyph | UCS | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| <NUL> | | <U0000> | NULL (NUL) |
| <alert> | | <U0007> | BELL (BEL) |
| <backspace> | | <U0008> | BACKSPACE (BS) |
| <tab> | | <U0009> | CHARACTER TABULATION (HT) |
| <carriage-return> | | <U000D> | CARRIAGE RETURN (CR) |
| <newline> | | <U000A> | LINE FEED (LF) |
| <vertical-tab> | | <U000B> | LINE TABULATION (VT) |
| <form-feed> | | <U000C> | FORM FEED (FF) |
| <space> | | <U0020> | SPACE |
| <exclamation-mark> | ! | <U0021> | EXCLAMATION MARK |
| <quotation-mark> | " | <U0022> | QUOTATION MARK |
| <number-sign> | # | <U0023> | NUMBER SIGN |
| <dollar-sign> | $ | <U0024> | DOLLAR SIGN |
| <percent-sign> | % | <U0025> | PERCENT SIGN |
| <ampersand> | & | <U0026> | AMPERSAND |
| <apostrophe> | ' | <U0027> | APOSTROPHE |
| <left-parenthesis> | ( | <U0028> | LEFT PARENTHESIS |
| <right-parenthesis> | ) | <U0029> | RIGHT PARENTHESIS |
| <asterisk> | * | <U002A> | ASTERISK |
| <plus-sign> | + | <U002B> | PLUS SIGN |
| <comma> | , | <U002C> | COMMA |
| <hyphen-minus> | – | <U002D> | HYPHEN-MINUS |
| <hyphen> | - | <U002D> | HYPHEN-MINUS |
| <full-stop> | . | <U002E> | FULL STOP |
| <period> | . | <U002E> | FULL STOP |
| <slash> | / | <U002F> | SOLIDUS |
| <solidus> | / | <U002F> | SOLIDUS |
| <zero> | 0 | <U0030> | DIGIT ZERO |
| <one> | 1 | <U0031> | DIGIT ONE |
| <two> | 2 | <U0032> | DIGIT TWO |
| <three> | 3 | <U0033> | DIGIT THREE |



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

| Symbolic Name | Glyph | UCS | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| <four> | 4 | <U0034> | DIGIT FOUR |
| <five> | 5 | <U0035> | DIGIT FIVE |
| <six> | 6 | <U0036> | DIGIT SIX |
| <seven> | 7 | <U0037> | DIGIT SEVEN |
| <eight> | 8 | <U0038> | DIGIT EIGHT |
| <nine> | 9 | <U0039> | DIGIT NINE |
| <colon> | : | <U003A> | COLON |
| <semicolon> | ; | <U003B> | SEMICOLON |
| <less-than-sign> | < | <U003C> | LESS-THAN SIGN |
| <equals-sign> | = | <U003D> | EQUALS SIGN |
| <greater-than-sign> | > | <U003E> | GREATER-THAN SIGN |
| <question-mark> | ? | <U003F> | QUESTION MARK |
| <commercial-at> | @ | <U0040> | COMMERCIAL AT |
| <A> | A | <U0041> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER A |
| <B> | B | <U0042> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER B |
| <C> | C | <U0043> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER C |
| <D> | D | <U0044> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER D |
| <E> | E | <U0045> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER E |
| <F> | F | <U0046> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER F |
| <G> | G | <U0047> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER G |
| <H> | H | <U0048> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER H |
| <I> | I | <U0049> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER I |
| <J> | J | <U004A> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER J |
| <K> | K | <U004B> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER K |
| <L> | L | <U004C> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER L |
| <M> | M | <U004D> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER M |
| <N> | N | <U004E> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER N |
| <O> | O | <U004F> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER O |
| <P> | P | <U0050> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER P |
| <Q> | Q | <U0051> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER Q |
| <R> | R | <U0052> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER R |
| <S> | S | <U0053> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER S |
| <T> | T | <U0054> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER T |
| <U> | U | <U0055> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER U |
| <V> | V | <U0056> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER V |
| <W> | W | <U0057> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER W |
| <X> | X | <U0058> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER X |
| <Y> | Y | <U0059> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER Y |
| <Z> | Z | <U005A> | LATIN CAPITAL LETTER Z |
| <left-square-bracket> | [ | <U005B> | LEFT SQUARE BRACKET |
| <backslash> | \ | <U005C> | REVERSE SOLIDUS |
| <reverse-solidus> | \ | <U005C> | REVERSE SOLIDUS |
| <right-square-bracket> | ] | <U005D> | RIGHT SQUARE BRACKET |
| <circumflex-accent> | ^ | <U005E> | CIRCUMFLEX ACCENT |
| <circumflex> | ^ | <U005E> | CIRCUMFLEX ACCENT |
| <low-line> | _ | <U005F> | LOW LINE |
| <underscore> | _ | <U005F> | LOW LINE |

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| Symbolic Name | Glyph | UCS | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| <grave-accent> | ` | <U0060> | GRAVE ACCENT |
| <a> | a | <U0061> | LATIN SMALL LETTER A |
| <b> | b | <U0062> | LATIN SMALL LETTER B |
| <c> | c | <U0063> | LATIN SMALL LETTER C |
| <d> | d | <U0064> | LATIN SMALL LETTER D |
| <e> | e | <U0065> | LATIN SMALL LETTER E |
| <f> | f | <U0066> | LATIN SMALL LETTER F |
| <g> | g | <U0067> | LATIN SMALL LETTER G |
| <h> | h | <U0068> | LATIN SMALL LETTER H |
| <i> | i | <U0069> | LATIN SMALL LETTER I |
| <j> | j | <U006A> | LATIN SMALL LETTER J |
| <k> | k | <U006B> | LATIN SMALL LETTER K |
| <l> | l | <U006C> | LATIN SMALL LETTER L |
| <m> | m | <U006D> | LATIN SMALL LETTER M |
| <n> | n | <U006E> | LATIN SMALL LETTER N |
| <o> | o | <U006F> | LATIN SMALL LETTER O |
| <p> | p | <U0070> | LATIN SMALL LETTER P |
| <q> | q | <U0071> | LATIN SMALL LETTER Q |
| <r> | r | <U0072> | LATIN SMALL LETTER R |
| <s> | s | <U0073> | LATIN SMALL LETTER S |
| <t> | t | <U0074> | LATIN SMALL LETTER T |
| <u> | u | <U0075> | LATIN SMALL LETTER U |
| <v> | v | <U0076> | LATIN SMALL LETTER V |
| <w> | w | <U0077> | LATIN SMALL LETTER W |
| <x> | x | <U0078> | LATIN SMALL LETTER X |
| <y> | y | <U0079> | LATIN SMALL LETTER Y |
| <z> | z | <U007A> | LATIN SMALL LETTER Z |
| <left-brace> | { | <U007B> | LEFT CURLY BRACKET |
| <left-curly-bracket> | { | <U007B> | LEFT CURLY BRACKET |
| <vertical-line> | \| | <U007C> | VERTICAL LINE |
| <right-brace> | } | <U007D> | RIGHT CURLY BRACKET |
| <right-curly-bracket> | } | <U007D> | RIGHT CURLY BRACKET |
| <tilde> | ~ | <U007E> | TILDE |

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 uses character names other than the above, but only in an informative way; for example, in examples to illustrate the use of characters beyond the portable character set with the facilities of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

Table 6-1 (on page 115) defines the characters in the portable character set and the corresponding symbolic character names used to identify each character in a character set description file. The table contains more than one symbolic character name for characters whose traditional name differs from the chosen name. Characters defined in Table 6-2 (on page 120) may also be used in character set description files.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 places only the following requirements on the encoded values of the characters in the portable character set:

- If the encoded values associated with each member of the portable character set are not invariant across all locales supported by the implementation, if an application accesses any pair of locales where the character encodings differ, or accesses data from an application running in a locale which has different encodings from the application's current locale, the results are unspecified.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

- The encoded values associated with the digits 0 to 9 shall be such that the value of each character after 0 shall be one greater than the value of the previous character.
- A null character, NUL, which has all bits set to zero, shall be in the set of characters.
- The encoded values associated with the members of the portable character set are each represented in a single byte. Moreover, if the value is stored in an object of C-language type **char**, it is guaranteed to be positive (except the NUL, which is always zero).

Conforming implementations shall support certain character and character set attributes, as defined in Section 7.2 (on page 124).

## 6.2 Character Encoding

The POSIX locale contains the characters in Table 6-1 (on page 115), which have the properties listed in Section 7.3.1 (on page 126). In other locales, the presence, meaning, and representation of any additional characters are locale-specific.

In locales other than the POSIX locale, a character may have a state-dependent encoding. There are two types of these encodings:

- A single-shift encoding (where each character not in the initial shift state is preceded by a shift code) can be defined if each shift-code and character sequence is considered a multi-byte character. This is done using the concatenated-constant format in a character set description file, as described in Section 6.4 (on page 119). If the implementation supports a character encoding of this type, all of the standard utilities in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 shall support it. Use of a single-shift encoding with any of the functions in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 that do not specifically mention the effects of state-dependent encoding is implementation-defined.
- A locking-shift encoding (where the state of the character is determined by a shift code that may affect more than the single character following it) cannot be defined with the current character set description file format. Use of a locking-shift encoding with any of the standard utilities in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 or with any of the functions in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 that do not specifically mention the effects of state-dependent encoding is implementation-defined.

While in the initial shift state, all characters in the portable character set shall retain their usual interpretation and shall not alter the shift state. The interpretation for subsequent bytes in the sequence shall be a function of the current shift state. A byte with all bits zero shall be interpreted as the null character independent of shift state. Thus a byte with all bits zero shall never occur in the second or subsequent bytes of a character.

The maximum allowable number of bytes in a character in the current locale shall be indicated by {MB_CUR_MAX}, defined in the **<stdlib.h>** header and by the **<mb_cur_max>** value in a character set description file; see Section 6.4 (on page 119). The implementation's maximum number of bytes in a character shall be defined by the C-language macro {MB_LEN_MAX}.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## 6.3 C Language Wide-Character Codes

In the shell, the standard utilities are written so that the encodings of characters are described by the locale's *LC_CTYPE* definition (see Section 7.3.1 (on page 126)) and there is no differentiation between characters consisting of single octets (8-bit bytes) or multiple bytes. However, in the C language, a differentiation is made. To ease the handling of variable length characters, the C language has introduced the concept of wide-character codes.

All wide-character codes in a given process consist of an equal number of bits. This is in contrast to characters, which can consist of a variable number of bytes. The byte or byte sequence that represents a character can also be represented as a wide-character code. Wide-character codes thus provide a uniform size for manipulating text data. A wide-character code having all bits zero is the null wide-character code (see Section 3.246 (on page 69)), and terminates wide-character strings (see Section 3.432 (on page 95)). The wide-character value for each member of the portable character set shall equal its value when used as the lone character in an integer character constant. Wide-character codes for other characters are locale and implementation-defined. State shift bytes shall not have a wide-character code representation.

## 6.4 Character Set Description File

Implementations shall provide a character set description file for at least one coded character set supported by the implementation. These files are referred to elsewhere in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 as *charmap* files. It is implementation-defined whether or not users or applications can provide additional character set description files.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 does not require that multiple character sets or codesets be supported. Although multiple charmap files are supported, it is the responsibility of the implementation to provide the file or files; if only one is provided, only that one is accessible using the *localedef* utility's **–f** option.

Each character set description file, except those that use the ISO/IEC 10646-1:2000 standard position values as the encoding values, shall define characteristics for the coded character set and the encoding for the characters specified in Table 6-1 (on page 115), and may define encoding for additional characters supported by the implementation. Other information about the coded character set may also be in the file. Coded character set character values shall be defined using symbolic character names followed by character encoding values.

Each symbolic name specified in Table 6-1 (on page 115) shall be included in the file and shall be mapped to a unique coding value, except as noted below. The glyphs '{', '}', '_', '-', '/', '\', '.', and '^' have more than one symbolic name; all symbolic names for each such glyph shall be included, each with identical encoding. If some or all of the control characters identified in Table 6-2 (on page 120) are supported by the implementation, the symbolic names and their corresponding encoding values shall be included in the file. Some of the encodings associated with the symbolic names in Table 6-2 (on page 120) may be the same as characters found in Table 6-1 (on page 115); both names shall be provided for each encoding.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

**Table 6-2** Control Character Set

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| <ACK> | <DC2> | <ENQ> | <FS> | <IS4> | <SOH> |
| <BEL> | <DC3> | <EOT> | <GS> | <LF> | <STX> |
| <BS> | <DC4> | <ESC> | <HT> | <NAK> | <SUB> |
| <CAN> | <DEL> | <ETB> | <IS1> | <RS> | <SYN> |
| <CR> | <DLE> | <ETX> | <IS2> | <SI> | <US> |
| <DC1> | <EM> | <FF> | <IS3> | <SO> | <VT> |

The following declarations can precede the character definitions. Each shall consist of the symbol shown in the following list, starting in column 1, including the surrounding brackets, followed by one or more <blank>s, followed by the value to be assigned to the symbol.

**<code_set_name>** The name of the coded character set for which the character set description file is defined. The characters of the name shall be taken from the set of characters with visible glyphs defined in Table 6-1 (on page 115).

**<mb_cur_max>** The maximum number of bytes in a multi-byte character. This shall default to 1.

**<mb_cur_min>** XSI An unsigned positive integer value that defines the minimum number of bytes in a character for the encoded character set. On XSI-conformant systems, **<mb_cur_min>** shall always be 1.

**<escape_char>** The character used to indicate that the characters following shall be interpreted in a special way, as defined later in this section. This shall default to backslash (`'\'`), which is the character used in all the following text and examples, unless otherwise noted.

**<comment_char>** The character that, when placed in column 1 of a charmap line, is used to indicate that the line shall be ignored. The default character shall be the number sign (`'#'`).

The character set mapping definitions shall be all the lines immediately following an identifier line containing the string `"CHARMAP"` starting in column 1, and preceding a trailer line containing the string `"END CHARMAP"` starting in column 1. Empty lines and lines containing a **<comment_char>** in the first column shall be ignored. Each non-comment line of the character set mapping definition (that is, between the `"CHARMAP"` and `"END CHARMAP"` lines of the file) shall be in either of two forms:

```
"%s %s %s\n", <symbolic-name>, <encoding>, <comments>
```

or:

```
"%s...%s %s %s\n", <symbolic-name>, <symbolic-name>,
    <encoding>, <comments>
```

In the first format, the line in the character set mapping definition shall define a single symbolic name and a corresponding encoding. A symbolic name is one or more characters from the set shown with visible glyphs in Table 6-1 (on page 115), enclosed between angle brackets. A character following an escape character is interpreted as itself; for example, the sequence `"<\\\>>"` represents the symbolic name `"\>"` enclosed between angle brackets.

In the second format, the line in the character set mapping definition shall define a range of one or more symbolic names. In this form, the symbolic names shall consist of zero or more non-numeric characters from the set shown with visible glyphs in Table 6-1 (on page 115), followed by an integer formed by one or more decimal digits. Both integers shall contain the same number of digits. The characters preceding the integer shall be identical in the two symbolic names, and

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

the integer formed by the digits in the second symbolic name shall be equal to or greater than the integer formed by the digits in the first name. This shall be interpreted as a series of symbolic names formed from the common part and each of the integers between the first and the second integer, inclusive. As an example, <j0101>...<j0104> is interpreted as the symbolic names <j0101>, <j0102>, <j0103>, and <j0104>, in that order.

A character set mapping definition line shall exist for all symbolic names specified in Table 6-1 (on page 115), and shall define the coded character value that corresponds to the character indicated in the table, or the coded character value that corresponds to the control character symbolic name. If the control characters commonly associated with the symbolic names in Table 6-2 (on page 120) are supported by the implementation, the symbolic name and the corresponding encoding value shall be included in the file. Additional unique symbolic names may be included. A coded character value can be represented by more than one symbolic name.

The encoding part is expressed as one (for single-byte character values) or more concatenated decimal, octal, or hexadecimal constants in the following formats:

```
"%cd%u", <escape_char>, <decimal byte value>
"%cx%x", <escape_char>, <hexadecimal byte value>
"%c%o", <escape_char>, <octal byte value>
```

Decimal constants shall be represented by two or three decimal digits, preceded by the escape character and the lowercase letter 'd'; for example, "\d05", "\d97", or "\d143". Hexadecimal constants shall be represented by two hexadecimal digits, preceded by the escape character and the lowercase letter 'x'; for example, "\x05", "\x61", or "\x8f". Octal constants shall be represented by two or three octal digits, preceded by the escape character; for example, "\05", "\141", or "\217". In a portable charmap file, each constant represents an 8-bit byte. When constants are concatenated for multi-byte character values, they shall be of the same type, and interpreted in byte order from first to last with the least significant byte of the multi-byte character specified by the last constant. The manner in which these constants are represented in the character stored in the system is implementation-defined. (This notation was chosen for reasons of portability. There is no requirement that the internal representation in the computer memory be in this same order.) Omitting bytes from a multi-byte character definition produces undefined results.

In lines defining ranges of symbolic names, the encoded value shall be the value for the first symbolic name in the range (the symbolic name preceding the ellipsis). Subsequent symbolic names defined by the range shall have encoding values in increasing order. Bytes shall be treated as unsigned octets, and carry shall be propagated between the bytes as necessary to represent the range. For example, the line:

```
<j0101>...<j0104>  \d129\d254
```

is interpreted as:

```
<j0101>            \d129\d254
<j0102>            \d129\d255
<j0103>            \d130\d0
<j0104>            \d130\d1
```

The comment is optional.

The following declarations can follow the character set mapping definitions (after the "END CHARMAP" statement). Each shall consist of the keyword shown in the following list, starting in column 1, followed by the value(s) to be associated to the keyword, as defined below.

**WIDTH** An unsigned positive integer value defining the column width (see Section 3.103 (on page 49)) for the printable characters in the coded character set specified in



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Table 6-1 (on page 115) and Table 6-2 (on page 120). Coded character set character values shall be defined using symbolic character names followed by column width values. Defining a character with more than one **WIDTH** produces undefined results. The **END WIDTH** keyword shall be used to terminate the **WIDTH** definitions. Specifying the width of a non-printable character in a **WIDTH** declaration produces undefined results.

**WIDTH_DEFAULT**

An unsigned positive integer value defining the default column width for any printable character not listed by one of the **WIDTH** keywords. If no **WIDTH_DEFAULT** keyword is included in the charmap, the default character width shall be 1.

**Example**

After the "END CHARMAP" statement, a syntax for a width definition would be:

```
WIDTH
<A> 1
<B> 1
<C>...<Z> 1
...
<foo1>...<foon> 2
...
END WIDTH
```

In this example, the numerical code point values represented by the symbols **<A>** and **<B>** are assigned a width of 1. The code point values **<C>** to **<Z>** inclusive (**<C>**, **<D>**, **<E>**, and so on) are also assigned a width of 1. Using **<A>**...**<Z>** would have required fewer lines, but the alternative was shown to demonstrate flexibility. The keyword **WIDTH_DEFAULT** could have been added as appropriate.

### 6.4.1 State-Dependent Character Encodings

This section addresses the use of state-dependent character encodings (that is, those in which the encoding of a character is dependent on one or more shift codes that may precede it).

A single-shift encoding (where each character not in the initial shift state is preceded by a shift code) can be defined in the charmap format if each shift-code/character sequence is considered a multi-byte character, defined using the concatenated-constant format described in Section 6.4 (on page 119). If the implementation supports a character encoding of this type, all of the standard utilities shall support it. A locking-shift encoding (where the state of the character is determined by a shift code that may affect more than the single character following it) could be defined with an extension to the charmap format described in Section 6.4 (on page 119). If the implementation supports a character encoding of this type, any of the standard utilities that describe character (*versus* byte) or text-file manipulation shall have the following characteristics:

1. The utility shall process the statefully encoded data as a concatenation of state-independent characters. The presence of redundant locking shifts shall not affect the comparison of two statefully encoded strings.
2. A utility that divides, truncates, or extracts substrings from statefully encoded data shall produce output that contains locking shifts at the beginning or end of the resulting data, if appropriate, to retain correct state information.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Chapter 7

# Locale

## 7.1 General

A locale is the definition of the subset of a user's environment that depends on language and cultural conventions. It is made up from one or more categories. Each category is identified by its name and controls specific aspects of the behavior of components of the system. Category names correspond to the following environment variable names:

*LC_CTYPE* Character classification and case conversion.

*LC_COLLATE* Collation order.

*LC_MONETARY* Monetary formatting.

*LC_NUMERIC* Numeric, non-monetary formatting.

*LC_TIME* Date and time formats.

*LC_MESSAGES* Formats of informative and diagnostic messages and interactive responses.

The standard utilities in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 shall base their behavior on the current locale, as defined in the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section for each utility. The behavior of some of the C-language functions defined in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 shall also be modified based on the current locale, as defined by the last call to *setlocale*( ).

Locales other than those supplied by the implementation can be created via the *localedef* utility, provided that the _POSIX2_LOCALEDEF symbol is defined on the system. Even if *localedef* is not provided, all implementations conforming to the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 shall provide one or more locales that behave as described in this chapter. The input to the utility is described in Section 7.3 (on page 124). The value that is used to specify a locale when using environment variables shall be the string specified as the *name* operand to the *localedef* utility when the locale was created. The strings `"C"` and `"POSIX"` are reserved as identifiers for the POSIX locale (see Section 7.2 (on page 124)). When the value of a locale environment variable begins with a slash (`'/'`), it shall be interpreted as the pathname of the locale definition; the type of file (regular, directory, and so on) used to store the locale definition is implementation-defined. If the value does not begin with a slash, the mechanism used to locate the locale is implementation-defined.

If different character sets are used by the locale categories, the results achieved by an application utilizing these categories are undefined. Likewise, if different codesets are used for the data being processed by interfaces whose behavior is dependent on the current locale, or the codeset is different from the codeset assumed when the locale was created, the result is also undefined.

Applications can select the desired locale by invoking the *setlocale*( ) function (or equivalent) with the appropriate value. If the function is invoked with an empty string, such as:

```
setlocale(LC_ALL, "");
```

the value of the corresponding environment variable is used. If the environment variable is unset or is set to the empty string, the implementation shall set the appropriate environment as defined in Chapter 8 (on page 161).



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 7.2 POSIX Locale

Conforming systems shall provide a POSIX locale, also known as the C locale. The behavior of standard utilities and functions in the POSIX locale shall be as if the locale was defined via the *localedef* utility with input data from the POSIX locale tables in Section 7.3.

The tables in Section 7.3 describe the characteristics and behavior of the POSIX locale for data consisting entirely of characters from the portable character set and the control character set. For other characters, the behavior is unspecified. For C-language programs, the POSIX locale shall be the default locale when the *setlocale*( ) function is not called.

The POSIX locale can be specified by assigning to the appropriate environment variables the values `"C"` or `"POSIX"`.

All implementations shall define a locale as the default locale, to be invoked when no environment variables are set, or set to the empty string. This default locale can be the POSIX locale or any other implementation-defined locale. Some implementations may provide facilities for local installation administrators to set the default locale, customizing it for each location. IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 does not require such a facility.

## 7.3 Locale Definition

The capability to specify additional locales to those provided by an implementation is optional, denoted by the _POSIX2_LOCALEDEF symbol. If the option is not supported, only implementation-supplied locales are available. Such locales shall be documented using the format specified in this section.

Locales can be described with the file format presented in this section. The file format is that accepted by the *localedef* utility. For the purposes of this section, the file is referred to as the ‘‘locale definition file’’, but no locales shall be affected by this file unless it is processed by *localedef* or some similar mechanism. Any requirements in this section imposed upon the utility shall apply to *localedef* or to any other similar utility used to install locale information using the locale definition file format described here.

The locale definition file shall contain one or more locale category source definitions, and shall not contain more than one definition for the same locale category. If the file contains source definitions for more than one category, implementation-defined categories, if present, shall appear after the categories defined by Section 7.1 (on page 123). A category source definition contains either the definition of a category or a **copy** directive. For a description of the **copy** directive, see *localedef*. In the event that some of the information for a locale category, as specified in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, is missing from the locale source definition, the behavior of that category, if it is referenced, is unspecified.

A category source definition shall consist of a category header, a category body, and a category trailer. A category header shall consist of the character string naming of the category, beginning with the characters *LC_*. The category trailer shall consist of the string `"END"`, followed by one or more <blank>s and the string used in the corresponding category header.

The category body shall consist of one or more lines of text. Each line shall contain an identifier, optionally followed by one or more operands. Identifiers shall be either keywords, identifying a particular locale element, or collating elements. In addition to the keywords defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, the source can contain implementation-defined keywords. Each keyword within a locale shall have a unique name (that is, two categories cannot have a commonly-named keyword); no keyword shall start with the characters *LC_*. Identifiers shall be separated from the operands by one or more <blank>s.

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Operands shall be characters, collating elements, or strings of characters. Strings shall be enclosed in double-quotes. Literal double-quotes within strings shall be preceded by the <*escape character*>, described below. When a keyword is followed by more than one operand, the operands shall be separated by semicolons; <blank>s shall be allowed both before and after a semicolon.

The first category header in the file can be preceded by a line modifying the comment character. It shall have the following format, starting in column 1:

```
"comment_char %c\n", <comment character>
```

The comment character shall default to the number sign (`'#'`). Blank lines and lines containing the <*comment character*> in the first position shall be ignored.

The first category header in the file can be preceded by a line modifying the escape character to be used in the file. It shall have the following format, starting in column 1:

```
"escape_char %c\n", <escape character>
```

The escape character shall default to backslash, which is the character used in all examples shown in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

A line can be continued by placing an escape character as the last character on the line; this continuation character shall be discarded from the input. Although the implementation need not accept any one portion of a continued line with a length exceeding {LINE_MAX} bytes, it shall place no limits on the accumulated length of the continued line. Comment lines shall not be continued on a subsequent line using an escaped <newline>.

Individual characters, characters in strings, and collating elements shall be represented using symbolic names, as defined below. In addition, characters can be represented using the characters themselves or as octal, hexadecimal, or decimal constants. When non-symbolic notation is used, the resultant locale definitions are in many cases not portable between systems. The left angle bracket (`'<'`) is a reserved symbol, denoting the start of a symbolic name; when used to represent itself it shall be preceded by the escape character. The following rules apply to character representation:

1. A character can be represented via a symbolic name, enclosed within angle brackets `'<'` and `'>'`. The symbolic name, including the angle brackets, shall exactly match a symbolic name defined in the charmap file specified via the *localedef* **–f** option, and it shall be replaced by a character value determined from the value associated with the symbolic name in the charmap file. The use of a symbolic name not found in the charmap file shall constitute an error, unless the category is *LC_CTYPE* or *LC_COLLATE*, in which case it shall constitute a warning condition (see *localedef* for a description of actions resulting from errors and warnings). The specification of a symbolic name in a **collating-element** or **collating-symbol** section that duplicates a symbolic name in the charmap file (if present) shall be an error. Use of the escape character or a right angle bracket within a symbolic name is invalid unless the character is preceded by the escape character.

   For example:

   ```
   <c>;<c–cedilla>  "<M><a><y>"
   ```

2. A character in the portable character set can be represented by the character itself, in which case the value of the character is implementation-defined. (Implementations may allow other characters to be represented as themselves, but such locale definitions are not portable.) Within a string, the double-quote character, the escape character, and the right angle bracket character shall be escaped (preceded by the escape character) to be interpreted as the character itself. Outside strings, the characters:



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

4049 `,` `;` `<` `>` *`escape_char`*

4050 shall be escaped to be interpreted as the character itself.

4051 For example:

4052 `c "May"`

4053 3. A character can be represented as an octal constant. An octal constant shall be specified as
4054 the escape character followed by two or three octal digits. Each constant shall represent a
4055 byte value. Multi-byte values can be represented by concatenated constants specified in
4056 byte order with the last constant specifying the least significant byte of the character.

4057 For example:

4058 `\143;\347;\143\150 "\115\141\171"`

4059 4. A character can be represented as a hexadecimal constant. A hexadecimal constant shall be
4060 specified as the escape character followed by an `'x'` followed by two hexadecimal digits.
4061 Each constant shall represent a byte value. Multi-byte values can be represented by
4062 concatenated constants specified in byte order with the last constant specifying the least
4063 significant byte of the character.

4064 For example:

4065 `\x63;\xe7;\x63\x68 "\x4d\x61\x79"`

4066 5. A character can be represented as a decimal constant. A decimal constant shall be specified
4067 as the escape character followed by a `'d'` followed by two or three decimal digits. Each
4068 constant represents a byte value. Multi-byte values can be represented by concatenated
4069 constants specified in byte order with the last constant specifying the least significant byte
4070 of the character.

4071 For example:

4072 `\d99;\d231;\d99\d104 "\d77\d97\d121"`

4073 Implementations may accept single-digit octal, decimal, or hexadecimal constants following the
4074 escape character. Only characters existing in the character set for which the locale definition is
4075 created shall be specified, whether using symbolic names, the characters themselves, or octal,
4076 decimal, or hexadecimal constants. If a charmap file is present, only characters defined in the
4077 charmap can be specified using octal, decimal, or hexadecimal constants. Symbolic names not
4078 present in the charmap file can be specified and shall be ignored, as specified under item 1
4079 above.

4080 ### 7.3.1 LC_CTYPE

4081 The *LC_CTYPE* category shall define character classification, case conversion, and other
4082 character attributes. In addition, a series of characters can be represented by three adjacent
4083 periods representing an ellipsis symbol (`"..."`). The ellipsis specification shall be interpreted as
4084 meaning that all values between the values preceding and following it represent valid
4085 characters. The ellipsis specification shall be valid only within a single encoded character set;
4086 that is, within a group of characters of the same size. An ellipsis shall be interpreted as including
4087 in the list all characters with an encoded value higher than the encoded value of the character
4088 preceding the ellipsis and lower than the encoded value of the character following the ellipsis.

4089 For example:

4090 `\x30;...;\x39;`

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

includes in the character class all characters with encoded values between the endpoints.

The following keywords shall be recognized. In the descriptions, the term ''automatically included'' means that it shall not be an error either to include or omit any of the referenced characters; the implementation provides them if missing (even if the entire keyword is missing) and accepts them silently if present. When the implementation automatically includes a missing character, it shall have an encoded value dependent on the charmap file in effect (see the description of the *localedef* **–f** option); otherwise, it shall have a value derived from an implementation-defined character mapping.

The character classes **digit**, **xdigit**, **lower**, **upper**, and **space** have a set of automatically included characters. These only need to be specified if the character values (that is, encoding) differ from the implementation default values. It is not possible to define a locale without these automatically included characters unless some implementation extension is used to prevent their inclusion. Such a definition would not be a proper superset of the C or POSIX locale and, thus, it might not be possible for conforming applications to work properly.

**copy** Specify the name of an existing locale which shall be used as the definition of this category. If this keyword is specified, no other keyword shall be specified.

**upper** Define characters to be classified as uppercase letters.

In the POSIX locale, the 26 uppercase letters shall be included:

```
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
```

In a locale definition file, no character specified for the keywords **cntrl**, **digit**, **punct**, or **space** shall be specified. The uppercase letters <A> to <Z>, as defined in Section 6.4 (on page 119) (the portable character set), are automatically included in this class.

**lower** Define characters to be classified as lowercase letters.

In the POSIX locale, the 26 lowercase letters shall be included:

```
a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
```

In a locale definition file, no character specified for the keywords **cntrl**, **digit**, **punct**, or **space** shall be specified. The lowercase letters <a> to <z> of the portable character set are automatically included in this class.

**alpha** Define characters to be classified as letters.

In the POSIX locale, all characters in the classes **upper** and **lower** shall be included.

In a locale definition file, no character specified for the keywords **cntrl**, **digit**, **punct**, or **space** shall be specified. Characters classified as either **upper** or **lower** are automatically included in this class.

**digit** Define the characters to be classified as numeric digits.

In the POSIX locale, only:

```
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
```

shall be included.

In a locale definition file, only the digits <zero>, <one>, <two>, <three>, <four>, <five>, <six>, <seven>, <eight>, and <nine> shall be specified, and in contiguous ascending sequence by numerical value. The digits <zero> to <nine> of the portable character set are automatically included in this class.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

**alnum** Define characters to be classified as letters and numeric digits. Only the characters specified for the **alpha** and **digit** keywords shall be specified. Characters specified for the keywords **alpha** and **digit** are automatically included in this class.

**space** Define characters to be classified as white-space characters.

In the POSIX locale, at a minimum, the <space>, <form-feed>, <newline>, <carriage-return>, <tab>, and <vertical-tab> shall be included.

In a locale definition file, no character specified for the keywords **upper**, **lower**, **alpha**, **digit**, **graph**, or **xdigit** shall be specified. The <space>, <form-feed>, <newline>, <carriage-return>, <tab>, and <vertical-tab> of the portable character set, and any characters included in the class **blank** are automatically included in this class.

**cntrl** Define characters to be classified as control characters.

In the POSIX locale, no characters in classes **alpha** or **print** shall be included.

In a locale definition file, no character specified for the keywords **upper**, **lower**, **alpha**, **digit**, **punct**, **graph**, **print**, or **xdigit** shall be specified.

**punct** Define characters to be classified as punctuation characters.

In the POSIX locale, neither the <space> nor any characters in classes **alpha**, **digit**, or **cntrl** shall be included.

In a locale definition file, no character specified for the keywords **upper**, **lower**, **alpha**, **digit**, **cntrl**, **xdigit**, or as the <space> shall be specified.

**graph** Define characters to be classified as printable characters, not including the <space>.

In the POSIX locale, all characters in classes **alpha**, **digit**, and **punct** shall be included; no characters in class **cntrl** shall be included.

In a locale definition file, characters specified for the keywords **upper**, **lower**, **alpha**, **digit**, **xdigit**, and **punct** are automatically included in this class. No character specified for the keyword **cntrl** shall be specified.

**print** Define characters to be classified as printable characters, including the <space>.

In the POSIX locale, all characters in class **graph** shall be included; no characters in class **cntrl** shall be included.

In a locale definition file, characters specified for the keywords **upper**, **lower**, **alpha**, **digit**, **xdigit**, **punct, graph**, and the <space> are automatically included in this class. No character specified for the keyword **cntrl** shall be specified.

**xdigit** Define the characters to be classified as hexadecimal digits.

In the POSIX locale, only:

```
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D E F a b c d e f
```

shall be included.

In a locale definition file, only the characters defined for the class **digit** shall be specified, in contiguous ascending sequence by numerical value, followed by one or more sets of six characters representing the hexadecimal digits 10 to 15


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

inclusive, with each set in ascending order (for example, <A>, <B>, <C>, <D>, <E>, <F>, <a>, <b>, <c>, <d>, <e>, <f>). The digits <zero> to <nine>, the uppercase letters <A> to <F>, and the lowercase letters <a> to <f> of the portable character set are automatically included in this class.

**blank** Define characters to be classified as <blank>s.

In the POSIX locale, only the <space> and <tab> shall be included.

In a locale definition file, the <space> and <tab> are automatically included in this class.

**charclass** Define one or more locale-specific character class names as strings separated by semicolons. Each named character class can then be defined subsequently in the *LC_CTYPE* definition. A character class name shall consist of at least one and at most {CHARCLASS_NAME_MAX} bytes of alphanumeric characters from the portable filename character set. The first character of a character class name shall not be a digit. The name shall not match any of the *LC_CTYPE* keywords defined in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. Future revisions of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 will not specify any *LC_CTYPE* keywords containing uppercase letters.

*charclass-name* Define characters to be classified as belonging to the named locale-specific character class. In the POSIX locale, locale-specific named character classes need not exist.

If a class name is defined by a **charclass** keyword, but no characters are subsequently assigned to it, this is not an error; it represents a class without any characters belonging to it.

The *charclass-name* can be used as the *property* argument to the *wctype*( ) function, in regular expression and shell pattern-matching bracket expressions, and by the *tr* command.

**toupper** Define the mapping of lowercase letters to uppercase letters.

In the POSIX locale, at a minimum, the 26 lowercase characters:

```
a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
```

shall be mapped to the corresponding 26 uppercase characters:

```
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
```

In a locale definition file, the operand shall consist of character pairs, separated by semicolons. The characters in each character pair shall be separated by a comma and the pair enclosed by parentheses. The first character in each pair is the lowercase letter, the second the corresponding uppercase letter. Only characters specified for the keywords **lower** and **upper** shall be specified. The lowercase letters <a> to <z>, and their corresponding uppercase letters <A> to <Z>, of the portable character set are automatically included in this mapping, but only when the **toupper** keyword is omitted from the locale definition.

**tolower** Define the mapping of uppercase letters to lowercase letters.

In the POSIX locale, at a minimum, the 26 uppercase characters:

```
A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

shall be mapped to the corresponding 26 lowercase characters:

```
a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z
```

In a locale definition file, the operand shall consist of character pairs, separated by semicolons. The characters in each character pair shall be separated by a comma and the pair enclosed by parentheses. The first character in each pair is the uppercase letter, the second the corresponding lowercase letter. Only characters specified for the keywords **lower** and **upper** shall be specified. If the **tolower** keyword is omitted from the locale definition, the mapping is the reverse mapping of the one specified for **toupper**.

The following table shows the character class combinations allowed:

**Table 7-1** Valid Character Class Combinations

| | **Can Also Belong To** | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **In Class** | **upper** | **lower** | **alpha** | **digit** | **space** | **cntrl** | **punct** | **graph** | **print** | **xdigit** | **blank** |
| **upper** | | — | A | x | x | x | x | A | A | — | x |
| **lower** | — | | A | x | x | x | x | A | A | — | x |
| **alpha** | — | — | | x | x | x | x | A | A | — | x |
| **digit** | x | x | x | | x | x | x | A | A | A | x |
| **space** | x | x | x | x | | — | * | * | * | x | — |
| **cntrl** | x | x | x | x | — | | x | x | x | x | — |
| **punct** | x | x | x | x | — | x | | A | A | x | — |
| **graph** | — | — | — | — | — | x | — | | A | — | — |
| **print** | — | — | — | — | — | x | — | — | | — | — |
| **xdigit** | — | — | — | — | x | x | x | A | A | | x |
| **blank** | x | x | x | x | A | — | * | * | * | x | |

**Notes:**

1. Explanation of codes:

   A Automatically included; see text.

   — Permitted.

   x Mutually-exclusive.

   * See note 2.

2. The <space>, which is part of the **space** and **blank** classes, cannot belong to **punct** or **graph**, but shall automatically belong to the **print** class. Other **space** or **blank** characters can be classified as any of **punct**, **graph**, or **print**.

#### *7.3.1.1 LC_CTYPE Category in the POSIX Locale*

The character classifications for the POSIX locale follow; the code listing depicts the *localedef* input, and the table represents the same information, sorted by character.

```
LC_CTYPE
# The following is the POSIX locale LC_CTYPE.
# "alpha" is by default "upper" and "lower"
# "alnum" is by definition "alpha" and "digit"
# "print" is by default "alnum", "punct", and the <space>
# "graph" is by default "alnum" and "punct"
#
upper    <A>;<B>;<C>;<D>;<E>;<F>;<G>;<H>;<I>;<J>;<K>;<L>;<M>;\
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
4263                <N>;<O>;<P>;<Q>;<R>;<S>;<T>;<U>;<V>;<W>;<X>;<Y>;<Z>
4264        #
4265        lower   <a>;<b>;<c>;<d>;<e>;<f>;<g>;<h>;<i>;<j>;<k>;<l>;<m>;\
4266                <n>;<o>;<p>;<q>;<r>;<s>;<t>;<u>;<v>;<w>;<x>;<y>;<z>
4267        #
4268        digit   <zero>;<one>;<two>;<three>;<four>;<five>;<six>;\
4269                <seven>;<eight>;<nine>
4270        #
4271        space   <tab>;<newline>;<vertical-tab>;<form-feed>;\
4272                <carriage-return>;<space>
4273        #
4274        cntrl   <alert>;<backspace>;<tab>;<newline>;<vertical-tab>;\
4275                <form-feed>;<carriage-return>;\
4276                <NUL>;<SOH>;<STX>;<ETX>;<EOT>;<ENQ>;<ACK>;<SO>;\
4277                <SI>;<DLE>;<DC1>;<DC2>;<DC3>;<DC4>;<NAK>;<SYN>;\
4278                <ETB>;<CAN>;<EM>;<SUB>;<ESC>;<IS4>;<IS3>;<IS2>;\
4279                <IS1>;<DEL>
4280        #
4281        punct   <exclamation-mark>;<quotation-mark>;<number-sign>;\
4282                <dollar-sign>;<percent-sign>;<ampersand>;<apostrophe>;\
4283                <left-parenthesis>;<right-parenthesis>;<asterisk>;\
4284                <plus-sign>;<comma>;<hyphen>;<period>;<slash>;\
4285                <colon>;<semicolon>;<less-than-sign>;<equals-sign>;\
4286                <greater-than-sign>;<question-mark>;<commercial-at>;\
4287                <left-square-bracket>;<backslash>;<right-square-bracket>;\
4288                <circumflex>;<underscore>;<grave-accent>;<left-curly-bracket>;\
4289                <vertical-line>;<right-curly-bracket>;<tilde>
4290        #
4291        xdigit  <zero>;<one>;<two>;<three>;<four>;<five>;<six>;<seven>;\
4292                <eight>;<nine>;<A>;<B>;<C>;<D>;<E>;<F>;<a>;<b>;<c>;<d>;<e>;<f>
4293        #
4294        blank   <space>;<tab>
4295        #
4296        toupper (<a>,<A>);(<b>,<B>);(<c>,<C>);(<d>,<D>);(<e>,<E>);\
4297                (<f>,<F>);(<g>,<G>);(<h>,<H>);(<i>,<I>);(<j>,<J>);\
4298                (<k>,<K>);(<l>,<L>);(<m>,<M>);(<n>,<N>);(<o>,<O>);\
4299                (<p>,<P>);(<q>,<Q>);(<r>,<R>);(<s>,<S>);(<t>,<T>);\
4300                (<u>,<U>);(<v>,<V>);(<w>,<W>);(<x>,<X>);(<y>,<Y>);(<z>,<Z>)
4301        #
4302        tolower (<A>,<a>);(<B>,<b>);(<C>,<c>);(<D>,<d>);(<E>,<e>);\
4303                (<F>,<f>);(<G>,<g>);(<H>,<h>);(<I>,<i>);(<J>,<j>);\
4304                (<K>,<k>);(<L>,<l>);(<M>,<m>);(<N>,<n>);(<O>,<o>);\
4305                (<P>,<p>);(<Q>,<q>);(<R>,<r>);(<S>,<s>);(<T>,<t>);\
4306                (<U>,<u>);(<V>,<v>);(<W>,<w>);(<X>,<x>);(<Y>,<y>);(<Z>,<z>)
4307        END LC_CTYPE
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| Symbolic Name | Other Case | Character Classes |
|---|---|---|
| <NUL> | | **cntrl** |
| <SOH> | | **cntrl** |
| <STX> | | **cntrl** |
| <ETX> | | **cntrl** |
| <EOT> | | **cntrl** |
| <ENQ> | | **cntrl** |
| <ACK> | | **cntrl** |
| <alert> | | **cntrl** |
| <backspace> | | **cntrl** |
| <tab> | | **cntrl, space, blank** |
| <newline> | | **cntrl, space** |
| <vertical-tab> | | **cntrl, space** |
| <form-feed> | | **cntrl, space** |
| <carriage-return> | | **cntrl, space** |
| <SO> | | **cntrl** |
| <SI> | | **cntrl** |
| <DLE> | | **cntrl** |
| <DC1> | | **cntrl** |
| <DC2> | | **cntrl** |
| <DC3> | | **cntrl** |
| <DC4> | | **cntrl** |
| <NAK> | | **cntrl** |
| <SYN> | | **cntrl** |
| <ETB> | | **cntrl** |
| <CAN> | | **cntrl** |
| <EM> | | **cntrl** |
| <SUB> | | **cntrl** |
| <ESC> | | **cntrl** |
| <IS4> | | **cntrl** |
| <IS3> | | **cntrl** |
| <IS2> | | **cntrl** |
| <IS1> | | **cntrl** |
| <space> | | **space, print, blank** |
| <exclamation-mark> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <quotation-mark> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <number-sign> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <dollar-sign> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <percent-sign> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <ampersand> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <apostrophe> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <left-parenthesis> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <right-parenthesis> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <asterisk> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <plus-sign> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <comma> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <hyphen> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <period> | | **punct, print, graph** |


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| Symbolic Name | Other Case | Character Classes |
|---|---|---|
| <slash> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <zero> | | **digit, xdigit, print, graph** |
| <one> | | **digit, xdigit, print, graph** |
| <two> | | **digit, xdigit, print, graph** |
| <three> | | **digit, xdigit, print, graph** |
| <four> | | **digit, xdigit, print, graph** |
| <five> | | **digit, xdigit, print, graph** |
| <six> | | **digit, xdigit, print, graph** |
| <seven> | | **digit, xdigit, print, graph** |
| <eight> | | **digit, xdigit, print, graph** |
| <nine> | | **digit, xdigit, print, graph** |
| <colon> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <semicolon> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <less-than-sign> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <equals-sign> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <greater-than-sign> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <question-mark> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <commercial-at> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <A> | <a> | **upper, xdigit, alpha, print, graph** |
| <B> | <b> | **upper, xdigit, alpha, print, graph** |
| <C> | <c> | **upper, xdigit, alpha, print, graph** |
| <D> | <d> | **upper, xdigit, alpha, print, graph** |
| <E> | <e> | **upper, xdigit, alpha, print, graph** |
| <F> | <f> | **upper, xdigit, alpha, print, graph** |
| <G> | <g> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <H> | <h> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <I> | <i> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <J> | <j> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <K> | <k> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <L> | <l> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <M> | <m> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <N> | <n> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <O> | <o> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <P> | <p> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <Q> | <q> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <R> | <r> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <S> | <s> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <T> | <t> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <U> | <u> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <V> | <v> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <W> | <w> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <X> | <x> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <Y> | <y> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <Z> | <z> | **upper, alpha, print, graph** |
| <left-square-bracket> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <backslash> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <right-square-bracket> | | **punct, print, graph** |



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

| Symbolic Name | Other Case | Character Classes |
|---|---|---|
| <circumflex> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <underscore> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <grave-accent> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <a> | <A> | **lower, xdigit, alpha, print, graph** |
| <b> | <B> | **lower, xdigit, alpha, print, graph** |
| <c> | <C> | **lower, xdigit, alpha, print, graph** |
| <d> | <D> | **lower, xdigit, alpha, print, graph** |
| <e> | <E> | **lower, xdigit, alpha, print, graph** |
| <f> | <F> | **lower, xdigit, alpha, print, graph** |
| <g> | <G> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <h> | <H> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <i> | <I> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <j> | <J> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <k> | <K> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <l> | <L> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <m> | <M> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <n> | <N> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <o> | <O> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <p> | <P> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <q> | <Q> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <r> | <R> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <s> | <S> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <t> | <T> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <u> | <U> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <v> | <V> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <w> | <W> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <x> | <X> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <y> | <Y> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <z> | <Z> | **lower, alpha, print, graph** |
| <left-curly-bracket> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <vertical-line> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <right-curly-bracket> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <tilde> | | **punct, print, graph** |
| <DEL> | | **cntrl** |

### 7.3.2 LC_COLLATE

The *LC_COLLATE* category provides a collation sequence definition for numerous utilities in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 (*sort*, *uniq*, and so on), regular expression matching (see Chapter 9 (on page 169)), and the *strcoll*( ), *strxfrm*( ), *wcscoll*( ), and *wcsxfrm*( ) functions in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

A collation sequence definition shall define the relative order between collating elements (characters and multi-character collating elements) in the locale. This order is expressed in terms of collation values; that is, by assigning each element one or more collation values (also known as collation weights). This does not imply that implementations shall assign such values, but that ordering of strings using the resultant collation definition in the locale behaves as if such assignment is done and used in the collation process. At least the following capabilities are provided:

1. **Multi-character collating elements**. Specification of multi-character collating elements (that is, sequences of two or more characters to be collated as an entity).

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

2. **User-defined ordering of collating elements**. Each collating element shall be assigned a collation value defining its order in the character (or basic) collation sequence. This ordering is used by regular expressions and pattern matching and, unless collation weights are explicitly specified, also as the collation weight to be used in sorting.

3. **Multiple weights and equivalence classes**. Collating elements can be assigned one or more (up to the limit {COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX}, as defined in **<limits.h>**) collating weights for use in sorting. The first weight is hereafter referred to as the primary weight.

4. **One-to-many mapping**. A single character is mapped into a string of collating elements.

5. **Equivalence class definition**. Two or more collating elements have the same collation value (primary weight).

6. **Ordering by weights**. When two strings are compared to determine their relative order, the two strings are first broken up into a series of collating elements; the elements in each successive pair of elements are then compared according to the relative primary weights for the elements. If equal, and more than one weight has been assigned, then the pairs of collating elements are re-compared according to the relative subsequent weights, until either a pair of collating elements compare unequal or the weights are exhausted.

The following keywords shall be recognized in a collation sequence definition. They are described in detail in the following sections.

**copy** Specify the name of an existing locale which shall be used as the definition of this category. If this keyword is specified, no other keyword shall be specified.

**collating-element** Define a collating-element symbol representing a multi-character collating element. This keyword is optional.

**collating-symbol** Define a collating symbol for use in collation order statements. This keyword is optional.

**order_start** Define collation rules. This statement shall be followed by one or more collation order statements, assigning character collation values and collation weights to collating elements.

**order_end** Specify the end of the collation-order statements.

#### *7.3.2.1 The collating-element Keyword*

In addition to the collating elements in the character set, the **collating-element** keyword can be used to define multi-character collating elements. The syntax is as follows:

```
"collating-element %s from \"%s\"\n", <collating-symbol>, <string>
```

The <*collating-symbol*> operand shall be a symbolic name, enclosed between angle brackets (`'<'` and `'>'`), and shall not duplicate any symbolic name in the current charmap file (if any), or any other symbolic name defined in this collation definition. The string operand is a string of two or more characters that collates as an entity. A <*collating-element*> defined via this keyword is only recognized with the *LC_COLLATE* category.

For example:

```
collating-element <ch> from "<c><h>"
collating-element <e-acute> from "<acute><e>"
collating-element <ll> from "ll"
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

4498 *7.3.2.2 The collating-symbol Keyword*

4499 This keyword shall be used to define symbols for use in collation sequence statements; that is,
4500 between the **order_start** and the **order_end** keywords. The syntax is as follows:

4501 `"collating-symbol %s\n", <collating-symbol>`

4502 The <*collating-symbol*> shall be a symbolic name, enclosed between angle brackets (`'<'` and
4503 `'>'`), and shall not duplicate any symbolic name in the current charmap file (if any), or any
4504 other symbolic name defined in this collation definition. A <*collating-symbol*> defined via this
4505 keyword is only recognized within the *LC_COLLATE* category.

4506 For example:

```
4507 collating-symbol <UPPER_CASE>
4508 collating-symbol <HIGH>
```

4509 The **collating-symbol** keyword defines a symbolic name that can be associated with a relative
4510 position in the character order sequence. While such a symbolic name does not represent any
4511 collating element, it can be used as a weight.

4512 *7.3.2.3 The order_start Keyword*

4513 The **order_start** keyword shall precede collation order entries and also define the number of
4514 weights for this collation sequence definition and other collation rules. The syntax is as follows:

4515 `"order_start %s;%s;...;%s\n", <sort-rules>, <sort-rules> ...`

4516 The operands to the **order_start** keyword are optional. If present, the operands define rules to be
4517 applied when strings are compared. The number of operands define how many weights each
4518 element is assigned; if no operands are present, one **forward** operand is assumed. If present, the
4519 first operand defines rules to be applied when comparing strings using the first (primary)
4520 weight; the second when comparing strings using the second weight, and so on. Operands shall
4521 be separated by semicolons (`';'`). Each operand shall consist of one or more collation
4522 directives, separated by commas (`','`). If the number of operands exceeds the
4523 {COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX} limit, the utility shall issue a warning message. The following
4524 directives shall be supported:

4525 **forward** Specifies that comparison operations for the weight level shall proceed from start
4526 of string towards the end of string.

4527 **backward** Specifies that comparison operations for the weight level shall proceed from end of
4528 string towards the beginning of string.

4529 **position** Specifies that comparison operations for the weight level shall consider the relative
4530 position of elements in the strings not subject to **IGNORE**. The string containing
4531 an element not subject to **IGNORE** after the fewest collating elements subject to
4532 **IGNORE** from the start of the compare shall collate first. If both strings contain a
4533 character not subject to **IGNORE** in the same relative position, the collating values
4534 assigned to the elements shall determine the ordering. In case of equality,
4535 subsequent characters not subject to **IGNORE** shall be considered in the same
4536 manner.

4537 The directives **forward** and **backward** are mutually-exclusive.

4538 If no operands are specified, a single **forward** operand shall be assumed.

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

For example:

```
order_start     forward;backward
```

### *7.3.2.4 Collation Order*

The **order_start** keyword shall be followed by collating identifier entries. The syntax for the collating element entries is as follows:

```
"%s %s;%s;...;%s\n", <collating-identifier>, <weight>, <weight>, ...
```

Each *collating-identifier* shall consist of either a character (in any of the forms defined in Section 7.3 (on page 124)), a <*collating-element*>, a <*collating-symbol*>, an ellipsis, or the special symbol **UNDEFINED**. The order in which collating elements are specified determines the character order sequence, such that each collating element shall compare less than the elements following it.

A <*collating-element*> shall be used to specify multi-character collating elements, and indicates that the character sequence specified via the <*collating-element*> is to be collated as a unit and in the relative order specified by its place.

A <*collating-symbol*> can be used to define a position in the relative order for use in weights. No weights shall be specified with a <*collating-symbol*>.

The ellipsis symbol specifies that a sequence of characters shall collate according to their encoded character values. It shall be interpreted as indicating that all characters with a coded character set value higher than the value of the character in the preceding line, and lower than the coded character set value for the character in the following line, in the current coded character set, shall be placed in the character collation order between the previous and the following character in ascending order according to their coded character set values. An initial ellipsis shall be interpreted as if the preceding line specified the NUL character, and a trailing ellipsis as if the following line specified the highest coded character set value in the current coded character set. An ellipsis shall be treated as invalid if the preceding or following lines do not specify characters in the current coded character set. The use of the ellipsis symbol ties the definition to a specific coded character set and may preclude the definition from being portable between implementations.

The symbol **UNDEFINED** shall be interpreted as including all coded character set values not specified explicitly or via the ellipsis symbol. Such characters shall be inserted in the character collation order at the point indicated by the symbol, and in ascending order according to their coded character set values. If no **UNDEFINED** symbol is specified, and the current coded character set contains characters not specified in this section, the utility shall issue a warning message and place such characters at the end of the character collation order.

The optional operands for each collation-element shall be used to define the primary, secondary, or subsequent weights for the collating element. The first operand specifies the relative primary weight, the second the relative secondary weight, and so on. Two or more collation-elements can be assigned the same weight; they belong to the same ‘‘equivalence class’’ if they have the same primary weight. Collation shall behave as if, for each weight level, elements subject to **IGNORE** are removed, unless the **position** collation directive is specified for the corresponding level with the **order_start** keyword. Then each successive pair of elements shall be compared according to the relative weights for the elements. If the two strings compare equal, the process shall be repeated for the next weight level, up to the limit {COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX}.

Weights shall be expressed as characters (in any of the forms specified in Section 7.3 (on page 124)), <*collating-symbol*>s, <*collating-element*>s, an ellipsis, or the special symbol **IGNORE**. A single character, a <*collating-symbol*>, or a <*collating-element*> shall represent the relative position



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

in the character collating sequence of the character or symbol, rather than the character or characters themselves. Thus, rather than assigning absolute values to weights, a particular weight is expressed using the relative order value assigned to a collating element based on its order in the character collation sequence.

One-to-many mapping is indicated by specifying two or more concatenated characters or symbolic names. For example, if the <eszet> is given the string `"<s><s>"` as a weight, comparisons are performed as if all occurrences of the <eszet> are replaced by `"<s><s>"` (assuming that `"<s>"` has the collating weight `"<s>"`). If it is necessary to define <eszet> and `"<s><s>"` as an equivalence class, then a collating element must be defined for the string `"ss"`.

All characters specified via an ellipsis shall by default be assigned unique weights, equal to the relative order of characters. Characters specified via an explicit or implicit **UNDEFINED** special symbol shall by default be assigned the same primary weight (that is, they belong to the same equivalence class). An ellipsis symbol as a weight shall be interpreted to mean that each character in the sequence shall have unique weights, equal to the relative order of their character in the character collation sequence. The use of the ellipsis as a weight shall be treated as an error if the collating element is neither an ellipsis nor the special symbol **UNDEFINED**.

The special keyword **IGNORE** as a weight shall indicate that when strings are compared using the weights at the level where **IGNORE** is specified, the collating element shall be ignored; that is, as if the string did not contain the collating element. In regular expressions and pattern matching, all characters that are subject to **IGNORE** in their primary weight form an equivalence class.

An empty operand shall be interpreted as the collating element itself.

For example, the order statement:

```
<a>     <a>;<a>
```

is equal to:

```
<a>
```

An ellipsis can be used as an operand if the collating element was an ellipsis, and shall be interpreted as the value of each character defined by the ellipsis.

The collation order as defined in this section affects the interpretation of bracket expressions in regular expressions (see Section 9.3.5 (on page 172)).

For example:


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
order_start  forward;backward
UNDEFINED    IGNORE;IGNORE
<LOW>
<space>      <LOW>;<space>
...          <LOW>;...
<a>          <a>;<a>
<a-acute>    <a>;<a-acute>
<a-grave>    <a>;<a-grave>
<A>          <a>;<A>
<A-acute>    <a>;<A-acute>
<A-grave>    <a>;<A-grave>
<ch>         <ch>;<ch>
<Ch>         <ch>;<Ch>
<s>          <s>;<s>
<eszet>      "<s><s>";"<eszet><eszet>"
order_end
```

This example is interpreted as follows:

1. The **UNDEFINED** means that all characters not specified in this definition (explicitly or via the ellipsis) shall be ignored for collation purposes.
2. All characters between <space> and 'a' shall have the same primary equivalence class and individual secondary weights based on their ordinal encoded values.
3. All characters based on the uppercase or lowercase character 'a' belong to the same primary equivalence class.
4. The multi-character collating element <ch> is represented by the collating symbol <ch> and belongs to the same primary equivalence class as the multi-character collating element <Ch>.

#### *7.3.2.5 The order_end Keyword*

The collating order entries shall be terminated with an **order_end** keyword.

#### *7.3.2.6 LC_COLLATE Category in the POSIX Locale*

The collation sequence definition of the POSIX locale follows; the code listing depicts the *localedef* input.

```
LC_COLLATE
# This is the POSIX locale definition for the LC_COLLATE category.
# The order is the same as in the ASCII codeset.
order_start forward
<NUL>
<SOH>
<STX>
<ETX>
<EOT>
<ENQ>
<ACK>
<alert>
<backspace>
<tab>
<newline>
```



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
4662        <vertical-tab>
4663        <form-feed>
4664        <carriage-return>
4665        <SO>
4666        <SI>
4667        <DLE>
4668        <DC1>
4669        <DC2>
4670        <DC3>
4671        <DC4>
4672        <NAK>
4673        <SYN>
4674        <ETB>
4675        <CAN>
4676        <EM>
4677        <SUB>
4678        <ESC>
4679        <IS4>
4680        <IS3>
4681        <IS2>
4682        <IS1>
4683        <space>
4684        <exclamation-mark>
4685        <quotation-mark>
4686        <number-sign>
4687        <dollar-sign>
4688        <percent-sign>
4689        <ampersand>
4690        <apostrophe>
4691        <left-parenthesis>
4692        <right-parenthesis>
4693        <asterisk>
4694        <plus-sign>
4695        <comma>
4696        <hyphen>
4697        <period>
4698        <slash>
4699        <zero>
4700        <one>
4701        <two>
4702        <three>
4703        <four>
4704        <five>
4705        <six>
4706        <seven>
4707        <eight>
4708        <nine>
4709        <colon>
4710        <semicolon>
4711        <less-than-sign>
4712        <equals-sign>
4713        <greater-than-sign>
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
        <question-mark>
        <commercial-at>
        <A>
        <B>
        <C>
        <D>
        <E>
        <F>
        <G>
        <H>
        <I>
        <J>
        <K>
        <L>
        <M>
        <N>
        <O>
        <P>
        <Q>
        <R>
        <S>
        <T>
        <U>
        <V>
        <W>
        <X>
        <Y>
        <Z>
        <left-square-bracket>
        <backslash>
        <right-square-bracket>
        <circumflex>
        <underscore>
        <grave-accent>
        <a>
        <b>
        <c>
        <d>
        <e>
        <f>
        <g>
        <h>
        <i>
        <j>
        <k>
        <l>
        <m>
        <n>
        <o>
        <p>
        <q>
        <r>
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
<s>
<t>
<u>
<v>
<w>
<x>
<y>
<z>
<left-curly-bracket>
<vertical-line>
<right-curly-bracket>
<tilde>
<DEL>
order_end
#
END LC_COLLATE
```

### 7.3.3 LC_MONETARY

The *LC_MONETARY* category shall define the rules and symbols that are used to format monetary numeric information.

XSI This information is available through the *localeconv*( ) function and is used by the *strfmon*( ) function.

XSI Some of the information is also available in an alternative form via the *nl_langinfo*( ) function (see CRNCYSTR in **<langinfo.h>**).

The following items are defined in this category of the locale. The item names are the keywords recognized by the *localedef* utility when defining a locale. They are also similar to the member names of the **lconv** structure defined in **<locale.h>**; see **<locale.h>** for the exact symbols in the header. The *localeconv*( ) function returns {CHAR_MAX} for unspecified integer items and the empty string ("") for unspecified or size zero string items.

In a locale definition file, the operands are strings, formatted as indicated by the grammar in Section 7.4 (on page 153). For some keywords, the strings can contain only integers. Keywords that are not provided, string values set to the empty string (""), or integer keywords set to –1, are used to indicate that the value is not available in the locale. The following keywords shall be recognized:

**copy** Specify the name of an existing locale which shall be used as the definition of this category. If this keyword is specified, no other keyword shall be specified.

**Note:** This is a *localedef* utility keyword, unavailable through *localeconv*( ).

**int_curr_symbol** The international currency symbol. The operand shall be a four-character string, with the first three characters containing the alphabetic international currency symbol. The international currency symbol should be chosen in accordance with those specified in the ISO 4217 standard. The fourth character shall be the character used to separate the international currency symbol from the monetary quantity.

**currency_symbol** The string that shall be used as the local currency symbol.

**mon_decimal_point** The operand is a string containing the symbol that shall be used as the decimal delimiter (radix character) in monetary formatted quantities.

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

**mon_thousands_sep** The operand is a string containing the symbol that shall be used as a separator for groups of digits to the left of the decimal delimiter in formatted monetary quantities.

**mon_grouping** Define the size of each group of digits in formatted monetary quantities. The operand is a sequence of integers separated by semicolons. Each integer specifies the number of digits in each group, with the initial integer defining the size of the group immediately preceding the decimal delimiter, and the following integers defining the preceding groups. If the last integer is not –1, then the size of the previous group (if any) shall be repeatedly used for the remainder of the digits. If the last integer is –1, then no further grouping shall be performed.

**positive_sign** A string that shall be used to indicate a non-negative-valued formatted monetary quantity.

**negative_sign** A string that shall be used to indicate a negative-valued formatted monetary quantity.

**int_frac_digits** An integer representing the number of fractional digits (those to the right of the decimal delimiter) to be written in a formatted monetary quantity using **int_curr_symbol**.

**frac_digits** An integer representing the number of fractional digits (those to the right of the decimal delimiter) to be written in a formatted monetary quantity using **currency_symbol**.

**p_cs_precedes** An integer set to 1 if the **currency_symbol** precedes the value for a monetary quantity with a non-negative value, and set to 0 if the symbol succeeds the value.

**p_sep_by_space** An integer set to 0 if no space separates the **currency_symbol** from the value for a monetary quantity with a non-negative value, set to 1 if a space separates the symbol from the value, and set to 2 if a space separates the symbol and the sign string, if adjacent.

**n_cs_precedes** An integer set to 1 if the **currency_symbol** precedes the value for a monetary quantity with a negative value, and set to 0 if the symbol succeeds the value.

**n_sep_by_space** An integer set to 0 if no space separates the **currency_symbol** from the value for a monetary quantity with a negative value, set to 1 if a space separates the symbol from the value, and set to 2 if a space separates the symbol and the sign string, if adjacent.

**p_sign_posn** An integer set to a value indicating the positioning of the **positive_sign** for a monetary quantity with a non-negative value. The following integer values shall be recognized for **int_n_sign_posn**, **int_p_sign_posn**, **n_sign_posn**, and **p_sign_posn**:

0 Parentheses enclose the quantity and the **currency_symbol**.

1 The sign string precedes the quantity and the **currency_symbol**.

2 The sign string succeeds the quantity and the **currency_symbol**.

3 The sign string precedes the **currency_symbol**.

4 The sign string succeeds the **currency_symbol**.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

**n_sign_posn** An integer set to a value indicating the positioning of the **negative_sign** for a negative formatted monetary quantity.

**int_p_cs_precedes** An integer set to 1 if the **int_curr_symbol** precedes the value for a monetary quantity with a non-negative value, and set to 0 if the symbol succeeds the value.

**int_n_cs_precedes** An integer set to 1 if the **int_curr_symbol** precedes the value for a monetary quantity with a negative value, and set to 0 if the symbol succeeds the value.

**int_p_sep_by_space** An integer set to 0 if no space separates the **int_curr_symbol** from the value for a monetary quantity with a non-negative value, set to 1 if a space separates the symbol from the value, and set to 2 if a space separates the symbol and the sign string, if adjacent.

**int_n_sep_by_space** An integer set to 0 if no space separates the **int_curr_symbol** from the value for a monetary quantity with a negative value, set to 1 if a space separates the symbol from the value, and set to 2 if a space separates the symbol and the sign string, if adjacent.

**int_p_sign_posn** An integer set to a value indicating the positioning of the **positive_sign** for a positive monetary quantity formatted with the international format.

**int_n_sign_posn** An integer set to a value indicating the positioning of the **negative_sign** for a negative monetary quantity formatted with the international format.

#### *7.3.3.1 LC_MONETARY Category in the POSIX Locale*

The monetary formatting definitions for the POSIX locale follow; the code listing depicting the XSI *localedef* input, the table representing the same information with the addition of *localeconv*( ) and *nl_langinfo*( ) formats. All values are unspecified in the POSIX locale.

```
LC_MONETARY
# This is the POSIX locale definition for
# the LC_MONETARY category.
#
int_curr_symbol      ""
currency_symbol      ""
mon_decimal_point    ""
mon_thousands_sep    ""
mon_grouping         -1
positive_sign        ""
negative_sign        ""
int_frac_digits      -1
frac_digits          -1
p_cs_precedes        -1
p_sep_by_space       -1
n_cs_precedes        -1
n_sep_by_space       -1
p_sign_posn          -1
n_sign_posn          -1
int_p_cs_precedes    -1
int_p_sep_by_space   -1
int_n_cs_precedes    -1
int_n_sep_by_space   -1
```

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
int_p_sign_posn      -1
int_n_sign_posn      -1
#
END LC_MONETARY
```

| Item | langinfo Constant | POSIX Locale Value | localeconv() Value | localedef Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **int_curr_symbol** | — | N/A | "" | "" |
| **currency_symbol** | CRNCYSTR | N/A | "" | "" |
| **mon_decimal_point** | — | N/A | "" | "" |
| **mon_thousands_sep** | — | N/A | "" | "" |
| **mon_grouping** | — | N/A | "" | –1 |
| **positive_sign** | — | N/A | "" | "" |
| **negative_sign** | — | N/A | "" | "" |
| **int_frac_digits** | — | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |
| **frac_digits** | — | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |
| **p_cs_precedes** | CRNCYSTR | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |
| **p_sep_by_space** | — | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |
| **n_cs_precedes** | CRNCYSTR | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |
| **n_sep_by_space** | — | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |
| **p_sign_posn** | — | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |
| **n_sign_posn** | — | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |
| **int_p_cs_precedes** | — | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |
| **int_p_sep_by_space** | — | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |
| **int_n_cs_precedes** | — | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |
| **int_n_sep_by_space** | — | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |
| **int_p_sign_posn** | — | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |
| **int_n_sign_posn** | — | N/A | {CHAR_MAX} | –1 |

XSI In the preceding table, the **langinfo Constant** column represents an XSI-conformant extension. The entry N/A indicates that the value is not available in the POSIX locale.

### 7.3.4 LC_NUMERIC

The *LC_NUMERIC* category shall define the rules and symbols that are used to format non-monetary numeric information. This information is available through the *localeconv*( ) function.

XSI Some of the information is also available in an alternative form via the *nl_langinfo*( ) function.

The following items are defined in this category of the locale. The item names are the keywords recognized by the *localedef* utility when defining a locale. They are also similar to the member names of the **lconv** structure defined in **<locale.h>**; see **<locale.h>** for the exact symbols in the header. The *localeconv*( ) function returns {CHAR_MAX} for unspecified integer items and the empty string ("") for unspecified or size zero string items.

In a locale definition file, the operands are strings, formatted as indicated by the grammar in Section 7.4 (on page 153). For some keywords, the strings can only contain integers. Keywords that are not provided, string values set to the empty string (""), or integer keywords set to –1, shall be used to indicate that the value is not available in the locale. The following keywords shall be recognized:

**copy** Specify the name of an existing locale which shall be used as the definition of this category. If this keyword is specified, no other keyword shall be specified.

**Note:** This is a *localedef* utility keyword, unavailable through *localeconv*( ).



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

**decimal_point** The operand is a string containing the symbol that shall be used as the decimal delimiter (radix character) in numeric, non-monetary formatted quantities. This keyword cannot be omitted and cannot be set to the empty string. In contexts where standards limit the **decimal_point** to a single byte, the result of specifying a multi-byte operand shall be unspecified.

**thousands_sep** The operand is a string containing the symbol that shall be used as a separator for groups of digits to the left of the decimal delimiter in numeric, non-monetary formatted monetary quantities. In contexts where standards limit the **thousands_sep** to a single byte, the result of specifying a multi-byte operand shall be unspecified.

**grouping** Define the size of each group of digits in formatted non-monetary quantities. The operand is a sequence of integers separated by semicolons. Each integer specifies the number of digits in each group, with the initial integer defining the size of the group immediately preceding the decimal delimiter, and the following integers defining the preceding groups. If the last integer is not –1, then the size of the previous group (if any) shall be repeatedly used for the remainder of the digits. If the last integer is –1, then no further grouping shall be performed.

#### *7.3.4.1 LC_NUMERIC Category in the POSIX Locale*

The non-monetary numeric formatting definitions for the POSIX locale follow; the code listing depicting the *localedef* input, the table representing the same information with the addition of XSI *localeconv*( ) values, and *nl_langinfo*( ) constants.

```
LC_NUMERIC
# This is the POSIX locale definition for
# the LC_NUMERIC category.
#
decimal_point    "<period>"
thousands_sep    ""
grouping         -1
#
END LC_NUMERIC
```

| Item | langinfo Constant | POSIX Locale Value | localeconv() Value | localedef Value |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **decimal_point** | RADIXCHAR | "." | "." | . |
| **thousands_sep** | THOUSEP | N/A | "" | "" |
| **grouping** | — | N/A | "" | –1 |

XSI In the preceding table, the **langinfo Constant** column represents an XSI-conforming extension. The entry N/A indicates that the value is not available in the POSIX locale.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

### 7.3.5 LC_TIME

The *LC_TIME* category shall define the interpretation of the conversion specifications supported XSI by the *date* utility and shall affect the behavior of the *strftime*( ), *wcsftime*( ), *strptime*( ), and *nl_langinfo*( ) functions. Since the interfaces for C-language access and locale definition differ significantly, they are described separately.

#### *7.3.5.1 LC_TIME Locale Definition*

In a locale definition, the following mandatory keywords shall be recognized:

**copy** Specify the name of an existing locale which shall be used as the definition of this category. If this keyword is specified, no other keyword shall be specified.

**abday** Define the abbreviated weekday names, corresponding to the `%a` conversion specification (conversion specification in the *strftime*( ), *wcsftime*( ), and *strptime*( ) functions). The operand shall consist of seven semicolon-separated strings, each surrounded by double-quotes. The first string shall be the abbreviated name of the day corresponding to Sunday, the second the abbreviated name of the day corresponding to Monday, and so on.

**day** Define the full weekday names, corresponding to the `%A` conversion specification. The operand shall consist of seven semicolon-separated strings, each surrounded by double-quotes. The first string is the full name of the day corresponding to Sunday, the second the full name of the day corresponding to Monday, and so on.

**abmon** Define the abbreviated month names, corresponding to the `%b` conversion specification. The operand shall consist of twelve semicolon-separated strings, each surrounded by double-quotes. The first string shall be the abbreviated name of the first month of the year (January), the second the abbreviated name of the second month, and so on.

**mon** Define the full month names, corresponding to the `%B` conversion specification. The operand shall consist of twelve semicolon-separated strings, each surrounded by double-quotes. The first string shall be the full name of the first month of the year (January), the second the full name of the second month, and so on.

**d_t_fmt** Define the appropriate date and time representation, corresponding to the `%c` conversion specification. The operand shall consist of a string containing any combination of characters and conversion specifications. In addition, the string can contain escape sequences defined in the table in Table 5-1 (on page 112) (`'\\'`,`'\a'`,`'\b'`,`'\f'`,`'\n'`,`'\r'`,`'\t'`,`'\v'`).

**d_fmt** Define the appropriate date representation, corresponding to the `%x` conversion specification. The operand shall consist of a string containing any combination of characters and conversion specifications. In addition, the string can contain escape sequences defined in Table 5-1 (on page 112).

**t_fmt** Define the appropriate time representation, corresponding to the `%X` conversion specification. The operand shall consist of a string containing any combination of characters and conversion specifications. In addition, the string can contain escape sequences defined in Table 5-1 (on page 112).

**am_pm** Define the appropriate representation of the *ante-meridiem* and *post-meridiem* strings, corresponding to the `%p` conversion specification. The operand shall consist of two strings, separated by a semicolon, each surrounded by double-



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

quotes. The first string shall represent the *ante-meridiem* designation, the last string the *post-meridiem* designation.

**t_fmt_ampm** Define the appropriate time representation in the 12-hour clock format with **am_pm**, corresponding to the `%r` conversion specification. The operand shall consist of a string and can contain any combination of characters and conversion specifications. If the string is empty, the 12-hour format is not supported in the locale.

**era** Define how years are counted and displayed for each era in a locale. The operand shall consist of semicolon-separated strings. Each string shall be an era description segment with the format:

*direction*`:`*offset*`:`*start_date*`:`*end_date*`:`*era_name*`:`*era_format*

according to the definitions below. There can be as many era description segments as are necessary to describe the different eras.

**Note:** The start of an era might not be the earliest point in the era—it may be the latest. For example, the Christian era BC starts on the day before January 1, AD 1, and increases with earlier time.

*direction* Either a `'+'` or a `'−'` character. The `'+'` character shall indicate that years closer to the *start_date* have lower numbers than those closer to the *end_date*. The `'−'` character shall indicate that years closer to the *start_date* have higher numbers than those closer to the *end_date*.

*offset* The number of the year closest to the *start_date* in the era, corresponding to the `%Ey` conversion specification.

*start_date* A date in the form *yyyy* /*mm* /*dd*, where *yyyy*, *mm*, and *dd* are the year, month, and day numbers respectively of the start of the era. Years prior to AD 1 shall be represented as negative numbers.

*end_date* The ending date of the era, in the same format as the *start_date*, or one of the two special values `"−*"` or `"+*"`. The value `"−*"` shall indicate that the ending date is the beginning of time. The value `"+*"` shall indicate that the ending date is the end of time.

*era_name* A string representing the name of the era, corresponding to the `%EC` conversion specification.

*era_format* A string for formatting the year in the era, corresponding to the `%EY` conversion specification.

**era_d_fmt** Define the format of the date in alternative era notation, corresponding to the `%Ex` conversion specification.

**era_t_fmt** Define the locale's appropriate alternative time format, corresponding to the `%EX` conversion specification.

**era_d_t_fmt** Define the locale's appropriate alternative date and time format, corresponding to the `%Ec` conversion specification.

**alt_digits** Define alternative symbols for digits, corresponding to the `%O` modified conversion specification. The operand shall consist of semicolon-separated strings, each surrounded by double-quotes. The first string shall be the alternative symbol corresponding with zero, the second string the symbol


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

corresponding with one, and so on. Up to 100 alternative symbol strings can be specified. The `%O` modifier shall indicate that the string corresponding to the value specified via the conversion specification shall be used instead of the value.

#### *7.3.5.2 LC_TIME C-Language Access*

XSI This section describes extensions to access information in the *LC_TIME* category using the *nl_langinfo*( ) function. This functionality is dependent on support of the XSI extension (and the rest of this section is not further shaded for this option).

The following constants used to identify items of *langinfo* data can be used as arguments to the *nl_langinfo*( ) function to access information in the *LC_TIME* category. These constants are defined in the **<langinfo.h>** header.

ABDAY_*x* The abbreviated weekday names (for example, Sun), where *x* is a number from 1 to 7.

DAY_*x* The full weekday names (for example, Sunday), where *x* is a number from 1 to 7.

ABMON_*x* The abbreviated month names (for example, Jan), where *x* is a number from 1 to 12.

MON_*x* The full month names (for example, January), where *x* is a number from 1 to 12.

D_T_FMT The appropriate date and time representation.

D_FMT The appropriate date representation.

T_FMT The appropriate time representation.

AM_STR The appropriate ante-meridiem affix.

PM_STR The appropriate post-meridiem affix.

T_FMT_AMPM The appropriate time representation in the 12-hour clock format with AM_STR and PM_STR.

ERA The era description segments, which describe how years are counted and displayed for each era in a locale. Each era description segment shall have the format:

*direction*`:`*offset*`:`*start_date*`:`*end_date*`:`*era_name*`:`*era_format*

according to the definitions below. There can be as many era description segments as are necessary to describe the different eras. Era description segments are separated by semicolons.

*direction* Either a `'+'` or a `'-'` character. The `'+'` character shall indicate that years closer to the *start_date* have lower numbers than those closer to the *end_date*. The `'-'` character shall indicate that years closer to the *start_date* have higher numbers than those closer to the *end_date*.

*offset* The number of the year closest to the *start_date* in the era.

*start_date* A date in the form *yyyy*/*mm*/*dd*, where *yyyy*, *mm*, and *dd* are the year, month, and day numbers respectively of the start of the era. Years prior to AD 1 shall be represented as negative



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

numbers.

*end_date* The ending date of the era, in the same format as the *start_date*, or one of the two special values "-*" or "+*". The value "-*" shall indicate that the ending date is the beginning of time. The value "+*" shall indicate that the ending date is the end of time.

*era_name* The era, corresponding to the %EC conversion specification.

*era_format* The format of the year in the era, corresponding to the %EY conversion specification.

ERA_D_FMT The era date format.

ERA_T_FMT The locale's appropriate alternative time format, corresponding to the %EX conversion specification.

ERA_D_T_FMT The locale's appropriate alternative date and time format, corresponding to the %Ec conversion specification.

ALT_DIGITS The alternative symbols for digits, corresponding to the %O conversion specification modifier. The value consists of semicolon-separated symbols. The first is the alternative symbol corresponding to zero, the second is the symbol corresponding to one, and so on. Up to 100 alternative symbols may be specified.

#### *7.3.5.3 LC_TIME Category in the POSIX Locale*

The *LC_TIME* category definition of the POSIX locale follows; the code listing depicts the *localedef* input; the table represents the same information with the addition of *localedef* keywords, conversion specifiers used by the *date* utility and the *strftime*( ), *wcsftime*( ), and *strptime*( ) functions, XSI and *nl_langinfo*( ) constants.

```
LC_TIME
# This is the POSIX locale definition for
# the LC_TIME category.
#
# Abbreviated weekday names (%a)
abday      "<S><u><n>";"<M><o><n>";"<T><u><e>";"<W><e><d>";\
           "<T><h><u>";"<F><r><i>";"<S><a><t>"
#
# Full weekday names (%A)
day        "<S><u><n><d><a><y>";"<M><o><n><d><a><y>";\
           "<T><u><e><s><d><a><y>";"<W><e><d><n><e><s><d><a><y>";\
           "<T><h><u><r><s><d><a><y>";"<F><r><i><d><a><y>";\
           "<S><a><t><u><r><d><a><y>"
#
# Abbreviated month names (%b)
abmon      "<J><a><n>";"<F><e><b>";"<M><a><r>";\
           "<A><p><r>";"<M><a><y>";"<J><u><n>";\
           "<J><u><l>";"<A><u><g>";"<S><e><p>";\
           "<O><c><t>";"<N><o><v>";"<D><e><c>"
#
# Full month names (%B)
mon        "<J><a><n><u><a><r><y>";"<F><e><b><r><u><a><r><y>";\
           "<M><a><r><c><h>";"<A><p><r><i><l>";\
           "<M><a><y>";"<J><u><n><e>";\
```

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
                "<J><u><l><y>";"<A><u><g><u><s><t>";\
                "<S><e><p><t><e><m><b><e><r>";"<O><c><t><o><b><e><r>";\
                "<N><o><v><e><m><b><e><r>";"<D><e><c><e><m><b><e><r>"
        #
        # Equivalent of AM/PM (%p)      "AM";"PM"
        am_pm       "<A><M>";"<P><M>"
        #
        # Appropriate date and time representation (%c)
        #    "%a %b %e %H:%M:%S %Y"
        d_t_fmt     "<percent-sign><a><space><percent-sign><b>\
        <space><percent-sign><e><space><percent-sign><H>\
        <colon><percent-sign><M><colon><percent-sign><S>\
        <space><percent-sign><Y>"
        #
        # Appropriate date representation (%x)   "%m/%d/%y"
        d_fmt       "<percent-sign><m><slash><percent-sign><d>\
        <slash><percent-sign><y>"
        #
        # Appropriate time representation (%X)   "%H:%M:%S"
        t_fmt       "<percent-sign><H><colon><percent-sign><M>\
        <colon><percent-sign><S>"
        #
        # Appropriate 12-hour time representation (%r) "%I:%M:%S %p"
        t_fmt_ampm "<percent-sign><I><colon><percent-sign><M><colon>\
        <percent-sign><S><space><percent_sign><p>"
        #
        END LC_TIME
```

| localedef Keyword | langinfo Constant | Conversion Specification | POSIX Locale Value |
|---|---|---|---|
| **d_t_fmt** | D_T_FMT | %c | "%a %b %e %H:%M:%S %Y" |
| **d_fmt** | D_FMT | %x | "%m/%d/%y" |
| **t_fmt** | T_FMT | %X | "%H:%M:%S" |
| **am_pm** | AM_STR | %p | "AM" |
| **am_pm** | PM_STR | %p | "PM" |
| **t_fmt_ampm** | T_FMT_AMPM | %r | "%I:%M:%S %p" |
| **day** | DAY_1 | %A | "Sunday" |
| **day** | DAY_2 | %A | "Monday" |
| **day** | DAY_3 | %A | "Tuesday" |
| **day** | DAY_4 | %A | "Wednesday" |
| **day** | DAY_5 | %A | "Thursday" |
| **day** | DAY_6 | %A | "Friday" |
| **day** | DAY_7 | %A | "Saturday" |
| **abday** | ABDAY_1 | %a | "Sun" |
| **abday** | ABDAY_2 | %a | "Mon" |
| **abday** | ABDAY_3 | %a | "Tue" |
| **abday** | ABDAY_4 | %a | "Wed" |
| **abday** | ABDAY_5 | %a | "Thu" |



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

| localedef Keyword | langinfo Constant | Conversion Specification | POSIX Locale Value |
|---|---|---|---|
| **abday** | ABDAY_6 | %a | "Fri" |
| **abday** | ABDAY_7 | %a | "Sat" |
| **mon** | MON_1 | %B | "January" |
| **mon** | MON_2 | %B | "February" |
| **mon** | MON_3 | %B | "March" |
| **mon** | MON_4 | %B | "April" |
| **mon** | MON_5 | %B | "May" |
| **mon** | MON_6 | %B | "June" |
| **mon** | MON_7 | %B | "July" |
| **mon** | MON_8 | %B | "August" |
| **mon** | MON_9 | %B | "September" |
| **mon** | MON_10 | %B | "October" |
| **mon** | MON_11 | %B | "November" |
| **mon** | MON_12 | %B | "December" |
| **abmon** | ABMON_1 | %b | "Jan" |
| **abmon** | ABMON_2 | %b | "Feb" |
| **abmon** | ABMON_3 | %b | "Mar" |
| **abmon** | ABMON_4 | %b | "Apr" |
| **abmon** | ABMON_5 | %b | "May" |
| **abmon** | ABMON_6 | %b | "Jun" |
| **abmon** | ABMON_7 | %b | "Jul" |
| **abmon** | ABMON_8 | %b | "Aug" |
| **abmon** | ABMON_9 | %b | "Sep" |
| **abmon** | ABMON_10 | %b | "Oct" |
| **abmon** | ABMON_11 | %b | "Nov" |
| **abmon** | ABMON_12 | %b | "Dec" |
| **era** | ERA | %EC, %Ey, %EY | N/A |
| **era_d_fmt** | ERA_D_FMT | %Ex | N/A |
| **era_t_fmt** | ERA_T_FMT | %EX | N/A |
| **era_d_t_fmt** | ERA_D_T_FMT | %Ec | N/A |
| **alt_digits** | ALT_DIGITS | %O | N/A |

XSI In the preceding table, the **langinfo Constant** column represents an XSI-conformant extension.

The entry N/A indicates the value is not available in the POSIX locale.

### 7.3.6 LC_MESSAGES

The *LC_MESSAGES* category shall define the format and values used by various utilities for XSI affirmative and negative responses. This information is available through the *nl_langinfo*() function.

XSI The message catalog used by the standard utilities and selected by the *catopen*() function shall be determined by the setting of *NLSPATH*; see Chapter 8 (on page 161). The *LC_MESSAGES* category can be specified as part of an *NLSPATH* substitution field.

The following keywords shall be recognized as part of the locale definition file.

**copy** Specify the name of an existing locale which shall be used as the definition of this category. If this keyword is specified, no other keyword shall be specified.

**Note:** This is a *localedef* keyword, unavailable through *nl_langinfo*().


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

**yesexpr** The operand consists of an extended regular expression (see Section 9.4 (on page 175)) that describes the acceptable affirmative response to a question expecting an affirmative or negative response.

**noexpr** The operand consists of an extended regular expression that describes the acceptable negative response to a question expecting an affirmative or negative response.

#### 7.3.6.1 *LC_MESSAGES Category in the POSIX Locale*

The format and values for affirmative and negative responses of the POSIX locale follow; the code listing depicting the *localedef* input, the table representing the same information with the addition of *nl_langinfo*( ) constants.

XSI

```
LC_MESSAGES
# This is the POSIX locale definition for
# the LC_MESSAGES category.
#
yesexpr "<circumflex><left-square-bracket><y><Y><right-square-bracket>"
#
noexpr  "<circumflex><left-square-bracket><n><N><right-square-bracket>"
#
END LC_MESSAGES
```

| localedef Keyword | langinfo Constant | POSIX Locale Value |
|---|---|---|
| **yesexpr** | YESEXPR | "^[yY]" |
| **noexpr** | NOEXPR | "^[nN]" |

XSI In the preceding table, the **langinfo Constant** column represents an XSI-conformant extension.

## 7.4 Locale Definition Grammar

The grammar and lexical conventions in this section shall together describe the syntax for the locale definition source. The general conventions for this style of grammar are described in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 1.10, Grammar Conventions. The grammar shall take precedence over the text in this chapter.

### 7.4.1 Locale Lexical Conventions

The lexical conventions for the locale definition grammar are described in this section.

The following tokens shall be processed (in addition to those string constants shown in the grammar):

**LOC_NAME** A string of characters representing the name of a locale.

**CHAR** Any single character.

**NUMBER** A decimal number, represented by one or more decimal digits.

**COLLSYMBOL** A symbolic name, enclosed between angle brackets. The string cannot duplicate any charmap symbol defined in the current charmap (if any), or a **COLLELEMENT** symbol.

**COLLELEMENT** A symbolic name, enclosed between angle brackets, which cannot duplicate either any charmap symbol or a **COLLSYMBOL** symbol.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

**CHARCLASS** A string of alphanumeric characters from the portable character set, the first of which is not a digit, consisting of at least one and at most {CHARCLASS_NAME_MAX} bytes, and optionally surrounded by double-quotes.

**CHARSYMBOL** A symbolic name, enclosed between angle brackets, from the current charmap (if any).

**OCTAL_CHAR** One or more octal representations of the encoding of each byte in a single character. The octal representation consists of an escape character (normally a backslash) followed by two or more octal digits.

**HEX_CHAR** One or more hexadecimal representations of the encoding of each byte in a single character. The hexadecimal representation consists of an escape character followed by the constant *x* and two or more hexadecimal digits.

**DECIMAL_CHAR** One or more decimal representations of the encoding of each byte in a single character. The decimal representation consists of an escape character followed by a character `'d'` and two or more decimal digits.

**ELLIPSIS** The string `"..."`.

**EXTENDED_REG_EXP** An extended regular expression as defined in the grammar in Section 9.5 (on page 179).

**EOL** The line termination character <newline>.

### 7.4.2 Locale Grammar

This section presents the grammar for the locale definition.

```
%token              LOC_NAME
%token              CHAR
%token              NUMBER
%token              COLLSYMBOL COLLELEMENT
%token              CHARSYMBOL OCTAL_CHAR HEX_CHAR DECIMAL_CHAR
%token              ELLIPSIS
%token              EXTENDED_REG_EXP
%token              EOL

%start              locale_definition

%%

locale_definition   : global_statements locale_categories
                    |                   locale_categories
                    ;

global_statements   : global_statements symbol_redefine
                    | symbol_redefine
                    ;

symbol_redefine     : 'escape_char'  CHAR EOL
                    | 'comment_char' CHAR EOL
                    ;
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
5345        locale_categories   : locale_categories locale_category
5346                            | locale_category
5347                            ;
5348        locale_category     : lc_ctype | lc_collate | lc_messages
5349                            | lc_monetary | lc_numeric | lc_time
5350                            ;
5351        /* The following grammar rules are common to all categories */
5352        char_list           : char_list char_symbol
5353                            | char_symbol
5354                            ;
5355        char_symbol         : CHAR | CHARSYMBOL
5356                            | OCTAL_CHAR | HEX_CHAR | DECIMAL_CHAR
5357                            ;
5358        elem_list           : elem_list char_symbol
5359                            | elem_list COLLSYMBOL
5360                            | elem_list COLLELEMENT
5361                            | char_symbol
5362                            | COLLSYMBOL
5363                            | COLLELEMENT
5364                            ;
5365        symb_list           : symb_list COLLSYMBOL
5366                            | COLLSYMBOL
5367                            ;
5368        locale_name         : LOC_NAME
5369                            | '"' LOC_NAME '"'
5370                            ;
5371        /* The following is the LC_CTYPE category grammar */
5372        lc_ctype            : ctype_hdr ctype_keywords         ctype_tlr
5373                            | ctype_hdr 'copy' locale_name EOL ctype_tlr
5374                            ;
5375        ctype_hdr           : 'LC_CTYPE' EOL
5376                            ;
5377        ctype_keywords      : ctype_keywords ctype_keyword
5378                            | ctype_keyword
5379                            ;
5380        ctype_keyword       : charclass_keyword charclass_list EOL
5381                            | charconv_keyword charconv_list EOL
5382                            | 'charclass' charclass_namelist EOL
5383                            ;
5384        charclass_namelist  : charclass_namelist ';' CHARCLASS
5385                            | CHARCLASS
5386                            ;
5387        charclass_keyword   : 'upper' | 'lower' | 'alpha' | 'digit'
5388                            | 'punct' | 'xdigit' | 'space' | 'print'
5389                            | 'graph' | 'blank' | 'cntrl' | 'alnum'
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
5390                            | CHARCLASS
5391                            ;
5392        charclass_list      : charclass_list ';' char_symbol
5393                            | charclass_list ';' ELLIPSIS ';' char_symbol
5394                            | char_symbol
5395                            ;
5396        charconv_keyword    : 'toupper'
5397                            | 'tolower'
5398                            ;
5399        charconv_list       : charconv_list ';' charconv_entry
5400                            | charconv_entry
5401                            ;
5402        charconv_entry      : '(' char_symbol ',' char_symbol ')'
5403                            ;
5404        ctype_tlr           : 'END' 'LC_CTYPE' EOL
5405                            ;
5406        /* The following is the LC_COLLATE category grammar */
5407        lc_collate          : collate_hdr collate_keywords       collate_tlr
5408                            | collate_hdr 'copy' locale_name EOL collate_tlr
5409                            ;
5410        collate_hdr         : 'LC_COLLATE' EOL
5411                            ;
5412        collate_keywords    :                order_statements
5413                            | opt_statements order_statements
5414                            ;
5415        opt_statements      : opt_statements collating_symbols
5416                            | opt_statements collating_elements
5417                            | collating_symbols
5418                            | collating_elements
5419                            ;
5420        collating_symbols   : 'collating-symbol' COLLSYMBOL EOL
5421                            ;
5422        collating_elements  : 'collating-element' COLLELEMENT
5423                            | 'from' '"' elem_list '"' EOL
5424                            ;
5425        order_statements    : order_start collation_order order_end
5426                            ;
5427        order_start         : 'order_start' EOL
5428                            | 'order_start' order_opts EOL
5429                            ;
5430        order_opts          : order_opts ';' order_opt
5431                            | order_opt
5432                            ;
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
5433        order_opt           : order_opt ',' opt_word
5434                            | opt_word
5435                            ;
5436        opt_word            : 'forward' | 'backward' | 'position'
5437                            ;
5438        collation_order     : collation_order collation_entry
5439                            | collation_entry
5440                            ;
5441        collation_entry     : COLLSYMBOL EOL
5442                            | collation_element weight_list EOL
5443                            | collation_element             EOL
5444                            ;
5445        collation_element   : char_symbol
5446                            | COLLELEMENT
5447                            | ELLIPSIS
5448                            | 'UNDEFINED'
5449                            ;
5450        weight_list         : weight_list ';' weight_symbol
5451                            | weight_list ';'
5452                            | weight_symbol
5453                            ;
5454        weight_symbol       : /* empty */
5455                            | char_symbol
5456                            | COLLSYMBOL
5457                            | '"' elem_list '"'
5458                            | '"' symb_list '"'
5459                            | ELLIPSIS
5460                            | 'IGNORE'
5461                            ;
5462        order_end           : 'order_end' EOL
5463                            ;
5464        collate_tlr         : 'END' 'LC_COLLATE' EOL
5465                            ;
5466        /* The following is the LC_MESSAGES category grammar */
5467        lc_messages         : messages_hdr messages_keywords      messages_tlr
5468                            | messages_hdr 'copy' locale_name EOL messages_tlr
5469                            ;
5470        messages_hdr        : 'LC_MESSAGES' EOL
5471                            ;
5472        messages_keywords   : messages_keywords messages_keyword
5473                            | messages_keyword
5474                            ;
5475        messages_keyword    : 'yesexpr' '"' EXTENDED_REG_EXP '"' EOL
5476                            | 'noexpr'  '"' EXTENDED_REG_EXP '"' EOL
5477                            ;
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
5478        messages_tlr        : 'END' 'LC_MESSAGES' EOL
5479                            ;
5480        /* The following is the LC_MONETARY category grammar */
5481        lc_monetary         : monetary_hdr monetary_keywords       monetary_tlr
5482                            | monetary_hdr 'copy' locale_name EOL  monetary_tlr
5483                            ;
5484        monetary_hdr        : 'LC_MONETARY' EOL
5485                            ;
5486        monetary_keywords   : monetary_keywords monetary_keyword
5487                            | monetary_keyword
5488                            ;
5489        monetary_keyword    : mon_keyword_string mon_string EOL
5490                            | mon_keyword_char NUMBER EOL
5491                            | mon_keyword_char '-1'   EOL
5492                            | mon_keyword_grouping mon_group_list EOL
5493                            ;
5494        mon_keyword_string  : 'int_curr_symbol' | 'currency_symbol'
5495                            | 'mon_decimal_point' | 'mon_thousands_sep'
5496                            | 'positive_sign' | 'negative_sign'
5497                            ;
5498        mon_string          : '"' char_list '"'
5499                            | '""'
5500                            ;
5501        mon_keyword_char    : 'int_frac_digits' | 'frac_digits'
5502                            | 'p_cs_precedes' | 'p_sep_by_space'
5503                            | 'n_cs_precedes' | 'n_sep_by_space'
5504                            | 'p_sign_posn' | 'n_sign_posn'
5505                            | 'int_p_cs_precedes' | 'int_p_sep_by_space'        |
5506                            | 'int_n_cs_precedes' | 'int_n_sep_by_space'        |
5507                            | 'int_p_sign_posn' | 'int_n_sign_posn'            |
5508                            ;                                                   |
5509        mon_keyword_grouping : 'mon_grouping'
5510                            ;
5511        mon_group_list      : NUMBER
5512                            | mon_group_list ';' NUMBER
5513                            ;
5514        monetary_tlr        : 'END' 'LC_MONETARY' EOL
5515                            ;
5516        /* The following is the LC_NUMERIC category grammar */
5517        lc_numeric          : numeric_hdr numeric_keywords       numeric_tlr
5518                            | numeric_hdr 'copy' locale_name EOL numeric_tlr
5519                            ;
5520        numeric_hdr         : 'LC_NUMERIC' EOL
5521                            ;
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
5522        numeric_keywords    : numeric_keywords numeric_keyword
5523                            | numeric_keyword
5524                            ;
5525        numeric_keyword     : num_keyword_string num_string EOL
5526                            | num_keyword_grouping num_group_list EOL
5527                            ;
5528        num_keyword_string  : 'decimal_point'
5529                            | 'thousands_sep'
5530                            ;
5531        num_string          : '"' char_list '"'
5532                            | '""'
5533                            ;
5534        num_keyword_grouping: 'grouping'
5535                            ;
5536        num_group_list      : NUMBER
5537                            | num_group_list ';' NUMBER
5538                            ;
5539        numeric_tlr         : 'END' 'LC_NUMERIC' EOL
5540                            ;
5541        /* The following is the LC_TIME category grammar */
5542        lc_time             : time_hdr time_keywords          time_tlr
5543                            | time_hdr 'copy' locale_name EOL time_tlr
5544                            ;
5545        time_hdr            : 'LC_TIME' EOL
5546                            ;
5547        time_keywords       : time_keywords time_keyword
5548                            | time_keyword
5549                            ;
5550        time_keyword        : time_keyword_name time_list EOL
5551                            | time_keyword_fmt time_string EOL
5552                            | time_keyword_opt time_list EOL
5553                            ;
5554        time_keyword_name   : 'abday' | 'day' | 'abmon' | 'mon'
5555                            ;
5556        time_keyword_fmt    : 'd_t_fmt' | 'd_fmt' | 't_fmt'
5557                            | 'am_pm' | 't_fmt_ampm'
5558                            ;
5559        time_keyword_opt    : 'era' | 'era_d_fmt' | 'era_t_fmt'
5560                            | 'era_d_t_fmt' | 'alt_digits'
5561                            ;
5562        time_list           : time_list ';' time_string
5563                            | time_string
5564                            ;
```



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
5565        time_string         : '"' char_list '"'
5566                            ;
5567        time_tlr            : 'END' 'LC_TIME' EOL
5568                            ;
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Chapter 8

# Environment Variables

## 8.1 Environment Variable Definition

Environment variables defined in this chapter affect the operation of multiple utilities, functions, and applications. There are other environment variables that are of interest only to specific utilities. Environment variables that apply to a single utility only are defined as part of the utility description. See the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section of the utility descriptions in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 for information on environment variable usage.

The value of an environment variable is a string of characters. For a C-language program, an array of strings called the environment shall be made available when a process begins. The array is pointed to by the external variable *environ*, which is defined as:

```
extern char **environ;
```

These strings have the form *name*=*value*; *name*s shall not contain the character '='. For values to be portable across systems conforming to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, the value shall be composed of characters from the portable character set (except NUL and as indicated below). There is no meaning associated with the order of strings in the environment. If more than one string in a process' environment has the same *name*, the consequences are undefined.

Environment variable names used by the utilities in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 consist solely of uppercase letters, digits, and the '_' (underscore) from the characters defined in Table 6-1 (on page 115) and do not begin with a digit. Other characters may be permitted by an implementation; applications shall tolerate the presence of such names. Uppercase and lowercase letters shall retain their unique identities and shall not be folded together. The name space of environment variable names containing lowercase letters is reserved for applications. Applications can define any environment variables with names from this name space without modifying the behavior of the standard utilities.

**Note:** Other applications may have difficulty dealing with environment variable names that start with a digit. For this reason, use of such names is not recommended anywhere.

The *values* that the environment variables may be assigned are not restricted except that they are considered to end with a null byte and the total space used to store the environment and the arguments to the process is limited to {ARG_MAX} bytes.

Other *name*=*value* pairs may be placed in the environment by, for example, calling any of the XSI *setenv*(), *unsetenv*(), or *putenv*() functions, manipulating the *environ* variable, or by using *envp* arguments when creating a process; see *exec* in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

It is unwise to conflict with certain variables that are frequently exported by widely used command interpreters and applications:



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *ARFLAGS* | *IFS* | *MAILPATH* | *PS1* |
| *CC* | *LANG* | *MAILRC* | *PS2* |
| *CDPATH* | *LC_ALL* | *MAKEFLAGS* | *PS3* |
| *CFLAGS* | *LC_COLLATE* | *MAKESHELL* | *PS4* |
| *CHARSET* | *LC_CTYPE* | *MANPATH* | *PWD* |
| *COLUMNS* | *LC_MESSAGES* | *MBOX* | *RANDOM* |
| *DATEMSK* | *LC_MONETARY* | *MORE* | *SECONDS* |
| *DEAD* | *LC_NUMERIC* | *MSGVERB* | *SHELL* |
| *EDITOR* | *LC_TIME* | *NLSPATH* | *TERM* |
| *ENV* | *LDFLAGS* | *NPROC* | *TERMCAP* |
| *EXINIT* | *LEX* | *OLDPWD* | *TERMINFO* |
| *FC* | *LFLAGS* | *OPTARG* | *TMPDIR* |
| *FCEDIT* | *LINENO* | *OPTERR* | *TZ* |
| *FFLAGS* | *LINES* | *OPTIND* | *USER* |
| *GET* | *LISTER* | *PAGER* | *VISUAL* |
| *GFLAGS* | *LOGNAME* | *PATH* | *YACC* |
| *HISTFILE* | *LPDEST* | *PPID* | *YFLAGS* |
| *HISTORY* | *MAIL* | *PRINTER* | |
| *HISTSIZE* | *MAILCHECK* | *PROCLANG* | |
| *HOME* | *MAILER* | *PROJECTDIR* | |

If the variables in the following two sections are present in the environment during the execution of an application or utility, they shall be given the meaning described below. Some are placed into the environment by the implementation at the time the user logs in; all can be added or changed by the user or any ancestor of the current process. The implementation adds or changes environment variables named in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 only as specified in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. If they are defined in the application's environment, the utilities in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 and the functions in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 assume they have the specified meaning. Conforming applications shall not set these environment variables to have meanings other than as described. See *getenv*( ) and the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.12, Shell Execution Environment for methods of accessing these variables.

## 8.2 Internationalization Variables

This section describes environment variables that are relevant to the operation of internationalized interfaces described in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

Users may use the following environment variables to announce specific localization requirements to applications. Applications can retrieve this information using the *setlocale*( ) function to initialize the correct behavior of the internationalized interfaces. The descriptions of the internationalization environment variables describe the resulting behavior only when the application locale is initialized in this way. The use of the internationalization variables by utilities described in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 is described in the ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES section for those utilities in addition to the global effects described in this section.

*LANG* This variable shall determine the locale category for native language, local customs, and coded character set in the absence of the *LC_ALL* and other *LC_** (*LC_COLLATE*, *LC_CTYPE*, *LC_MESSAGES*, *LC_MONETARY*, *LC_NUMERIC*, *LC_TIME*) environment variables. This can be used by applications to determine the language to use for error messages and instructions, collating sequences, date formats, and so on.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

*LC_ALL* This variable shall determine the values for all locale categories. The value of the *LC_ALL* environment variable has precedence over any of the other environment variables starting with *LC_* (*LC_COLLATE*, *LC_CTYPE*, *LC_MESSAGES*, *LC_MONETARY*, *LC_NUMERIC*, *LC_TIME*) and the *LANG* environment variable.

*LC_COLLATE* This variable shall determine the locale category for character collation. It determines collation information for regular expressions and sorting, including equivalence classes and multi-character collating elements, in various utilities and the *strcoll*( ) and *strxfrm*( ) functions. Additional semantics of this variable, if any, are implementation-defined.

*LC_CTYPE* This variable shall determine the locale category for character handling functions, such as *tolower*( ), *toupper*( ), and *isalpha*( ). This environment variable determines the interpretation of sequences of bytes of text data as characters (for example, single as opposed to multi-byte characters), the classification of characters (for example, alpha, digit, graph), and the behavior of character classes. Additional semantics of this variable, if any, are implementation-defined.

*LC_MESSAGES* This variable shall determine the locale category for processing affirmative and negative responses and the language and cultural conventions in which

XSI messages should be written. It also affects the behavior of the *catopen*( ) function in determining the message catalog. Additional semantics of this variable, if any, are implementation-defined. The language and cultural conventions of diagnostic and informative messages whose format is unspecified by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 should be affected by the setting of *LC_MESSAGES*.

*LC_MONETARY* This variable shall determine the locale category for monetary-related numeric formatting information. Additional semantics of this variable, if any, are implementation-defined.

*LC_NUMERIC* This variable shall determine the locale category for numeric formatting (for example, thousands separator and radix character) information in various utilities as well as the formatted I/O operations in *printf*( ) and *scanf*( ) and the string conversion functions in *strtod*( ). Additional semantics of this variable, if any, are implementation-defined.

*LC_TIME* This variable shall determine the locale category for date and time formatting information. It affects the behavior of the time functions in *strftime*( ). Additional semantics of this variable, if any, are implementation-defined.

XSI *NLSPATH* This variable shall contain a sequence of templates that the *catopen*( ) function uses when attempting to locate message catalogs. Each template consists of an optional prefix, one or more conversion specifications, a filename, and an optional suffix.

For example:

```
NLSPATH="/system/nlslib/%N.cat"
```

defines that *catopen*( ) should look for all message catalogs in the directory **/system/nlslib**, where the catalog name should be constructed from the *name* parameter passed to *catopen*( ) (`%N`), with the suffix **.cat**.

Conversion specifications consist of a `'%'` symbol, followed by a single-letter keyword. The following keywords are currently defined:



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

`%N` The value of the *name* parameter passed to *catopen*( ).

`%L` The value of the *LC_MESSAGES* category.

`%l` The *language* element from the *LC_MESSAGES* category.

`%t` The *territory* element from the *LC_MESSAGES* category.

`%c` The *codeset* element from the *LC_MESSAGES* category.

`%%` A single `'%'` character.

An empty string is substituted if the specified value is not currently defined. The separators underscore (`'_'`) and period (`'.'`) are not included in the `%t` and `%c` conversion specifications.

Templates defined in *NLSPATH* are separated by colons (`':'`). A leading or two adjacent colons `"::"` is equivalent to specifying `%N`. For example:

```
NLSPATH=":%N.cat:/nlslib/%L/%N.cat"
```

indicates to *catopen*( ) that it should look for the requested message catalog in *name*, *name***.cat**, and **/nlslib/***category***/***name***.cat**, where *category* is the value of the *LC_MESSAGES* category of the current locale.

Users should not set the *NLSPATH* variable unless they have a specific reason to override the default system path. Setting *NLSPATH* to override the default system path produces undefined results in the standard utilities and in applications with appropriate privileges.

The environment variables *LANG*, *LC_ALL*, *LC_COLLATE*, *LC_CTYPE*, *LC_MESSAGES*, *LC_MONETARY*, *LC_NUMERIC*, *LC_TIME*, and *NLSPATH* provide for the support of internationalized applications. The standard utilities shall make use of these environment variables as described in this section and the individual ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES sections for the utilities. If these variables specify locale categories that are not based upon the same underlying codeset, the results are unspecified.

The values of locale categories shall be determined by a precedence order; the first condition met below determines the value:

1. If the *LC_ALL* environment variable is defined and is not null, the value of *LC_ALL* shall be used.
2. If the *LC_** environment variable (*LC_COLLATE*, *LC_CTYPE*, *LC_MESSAGES*, *LC_MONETARY*, *LC_NUMERIC*, *LC_TIME*) is defined and is not null, the value of the environment variable shall be used to initialize the category that corresponds to the environment variable.
3. If the *LANG* environment variable is defined and is not null, the value of the *LANG* environment variable shall be used.
4. If the *LANG* environment variable is not set or is set to the empty string, the implementation-defined default locale shall be used.

If the locale value is `"C"` or `"POSIX"`, the POSIX locale shall be used and the standard utilities behave in accordance with the rules in Section 7.2 (on page 124) for the associated category.

If the locale value begins with a slash, it shall be interpreted as the pathname of a file that was created in the output format used by the *localedef* utility; see OUTPUT FILES under *localedef*. Referencing such a pathname shall result in that locale being used for the indicated category.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

5742 XSI If the locale value has the form:

5743 *language*[_*territory*][.*codeset*]

5744 it refers to an implementation-provided locale, where settings of language, territory, and codeset
5745 are implementation-defined.

5746 *LC_COLLATE*, *LC_CTYPE*, *LC_MESSAGES*, *LC_MONETARY*, *LC_NUMERIC*, and *LC_TIME* are
5747 defined to accept an additional field *@modifier*, which allows the user to select a specific instance
5748 of localization data within a single category (for example, for selecting the dictionary as opposed
5749 to the character ordering of data). The syntax for these environment variables is thus defined as:

5750 [*language*[_*territory*][.*codeset*][@*modifier*]]

5751 For example, if a user wanted to interact with the system in French, but required to sort German
5752 text files, *LANG* and *LC_COLLATE* could be defined as:

5753 LANG=Fr_FR
5754 LC_COLLATE=De_DE

5755 This could be extended to select dictionary collation (say) by use of the *@modifier* field; for
5756 example:

5757 LC_COLLATE=De_DE@dict

5758

5759 An implementation may support other formats.

5760 If the locale value is not recognized by the implementation, the behavior is unspecified.

5761 At runtime, these values are bound to a program's locale by calling the *setlocale*( ) function.

5762 Additional criteria for determining a valid locale name are implementation-defined.

## 5763 8.3 Other Environment Variables

5764 *COLUMNS* This variable shall represent a decimal integer >0 used to indicate the user's
5765 preferred width in column positions for the terminal screen or window; see
5766 Section 3.103 (on page 49). If this variable is unset or null, the implementation
5767 determines the number of columns, appropriate for the terminal or window,
5768 in an unspecified manner. When *COLUMNS* is set, any terminal-width
5769 information implied by *TERM* is overridden. Users and conforming
5770 applications should not set *COLUMNS* unless they wish to override the
5771 system selection and produce output unrelated to the terminal characteristics.

5772 Users should not need to set this variable in the environment unless there is a
5773 specific reason to override the implementation's default behavior, such as to
5774 display data in an area arbitrarily smaller than the terminal or window.

5775 XSI *DATEMSK* Indicates the pathname of the template file used by *getdate*( ).

5776 *HOME* The system shall initialize this variable at the time of login to be a pathname of
5777 the user's home directory. See **<pwd.h>**.

5778 *LINES* This variable shall represent a decimal integer >0 used to indicate the user's
5779 preferred number of lines on a page or the vertical screen or window size in
5780 lines. A line in this case is a vertical measure large enough to hold the tallest
5781 character in the character set being displayed. If this variable is unset or null,
5782 the implementation determines the number of lines, appropriate for the



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

terminal or window (size, terminal baud rate, and so on), in an unspecified manner. When *LINES* is set, any terminal-height information implied by *TERM* is overridden. Users and conforming applications should not set *LINES* unless they wish to override the system selection and produce output unrelated to the terminal characteristics.

Users should not need to set this variable in the environment unless there is a specific reason to override the implementation's default behavior, such as to display data in an area arbitrarily smaller than the terminal or window.

*LOGNAME* The system shall initialize this variable at the time of login to be the user's login name. See **<pwd.h>**. For a value of *LOGNAME* to be portable across implementations of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, the value should be composed of characters from the portable filename character set.

XSI *MSGVERB* Describes which message components shall be used in writing messages by *fmtmsg*( ).

*PATH* This variable shall represent the sequence of path prefixes that certain functions and utilities apply in searching for an executable file known only by a filename. The prefixes shall be separated by a colon (':'). When a non-zero-length prefix is applied to this filename, a slash shall be inserted between the prefix and the filename. A zero-length prefix is a legacy feature that indicates the current working directory. It appears as two adjacent colons ("::"), as an initial colon preceding the rest of the list, or as a trailing colon following the rest of the list. A strictly conforming application shall use an actual pathname (such as **.**) to represent the current working directory in *PATH*. The list shall be searched from beginning to end, applying the filename to each prefix, until an executable file with the specified name and appropriate execution permissions is found. If the pathname being sought contains a slash, the search through the path prefixes shall not be performed. If the pathname begins with a slash, the specified path is resolved (see Section 4.11 (on page 102)). If *PATH* is unset or is set to null, the path search is implementation-defined.

*PWD* This variable shall represent an absolute pathname of the current working directory. It shall not contain any filename components of dot or dot-dot. The value is set by the *cd* utility.

*SHELL* This variable shall represent a pathname of the user's preferred command language interpreter. If this interpreter does not conform to the Shell Command Language in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Chapter 2, Shell Command Language, utilities may behave differently from those described in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

*TMPDIR* This variable shall represent a pathname of a directory made available for programs that need a place to create temporary files.

*TERM* This variable shall represent the terminal type for which output is to be prepared. This information is used by utilities and application programs wishing to exploit special capabilities specific to a terminal. The format and allowable values of this environment variable are unspecified.

*TZ* This variable shall represent timezone information. The contents of the environment variable named *TZ* shall be used by the *ctime*( ), *localtime*( ), TSF *strftime*( ), *mktime*( ), *ctime_r*( ), and *localtime_r*( ) functions, and by various utilities, to override the default timezone. The value of *TZ* has one of the two

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

forms (spaces inserted for clarity):

```
:characters
```

or:

```
std offset dst offset, rule
```

If *TZ* is of the first format (that is, if the first character is a colon), the characters following the colon are handled in an implementation-defined manner.

The expanded format (for all *TZ*s whose value does not have a colon as the first character) is as follows:

```
stdoffset[dst[offset][,start[/time],end[/time]]]
```

Where:

*std* and *dst* Indicate no less than three, nor more than {TZNAME_MAX}, bytes that are the designation for the standard (*std*) or the alternative (*dst*—such as Daylight Savings Time) timezone. Only *std* is required; if *dst* is missing, then the alternative time does not apply in this locale.

Each of these fields may occur in either of two formats quoted or unquoted:

— In the quoted form, the first character shall be the less-than (`'<'`) character and the last character shall be the greater-than (`'>'`) character. All characters between these quoting characters shall be alphanumeric characters from the portable character set in the current locale, the plus-sign (`'+'`) character, or the minus-sign (`'−'`) character. The *std* and *dst* fields in this case shall not include the quoting characters.

— In the unquoted form, all characters in these fields shall be alphabetic characters from the portable character set in the current locale.

The interpretation of these fields is unspecified if either field is less than three bytes (except for the case when *dst* is missing), more than {TZNAME_MAX} bytes, or if they contain characters other than those specified.

*offset* Indicates the value added to the local time to arrive at Coordinated Universal Time. The *offset* has the form:

```
hh[:mm[:ss]]
```

The minutes (*mm*) and seconds (*ss*) are optional. The hour (*hh*) shall be required and may be a single digit. The *offset* following *std* shall be required. If no *offset* follows *dst*, the alternative time is assumed to be one hour ahead of standard time. One or more digits may be used; the value is always interpreted as a decimal number. The hour shall be between zero and 24, and the minutes (and seconds)—if present—between zero and 59. The result of using values outside of this range is unspecified. If preceded by a `'−'`, the timezone shall be east of the Prime Meridian;



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

otherwise, it shall be west (which may be indicated by an optional preceding '+').

*rule* Indicates when to change to and back from the alternative time. The *rule* has the form:

*date*[/*time*],*date*[/*time*]

where the first *date* describes when the change from standard to alternative time occurs and the second *date* describes when the change back happens. Each *time* field describes when, in current local time, the change to the other time is made.

The format of *date* is one of the following:

J*n* The Julian day *n* ($1 \le n \le 365$). Leap days shall not be counted. That is, in all years—including leap years—February 28 is day 59 and March 1 is day 60. It is impossible to refer explicitly to the occasional February 29.

*n* The zero-based Julian day ($0 \le n \le 365$). Leap days shall be counted, and it is possible to refer to February 29.

M*m.n.d* The *d*'th day ($0 \le d \le 6$) of week *n* of month *m* of the year ($1 \le n \le 5$, $1 \le m \le 12$, where week 5 means ''the last *d* day in month *m*'' which may occur in either the fourth or the fifth week). Week 1 is the first week in which the *d*'th day occurs. Day zero is Sunday.

The *time* has the same format as *offset* except that no leading sign ('−' or '+') is allowed. The default, if *time* is not given, shall be 02:00:00.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Chapter 9

# Regular Expressions

Regular Expressions (REs) provide a mechanism to select specific strings from a set of character strings.

Regular expressions are a context-independent syntax that can represent a wide variety of character sets and character set orderings, where these character sets are interpreted according to the current locale. While many regular expressions can be interpreted differently depending on the current locale, many features, such as character class expressions, provide for contextual invariance across locales.

The Basic Regular Expression (BRE) notation and construction rules in Section 9.3 (on page 171) shall apply to most utilities supporting regular expressions. Some utilities, instead, support the Extended Regular Expressions (ERE) described in Section 9.4 (on page 175); any exceptions for both cases are noted in the descriptions of the specific utilities using regular expressions. Both BREs and EREs are supported by the Regular Expression Matching interface in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 under *regcomp*( ), *regexec*( ), and related functions.

## 9.1 Regular Expression Definitions

For the purposes of this section, the following definitions shall apply:

**entire regular expression**
The concatenated set of one or more BREs or EREs that make up the pattern specified for string selection.

**matched**
A sequence of zero or more characters shall be said to be matched by a BRE or ERE when the characters in the sequence correspond to a sequence of characters defined by the pattern.

Matching shall be based on the bit pattern used for encoding the character, not on the graphic representation of the character. This means that if a character set contains two or more encodings for a graphic symbol, or if the strings searched contain text encoded in more than one codeset, no attempt is made to search for any other representation of the encoded symbol. If that is required, the user can specify equivalence classes containing all variations of the desired graphic symbol.

The search for a matching sequence starts at the beginning of a string and stops when the first sequence matching the expression is found, where ‘‘first’’ is defined to mean ‘‘begins earliest in the string’’. If the pattern permits a variable number of matching characters and thus there is more than one such sequence starting at that point, the longest such sequence is matched. For example, the BRE `"bb*"` matches the second to fourth characters of the string `"abbbc"`, and the ERE `"(wee|week)(knights|night)"` matches all ten characters of the string `"weeknights"`.

Consistent with the whole match being the longest of the leftmost matches, each subpattern, from left to right, shall match the longest possible string. For this purpose, a null string shall be considered to be longer than no match at all. For example, matching the BRE `"\(.*\).*"` against `"abcdef"`, the subexpression `"(\1)"` is `"abcdef"`, and matching the BRE `"\(a*\)*"` against `"bc"`, the subexpression `"(\1)"` is the null string.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

When a multi-character collating element in a bracket expression (see Section 9.3.5 (on page 172)) is involved, the longest sequence shall be measured in characters consumed from the string to be matched; that is, the collating element counts not as one element, but as the number of characters it matches.

**BRE (ERE) matching a single character**
A BRE or ERE that shall match either a single character or a single collating element.

Only a BRE or ERE of this type that includes a bracket expression (see Section 9.3.5 (on page 172)) can match a collating element.

**BRE (ERE) matching multiple characters**
A BRE or ERE that shall match a concatenation of single characters or collating elements.

Such a BRE or ERE is made up from a BRE (ERE) matching a single character and BRE (ERE) special characters.

**invalid**
This section uses the term ‘‘invalid’’ for certain constructs or conditions. Invalid REs shall cause the utility or function using the RE to generate an error condition. When invalid is not used, violations of the specified syntax or semantics for REs produce undefined results: this may entail an error, enabling an extended syntax for that RE, or using the construct in error as literal characters to be matched. For example, the BRE construct `"\{1,2,3\}"` does not comply with the grammar. A conforming application cannot rely on it producing an error nor matching the literal characters `"\{1,2,3\}"`.

## 9.2 Regular Expression General Requirements

The requirements in this section shall apply to both basic and extended regular expressions.

The use of regular expressions is generally associated with text processing. REs (BREs and EREs) operate on text strings; that is, zero or more characters followed by an end-of-string delimiter (typically NUL). Some utilities employing regular expressions limit the processing to lines; that is, zero or more characters followed by a <newline>. In the regular expression processing described in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, the <newline> is regarded as an ordinary character and both a period and a non-matching list can match one. The Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 specifies within the individual descriptions of those standard utilities employing regular expressions whether they permit matching of <newline>s; if not stated otherwise, the use of literal <newline>s or any escape sequence equivalent produces undefined results. Those utilities (like *grep*) that do not allow <newline>s to match are responsible for eliminating any <newline> from strings before matching against the RE. The *regcomp*( ) function in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, however, can provide support for such processing without violating the rules of this section.

The interfaces specified in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 do not permit the inclusion of a NUL character in an RE or in the string to be matched. If during the operation of a standard utility a NUL is included in the text designated to be matched, that NUL may designate the end of the text string for the purposes of matching.

When a standard utility or function that uses regular expressions specifies that pattern matching shall be performed without regard to the case (uppercase or lowercase) of either data or patterns, then when each character in the string is matched against the pattern, not only the character, but also its case counterpart (if any), shall be matched. This definition of case-insensitive processing is intended to allow matching of multi-character collating elements as well as characters, as each character in the string is matched using both its cases. For example, in



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

a locale where "Ch" is a multi-character collating element and where a matching list expression matches such elements, the RE "[[.Ch.]]" when matched against the string "char" is in reality matched against "ch", "Ch", "cH", and "CH".

The implementation shall support any regular expression that does not exceed 256 bytes in length.

## 9.3 Basic Regular Expressions

### 9.3.1 BREs Matching a Single Character or Collating Element

A BRE ordinary character, a special character preceded by a backslash, or a period shall match a single character. A bracket expression shall match a single character or a single collating element.

### 9.3.2 BRE Ordinary Characters

An ordinary character is a BRE that matches itself: any character in the supported character set, except for the BRE special characters listed in Section 9.3.3.

The interpretation of an ordinary character preceded by a backslash ('\') is undefined, except for:

- The characters ')', '(', '{', and '}'
- The digits 1 to 9 inclusive (see Section 9.3.6 (on page 174))
- A character inside a bracket expression

### 9.3.3 BRE Special Characters

A BRE special character has special properties in certain contexts. Outside those contexts, or when preceded by a backslash, such a character is a BRE that matches the special character itself. The BRE special characters and the contexts in which they have their special meaning are as follows:

. [ \ The period, left-bracket, and backslash shall be special except when used in a bracket expression (see Section 9.3.5 (on page 172)). An expression containing a '[' that is not preceded by a backslash and is not part of a bracket expression produces undefined results.

* The asterisk shall be special except when used:

- In a bracket expression
- As the first character of an entire BRE (after an initial '^', if any)
- As the first character of a subexpression (after an initial '^', if any); see Section 9.3.6 (on page 174)

^ The circumflex shall be special when used as:

- An anchor (see Section 9.3.8 (on page 175))
- The first character of a bracket expression (see Section 9.3.5 (on page 172))

$ The dollar sign shall be special when used as an anchor.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

### 9.3.4 Periods in BREs

A period (`'.'`), when used outside a bracket expression, is a BRE that shall match any character in the supported character set except NUL.

### 9.3.5 RE Bracket Expression

A bracket expression (an expression enclosed in square brackets, `"[]"`) is an RE that shall match a single collating element contained in the non-empty set of collating elements represented by the bracket expression.

The following rules and definitions apply to bracket expressions:

1. A bracket expression is either a matching list expression or a non-matching list expression. It consists of one or more expressions: collating elements, collating symbols, equivalence classes, character classes, or range expressions. The right-bracket (`']'`) shall lose its special meaning and represent itself in a bracket expression if it occurs first in the list (after an initial circumflex (`'^'`), if any). Otherwise, it shall terminate the bracket expression, unless it appears in a collating symbol (such as `"[.].]"`) or is the ending right-bracket for a collating symbol, equivalence class, or character class. The special characters `'.'`, `'*'`, `'['`, and `'\'` (period, asterisk, left-bracket, and backslash, respectively) shall lose their special meaning within a bracket expression.

   The character sequences `"[."`, `"[="`, and `"[:"` (left-bracket followed by a period, equals-sign, or colon) shall be special inside a bracket expression and are used to delimit collating symbols, equivalence class expressions, and character class expressions. These symbols shall be followed by a valid expression and the matching terminating sequence `".]"`, `"=]"`, or `":]"`, as described in the following items.

2. A matching list expression specifies a list that shall match any single-character collating element in any of the expressions represented in the list. The first character in the list shall not be the circumflex; for example, `"[abc]"` is an RE that matches any of the characters `'a'`, `'b'`, or `'c'`. It is unspecified whether a matching list expression matches a multi-character collating element that is matched by one of the expressions.

3. A non-matching list expression begins with a circumflex (`'^'`), and specifies a list that shall match any single-character collating element except for the expressions represented in the list after the leading circumflex. For example, `"[^abc]"` is an RE that matches any character except the characters `'a'`, `'b'`, or `'c'`. It is unspecified whether a non-matching list expression matches a multi-character collating element that is not matched by any of the expressions. The circumflex shall have this special meaning only when it occurs first in the list, immediately following the left-bracket.

4. A collating symbol is a collating element enclosed within bracket-period (`"[."` and `".]"`) delimiters. Collating elements are defined as described in Section 7.3.2.4 (on page 137). Conforming applications shall represent multi-character collating elements as collating symbols when it is necessary to distinguish them from a list of the individual characters that make up the multi-character collating element. For example, if the string `"ch"` is a collating element defined using the line:

   ```
   collating-element <ch-digraph> from "<c><h>"
   ```

   in the locale definition, the expression `"[[.ch.]]"` shall be treated as an RE containing the collating symbol `'ch'`, while `"[ch]"` shall be treated as an RE matching `'c'` or `'h'`. Collating symbols are recognized only inside bracket expressions. If the string is not a collating element in the current locale, the expression is invalid.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

5. An equivalence class expression shall represent the set of collating elements belonging to an equivalence class, as described in Section 7.3.2.4 (on page 137). Only primary equivalence classes shall be recognized. The class shall be expressed by enclosing any one of the collating elements in the equivalence class within bracket-equal ("`[=`" and "`=]`") delimiters. For example, if '`a`', '`à`', and '`â`' belong to the same equivalence class, then "`[[=a=]b]`", "`[[=à=]b]`", and "`[[=â=]b]`" are each equivalent to "`[aàâb]`". If the collating element does not belong to an equivalence class, the equivalence class expression shall be treated as a collating symbol.

6. A character class expression shall represent the union of two sets:

   a. The set of single-character collating elements whose characters belong to the character class, as defined in the *LC_CTYPE* category in the current locale.

   b. An unspecified set of multi-character collating elements.

   All character classes specified in the current locale shall be recognized. A character class expression is expressed as a character class name enclosed within bracket-colon ("`[:`" and "`:]`") delimiters.

   The following character class expressions shall be supported in all locales:

   ```
   [:alnum:]   [:cntrl:]   [:lower:]   [:space:]
   [:alpha:]   [:digit:]   [:print:]   [:upper:]
   [:blank:]   [:graph:]   [:punct:]   [:xdigit:]
   ```

   In addition, character class expressions of the form:

   "`[:`*name*`:]`"

   are recognized in those locales where the *name* keyword has been given a **charclass** definition in the *LC_CTYPE* category.

7. In the POSIX locale, a range expression represents the set of collating elements that fall between two elements in the collation sequence, inclusive. In other locales, a range expression has unspecified behavior: strictly conforming applications shall not rely on whether the range expression is valid, or on the set of collating elements matched. A range expression shall be expressed as the starting point and the ending point separated by a hyphen ('`-`').

   In the following, all examples assume the POSIX locale.

   The starting range point and the ending range point shall be a collating element or collating symbol. An equivalence class expression used as a starting or ending point of a range expression produces unspecified results. An equivalence class can be used portably within a bracket expression, but only outside the range. If the represented set of collating elements is empty, it is unspecified whether the expression matches nothing, or is treated as invalid.

   The interpretation of range expressions where the ending range point is also the starting range point of a subsequent range expression (for example, "`[a-m-o]`") is undefined.

   The hyphen character shall be treated as itself if it occurs first (after an initial '`^`', if any) or last in the list, or as an ending range point in a range expression. As examples, the expressions "`[-ac]`" and "`[ac-]`" are equivalent and match any of the characters '`a`', '`c`', or '`-`'; "`[^-ac]`" and "`[^ac-]`" are equivalent and match any characters except '`a`', '`c`', or '`-`'; the expression "`[%--]`" matches any of the characters between '`%`' and '`-`' inclusive; the expression "`[--@]`" matches any of the characters between '`-`' and '`@`' inclusive; and the expression "`[a--@]`" is either invalid or equivalent to '`@`',



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

because the letter 'a' follows the symbol '−' in the POSIX locale. To use a hyphen as the starting range point, it shall either come first in the bracket expression or be specified as a collating symbol; for example, "[][.-.]−0]", which matches either a right bracket or any character or collating element that collates between hyphen and 0, inclusive.

If a bracket expression specifies both '−' and ']', the ']' shall be placed first (after the '^', if any) and the '−' last within the bracket expression.

### 9.3.6 BREs Matching Multiple Characters

The following rules can be used to construct BREs matching multiple characters from BREs matching a single character:

1. The concatenation of BREs shall match the concatenation of the strings matched by each component of the BRE.

2. A subexpression can be defined within a BRE by enclosing it between the character pairs "\(" and "\)". Such a subexpression shall match whatever it would have matched without the "\(" and "\)", except that anchoring within subexpressions is optional behavior; see Section 9.3.8 (on page 175). Subexpressions can be arbitrarily nested.

3. The back-reference expression '\n' shall match the same (possibly empty) string of characters as was matched by a subexpression enclosed between "\(" and "\)" preceding the '\n'. The character 'n' shall be a digit from 1 through 9, specifying the *n*th subexpression (the one that begins with the *n*th "\(" from the beginning of the pattern and ends with the corresponding paired "\)"). The expression is invalid if less than *n* subexpressions precede the '\n'. For example, the expression "\(.*\)\1$" matches a line consisting of two adjacent appearances of the same string, and the expression "\(a\)*\1" fails to match 'a'. When the referenced subexpression matched more than one string, the back-referenced expression shall refer to the last matched string. If the subexpression referenced by the back-reference matches more than one string because of an asterisk ('*') or an interval expression (see item (5)), the back-reference shall match the last (rightmost) of these strings.

4. When a BRE matching a single character, a subexpression, or a back-reference is followed by the special character asterisk ('*'), together with that asterisk it shall match what zero or more consecutive occurrences of the BRE would match. For example, "[ab]*" and "[ab][ab]" are equivalent when matching the string "ab".

5. When a BRE matching a single character, a subexpression, or a back-reference is followed by an interval expression of the format "\{m\}", "\{m,\}", or "\{m,n\}", together with that interval expression it shall match what repeated consecutive occurrences of the BRE would match. The values of *m* and *n* are decimal integers in the range $0 \le m \le n \le \{RE_DUP_MAX\}$, where *m* specifies the exact or minimum number of occurrences and *n* specifies the maximum number of occurrences. The expression "\{m\}" shall match exactly *m* occurrences of the preceding BRE, "\{m,\}" shall match at least *m* occurrences, and "\{m,n\}" shall match any number of occurrences between *m* and *n*, inclusive.

   For example, in the string "abababccccccd" the BRE "c\{3\}" is matched by characters seven to nine, the BRE "\(ab\)\{4,\}" is not matched at all, and the BRE "c\{1,3\}d" is matched by characters ten to thirteen.

The behavior of multiple adjacent duplication symbols ('*' and intervals) produces undefined results.

A subexpression repeated by an asterisk ('*') or an interval expression shall not match a null expression unless this is the only match for the repetition or it is necessary to satisfy the exact or

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

minimum number of occurrences for the interval expression.

### 9.3.7 BRE Precedence

The order of precedence shall be as shown in the following table:

| BRE Precedence (from high to low) | |
|---|---|
| Collation-related bracket symbols | `[==] [::] [..]` |
| Escaped characters | `\<special character>` |
| Bracket expression | `[]` |
| Subexpressions / back-references | `\(\) \n` |
| Single-character-BRE duplication | `* \{m,n\}` |
| Concatenation | |
| Anchoring | `^ $` |

### 9.3.8 BRE Expression Anchoring

A BRE can be limited to matching strings that begin or end a line; this is called ‘‘anchoring’’. The circumflex and dollar sign special characters shall be considered BRE anchors in the following contexts:

1. A circumflex (`'^'`) shall be an anchor when used as the first character of an entire BRE. The implementation may treat the circumflex as an anchor when used as the first character of a subexpression. The circumflex shall anchor the expression (or optionally subexpression) to the beginning of a string; only sequences starting at the first character of a string shall be matched by the BRE. For example, the BRE `"^ab"` matches `"ab"` in the string `"abcdef"`, but fails to match in the string `"cdefab"`. The BRE `"\(^ab\)"` may match the former string. A portable BRE shall escape a leading circumflex in a subexpression to match a literal circumflex.

2. A dollar sign (`'$'`) shall be an anchor when used as the last character of an entire BRE. The implementation may treat a dollar sign as an anchor when used as the last character of a subexpression. The dollar sign shall anchor the expression (or optionally subexpression) to the end of the string being matched; the dollar sign can be said to match the end-of-string following the last character.

3. A BRE anchored by both `'^'` and `'$'` shall match only an entire string. For example, the BRE `"^abcdef$"` matches strings consisting only of `"abcdef"`.

## 9.4 Extended Regular Expressions

The extended regular expression (ERE) notation and construction rules shall apply to utilities defined as using extended regular expressions; any exceptions to the following rules are noted in the descriptions of the specific utilities using EREs.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

### 9.4.1 EREs Matching a Single Character or Collating Element

An ERE ordinary character, a special character preceded by a backslash, or a period shall match a single character. A bracket expression shall match a single character or a single collating element. An ERE matching a single character enclosed in parentheses shall match the same as the ERE without parentheses would have matched.

### 9.4.2 ERE Ordinary Characters

An ordinary character is an ERE that matches itself. An ordinary character is any character in the supported character set, except for the ERE special characters listed in Section 9.4.3. The interpretation of an ordinary character preceded by a backslash (`'\'`) is undefined.

### 9.4.3 ERE Special Characters

An ERE special character has special properties in certain contexts. Outside those contexts, or when preceded by a backslash, such a character shall be an ERE that matches the special character itself. The extended regular expression special characters and the contexts in which they shall have their special meaning are as follows:

`. [ \ (` The period, left-bracket, backslash, and left-parenthesis shall be special except when used in a bracket expression (see Section 9.3.5 (on page 172)). Outside a bracket expression, a left-parenthesis immediately followed by a right-parenthesis produces undefined results.

`)` The right-parenthesis shall be special when matched with a preceding left-parenthesis, both outside a bracket expression.

`* + ? {` The asterisk, plus-sign, question-mark, and left-brace shall be special except when used in a bracket expression (see Section 9.3.5 (on page 172)). Any of the following uses produce undefined results:

- If these characters appear first in an ERE, or immediately following a vertical-line, circumflex, or left-parenthesis
- If a left-brace is not part of a valid interval expression (see Section 9.4.6 (on page 177))

`|` The vertical-line is special except when used in a bracket expression (see Section 9.3.5 (on page 172)). A vertical-line appearing first or last in an ERE, or immediately following a vertical-line or a left-parenthesis, or immediately preceding a right-parenthesis, produces undefined results.

`^` The circumflex shall be special when used as:

- An anchor (see Section 9.4.9 (on page 178))
- The first character of a bracket expression (see Section 9.3.5 (on page 172))

`$` The dollar sign shall be special when used as an anchor.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

### 9.4.4 Periods in EREs

A period (`'.'`), when used outside a bracket expression, is an ERE that shall match any character in the supported character set except NUL.

### 9.4.5 ERE Bracket Expression

The rules for ERE Bracket Expressions are the same as for Basic Regular Expressions; see Section 9.3.5 (on page 172).

### 9.4.6 EREs Matching Multiple Characters

The following rules shall be used to construct EREs matching multiple characters from EREs matching a single character:

1. A concatenation of EREs shall match the concatenation of the character sequences matched by each component of the ERE. A concatenation of EREs enclosed in parentheses shall match whatever the concatenation without the parentheses matches. For example, both the ERE `"cd"` and the ERE `"(cd)"` are matched by the third and fourth character of the string `"abcdefabcdef"`.

2. When an ERE matching a single character or an ERE enclosed in parentheses is followed by the special character plus-sign (`'+'`), together with that plus-sign it shall match what one or more consecutive occurrences of the ERE would match. For example, the ERE `"b+(bc)"` matches the fourth to seventh characters in the string `"acabbbcde"`. And, `"[ab]+"` and `"[ab][ab]*"` are equivalent.

3. When an ERE matching a single character or an ERE enclosed in parentheses is followed by the special character asterisk (`'*'`), together with that asterisk it shall match what zero or more consecutive occurrences of the ERE would match. For example, the ERE `"b*c"` matches the first character in the string `"cabbbcde"`, and the ERE `"b*cd"` matches the third to seventh characters in the string `"cabbbcdebbbbbbcdbc"`. And, `"[ab]*"` and `"[ab][ab]"` are equivalent when matching the string `"ab"`.

4. When an ERE matching a single character or an ERE enclosed in parentheses is followed by the special character question-mark (`'?'`), together with that question-mark it shall match what zero or one consecutive occurrences of the ERE would match. For example, the ERE `"b?c"` matches the second character in the string `"acabbbcde"`.

5. When an ERE matching a single character or an ERE enclosed in parentheses is followed by an interval expression of the format `"{m}"`, `"{m,}"`, or `"{m,n}"`, together with that interval expression it shall match what repeated consecutive occurrences of the ERE would match. The values of *m* and *n* are decimal integers in the range $0 \le m \le n \le \{RE_DUP_MAX\}$, where *m* specifies the exact or minimum number of occurrences and *n* specifies the maximum number of occurrences. The expression `"{m}"` matches exactly *m* occurrences of the preceding ERE, `"{m,}"` matches at least *m* occurrences, and `"{m,n}"` matches any number of occurrences between *m* and *n*, inclusive.

   For example, in the string `"abababccccccd"` the ERE `"c{3}"` is matched by characters seven to nine and the ERE `"(ab){2,}"` is matched by characters one to six.

The behavior of multiple adjacent duplication symbols (`'+'`, `'*'`, `'?'`, and intervals) produces undefined results.

An ERE matching a single character repeated by an `'*'`, `'?'`, or an interval expression shall not match a null expression unless this is the only match for the repetition or it is necessary to satisfy the exact or minimum number of occurrences for the interval expression.



--`,,`-`-`-,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

### 9.4.7 ERE Alternation

Two EREs separated by the special character vertical-line (`'|'`) shall match a string that is matched by either. For example, the ERE `"a((bc)|d)"` matches the string `"abc"` and the string `"ad"`. Single characters, or expressions matching single characters, separated by the vertical bar and enclosed in parentheses, shall be treated as an ERE matching a single character.

### 9.4.8 ERE Precedence

The order of precedence shall be as shown in the following table:

| **ERE Precedence (from high to low)** | |
|---|---|
| Collation-related bracket symbols | `[==] [::] [..]` |
| Escaped characters | `\<special character>` |
| Bracket expression | `[]` |
| Grouping | `()` |
| Single-character-ERE duplication | `* + ? {m,n}` |
| Concatenation | |
| Anchoring | `^ $` |
| Alternation | `\|` |

For example, the ERE `"abba|cde"` matches either the string `"abba"` or the string `"cde"` (rather than the string `"abbade"` or `"abbcde"`, because concatenation has a higher order of precedence than alternation).

### 9.4.9 ERE Expression Anchoring

An ERE can be limited to matching strings that begin or end a line; this is called ‘‘anchoring’’. The circumflex and dollar sign special characters shall be considered ERE anchors when used anywhere outside a bracket expression. This shall have the following effects:

1. A circumflex (`'^'`) outside a bracket expression shall anchor the expression or subexpression it begins to the beginning of a string; such an expression or subexpression can match only a sequence starting at the first character of a string. For example, the EREs `"^ab"` and `"(^ab)"` match `"ab"` in the string `"abcdef"`, but fail to match in the string `"cdefab"`, and the ERE `"a^b"` is valid, but can never match because the `'a'` prevents the expression `"^b"` from matching starting at the first character.

2. A dollar sign (`'$'`) outside a bracket expression shall anchor the expression or subexpression it ends to the end of a string; such an expression or subexpression can match only a sequence ending at the last character of a string. For example, the EREs `"ef$"` and `"(ef$)"` match `"ef"` in the string `"abcdef"`, but fail to match in the string `"cdefab"`, and the ERE `"e$f"` is valid, but can never match because the `'f'` prevents the expression `"e$"` from matching ending at the last character.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 9.5 Regular Expression Grammar

Grammars describing the syntax of both basic and extended regular expressions are presented in this section. The grammar takes precedence over the text. See the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 1.10, Grammar Conventions.

### 9.5.1 BRE/ERE Grammar Lexical Conventions

The lexical conventions for regular expressions are as described in this section.

Except as noted, the longest possible token or delimiter beginning at a given point is recognized.

The following tokens are processed (in addition to those string constants shown in the grammar):

**COLL_ELEM_SINGLE**
Any single-character collating element, unless it is a **META_CHAR**.

**COLL_ELEM_MULTI**
Any multi-character collating element.

**BACKREF** Applicable only to basic regular expressions. The character string consisting of '\' followed by a single-digit numeral, '1' to '9'.

**DUP_COUNT** Represents a numeric constant. It shall be an integer in the range 0 ≤**DUP_COUNT** ≤{RE_DUP_MAX}. This token is only recognized when the context of the grammar requires it. At all other times, digits not preceded by '\' are treated as **ORD_CHAR**.

**META_CHAR** One of the characters:

^ When found first in a bracket expression

– When found anywhere but first (after an initial '^', if any) or last in a bracket expression, or as the ending range point in a range expression

] When found anywhere but first (after an initial '^', if any) in a bracket expression

**L_ANCHOR** Applicable only to basic regular expressions. The character '^' when it appears as the first character of a basic regular expression and when not **QUOTED_CHAR**. The '^' may be recognized as an anchor elsewhere; see Section 9.3.8 (on page 175).

**ORD_CHAR** A character, other than one of the special characters in **SPEC_CHAR**.

**QUOTED_CHAR** In a BRE, one of the character sequences:

```
\^    \.    \*    \[    \$    \\
```

In an ERE, one of the character sequences:

```
\^    \.    \[    \$    \(    \)    \|
\*    \+    \?    \{    \\
```

**R_ANCHOR** (Applicable only to basic regular expressions.) The character '$' when it appears as the last character of a basic regular expression and when not **QUOTED_CHAR**. The '$' may be recognized as an anchor elsewhere; see Section 9.3.8 (on page 175).



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

**SPEC_CHAR** For basic regular expressions, one of the following special characters:

`.` Anywhere outside bracket expressions

`\` Anywhere outside bracket expressions

`[` Anywhere outside bracket expressions

`^` When used as an anchor (see Section 9.3.8 (on page 175)) or when first in a bracket expression

`$` When used as an anchor

`*` Anywhere except first in an entire RE, anywhere in a bracket expression, directly following `"\("`, directly following an anchoring `'^'`

For extended regular expressions, shall be one of the following special characters found anywhere outside bracket expressions:

```
^    .    [    $    (    )    |
*    +    ?    {    \
```

(The close-parenthesis shall be considered special in this context only if matched with a preceding open-parenthesis.)

### 9.5.2 RE and Bracket Expression Grammar

This section presents the grammar for basic regular expressions, including the bracket expression grammar that is common to both BREs and EREs.

```
%token    ORD_CHAR QUOTED_CHAR DUP_COUNT

%token    BACKREF L_ANCHOR R_ANCHOR

%token    Back_open_paren  Back_close_paren
/*          '\('             '\)'        */

%token    Back_open_brace  Back_close_brace
/*          '\{'             '\}'         */

/* The following tokens are for the Bracket Expression
   grammar common to both REs and EREs. */

%token    COLL_ELEM_SINGLE COLL_ELEM_MULTI META_CHAR

%token    Open_equal Equal_close Open_dot Dot_close Open_colon Colon_close
/*          '[='       '=]'        '[.'     '.]'      '[:'       ':]'   */

%token    class_name
/* class_name is a keyword to the LC_CTYPE locale category */
/* (representing a character class) in the current locale */
/* and is only recognized between [: and :] */

%start    basic_reg_exp
%%

/* -------------------------------------------
   Basic Regular Expression
   -------------------------------------------
*/
basic_reg_exp  :          RE_expression
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
                    | L_ANCHOR
                    |                       R_ANCHOR
                    | L_ANCHOR              R_ANCHOR
                    | L_ANCHOR RE_expression
                    |          RE_expression R_ANCHOR
                    | L_ANCHOR RE_expression R_ANCHOR
                    ;
RE_expression  :              simple_RE
                    | RE_expression simple_RE
                    ;
simple_RE      : nondupl_RE
                    | nondupl_RE RE_dupl_symbol
                    ;
nondupl_RE     : one_char_or_coll_elem_RE
                    | Back_open_paren RE_expression Back_close_paren
                    | BACKREF
                    ;
one_char_or_coll_elem_RE : ORD_CHAR
                    | QUOTED_CHAR
                    | '.'
                    | bracket_expression
                    ;
RE_dupl_symbol : '*'
                    | Back_open_brace DUP_COUNT               Back_close_brace
                    | Back_open_brace DUP_COUNT ','           Back_close_brace
                    | Back_open_brace DUP_COUNT ',' DUP_COUNT Back_close_brace
                    ;
/* ------------------------------------------
   Bracket Expression
   ------------------------------------------
*/
bracket_expression : '[' matching_list ']'
                    | '[' nonmatching_list ']'
                    ;
matching_list  : bracket_list
                    ;
nonmatching_list : '^' bracket_list
                    ;
bracket_list   : follow_list
                    | follow_list '-'
                    ;
follow_list    :             expression_term
                    | follow_list expression_term
                    ;
expression_term : single_expression
                    | range_expression
                    ;
single_expression : end_range
                    | character_class
                    | equivalence_class
                    ;
range_expression : start_range end_range
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
                    | start_range '-'
                    ;
start_range         : end_range '-'
                    ;
end_range           : COLL_ELEM_SINGLE
                    | collating_symbol
                    ;
collating_symbol : Open_dot COLL_ELEM_SINGLE Dot_close
                    | Open_dot COLL_ELEM_MULTI Dot_close
                    | Open_dot META_CHAR Dot_close
                    ;
equivalence_class : Open_equal COLL_ELEM_SINGLE Equal_close
                    | Open_equal COLL_ELEM_MULTI Equal_close
                    ;
character_class : Open_colon class_name Colon_close
                    ;
```

The BRE grammar does not permit **L_ANCHOR** or **R_ANCHOR** inside "\(" and "\)" (which implies that '^' and '$' are ordinary characters). This reflects the semantic limits on the application, as noted in Section 9.3.8 (on page 175). Implementations are permitted to extend the language to interpret '^' and '$' as anchors in these locations, and as such, conforming applications cannot use unescaped '^' and '$' in positions inside "\(" and "\)" that might be interpreted as anchors.

### 9.5.3 ERE Grammar

This section presents the grammar for extended regular expressions, excluding the bracket expression grammar.

**Note:** The bracket expression grammar and the associated **%token** lines are identical between BREs and EREs. It has been omitted from the ERE section to avoid unnecessary editorial duplication.

```
%token  ORD_CHAR QUOTED_CHAR DUP_COUNT
%start  extended_reg_exp
%%

/* -------------------------------------------
   Extended Regular Expression
   -------------------------------------------
*/
extended_reg_exp   :                       ERE_branch
                   | extended_reg_exp '|' ERE_branch
                   ;
ERE_branch         :            ERE_expression
                   | ERE_branch ERE_expression
                   ;
ERE_expression     : one_char_or_coll_elem_ERE
                   | '^'
                   | '$'
                   | '(' extended_reg_exp ')'
                   | ERE_expression ERE_dupl_symbol
                   ;
one_char_or_coll_elem_ERE  : ORD_CHAR
                   | QUOTED_CHAR
                   | '.'
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
                        | bracket_expression
                        ;
ERE_dupl_symbol         : '*'
                        | '+'
                        | '?'
                        | '{' DUP_COUNT               '}'
                        | '{' DUP_COUNT ','           '}'
                        | '{' DUP_COUNT ',' DUP_COUNT '}'
                        ;
```

The ERE grammar does not permit several constructs that previous sections specify as having undefined results:

- **ORD_CHAR** preceded by '\'
- One or more *ERE_dupl_symbol*s appearing first in an ERE, or immediately following '|', '^', or '('
- '{' not part of a valid *ERE_dupl_symbol*
- '|' appearing first or last in an ERE, or immediately following '|' or '(', or immediately preceding ')'

Implementations are permitted to extend the language to allow these. Conforming applications cannot use such constructs.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

6508

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

Chapter 10

# Directory Structure and Devices

## 10.1 Directory Structure and Files

The following directories shall exist on conforming systems and conforming applications shall make use of them only as described. Strictly conforming applications shall not assume the ability to create files in any of these directories, unless specified below.

**/** The root directory.

**/dev** Contains **/dev/console**, **/dev/null**, and **/dev/tty**, described below.

The following directory shall exist on conforming systems and shall be used as described:

**/tmp** A directory made available for applications that need a place to create temporary files. Applications shall be allowed to create files in this directory, but shall not assume that such files are preserved between invocations of the application.

The following files shall exist on conforming systems and shall be both readable and writable:

**/dev/null** An infinite data source and data sink. Data written to **/dev/null** shall be discarded. Reads from **/dev/null** shall always return end-of-file (EOF).

**/dev/tty** In each process, a synonym for the controlling terminal associated with the process group of that process, if any. It is useful for programs or shell procedures that wish to be sure of writing messages to or reading data from the terminal no matter how output has been redirected. It can also be used for applications that demand the name of a file for output, when typed output is desired and it is tiresome to find out what terminal is currently in use.

The following file shall exist on conforming systems and need not be readable or writable:

**/dev/console** The **/dev/console** file is a generic name given to the system console (see Section 3.382 (on page 88)). It is usually linked to an implementation-defined special file. It shall provide an interface to the system console conforming to the requirements of the Base Definitions volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Chapter 11, General Terminal Interface.

## 10.2 Output Devices and Terminal Types

The utilities in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 historically have been implemented on a wide range of terminal types, but a conforming implementation need not support all features of all utilities on every conceivable terminal. IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 states which features are optional for certain classes of terminals in the individual utility description sections. The implementation shall document which terminal types it supports and which of these features and utilities are not supported by each terminal.

When a feature or utility is not supported on a specific terminal type, as allowed by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, and the implementation considers such a condition to be an error preventing use of the feature or utility, the implementation shall indicate such conditions through diagnostic messages or exit status values or both (as appropriate to the specific utility description) that inform the user that the terminal type lacks the appropriate capability.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 uses a notational convention based on historical practice that identifies some of the control characters defined in Section 7.3.1 (on page 126) in a manner easily remembered by users on many terminals. The correspondence between this ''<control>-*char*'' notation and the actual control characters is shown in the following table. When IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 refers to a character by its <control>-*name*, it is referring to the actual control character shown in the Value column of the table, which is not necessarily the exact control key sequence on all terminals. Some terminals have keyboards that do not allow the direct transmission of all the non-alphanumeric characters shown. In such cases, the system documentation shall describe which data sequences transmitted by the terminal are interpreted by the system as representing the special characters.

**Table 10-1** Control Character Names

| Name | Value | Symbolic Name | Name | Value | Symbolic Name |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| <control>-A | <SOH> | <SOH> | <control>-Q | <DC1> | <DC1> |
| <control>-B | <STX> | <STX> | <control>-R | <DC2> | <DC2> |
| <control>-C | <ETX> | <ETX> | <control>-S | <DC3> | <DC3> |
| <control>-D | <EOT> | <EOT> | <control>-T | <DC4> | <DC4> |
| <control>-E | <ENQ> | <ENQ> | <control>-U | <NAK> | <NAK> |
| <control>-F | <ACK> | <ACK> | <control>-V | <SYN> | <SYN> |
| <control>-G | <BEL> | <alert> | <control>-W | <ETB> | <ETB> |
| <control>-H | <BS> | <backspace> | <control>-X | <CAN> | <CAN> |
| <control>-I | <HT> | <tab> | <control>-Y | <EM> | <EM> |
| <control>-J | <LF> | <linefeed> | <control>-Z | <SUB> | <SUB> |
| <control>-K | <VT> | <vertical-tab> | <control>-[ | <ESC> | <ESC> |
| <control>-L | <FF> | <form-feed> | <control>-\ | <FS> | <FS> |
| <control>-M | <CR> | <carriage-return> | <control>-] | <GS> | <GS> |
| <control>-N | <SO> | <SO> | <control>-^ | <RS> | <RS> |
| <control>-O | <SI> | <SI> | <control>-_ | <US> | <US> |
| <control>-P | <DLE> | <DLE> | <control>-? | <DEL> | <DEL> |

**Note:** The notation uses uppercase letters for arbitrary editorial reasons. There is no implication that the keystrokes represent control-shift-letter sequences.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Chapter 11

# General Terminal Interface

This chapter describes a general terminal interface that shall be provided. It shall be supported on any asynchronous communications ports if the implementation provides them. It is implementation-defined whether it supports network connections or synchronous ports, or both.

## 11.1 Interface Characteristics

### 11.1.1 Opening a Terminal Device File

When a terminal device file is opened, it normally causes the thread to wait until a connection is established. In practice, application programs seldom open these files; they are opened by special programs and become an application's standard input, output, and error files.

As described in *open*( ), opening a terminal device file with the O_NONBLOCK flag clear shall cause the thread to block until the terminal device is ready and available. If CLOCAL mode is not set, this means blocking until a connection is established. If CLOCAL mode is set in the terminal, or the O_NONBLOCK flag is specified in the *open*( ), the *open*( ) function shall return a file descriptor without waiting for a connection to be established.

### 11.1.2 Process Groups

A terminal may have a foreground process group associated with it. This foreground process group plays a special role in handling signal-generating input characters, as discussed in Section 11.1.9 (on page 191).

A command interpreter process supporting job control can allocate the terminal to different jobs, or process groups, by placing related processes in a single process group and associating this process group with the terminal. A terminal's foreground process group may be set or examined by a process, assuming the permission requirements are met; see *tcgetpgrp*( ) and *tcsetpgrp*( ). The terminal interface aids in this allocation by restricting access to the terminal by processes that are not in the current process group; see Section 11.1.4 (on page 188).

When there is no longer any process whose process ID or process group ID matches the foreground process group ID, the terminal shall have no foreground process group. It is unspecified whether the terminal has a foreground process group when there is a process whose process ID matches the foreground process group ID, but whose process group ID does not. No actions defined in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, other than allocation of a controlling terminal or a successful call to *tcsetpgrp*( ), shall cause a process group to become the foreground process group of the terminal.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

### 11.1.3 The Controlling Terminal

A terminal may belong to a process as its controlling terminal. Each process of a session that has a controlling terminal has the same controlling terminal. A terminal may be the controlling terminal for at most one session. The controlling terminal for a session is allocated by the session leader in an implementation-defined manner. If a session leader has no controlling terminal, and opens a terminal device file that is not already associated with a session without using the O_NOCTTY option (see *open*( )), it is implementation-defined whether the terminal becomes the controlling terminal of the session leader. If a process which is not a session leader opens a terminal file, or the O_NOCTTY option is used on *open*( ), then that terminal shall not become the controlling terminal of the calling process. When a controlling terminal becomes associated with a session, its foreground process group shall be set to the process group of the session leader.

The controlling terminal is inherited by a child process during a *fork*( ) function call. A process relinquishes its controlling terminal when it creates a new session with the *setsid*( ) function; other processes remaining in the old session that had this terminal as their controlling terminal continue to have it. Upon the close of the last file descriptor in the system (whether or not it is in the current session) associated with the controlling terminal, it is unspecified whether all processes that had that terminal as their controlling terminal cease to have any controlling terminal. Whether and how a session leader can reacquire a controlling terminal after the controlling terminal has been relinquished in this fashion is unspecified. A process does not relinquish its controlling terminal simply by closing all of its file descriptors associated with the controlling terminal if other processes continue to have it open.

When a controlling process terminates, the controlling terminal is dissociated from the current session, allowing it to be acquired by a new session leader. Subsequent access to the terminal by other processes in the earlier session may be denied, with attempts to access the terminal treated as if a modem disconnect had been sensed.

### 11.1.4 Terminal Access Control

If a process is in the foreground process group of its controlling terminal, read operations shall be allowed, as described in Section 11.1.5 (on page 189). Any attempts by a process in a background process group to read from its controlling terminal cause its process group to be sent a SIGTTIN signal unless one of the following special cases applies: if the reading process is ignoring or blocking the SIGTTIN signal, or if the process group of the reading process is orphaned, the *read*( ) shall return –1, with *errno* set to [EIO] and no signal shall be sent. The default action of the SIGTTIN signal shall be to stop the process to which it is sent. See **<signal.h>**.

If a process is in the foreground process group of its controlling terminal, write operations shall be allowed as described in Section 11.1.8 (on page 191). Attempts by a process in a background process group to write to its controlling terminal shall cause the process group to be sent a SIGTTOU signal unless one of the following special cases applies: if TOSTOP is not set, or if TOSTOP is set and the process is ignoring or blocking the SIGTTOU signal, the process is allowed to write to the terminal and the SIGTTOU signal is not sent. If TOSTOP is set, and the process group of the writing process is orphaned, and the writing process is not ignoring or blocking the SIGTTOU signal, the *write*( ) shall return –1, with *errno* set to [EIO] and no signal shall be sent.

Certain calls that set terminal parameters are treated in the same fashion as *write*( ), except that TOSTOP is ignored; that is, the effect is identical to that of terminal writes when TOSTOP is set (see Section 11.2.5 (on page 197), *tcdrain*( ), *tcflow*( ), *tcflush*( ), *tcsendbreak*( ), *tcsetattr*( ), and *tcsetpgrp*( )).

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

### 11.1.5 Input Processing and Reading Data

A terminal device associated with a terminal device file may operate in full-duplex mode, so that data may arrive even while output is occurring. Each terminal device file has an input queue associated with it, into which incoming data is stored by the system before being read by a process. The system may impose a limit, {MAX_INPUT}, on the number of bytes that may be stored in the input queue. The behavior of the system when this limit is exceeded is implementation-defined.

Two general kinds of input processing are available, determined by whether the terminal device file is in canonical mode or non-canonical mode. These modes are described in Section 11.1.6 and Section 11.1.7 (on page 190). Additionally, input characters are processed according to the *c_iflag* (see Section 11.2.2 (on page 193)) and *c_lflag* (see Section 11.2.5 (on page 197)) fields. Such processing can include ''echoing'', which in general means transmitting input characters immediately back to the terminal when they are received from the terminal. This is useful for terminals that can operate in full-duplex mode.

The manner in which data is provided to a process reading from a terminal device file is dependent on whether the terminal file is in canonical or non-canonical mode, and on whether or not the O_NONBLOCK flag is set by *open*( ) or *fcntl*( ).

If the O_NONBLOCK flag is clear, then the read request shall be blocked until data is available or a signal has been received. If the O_NONBLOCK flag is set, then the read request shall be completed, without blocking, in one of three ways:

1. If there is enough data available to satisfy the entire request, the *read*( ) shall complete successfully and shall return the number of bytes read.
2. If there is not enough data available to satisfy the entire request, the *read*( ) shall complete successfully, having read as much data as possible, and shall return the number of bytes it was able to read.
3. If there is no data available, the *read*( ) shall return −1, with *errno* set to [EAGAIN].

When data is available depends on whether the input processing mode is canonical or non-canonical. Section 11.1.6 and Section 11.1.7 (on page 190) describe each of these input processing modes.

### 11.1.6 Canonical Mode Input Processing

In canonical mode input processing, terminal input is processed in units of lines. A line is delimited by a newline character (NL), an end-of-file character (EOF), or an end-of-line (EOL) character. See Section 11.1.9 (on page 191) for more information on EOF and EOL. This means that a read request shall not return until an entire line has been typed or a signal has been received. Also, no matter how many bytes are requested in the *read*( ) call, at most one line shall be returned. It is not, however, necessary to read a whole line at once; any number of bytes, even one, may be requested in a *read*( ) without losing information.

If {MAX_CANON} is defined for this terminal device, it shall be a limit on the number of bytes in a line. The behavior of the system when this limit is exceeded is implementation-defined. If {MAX_CANON} is not defined, there shall be no such limit; see *pathconf*( ).

Erase and kill processing occur when either of two special characters, the ERASE and KILL characters (see Section 11.1.9 (on page 191)), is received. This processing shall affect data in the input queue that has not yet been delimited by an NL, EOF, or EOL character. This un-delimited data makes up the current line. The ERASE character shall delete the last character in the current line, if there is one. The KILL character shall delete all data in the current line, if there is any. The ERASE and KILL characters shall have no effect if there is no data in the current line. The ERASE



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

and KILL characters themselves shall not be placed in the input queue.

### 11.1.7 Non-Canonical Mode Input Processing

In non-canonical mode input processing, input bytes are not assembled into lines, and erase and kill processing shall not occur. The values of the MIN and TIME members of the *c_cc* array are used to determine how to process the bytes received. IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 does not specify whether the setting of O_NONBLOCK takes precedence over MIN or TIME settings. Therefore, if O_NONBLOCK is set, *read*( ) may return immediately, regardless of the setting of MIN or TIME. Also, if no data is available, *read*( ) may either return 0, or return –1 with *errno* set to [EAGAIN].

MIN represents the minimum number of bytes that should be received when the *read*( ) function returns successfully. TIME is a timer of 0.1 second granularity that is used to time out bursty and short-term data transmissions. If MIN is greater than {MAX_INPUT}, the response to the request is undefined. The four possible values for MIN and TIME and their interactions are described below.

**Case A: MIN>0, TIME>0**

In case A, TIME serves as an inter-byte timer which shall be activated after the first byte is received. Since it is an inter-byte timer, it shall be reset after a byte is received. The interaction between MIN and TIME is as follows. As soon as one byte is received, the inter-byte timer shall be started. If MIN bytes are received before the inter-byte timer expires (remember that the timer is reset upon receipt of each byte), the read shall be satisfied. If the timer expires before MIN bytes are received, the characters received to that point shall be returned to the user. Note that if TIME expires at least one byte shall be returned because the timer would not have been enabled unless a byte was received. In this case (MIN>0, TIME>0) the read shall block until the MIN and TIME mechanisms are activated by the receipt of the first byte, or a signal is received. If data is in the buffer at the time of the *read*( ), the result shall be as if data has been received immediately after the *read*( ).

**Case B: MIN>0, TIME=0**

In case B, since the value of TIME is zero, the timer plays no role and only MIN is significant. A pending read shall not be satisfied until MIN bytes are received (that is, the pending read shall block until MIN bytes are received), or a signal is received. A program that uses case B to read record-based terminal I/O may block indefinitely in the read operation.

**Case C: MIN=0, TIME>0**

In case C, since MIN=0, TIME no longer represents an inter-byte timer. It now serves as a read timer that shall be activated as soon as the *read*( ) function is processed. A read shall be satisfied as soon as a single byte is received or the read timer expires. Note that in case C if the timer expires, no bytes shall be returned. If the timer does not expire, the only way the read can be satisfied is if a byte is received. If bytes are not received, the read shall not block indefinitely waiting for a byte; if no byte is received within TIME*0.1 seconds after the read is initiated, the *read*( ) shall return a value of zero, having read no data. If data is in the buffer at the time of the *read*( ), the timer shall be started as if data has been received immediately after the *read*( ).

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

**Case D: MIN=0, TIME=0**

The minimum of either the number of bytes requested or the number of bytes currently available shall be returned without waiting for more bytes to be input. If no characters are available, *read*( ) shall return a value of zero, having read no data.

### 11.1.8 Writing Data and Output Processing

When a process writes one or more bytes to a terminal device file, they are processed according to the *c_oflag* field (see Section 11.2.3 (on page 194)). The implementation may provide a buffering mechanism; as such, when a call to *write*( ) completes, all of the bytes written have been scheduled for transmission to the device, but the transmission has not necessarily completed. See *write*( ) for the effects of O_NONBLOCK on *write*( ).

### 11.1.9 Special Characters

Certain characters have special functions on input or output or both. These functions are summarized as follows:

INTR Special character on input, which is recognized if the ISIG flag is set. Generates a SIGINT signal which is sent to all processes in the foreground process group for which the terminal is the controlling terminal. If ISIG is set, the INTR character shall be discarded when processed.

QUIT Special character on input, which is recognized if the ISIG flag is set. Generates a SIGQUIT signal which is sent to all processes in the foreground process group for which the terminal is the controlling terminal. If ISIG is set, the QUIT character shall be discarded when processed.

ERASE Special character on input, which is recognized if the ICANON flag is set. Erases the last character in the current line; see Section 11.1.6 (on page 189). It shall not erase beyond the start of a line, as delimited by an NL, EOF, or EOL character. If ICANON is set, the ERASE character shall be discarded when processed.

KILL Special character on input, which is recognized if the ICANON flag is set. Deletes the entire line, as delimited by an NL, EOF, or EOL character. If ICANON is set, the KILL character shall be discarded when processed.

EOF Special character on input, which is recognized if the ICANON flag is set. When received, all the bytes waiting to be read are immediately passed to the process without waiting for a newline, and the EOF is discarded. Thus, if there are no bytes waiting (that is, the EOF occurred at the beginning of a line), a byte count of zero shall be returned from the *read*( ), representing an end-of-file indication. If ICANON is set, the EOF character shall be discarded when processed.

NL Special character on input, which is recognized if the ICANON flag is set. It is the line delimiter newline. It cannot be changed.

EOL Special character on input, which is recognized if the ICANON flag is set. It is an additional line delimiter, like NL.

SUSP If the ISIG flag is set, receipt of the SUSP character shall cause a SIGTSTP signal to be sent to all processes in the foreground process group for which the terminal is the controlling terminal, and the SUSP character shall be discarded when processed.

STOP Special character on both input and output, which is recognized if the IXON (output control) or IXOFF (input control) flag is set. Can be used to suspend output temporarily. It is useful with CRT terminals to prevent output from disappearing



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

before it can be read. If IXON is set, the STOP character shall be discarded when processed.

START Special character on both input and output, which is recognized if the IXON (output control) or IXOFF (input control) flag is set. Can be used to resume output that has been suspended by a STOP character. If IXON is set, the START character shall be discarded when processed.

CR Special character on input, which is recognized if the ICANON flag is set; it is the carriage-return character. When ICANON and ICRNL are set and IGNCR is not set, this character shall be translated into an NL, and shall have the same effect as an NL character.

The NL and CR characters cannot be changed. It is implementation-defined whether the START and STOP characters can be changed. The values for INTR, QUIT, ERASE, KILL, EOF, EOL, and SUSP shall be changeable to suit individual tastes. Special character functions associated with changeable special control characters can be disabled individually.

If two or more special characters have the same value, the function performed when that character is received is undefined.

A special character is recognized not only by its value, but also by its context; for example, an implementation may support multi-byte sequences that have a meaning different from the meaning of the bytes when considered individually. Implementations may also support additional single-byte functions. These implementation-defined multi-byte or single-byte functions shall be recognized only if the IEXTEN flag is set; otherwise, data is received without interpretation, except as required to recognize the special characters defined in this section.

XSI If IEXTEN is set, the ERASE, KILL, and EOF characters can be escaped by a preceding '\' character, in which case no special function shall occur.

### 11.1.10 Modem Disconnect

If a modem disconnect is detected by the terminal interface for a controlling terminal, and if CLOCAL is not set in the *c_cflag* field for the terminal (see Section 11.2.4 (on page 196)), the SIGHUP signal shall be sent to the controlling process for which the terminal is the controlling terminal. Unless other arrangements have been made, this shall cause the controlling process to terminate (see *exit*( )). Any subsequent read from the terminal device shall return the value of zero, indicating end-of-file; see *read*( ). Thus, processes that read a terminal file and test for end-of-file can terminate appropriately after a disconnect. If the EIO condition as specified in *read*( ) also exists, it is unspecified whether on EOF condition or [EIO] is returned. Any subsequent *write*( ) to the terminal device shall return –1, with *errno* set to [EIO], until the device is closed.

### 11.1.11 Closing a Terminal Device File

The last process to close a terminal device file shall cause any output to be sent to the device and any input to be discarded. If HUPCL is set in the control modes and the communications port supports a disconnect function, the terminal device shall perform a disconnect.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## 11.2 Parameters that Can be Set

### 11.2.1 The termios Structure

Routines that need to control certain terminal I/O characteristics shall do so by using the **termios** structure as defined in the **<termios.h>** header. The members of this structure include (but are not limited to):

| Member Type | Array Size | Member Name | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| **tcflag_t** | | *c_iflag* | Input modes. |
| **tcflag_t** | | *c_oflag* | Output modes. |
| **tcflag_t** | | *c_cflag* | Control modes. |
| **tcflag_t** | | *c_lflag* | Local modes. |
| **cc_t** | NCCS | *c_cc*[ ] | Control characters. |

The types **tcflag_t** and **cc_t** are defined in the **<termios.h>** header. They shall be unsigned integer types.

### 11.2.2 Input Modes

Values of the *c_iflag* field describe the basic terminal input control, and are composed of the bitwise-inclusive OR of the masks shown, which shall be bitwise-distinct. The mask name symbols in this table are defined in **<termios.h>**:

| Mask Name | Description |
|---|---|
| BRKINT | Signal interrupt on break. |
| ICRNL | Map CR to NL on input. |
| IGNBRK | Ignore break condition. |
| IGNCR | Ignore CR. |
| IGNPAR | Ignore characters with parity errors. |
| INLCR | Map NL to CR on input. |
| INPCK | Enable input parity check. |
| ISTRIP | Strip character. |
| XSI IXANY | Enable any character to restart output. |
| IXOFF | Enable start/stop input control. |
| IXON | Enable start/stop output control. |
| PARMRK | Mark parity errors. |

In the context of asynchronous serial data transmission, a break condition shall be defined as a sequence of zero-valued bits that continues for more than the time to send one byte. The entire sequence of zero-valued bits is interpreted as a single break condition, even if it continues for a time equivalent to more than one byte. In contexts other than asynchronous serial data transmission, the definition of a break condition is implementation-defined.

If IGNBRK is set, a break condition detected on input shall be ignored; that is, not put on the input queue and therefore not read by any process. If IGNBRK is not set and BRKINT is set, the break condition shall flush the input and output queues, and if the terminal is the controlling terminal of a foreground process group, the break condition shall generate a single SIGINT signal to that foreground process group. If neither IGNBRK nor BRKINT is set, a break condition shall be read as a single 0x00, or if PARMRK is set, as 0xff 0x00 0x00.

If IGNPAR is set, a byte with a framing or parity error (other than break) shall be ignored.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

If PARMRK is set, and IGNPAR is not set, a byte with a framing or parity error (other than break) shall be given to the application as the three-byte sequence 0xff 0x00 X, where 0xff 0x00 is a two-byte flag preceding each sequence and X is the data of the byte received in error. To avoid ambiguity in this case, if ISTRIP is not set, a valid byte of 0xff is given to the application as 0xff 0xff. If neither PARMRK nor IGNPAR is set, a framing or parity error (other than break) shall be given to the application as a single byte 0x00.

If INPCK is set, input parity checking shall be enabled. If INPCK is not set, input parity checking shall be disabled, allowing output parity generation without input parity errors. Note that whether input parity checking is enabled or disabled is independent of whether parity detection is enabled or disabled (see Section 11.2.4 (on page 196)). If parity detection is enabled but input parity checking is disabled, the hardware to which the terminal is connected shall recognize the parity bit, but the terminal special file shall not check whether or not this bit is correctly set.

If ISTRIP is set, valid input bytes shall first be stripped to seven bits; otherwise, all eight bits shall be processed.

If INLCR is set, a received NL character shall be translated into a CR character. If IGNCR is set, a received CR character shall be ignored (not read). If IGNCR is not set and ICRNL is set, a received CR character shall be translated into an NL character.

XSI If IXANY is set, any input character shall restart output that has been suspended.

If IXON is set, start/stop output control shall be enabled. A received STOP character shall suspend output and a received START character shall restart output. When IXON is set, START and STOP characters are not read, but merely perform flow control functions. When IXON is not set, the START and STOP characters shall be read.

If IXOFF is set, start/stop input control shall be enabled. The system shall transmit STOP characters, which are intended to cause the terminal device to stop transmitting data, as needed to prevent the input queue from overflowing and causing implementation-defined behavior, and shall transmit START characters, which are intended to cause the terminal device to resume transmitting data, as soon as the device can continue transmitting data without risk of overflowing the input queue. The precise conditions under which STOP and START characters are transmitted are implementation-defined.

The initial input control value after *open*( ) is implementation-defined.

### 11.2.3 Output Modes

The *c_oflag* field specifies the terminal interface's treatment of output, and is composed of the bitwise-inclusive OR of the masks shown, which shall be bitwise-distinct. The mask name symbols in the following table are defined in **<termios.h>**:


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| Mask Name | Description |
|---|---|
| OPOST | Perform output processing. |
| XSI ONLCR | Map NL to CR-NL on output. |
| OCRNL | Map CR to NL on output. |
| ONOCR | No CR output at column 0. |
| ONLRET | NL performs CR function. |
| OFILL | Use fill characters for delay. |
| OFDEL | Fill is DEL, else NUL. |
| NLDLY | Select newline delays: |
| NL0 | Newline character type 0. |
| NL1 | Newline character type 1. |
| CRDLY | Select carriage-return delays: |
| CR0 | Carriage-return delay type 0. |
| CR1 | Carriage-return delay type 1. |
| CR2 | Carriage-return delay type 2. |
| CR3 | Carriage-return delay type 3. |
| TABDLY | Select horizontal-tab delays: |
| TAB0 | Horizontal-tab delay type 0. |
| TAB1 | Horizontal-tab delay type 1. |
| TAB2 | Horizontal-tab delay type 2. |
| TAB3 | Expand tabs to spaces. |
| BSDLY | Select backspace delays: |
| BS0 | Backspace-delay type 0. |
| BS1 | Backspace-delay type 1. |
| VTDLY | Select vertical-tab delays: |
| VT0 | Vertical-tab delay type 0. |
| VT1 | Vertical-tab delay type 1. |
| FFDLY | Select form-feed delays: |
| FF0 | Form-feed delay type 0. |
| FF1 | Form-feed delay type 1. |

If OPOST is set, output data shall be post-processed as described below, so that lines of text are modified to appear appropriately on the terminal device; otherwise, characters shall be transmitted without change.

XSI If ONLCR is set, the NL character shall be transmitted as the CR-NL character pair. If OCRNL is set, the CR character shall be transmitted as the NL character. If ONOCR is set, no CR character shall be transmitted when at column 0 (first position). If ONLRET is set, the NL character is assumed to do the carriage-return function; the column pointer shall be set to 0 and the delays specified for CR shall be used. Otherwise, the NL character is assumed to do just the line-feed function; the column pointer remains unchanged. The column pointer shall also be set to 0 if the CR character is actually transmitted.

The delay bits specify how long transmission stops to allow for mechanical or other movement when certain characters are sent to the terminal. In all cases a value of 0 shall indicate no delay. If OFILL is set, fill characters shall be transmitted for delay instead of a timed delay. This is useful for high baud rate terminals which need only a minimal delay. If OFDEL is set, the fill character shall be DEL; otherwise, NUL.

If a form-feed or vertical-tab delay is specified, it shall last for about 2 seconds.

Newline delay shall last about 0.10 seconds. If ONLRET is set, the carriage-return delays shall be used instead of the newline delays. If OFILL is set, two fill characters shall be transmitted.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Carriage-return delay type 1 shall be dependent on the current column position, type 2 shall be about 0.10 seconds, and type 3 shall be about 0.15 seconds. If OFILL is set, delay type 1 shall transmit two fill characters, and type 2 four fill characters.

Horizontal-tab delay type 1 shall be dependent on the current column position. Type 2 shall be about 0.10 seconds. Type 3 specifies that tabs shall be expanded into spaces. If OFILL is set, two fill characters shall be transmitted for any delay.

Backspace delay shall last about 0.05 seconds. If OFILL is set, one fill character shall be transmitted.

The actual delays depend on line speed and system load.

The initial output control value after *open*( ) is implementation-defined.

### 11.2.4 Control Modes

The *c_cflag* field describes the hardware control of the terminal, and is composed of the bitwise-inclusive OR of the masks shown, which shall be bitwise-distinct. The mask name symbols in this table are defined in **<termios.h>**; not all values specified are required to be supported by the underlying hardware:

| Mask Name | Description |
|---|---|
| CLOCAL | Ignore modem status lines. |
| CREAD | Enable receiver. |
| CSIZE | Number of bits transmitted or received per byte: |
| CS5 | 5 bits |
| CS6 | 6 bits |
| CS7 | 7 bits |
| CS8 | 8 bits. |
| CSTOPB | Send two stop bits, else one. |
| HUPCL | Hang up on last close. |
| PARENB | Parity enable. |
| PARODD | Odd parity, else even. |

In addition, the input and output baud rates are stored in the **termios** structure. The symbols in the following table are defined in **<termios.h>**. Not all values specified are required to be supported by the underlying hardware.

| Name | Description | Name | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| B0 | Hang up | B600 | 600 baud |
| B50 | 50 baud | B1200 | 1200 baud |
| B75 | 75 baud | B1800 | 1800 baud |
| B110 | 110 baud | B2400 | 2400 baud |
| B134 | 134.5 baud | B4800 | 4800 baud |
| B150 | 150 baud | B9600 | 9600 baud |
| B200 | 200 baud | B19200 | 19200 baud |
| B300 | 300 baud | B38400 | 38400 baud |

The following functions are provided for getting and setting the values of the input and output baud rates in the **termios** structure: *cfgetispeed*( ), *cfgetospeed*( ), *cfsetispeed*( ), and *cfsetospeed*( ). The effects on the terminal device shall not become effective and not all errors need be detected until the *tcsetattr*( ) function is successfully called.

The CSIZE bits shall specify the number of transmitted or received bits per byte. If ISTRIP is not set, the value of all the other bits is unspecified. If ISTRIP is set, the value of all but the 7 low-


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

order bits shall be zero, but the value of any other bits beyond CSIZE is unspecified when read. CSIZE shall not include the parity bit, if any. If CSTOPB is set, two stop bits shall be used; otherwise, one stop bit. For example, at 110 baud, two stop bits are normally used.

If CREAD is set, the receiver shall be enabled; otherwise, no characters shall be received.

If PARENB is set, parity generation and detection shall be enabled and a parity bit is added to each byte. If parity is enabled, PARODD shall specify odd parity if set; otherwise, even parity shall be used.

If HUPCL is set, the modem control lines for the port shall be lowered when the last process with the port open closes the port or the process terminates. The modem connection shall be broken.

If CLOCAL is set, a connection shall not depend on the state of the modem status lines. If CLOCAL is clear, the modem status lines shall be monitored.

Under normal circumstances, a call to the *open*( ) function shall wait for the modem connection to complete. However, if the O_NONBLOCK flag is set (see *open*( )) or if CLOCAL has been set, the *open*( ) function shall return immediately without waiting for the connection.

If the object for which the control modes are set is not an asynchronous serial connection, some of the modes may be ignored; for example, if an attempt is made to set the baud rate on a network connection to a terminal on another host, the baud rate need not be set on the connection between that terminal and the machine to which it is directly connected.

The initial hardware control value after *open*( ) is implementation-defined.

### 11.2.5 Local Modes

The *c_lflag* field of the argument structure is used to control various functions. It is composed of the bitwise-inclusive OR of the masks shown, which shall be bitwise-distinct. The mask name symbols in this table are defined in **<termios.h>**; not all values specified are required to be supported by the underlying hardware:

| Mask Name | Description |
|---|---|
| ECHO | Enable echo. |
| ECHOE | Echo ERASE as an error correcting backspace. |
| ECHOK | Echo KILL. |
| ECHONL | Echo <newline>. |
| ICANON | Canonical input (erase and kill processing). |
| IEXTEN | Enable extended (implementation-defined) functions. |
| ISIG | Enable signals. |
| NOFLSH | Disable flush after interrupt, quit, or suspend. |
| TOSTOP | Send SIGTTOU for background output. |

If ECHO is set, input characters shall be echoed back to the terminal. If ECHO is clear, input characters shall not be echoed.

If ECHOE and ICANON are set, the ERASE character shall cause the terminal to erase, if possible, the last character in the current line from the display. If there is no character to erase, an implementation may echo an indication that this was the case, or do nothing.

If ECHOK and ICANON are set, the KILL character shall either cause the terminal to erase the line from the display or shall echo the newline character after the KILL character.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

If ECHONL and ICANON are set, the newline character shall be echoed even if ECHO is not set.

If ICANON is set, canonical processing shall be enabled. This enables the erase and kill edit functions, and the assembly of input characters into lines delimited by NL, EOF, and EOL, as described in Section 11.1.6 (on page 189).

If ICANON is not set, read requests shall be satisfied directly from the input queue. A read shall not be satisfied until at least MIN bytes have been received or the timeout value TIME expired between bytes. The time value represents tenths of a second. See Section 11.1.7 (on page 190) for more details.

If IEXTEN is set, implementation-defined functions shall be recognized from the input data. It is implementation-defined how IEXTEN being set interacts with ICANON, ISIG, IXON, or IXOFF. If IEXTEN is not set, implementation-defined functions shall not be recognized and the corresponding input characters are processed as described for ICANON, ISIG, IXON, and IXOFF.

If ISIG is set, each input character shall be checked against the special control characters INTR, QUIT, and SUSP. If an input character matches one of these control characters, the function associated with that character shall be performed. If ISIG is not set, no checking shall be done. Thus these special input functions are possible only if ISIG is set.

If NOFLSH is set, the normal flush of the input and output queues associated with the INTR, QUIT, and SUSP characters shall not be done.

If TOSTOP is set, the signal SIGTTOU shall be sent to the process group of a process that tries to write to its controlling terminal if it is not in the foreground process group for that terminal. This signal, by default, stops the members of the process group. Otherwise, the output generated by that process shall be output to the current output stream. Processes that are blocking or ignoring SIGTTOU signals are excepted and allowed to produce output, and the SIGTTOU signal shall not be sent.

The initial local control value after *open*( ) is implementation-defined.

### 11.2.6 Special Control Characters

The special control character values shall be defined by the array *c_cc*. The subscript name and description for each element in both canonical and non-canonical modes are as follows:



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

| Subscript Usage | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Canonical Mode** | **Non-Canonical Mode** | **Description** |
| VEOF | | EOF character |
| VEOL | | EOL character |
| VERASE | | ERASE character |
| VINTR | VINTR | INTR character |
| VKILL | | KILL character |
| | VMIN | MIN value |
| VQUIT | VQUIT | QUIT character |
| VSUSP | VSUSP | SUSP character |
| | VTIME | TIME value |
| VSTART | VSTART | START character |
| VSTOP | VSTOP | STOP character |

The subscript values are unique, except that the VMIN and VTIME subscripts may have the same values as the VEOF and VEOL subscripts, respectively.

Implementations that do not support changing the START and STOP characters may ignore the character values in the *c_cc* array indexed by the VSTART and VSTOP subscripts when *tcsetattr*( ) is called, but shall return the value in use when *tcgetattr*( ) is called.

The initial values of all control characters are implementation-defined.

If the value of one of the changeable special control characters (see Section 11.1.9 (on page 191)) is _POSIX_VDISABLE, that function shall be disabled; that is, no input data is recognized as the disabled special character. If ICANON is not set, the value of _POSIX_VDISABLE has no special meaning for the VMIN and VTIME entries of the *c_cc* array.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

7094

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Chapter 12

# Utility Conventions

## 12.1 Utility Argument Syntax

This section describes the argument syntax of the standard utilities and introduces terminology used throughout IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 for describing the arguments processed by the utilities.

Within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, a special notation is used for describing the syntax of a utility's arguments. Unless otherwise noted, all utility descriptions use this notation, which is illustrated by this example (see the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.9.1, Simple Commands):

```
utility_name [–a] [–b] [–c option_argument]
    [–d|–e] [–foption_argument] [operand...]
```

The notation used for the SYNOPSIS sections imposes requirements on the implementors of the standard utilities and provides a simple reference for the application developer or system user.

1. The utility in the example is named *utility_name*. It is followed by options, option-arguments, and operands. The arguments that consist of hyphens and single letters or digits, such as `'a'`, are known as ''options'' (or, historically, ''flags''). Certain options are followed by an ''option-argument'', as shown with [**–c** *option_argument*]. The arguments following the last options and option-arguments are named ''operands''.

2. Option-arguments are sometimes shown separated from their options by <blank>s, sometimes directly adjacent. This reflects the situation that in some cases an option-argument is included within the same argument string as the option; in most cases it is the next argument. The Utility Syntax Guidelines in Section 12.2 (on page 203) require that the option be a separate argument from its option-argument, but there are some exceptions in IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 to ensure continued operation of historical applications:

   a. If the SYNOPSIS of a standard utility shows a <space> between an option and option-argument (as with [**–c** *option_argument*] in the example), a conforming application shall use separate arguments for that option and its option-argument.

   b. If a <space> is not shown (as with [**–f***option_argument*] in the example), a conforming application shall place an option and its option-argument directly adjacent in the same argument string, without intervening <blank>s.

   c. Notwithstanding the preceding requirements on conforming applications, a conforming implementation shall permit an application to specify options and option-arguments as a single argument or as separate arguments whether or not a <space> is shown on the synopsis line, except in those cases (marked with the XSI portability warning) where an option-argument is optional and no separation can be used.

   XSI

   d. A standard utility may also be implemented to operate correctly when the required separation into multiple arguments is violated by a non-conforming application.

3. Options are usually listed in alphabetical order unless this would make the utility description more confusing. There are no implied relationships between the options based upon the order in which they appear, unless otherwise stated in the OPTIONS section, or unless the exception in Guideline 11 of Section 12.2 (on page 203) applies. If an option that



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

does not have option-arguments is repeated, the results are undefined, unless otherwise stated.

4. Frequently, names of parameters that require substitution by actual values are shown with embedded underscores. Alternatively, parameters are shown as follows:

   ```
   <parameter name>
   ```

   The angle brackets are used for the symbolic grouping of a phrase representing a single parameter and conforming applications shall not include them in data submitted to the utility.

5. When a utility has only a few permissible options, they are sometimes shown individually, as in the example. Utilities with many flags generally show all of the individual flags (that do not take option-arguments) grouped, as in:

   ```
   utility_name [–abcDxyz] [–p arg] [operand]
   ```

   Utilities with very complex arguments may be shown as follows:

   ```
   utility_name [options] [operands]
   ```

6. Unless otherwise specified, whenever an operand or option-argument is, or contains, a numeric value:

   - The number is interpreted as a decimal integer.
   - Numerals in the range 0 to 2 147 483 647 are syntactically recognized as numeric values.
   - When the utility description states that it accepts negative numbers as operands or option-arguments, numerals in the range –2 147 483 647 to 2 147 483 647 are syntactically recognized as numeric values.
   - Ranges greater than those listed here are allowed.

   This does not mean that all numbers within the allowable range are necessarily semantically correct. A standard utility that accepts an option-argument or operand that is to be interpreted as a number, and for which a range of values smaller than that shown above is permitted by the IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, describes that smaller range along with the description of the option-argument or operand. If an error is generated, the utility's diagnostic message shall indicate that the value is out of the supported range, not that it is syntactically incorrect.

7. Arguments or option-arguments enclosed in the '`[`' and '`]`' notation are optional and can be omitted. Conforming applications shall not include the '`[`' and '`]`' symbols in data submitted to the utility.

8. Arguments separated by the '`|`' vertical bar notation are mutually-exclusive. Conforming applications shall not include the '`|`' symbol in data submitted to the utility. Alternatively, mutually-exclusive options and operands may be listed with multiple synopsis lines. For example:

   ```
   utility_name –d[–a] [–c option_argument] [operand...]
   utility_name[–a] [–b] [operand...]
   ```

   When multiple synopsis lines are given for a utility, it is an indication that the utility has mutually-exclusive arguments. These mutually-exclusive arguments alter the functionality of the utility so that only certain other arguments are valid in combination with one of the mutually-exclusive arguments. Only one of the mutually-exclusive arguments is allowed for invocation of the utility. Unless otherwise stated in an accompanying OPTIONS section, the relationships between arguments depicted in the SYNOPSIS sections are

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

mandatory requirements placed on conforming applications. The use of conflicting mutually-exclusive arguments produces undefined results, unless a utility description specifies otherwise. When an option is shown without the '[' and ']' brackets, it means that option is required for that version of the SYNOPSIS. However, it is not required to be the first argument, as shown in the example above, unless otherwise stated.

9. Ellipses ("...") are used to denote that one or more occurrences of an option or operand are allowed. When an option or an operand followed by ellipses is enclosed in brackets, zero or more options or operands can be specified. The forms:

```
utility_name –f option_argument...[operand...]
utility_name [–g option_argument]...[operand...]
```

indicate that multiple occurrences of the option and its option-argument preceding the ellipses are valid, with semantics as indicated in the OPTIONS section of the utility. (See also Guideline 11 in Section 12.2.) In the first example, each option-argument requires a preceding **–f** and at least one **–f** *option_argument* must be given.

10. When the synopsis line is too long to be printed on a single line in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, the indented lines following the initial line are continuation lines. An actual use of the command would appear on a single logical line.

## 12.2 Utility Syntax Guidelines

The following guidelines are established for the naming of utilities and for the specification of options, option-arguments, and operands. The *getopt*( ) function in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 assists utilities in handling options and operands that conform to these guidelines.

Operands and option-arguments can contain characters not specified in the portable character set.

The guidelines are intended to provide guidance to the authors of future utilities, such as those written specific to a local system or that are components of a larger application. Some of the standard utilities do not conform to all of these guidelines; in those cases, the OPTIONS sections describe the deviations.

**Guideline 1:** Utility names should be between two and nine characters, inclusive.

**Guideline 2:** Utility names should include lowercase letters (the **lower** character classification) and digits only from the portable character set.

**Guideline 3:** Each option name should be a single alphanumeric character (the **alnum** character classification) from the portable character set. The **–W** (capital-W) option shall be reserved for vendor options.

Multi-digit options should not be allowed.

**Guideline 4:** All options should be preceded by the '–' delimiter character.

**Guideline 5:** Options without option-arguments should be accepted when grouped behind one '–' delimiter.

**Guideline 6:** Each option and option-argument should be a separate argument, except as noted in Section 12.1 (on page 201), item (2).

**Guideline 7:** Option-arguments should not be optional.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

7221 **Guideline 8:** When multiple option-arguments are specified to follow a single option, they
7222 should be presented as a single argument, using commas within that
7223 argument or <blank>s within that argument to separate them.

7224 **Guideline 9:** All options should precede operands on the command line.

7225 **Guideline 10:** The argument `--` should be accepted as a delimiter indicating the end of
7226 options. Any following arguments should be treated as operands, even if they
7227 begin with the `'-'` character. The `--` argument should not be used as an
7228 option or as an operand.

7229 **Guideline 11:** The order of different options relative to one another should not matter,
7230 unless the options are documented as mutually-exclusive and such an option
7231 is documented to override any incompatible options preceding it. If an option
7232 that has option-arguments is repeated, the option and option-argument
7233 combinations should be interpreted in the order specified on the command
7234 line.

7235 **Guideline 12:** The order of operands may matter and position-related interpretations should
7236 be determined on a utility-specific basis.

7237 **Guideline 13:** For utilities that use operands to represent files to be opened for either reading
7238 or writing, the `'-'` operand should be used only to mean standard input (or
7239 standard output when it is clear from context that an output file is being
7240 specified).

7241 The utilities in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 that claim conformance to
7242 these guidelines shall conform completely to these guidelines as if these guidelines contained the
7243 term ‘‘shall’’ instead of ‘‘should’’. On some implementations, the utilities accept usage in
7244 violation of these guidelines for backwards-compatibility as well as accepting the required form.

7245 It is recommended that all future utilities and applications use these guidelines to enhance user
7246 portability. The fact that some historical utilities could not be changed (to avoid breaking
7247 existing applications) should not deter this future goal.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Chapter 13

# Headers

This chapter describes the contents of headers.

Headers contain function prototypes, the definition of symbolic constants, common structures, preprocessor macros, and defined types. Each function in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 specifies the headers that an application shall include in order to use that function. In most cases, only one header is required. These headers are present on an application development system; they need not be present on the target execution system.

## 13.1 Format of Entries

The entries in this chapter are based on a common format as follows. The only sections relating to conformance are the SYNOPSIS and DESCRIPTION.

**NAME**

This section gives the name or names of the entry and briefly states its purpose.

**SYNOPSIS**

This section summarizes the use of the entry being described.

**DESCRIPTION**

This section describes the functionality of the header.

**APPLICATION USAGE**

This section is informative.

This section gives warnings and advice to application writers about the entry. In the event of conflict between warnings and advice and a normative part of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, the normative material is to be taken as correct.

**RATIONALE**

This section is informative.

This section contains historical information concerning the contents of this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 and why features were included or discarded by the standard developers.

**FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

This section is informative.

This section provides comments which should be used as a guide to current thinking; there is not necessarily a commitment to adopt these future directions.

**SEE ALSO**

This section is informative.

This section gives references to related information.

**CHANGE HISTORY**

This section is informative.

This section shows the derivation of the entry and any significant changes that have been made to it.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

aio.h — asynchronous input and output (**REALTIME**)

## SYNOPSIS

AIO
```
#include <aio.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<aio.h>** header shall define the **aiocb** structure which shall include at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `int` | `aio_fildes` | File descriptor. |
| `off_t` | `aio_offset` | File offset. |
| `volatile void *` | `aio_buf` | Location of buffer. |
| `size_t` | `aio_nbytes` | Length of transfer. |
| `int` | `aio_reqprio` | Request priority offset. |
| `struct sigevent` | `aio_sigevent` | Signal number and value. |
| `int` | `aio_lio_opcode` | Operation to be performed. |

This header shall also include the following constants:

AIO_ALLDONE — A return value indicating that none of the requested operations could be canceled since they are already complete.

AIO_CANCELED — A return value indicating that all requested operations have been canceled.

AIO_NOTCANCELED — A return value indicating that some of the requested operations could not be canceled since they are in progress.

LIO_NOP — A *lio_listio*( ) element operation option indicating that no transfer is requested.

LIO_NOWAIT — A *lio_listio*( ) synchronization operation indicating that the calling thread is to continue execution while the *lio_listio*( ) operation is being performed, and no notification is given when the operation is complete.

LIO_READ — A *lio_listio*( ) element operation option requesting a read.

LIO_WAIT — A *lio_listio*( ) synchronization operation indicating that the calling thread is to suspend until the *lio_listio*( ) operation is complete.

LIO_WRITE — A *lio_listio*( ) element operation option requesting a write.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int      aio_cancel(int, struct aiocb *);
int      aio_error(const struct aiocb *);
int      aio_fsync(int, struct aiocb *);
int      aio_read(struct aiocb *);
ssize_t  aio_return(struct aiocb *);
int      aio_suspend(const struct aiocb *const[], int,
             const struct timespec *);
int      aio_write(struct aiocb *);
int      lio_listio(int, struct aiocb *restrict const[restrict], int,
             struct sigevent *restrict);
```

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Inclusion of the **<aio.h>** header may make visible symbols defined in the headers **<fcntl.h>**, **<signal.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, and **<time.h>**.

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<fcntl.h>**, **<signal.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, **<time.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *fsync*( ), *lseek*( ), *read*( ), *write*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 5. Included for alignment with the POSIX Realtime Extension.

### Issue 6

The **<aio.h>** header is marked as part of the Asynchronous Input and Output option.

The description of the constants is expanded.

The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototype for *lio_listio*( ).



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

arpa/inet.h — definitions for internet operations

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <arpa/inet.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **in_port_t** and **in_addr_t** types shall be defined as described in **<netinet/in.h>**.

The **in_addr** structure shall be defined as described in **<netinet/in.h>**.

IP6 The INET_ADDRSTRLEN and INET6_ADDRSTRLEN macros shall be defined as described in **<netinet/in.h>**.

The following shall either be declared as functions, defined as macros, or both. If functions are declared, function prototypes shall be provided.

```
uint32_t htonl(uint32_t);
uint16_t htons(uint16_t);
uint32_t ntohl(uint32_t);
uint16_t ntohs(uint16_t);
```

The **uint32_t** and **uint16_t** types shall be defined as described in **<inttypes.h>**.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
in_addr_t    inet_addr(const char *);
char        *inet_ntoa(struct in_addr);
const char  *inet_ntop(int, const void *restrict, char *restrict,
                    socklen_t);
int          inet_pton(int, const char *restrict, void *restrict);
```

Inclusion of the **<arpa/inet.h>** header may also make visible all symbols from **<netinet/in.h>** and **<inttypes.h>**.

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<netinet/in.h>**, **<inttypes.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *htonl*( ), *inet_addr*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 6. Derived from the XNS, Issue 5.2 specification.

The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototypes for *inet_ntop*( ) and *inet_pton*( ).


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

## NAME

assert.h — verify program assertion

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <assert.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX The functionality described on this reference page is aligned with the ISO C standard. Any conflict between the requirements described here and the ISO C standard is unintentional. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 defers to the ISO C standard.

The **<assert.h>** header shall define the *assert*( ) macro. It refers to the macro NDEBUG which is not defined in the header. If NDEBUG is defined as a macro name before the inclusion of this header, the *assert*( ) macro shall be defined simply as:

```
#define assert(ignore)((void) 0)
```

Otherwise, the macro behaves as described in *assert*( ).

The *assert*( ) macro shall be redefined according to the current state of NDEBUG each time **<assert.h>** is included.

The *assert*( ) macro shall be implemented as a macro, not as a function. If the macro definition is suppressed in order to access an actual function, the behavior is undefined.

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *assert*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.

### Issue 6

The definition of the *assert*( ) macro is changed for alignment with the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

complex.h — complex arithmetic

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <complex.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX The functionality described on this reference page is aligned with the ISO C standard. Any conflict between the requirements described here and the ISO C standard is unintentional. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 defers to the ISO C standard.

The **<complex.h>** header shall define the following macros:

| | |
|---|---|
| complex | Expands to **_Complex**. |
| _Complex_I | Expands to a constant expression of type **const float _Complex**, with the value of the imaginary unit (that is, a number $i$ such that $i^2=-1$). |
| imaginary | Expands to **_Imaginary**. |
| _Imaginary_I | Expands to a constant expression of type **const float _Imaginary** with the value of the imaginary unit. |
| I | Expands to either _Imaginary_I or _Complex_I. If _Imaginary_I is not defined, I expands to _Complex_I. |

The macros imaginary and _Imaginary_I shall be defined if and only if the implementation supports imaginary types.

An application may undefine and then, perhaps, redefine the complex, imaginary, and I macros.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
double                cabs(double complex);
float                 cabsf(float complex);
long double           cabsl(long double complex);
double complex        cacos(double complex);
float complex         cacosf(float complex);
double complex        cacosh(double complex);
float complex         cacoshf(float complex);
long double complex   cacoshl(long double complex);
long double complex   cacosl(long double complex);
double                carg(double complex);
float                 cargf(float complex);
long double           cargl(long double complex);
double complex        casin(double complex);
float complex         casinf(float complex);
double complex        casinh(double complex);
float complex         casinhf(float complex);
long double complex   casinhl(long double complex);
long double complex   casinl(long double complex);
double complex        catan(double complex);
float complex         catanf(float complex);
double complex        catanh(double complex);
float complex         catanhf(float complex);
long double complex   catanhl(long double complex);
long double complex   catanl(long double complex);
```

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
double complex       ccos(double complex);
float complex        ccosf(float complex);
double complex       ccosh(double complex);
float complex        ccoshf(float complex);
long double complex  ccoshl(long double complex);
long double complex  ccosl(long double complex);
double complex       cexp(double complex);
float complex        cexpf(float complex);
long double complex  cexpl(long double complex);
double               cimag(double complex);
float                cimagf(float complex);
long double          cimagl(long double complex);
double complex       clog(double complex);
float complex        clogf(float complex);
long double complex  clogl(long double complex);
double complex       conj(double complex);
float complex        conjf(float complex);
long double complex  conjl(long double complex);
double complex       cpow(double complex, double complex);
float complex        cpowf(float complex, float complex);
long double complex  cpowl(long double complex, long double complex);
double complex       cproj(double complex);
float complex        cprojf(float complex);
long double complex  cprojl(long double complex);
double               creal(double complex);
float                crealf(float complex);
long double          creall(long double complex);
double complex       csin(double complex);
float complex        csinf(float complex);
double complex       csinh(double complex);
float complex        csinhf(float complex);
long double complex  csinhl(long double complex);
long double complex  csinl(long double complex);
double complex       csqrt(double complex);
float complex        csqrtf(float complex);
long double complex  csqrtl(long double complex);
double complex       ctan(double complex);
float complex        ctanf(float complex);
double complex       ctanh(double complex);
float complex        ctanhf(float complex);
long double complex  ctanhl(long double complex);
long double complex  ctanl(long double complex);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

Values are interpreted as radians, not degrees.

## RATIONALE

The choice of *I* instead of *i* for the imaginary unit concedes to the widespread use of the identifier *i* for other purposes. The application can use a different identifier, say *j*, for the imaginary unit by following the inclusion of the **<complex.h>** header with:

```
#undef I
#define j _Imaginary_I
```



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

An *I* suffix to designate imaginary constants is not required, as multiplication by *I* provides a sufficiently convenient and more generally useful notation for imaginary terms. The corresponding real type for the imaginary unit is **float**, so that use of *I* for algorithmic or notational convenience will not result in widening types.

On systems with imaginary types, the application has the ability to control whether use of the macro I introduces an imaginary type, by explicitly defining I to be _Imaginary_I or _Complex_I. Disallowing imaginary types is useful for some applications intended to run on implementations without support for such types.

The macro _Imaginary_I provides a test for whether imaginary types are supported.

The *cis*( ) function (*cos*(*x*) + *I***sin*(*x*)) was considered but rejected because its implementation is easy and straightforward, even though some implementations could compute sine and cosine more efficiently in tandem.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The following function names and the same names suffixed with *f* or *l* are reserved for future use, and may be added to the declarations in the **<complex.h>** header.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *cerf*( ) | *cexpm1*( ) | *clog2*( ) |
| *cerfc*( ) | *clog10*( ) | *clgamma*( ) |
| *cexp2*( ) | *clog1p*( ) | *ctgamma*( ) |

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *cabs*( ), *cacos*( ), *cacosh*( ), *carg*( ), *casin*( ), *casinh*( ), *catan*( ), *catanh*( ), *ccos*( ), *ccosh*( ), *cexp*( ), *cimag*( ), *clog*( ), *conj*( ), *cpow*( ), *cproj*( ), *creal*( ), *csin*( ), *csinh*( ), *csqrt*( ), *ctan*( ), *ctanh*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 6. Included for alignment with the ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

cpio.h — cpio archive values

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <cpio.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

Values needed by the *c_mode* field of the *cpio* archive format are described as follows:

| Name | Description | Value (Octal) |
|---|---|---|
| C_IRUSR | Read by owner. | 0000400 |
| C_IWUSR | Write by owner. | 0000200 |
| C_IXUSR | Execute by owner. | 0000100 |
| C_IRGRP | Read by group. | 0000040 |
| C_IWGRP | Write by group. | 0000020 |
| C_IXGRP | Execute by group. | 0000010 |
| C_IROTH | Read by others. | 0000004 |
| C_IWOTH | Write by others. | 0000002 |
| C_IXOTH | Execute by others. | 0000001 |
| C_ISUID | Set user ID. | 0004000 |
| C_ISGID | Set group ID. | 0002000 |
| C_ISVTX | On directories, restricted deletion flag. | 0001000 |
| C_ISDIR | Directory. | 0040000 |
| C_ISFIFO | FIFO. | 0010000 |
| C_ISREG | Regular file. | 0100000 |
| C_ISBLK | Block special. | 0060000 |
| C_ISCHR | Character special. | 0020000 |
| C_ISCTG | Reserved. | 0110000 |
| C_ISLNK | Symbolic link. | 0120000 |
| C_ISSOCK | Socket. | 0140000 |

The header shall define the symbolic constant:

```
MAGIC    "070707"
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *pax*

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in the Headers Interface, Issue 3 specification. Derived from the POSIX.1-1988 standard.

### Issue 6

The SEE ALSO is updated to refer to *pax*, since the *cpio* utility is not included in the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

ctype.h — character types

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <ctype.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard. Applications shall define the appropriate feature test macro (see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment) to enable the visibility of these symbols in this header.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int   isalnum(int);
int   isalpha(int);
XSI   int   isascii(int);
int   isblank(int);
int   iscntrl(int);
int   isdigit(int);
int   isgraph(int);
int   islower(int);
int   isprint(int);
int   ispunct(int);
int   isspace(int);
int   isupper(int);
int   isxdigit(int);
XSI   int   toascii(int);
int   tolower(int);
int   toupper(int);
```

The following are defined as macros:

```
XSI   int   _toupper(int);
      int   _tolower(int);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<locale.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *isalnum*( ), *isalpha*( ), *isascii*( ), *iscntrl*( ), *isdigit*( ), *isgraph*( ), *islower*( ), *isprint*( ), *ispunct*( ), *isspace*( ), *isupper*( ), *isxdigit*( ), *mblen*( ), *mbstowcs*( ), *mbtowc*( ), *setlocale*( ), *toascii*( ), *tolower*( ), *_tolower*( ), *toupper*( ), *_toupper*( ), *wcstombs*( ), *wctomb*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

7622 **Issue 6**

7623 Extensions beyond the ISO C standard are marked.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

dirent.h — format of directory entries

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <dirent.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The internal format of directories is unspecified.

The **<dirent.h>** header shall define the following type:

**DIR** A type representing a directory stream.

It shall also define the structure **dirent** which shall include the following members:

XSI
```
ino_t  d_ino      File serial number.
char   d_name[]   Name of entry.
```

XSI The type **ino_t** shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

The character array *d_name* is of unspecified size, but the number of bytes preceding the terminating null byte shall not exceed {NAME_MAX}.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int            closedir(DIR *);
DIR           *opendir(const char *);
struct dirent *readdir(DIR *);
```
TSF
```
int            readdir_r(DIR *restrict, struct dirent *restrict,
                   struct dirent **restrict);
```
```
void           rewinddir(DIR *);
```
XSI
```
void           seekdir(DIR *, long);
long           telldir(DIR *);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

Information similar to that in the **<dirent.h>** header is contained in a file **<sys/dir.h>** in 4.2 BSD and 4.3 BSD. The equivalent in these implementations of **struct dirent** from this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 is **struct direct**. The filename was changed because the name **<sys/dir.h>** was also used in earlier implementations to refer to definitions related to the older access method; this produced name conflicts. The name of the structure was changed because this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 does not completely define what is in the structure, so it could be different on some implementations from **struct direct**.

The name of an array of **char** of an unspecified size should not be used as an lvalue. Use of:

```
sizeof(d_name)
```

is incorrect; use:

```
strlen(d_name)
```

instead.

The array of **char** *d_name* is not a fixed size. Implementations may need to declare **struct dirent** with an array size for *d_name* of 1, but the actual number of characters provided matches (or only slightly exceeds) the length of the filename.

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *closedir*( ), *opendir*( ), *readdir*( ), *readdir_r*( ), *rewinddir*( ), *seekdir*( ), *telldir*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

### Issue 5

The DESCRIPTION is updated for alignment with the POSIX Threads Extension.

### Issue 6

The Open Group Corrigendum U026/7 is applied, correcting the prototype for *readdir_r*( ).

The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototype for *readdir_r*( ).



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

dlfcn.h — dynamic linking

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <dlfcn.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<dlfcn.h>** header shall define at least the following macros for use in the construction of a *dlopen*( ) *mode* argument:

| | |
|---|---|
| RTLD_LAZY | Relocations are performed at an implementation-defined time. |
| RTLD_NOW | Relocations are performed when the object is loaded. |
| RTLD_GLOBAL | All symbols are available for relocation processing of other modules. |
| RTLD_LOCAL | All symbols are not made available for relocation processing by other modules. |

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int    dlclose(void *);
char  *dlerror(void);
void  *dlopen(const char *, int);
void  *dlsym(void *restrict, const char *restrict);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *dlopen*( ), *dlclose*( ), *dlsym*( ), *dlerror*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 5.

### Issue 6

The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototype for *dlsym*( ).


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

errno.h — system error numbers

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <errno.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard. Any conflict between the requirements described here and the ISO C standard is unintentional. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 defers to the ISO C standard.

CX The ISO C standard only requires the symbols [EDOM], [EILSEQ], and [ERANGE] to be defined.

The **<errno.h>** header shall provide a declaration for *errno* and give positive values for the following symbolic constants. Their values shall be unique except as noted below.

| | |
|---|---|
| [E2BIG] | Argument list too long. |
| [EACCES] | Permission denied. |
| [EADDRINUSE] | Address in use. |
| [EADDRNOTAVAIL] | Address not available. |
| [EAFNOSUPPORT] | Address family not supported. |
| [EAGAIN] | Resource unavailable, try again (may be the same value as [EWOULDBLOCK]). |
| [EALREADY] | Connection already in progress. |
| [EBADF] | Bad file descriptor. |
| [EBADMSG] | Bad message. |
| [EBUSY] | Device or resource busy. |
| [ECANCELED] | Operation canceled. |
| [ECHILD] | No child processes. |
| [ECONNABORTED] | Connection aborted. |
| [ECONNREFUSED] | Connection refused. |
| [ECONNRESET] | Connection reset. |
| [EDEADLK] | Resource deadlock would occur. |
| [EDESTADDRREQ] | Destination address required. |
| [EDOM] | Mathematics argument out of domain of function. |
| [EDQUOT] | Reserved. |
| [EEXIST] | File exists. |
| [EFAULT] | Bad address. |
| [EFBIG] | File too large. |
| [EHOSTUNREACH] | Host is unreachable. |
| [EIDRM] | Identifier removed. |
| [EILSEQ] | Illegal byte sequence. |



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 7747 | | [EINPROGRESS] | Operation in progress. |
| 7748 | | [EINTR] | Interrupted function. |
| 7749 | | [EINVAL] | Invalid argument. |
| 7750 | | [EIO] | I/O error. |
| 7751 | | [EISCONN] | Socket is connected. |
| 7752 | | [EISDIR] | Is a directory. |
| 7753 | | [ELOOP] | Too many levels of symbolic links. |
| 7754 | | [EMFILE] | Too many open files. |
| 7755 | | [EMLINK] | Too many links. |
| 7756 | | [EMSGSIZE] | Message too large. |
| 7757 | | [EMULTIHOP] | Reserved. |
| 7758 | | [ENAMETOOLONG] | Filename too long. |
| 7759 | | [ENETDOWN] | Network is down. |
| 7760 | | [ENETRESET] | Connection aborted by network. |
| 7761 | | [ENETUNREACH] | Network unreachable. |
| 7762 | | [ENFILE] | Too many files open in system. |
| 7763 | | [ENOBUFS] | No buffer space available. |
| 7764 | XSR | [ENODATA] | No message is available on the STREAM head read queue. |
| 7765 | | [ENODEV] | No such device. |
| 7766 | | [ENOENT] | No such file or directory. |
| 7767 | | [ENOEXEC] | Executable file format error. |
| 7768 | | [ENOLCK] | No locks available. |
| 7769 | | [ENOLINK] | Reserved. |
| 7770 | | [ENOMEM] | Not enough space. |
| 7771 | | [ENOMSG] | No message of the desired type. |
| 7772 | | [ENOPROTOOPT] | Protocol not available. |
| 7773 | | [ENOSPC] | No space left on device. |
| 7774 | XSR | [ENOSR] | No STREAM resources. |
| 7775 | XSR | [ENOSTR] | Not a STREAM. |
| 7776 | | [ENOSYS] | Function not supported. |
| 7777 | | [ENOTCONN] | The socket is not connected. |
| 7778 | | [ENOTDIR] | Not a directory. |
| 7779 | | [ENOTEMPTY] | Directory not empty. |
| 7780 | | [ENOTSOCK] | Not a socket. |

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| [ENOTSUP] | Not supported. |
| [ENOTTY] | Inappropriate I/O control operation. |
| [ENXIO] | No such device or address. |
| [EOPNOTSUPP] | Operation not supported on socket. |
| [EOVERFLOW] | Value too large to be stored in data type. |
| [EPERM] | Operation not permitted. |
| [EPIPE] | Broken pipe. |
| [EPROTO] | Protocol error. |
| [EPROTONOSUPPORT] | Protocol not supported. |
| [EPROTOTYPE] | Protocol wrong type for socket. |
| [ERANGE] | Result too large. |
| [EROFS] | Read-only file system. |
| [ESPIPE] | Invalid seek. |
| [ESRCH] | No such process. |
| [ESTALE] | Reserved. |
| XSR [ETIME] | Stream *ioctl*( ) timeout. |
| [ETIMEDOUT] | Connection timed out. |
| [ETXTBSY] | Text file busy. |
| [EWOULDBLOCK] | Operation would block (may be the same value as [EAGAIN]). |
| [EXDEV] | Cross-device link. |

## APPLICATION USAGE

Additional error numbers may be defined on conforming systems; see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.3, Error Numbers

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.

### Issue 5

Updated for alignment with the POSIX Realtime Extension.

### Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The majority of the error conditions previously marked as extensions are now mandatory, except for the STREAMS-related error conditions.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

Values for *errno* are now required to be distinct positive values rather than non-zero values. This change is for alignment with the ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

7822 **NAME**

7823 fcntl.h — file control options

7824 **SYNOPSIS**

7825 `#include <fcntl.h>`

7826 **DESCRIPTION**

7827 The **<fcntl.h>** header shall define the following requests and arguments for use by the functions
7828 *fcntl*( ) and *open*( ).

7829 Values for *cmd* used by *fcntl*( ) (the following values are unique) are as follows:

7830 F_DUPFD Duplicate file descriptor.

7831 F_GETFD Get file descriptor flags.

7832 F_SETFD Set file descriptor flags.

7833 F_GETFL Get file status flags and file access modes.

7834 F_SETFL Set file status flags.

7835 F_GETLK Get record locking information.

7836 F_SETLK Set record locking information.

7837 F_SETLKW Set record locking information; wait if blocked.

7838 F_GETOWN Get process or process group ID to receive SIGURG signals.

7839 F_SETOWN Set process or process group ID to receive SIGURG signals.

7840 File descriptor flags used for *fcntl*( ) are as follows:

7841 FD_CLOEXEC Close the file descriptor upon execution of an *exec* family function.

7842 Values for *l_type* used for record locking with *fcntl*( ) (the following values are unique) are as
7843 follows:

7844 F_RDLCK Shared or read lock.

7845 F_UNLCK Unlock.

7846 F_WRLCK Exclusive or write lock.

7847 XSI The values used for *l_whence*, SEEK_SET, SEEK_CUR, and SEEK_END shall be defined as
7848 described in **<unistd.h>**.

7849 The following values are file creation flags and are used in the *oflag* value to *open*( ). They shall
7850 be bitwise-distinct.

7851 O_CREAT Create file if it does not exist.

7852 O_EXCL Exclusive use flag.

7853 O_NOCTTY Do not assign controlling terminal.

7854 O_TRUNC Truncate flag.

7855 File status flags used for *open*( ) and *fcntl*( ) are as follows:

7856 O_APPEND Set append mode.

7857 SIO O_DSYNC Write according to synchronized I/O data integrity completion.

7858 O_NONBLOCK Non-blocking mode.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

SIO O_RSYNC Synchronized read I/O operations.

O_SYNC Write according to synchronized I/O file integrity completion.

Mask for use with file access modes is as follows:

O_ACCMODE Mask for file access modes.

File access modes used for *open*( ) and *fcntl*( ) are as follows:

O_RDONLY Open for reading only.

O_RDWR Open for reading and writing.

O_WRONLY Open for writing only.

XSI The symbolic names for file modes for use as values of **mode_t** shall be defined as described in **<sys/stat.h>**.

ADV Values for *advice* used by *posix_fadvise*( ) are as follows:

POSIX_FADV_NORMAL
The application has no advice to give on its behavior with respect to the specified data. It is the default characteristic if no advice is given for an open file.

POSIX_FADV_SEQUENTIAL
The application expects to access the specified data sequentially from lower offsets to higher offsets.

POSIX_FADV_RANDOM
The application expects to access the specified data in a random order.

POSIX_FADV_WILLNEED
The application expects to access the specified data in the near future.

POSIX_FADV_DONTNEED
The application expects that it will not access the specified data in the near future.

POSIX_FADV_NOREUSE
The application expects to access the specified data once and then not reuse it thereafter.

The structure **flock** describes a file lock. It shall include the following members:

```
short  l_type    Type of lock; F_RDLCK, F_WRLCK, F_UNLCK.
short  l_whence  Flag for starting offset.
off_t  l_start   Relative offset in bytes.
off_t  l_len     Size; if 0 then until EOF.
pid_t  l_pid     Process ID of the process holding the lock; returned with F_GETLK.
```

The **mode_t**, **off_t**, and **pid_t** types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int  creat(const char *, mode_t);
int  fcntl(int, int, ...);
int  open(const char *, int, ...);
ADV int  posix_fadvise(int, off_t, size_t, int);
ADV int  posix_fallocate(int, off_t, size_t);
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

7900 XSI Inclusion of the **<fcntl.h>** header may also make visible all symbols from **<sys/stat.h>** and
7901 **<unistd.h>**.

7902 **APPLICATION USAGE**

7903 None.

7904 **RATIONALE**

7905 None.

7906 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

7907 None.

7908 **SEE ALSO**

7909 **<sys/stat.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, **<unistd.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001,
7910 *creat*( ), *exec*, *fcntl*( ), *open*( ), *posix_fadvise*( ), *posix_fallocate*( ), *posix_madvise*( )

7911 **CHANGE HISTORY**

7912 First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.

7913 **Issue 5**

7914 The DESCRIPTION is updated for alignment with the POSIX Realtime Extension.

7915 **Issue 6**

7916 The following changes are made for alignment with the ISO POSIX-1: 1996 standard:

7917 • O_DSYNC and O_RSYNC are marked as part of the Synchronized Input and Output option.

7918 The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the
7919 Single UNIX Specification:

7920 • The definition of the **mode_t**, **off_t**, and **pid_t** types is mandated.

7921 The F_GETOWN and F_SETOWN values are added for sockets.

7922 The *posix_fadvise*( ), *posix_fallocate*( ), and *posix_madvise*( ) functions are added for alignment with
7923 IEEE Std 1003.1d-1999.

7924 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.1 #102 is applied, moving the prototype for *posix_madvise*( ) to
7925 **<sys/mman.h>**.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

fenv.h — floating-point environment

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <fenv.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX The functionality described on this reference page is aligned with the ISO C standard. Any conflict between the requirements described here and the ISO C standard is unintentional. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 defers to the ISO C standard.

The **<fenv.h>** header shall define the following data types through **typedef**:

**fenv_t** Represents the entire floating-point environment. The floating-point environment refers collectively to any floating-point status flags and control modes supported by the implementation.

**fexcept_t** Represents the floating-point status flags collectively, including any status the implementation associates with the flags. A floating-point status flag is a system variable whose value is set (but never cleared) when a floating-point exception is raised, which occurs as a side effect of exceptional floating-point arithmetic to provide auxiliary information. A floating-point control mode is a system variable whose value may be set by the user to affect the subsequent behavior of floating-point arithmetic.

The **<fenv.h>** header shall define the following constants if and only if the implementation supports the floating-point exception by means of the floating-point functions *feclearexcept*( ), *fegetexceptflag*( ), *feraiseexcept*( ), *fesetexceptflag*( ), and *fetestexcept*( ). Each expands to an integer constant expression with values such that bitwise-inclusive ORs of all combinations of the constants result in distinct values.

FE_DIVBYZERO
FE_INEXACT
FE_INVALID
FE_OVERFLOW
FE_UNDERFLOW

The **<fenv.h>** header shall define the following constant, which is simply the bitwise-inclusive OR of all floating-point exception constants defined above:

FE_ALL_EXCEPT

The **<fenv.h>** header shall define the following constants if and only if the implementation supports getting and setting the represented rounding direction by means of the *fegetround*( ) and *fesetround*( ) functions. Each expands to an integer constant expression whose values are distinct non-negative vales.

FE_DOWNWARD
FE_TONEAREST
FE_TOWARDZERO
FE_UPWARD

The **<fenv.h>** header shall define the following constant, which represents the default floating-point environment (that is, the one installed at program startup) and has type pointer to const-qualified **fenv_t**. It can be used as an argument to the functions within the **<fenv.h>** header that manage the floating-point environment.

FE_DFL_ENV

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int  feclearexcept(int);
int  fegetexceptflag(fexcept_t *, int);
int  feraiseexcept(int);
int  fesetexceptflag(const fexcept_t *, int);
int  fetestexcept(int);
int  fegetround(void);
int  fesetround(int);
int  fegetenv(fenv_t *);
int  feholdexcept(fenv_t *);
int  fesetenv(const fenv_t *);
int  feupdateenv(const fenv_t *);
```

The FENV_ACCESS pragma provides a means to inform the implementation when an application might access the floating-point environment to test floating-point status flags or run under non-default floating-point control modes. The pragma shall occur either outside external declarations or preceding all explicit declarations and statements inside a compound statement. When outside external declarations, the pragma takes effect from its occurrence until another FENV_ACCESS pragma is encountered, or until the end of the translation unit. When inside a compound statement, the pragma takes effect from its occurrence until another FENV_ACCESS pragma is encountered (including within a nested compound statement), or until the end of the compound statement; at the end of a compound statement the state for the pragma is restored to its condition just before the compound statement. If this pragma is used in any other context, the behavior is undefined. If part of an application tests floating-point status flags, sets floating-point control modes, or runs under non-default mode settings, but was translated with the state for the FENV_ACCESS pragma off, the behavior is undefined. The default state (on or off) for the pragma is implementation-defined. (When execution passes from a part of the application translated with FENV_ACCESS off to a part translated with FENV_ACCESS on, the state of the floating-point status flags is unspecified and the floating-point control modes have their default settings.)

## APPLICATION USAGE

This header is designed to support the floating-point exception status flags and directed-rounding control modes required by the IEC 60559:1989 standard, and other similar floating-point state information. Also it is designed to facilitate code portability among all systems.

Certain application programming conventions support the intended model of use for the floating-point environment:

- A function call does not alter its caller's floating-point control modes, clear its caller's floating-point status flags, nor depend on the state of its caller's floating-point status flags unless the function is so documented.
- A function call is assumed to require default floating-point control modes, unless its documentation promises otherwise.
- A function call is assumed to have the potential for raising floating-point exceptions, unless its documentation promises otherwise.

With these conventions, an application can safely assume default floating-point control modes (or be unaware of them). The responsibilities associated with accessing the floating-point environment fall on the application that does so explicitly.

Even though the rounding direction macros may expand to constants corresponding to the values of FLT_ROUNDS, they are not required to do so.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

For example:

```
#include <fenv.h>
void f(double x)
{
    #pragma STDC FENV_ACCESS ON
    void g(double);
    void h(double);
    /* ... */
    g(x + 1);
    h(x + 1);
    /* ... */
}
```

If the function *g*( ) might depend on status flags set as a side effect of the first *x*+1, or if the second *x*+1 might depend on control modes set as a side effect of the call to function *g*( ), then the application shall contain an appropriately placed invocation as follows:

```
#pragma STDC FENV_ACCESS ON
```

## RATIONALE

### The fexcept_t Type

**fexcept_t** does not have to be an integer type. Its values must be obtained by a call to *fegetexceptflag*( ), and cannot be created by logical operations from the exception macros. An implementation might simply implement **fexcept_t** as an **int** and use the representations reflected by the exception macros, but is not required to; other representations might contain extra information about the exceptions. **fexcept_t** might be a **struct** with a member for each exception (that might hold the address of the first or last floating-point instruction that caused that exception). The ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard makes no claims about the internals of an **fexcept_t**, and so the user cannot inspect it.

### Exception and Rounding Macros

Macros corresponding to unsupported modes and rounding directions are not defined by the implementation and must not be defined by the application. An application might use **#ifdef** to test for this.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *feclearexcept*( ), *fegetenv*( ), *fegetexceptflag*( ), *fegetround*( ), *feholdexcept*( ), *feraiseexcept*( ), *fesetenv*( ), *fesetexceptflag*( ), *fesetround*( ), *fetestexcept*( ), *feupdateenv*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 6. Included for alignment with the ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard.

The return types for *feclearexcept*( ), *fegetexceptflag*( ), *feraiseexcept*( ), *fesetexceptflag*( ), *fegetenv*( ), *fesetenv*( ), and *feupdateenv*( ) are changed from **void** to **int** for alignment with the ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard, Defect Report 202.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

## NAME

float.h — floating types

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <float.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX The functionality described on this reference page is aligned with the ISO C standard. Any conflict between the requirements described here and the ISO C standard is unintentional. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 defers to the ISO C standard.

The characteristics of floating types are defined in terms of a model that describes a representation of floating-point numbers and values that provide information about an implementation's floating-point arithmetic.

The following parameters are used to define the model for each floating-point type:

*s* Sign (±1).

*b* Base or radix of exponent representation (an integer >1).

*e* Exponent (an integer between a minimum $e_{\min}$ and a maximum $e_{\max}$).

*p* Precision (the number of base–*b* digits in the significand).

$f_k$ Non-negative integers less than *b* (the significand digits).

A floating-point number *x* is defined by the following model:

$$x = sb^e \sum_{k=1}^{p} f_k\, b^{-k},\ e_{\min} \le e \le e_{\max}$$

In addition to normalized floating-point numbers ($f_1>0$ if $x\neq0$), floating types may be able to contain other kinds of floating-point numbers, such as subnormal floating-point numbers ($x\neq0$, $e=e_{\min}$, $f_1=0$) and unnormalized floating-point numbers ($x\neq0$, $e>e_{\min}$, $f_1=0$), and values that are not floating-point numbers, such as infinities and NaNs. A *NaN* is an encoding signifying Not-a-Number. A *quiet NaN* propagates through almost every arithmetic operation without raising a floating-point exception; a *signaling NaN* generally raises a floating-point exception when occurring as an arithmetic operand.

The accuracy of the floating-point operations (`'+'`, `'−'`, `'*'`, `'/'`) and of the library functions in **<math.h>** and **<complex.h>** that return floating-point results is implementation-defined. The implementation may state that the accuracy is unknown.

All integer values in the **<float.h>** header, except FLT_ROUNDS, shall be constant expressions suitable for use in **#if** preprocessing directives; all floating values shall be constant expressions. All except DECIMAL_DIG, FLT_EVAL_METHOD, FLT_RADIX, and FLT_ROUNDS have separate names for all three floating-point types. The floating-point model representation is provided for all values except FLT_EVAL_METHOD and FLT_ROUNDS.

The rounding mode for floating-point addition is characterized by the implementation-defined value of FLT_ROUNDS:

–1 Indeterminable.

0 Toward zero.

1 To nearest.

2 Toward positive infinity.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

3 Toward negative infinity.

All other values for FLT_ROUNDS characterize implementation-defined rounding behavior.

The values of operations with floating operands and values subject to the usual arithmetic conversions and of floating constants are evaluated to a format whose range and precision may be greater than required by the type. The use of evaluation formats is characterized by the implementation-defined value of FLT_EVAL_METHOD:

−1 Indeterminable.

0 Evaluate all operations and constants just to the range and precision of the type.

1 Evaluate operations and constants of type **float** and **double** to the range and precision of the **double** type; evaluate **long double** operations and constants to the range and precision of the **long double** type.

2 Evaluate all operations and constants to the range and precision of the **long double** type.

All other negative values for FLT_EVAL_METHOD characterize implementation-defined behavior.

The values given in the following list shall be defined as constant expressions with implementation-defined values that are greater or equal in magnitude (absolute value) to those shown, with the same sign.

- Radix of exponent representation, *b*.

  FLT_RADIX 2

- Number of base-FLT_RADIX digits in the floating-point significand, *p*.

  FLT_MANT_DIG

  DBL_MANT_DIG

  LDBL_MANT_DIG

- Number of decimal digits, *n*, such that any floating-point number in the widest supported floating type with $p_{\max}$ radix *b* digits can be rounded to a floating-point number with *n* decimal digits and back again without change to the value.

$$\begin{cases} p_{\max} \log_{10} b & \text{if } b \textit{ is a power of } 10 \\ \left\lceil 1 + p_{\max} \log_{10} b \right\rceil & \textit{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

  DECIMAL_DIG 10

- Number of decimal digits, *q*, such that any floating-point number with *q* decimal digits can be rounded into a floating-point number with *p* radix *b* digits and back again without change to the *q* decimal digits.

$$\begin{cases} p \log_{10} b & \text{if } b \textit{ is a power of } 10 \\ \left\lfloor (p-1) \log_{10} b \right\rfloor & \textit{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

  FLT_DIG 6

  DBL_DIG 10


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8134 LDBL_DIG 10

8135 • Minimum negative integer such that FLT_RADIX raised to that power minus 1 is a
8136 normalized floating-point number, $e_{\min}$.

8137 FLT_MIN_EXP

8138 DBL_MIN_EXP

8139 LDBL_MIN_EXP

8140 • Minimum negative integer such that 10 raised to that power is in the range of normalized
8141 floating-point numbers.

8142 $$\left\lceil \log_{10} b^{e_{\min}-1} \right\rceil$$

8143 FLT_MIN_10_EXP –37

8144 DBL_MIN_10_EXP –37

8145 LDBL_MIN_10_EXP –37

8146 • Maximum integer such that FLT_RADIX raised to that power minus 1 is a representable
8147 finite floating-point number, $e_{\max}$.

8148 FLT_MAX_EXP

8149 DBL_MAX_EXP

8150 LDBL_MAX_EXP

8151 • Maximum integer such that 10 raised to that power is in the range of representable finite
8152 floating-point numbers.

8153 $$\left\lfloor \log_{10}((1 - b^{-p})\, b^{e_{\max}}) \right\rfloor$$

8154 FLT_MAX_10_EXP +37

8155 DBL_MAX_10_EXP +37

8156 LDBL_MAX_10_EXP +37

8157 The values given in the following list shall be defined as constant expressions with
8158 implementation-defined values that are greater than or equal to those shown:

8159 • Maximum representable finite floating-point number.

8160 $$(1 - b^{-p})\, b^{e_{\max}}$$

8161 FLT_MAX 1E+37

8162 DBL_MAX 1E+37

8163 LDBL_MAX 1E+37

8164 The values given in the following list shall be defined as constant expressions with
8165 implementation-defined (positive) values that are less than or equal to those shown:

8166 • The difference between 1 and the least value greater than 1 that is representable in the given
8167 floating-point type, $b^{1-p}$.

8168 FLT_EPSILON 1E–5

8169 DBL_EPSILON 1E–9



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

8170 LDBL_EPSILON 1E–9

8171 • Minimum normalized positive floating-point number, $b^{e_{min}-1}$.

8172 FLT_MIN 1E–37

8173 DBL_MIN 1E–37

8174 LDBL_MIN 1E–37

8175 **APPLICATION USAGE**

8176 None.

8177 **RATIONALE**

8178 None.

8179 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

8180 None.

8181 **SEE ALSO**

8182 **<complex.h>**, **<math.h>**

8183 **CHANGE HISTORY**

8184 First released in Issue 4. Derived from the ISO C standard.

8185 **Issue 6**

8186 The description of the operations with floating-point values is updated for alignment with the
8187 ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

fmtmsg.h — message display structures

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <fmtmsg.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<fmtmsg.h>** header shall define the following macros, which expand to constant integer expressions:

| | |
|---|---|
| MM_HARD | Source of the condition is hardware. |
| MM_SOFT | Source of the condition is software. |
| MM_FIRM | Source of the condition is firmware. |
| MM_APPL | Condition detected by application. |
| MM_UTIL | Condition detected by utility. |
| MM_OPSYS | Condition detected by operating system. |
| MM_RECOVER | Recoverable error. |
| MM_NRECOV | Non-recoverable error. |
| MM_HALT | Error causing application to halt. |
| MM_ERROR | Application has encountered a non-fatal fault. |
| MM_WARNING | Application has detected unusual non-error condition. |
| MM_INFO | Informative message. |
| MM_NOSEV | No severity level provided for the message. |
| MM_PRINT | Display message on standard error. |
| MM_CONSOLE | Display message on system console. |

The table below indicates the null values and identifiers for *fmtmsg*( ) arguments. The **<fmtmsg.h>** header shall define the macros in the **Identifier** column, which expand to constant expressions that expand to expressions of the type indicated in the **Type** column:

| Argument | Type | Null-Value | Identifier |
|---|---|---|---|
| *label* | **char *** | (**char***)0 | MM_NULLLBL |
| *severity* | **int** | 0 | MM_NULLSEV |
| *class* | **long** | **0L** | MM_NULLMC |
| *text* | **char *** | (**char***)0 | MM_NULLTXT |
| *action* | **char *** | (**char***)0 | MM_NULLACT |
| *tag* | **char *** | (**char***)0 | MM_NULLTAG |

The **<fmtmsg.h>** header shall also define the following macros for use as return values for *fmtmsg*( ):

| | |
|---|---|
| MM_OK | The function succeeded. |
| MM_NOTOK | The function failed completely. |
| MM_NOMSG | The function was unable to generate a message on standard error, but otherwise succeeded. |



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

| | |
|---|---|
| MM_NOCON | The function was unable to generate a console message, but otherwise succeeded. |

The following shall be declared as a function and may also be defined as a macro. A function prototype shall be provided.

```
int fmtmsg(long, const char *, int,
    const char *, const char *, const char *);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *fmtmsg*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4, Version 2.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

fnmatch.h — filename-matching types

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <fnmatch.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<fnmatch.h>** header shall define the following constants:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | FNM_NOMATCH | The string does not match the specified pattern. |
| | FNM_PATHNAME | Slash in *string* only matches slash in *pattern*. |
| | FNM_PERIOD | Leading period in *string* must be exactly matched by period in *pattern*. |
| | FNM_NOESCAPE | Disable backslash escaping. |
| OB XSI | FNM_NOSYS | Reserved. |

The following shall be declared as a function and may also be defined as a macro. A function prototype shall be provided.

```
int fnmatch(const char *, const char *, int);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *fnmatch*( ), the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4. Derived from the ISO POSIX-2 standard.

### Issue 6

The constant FNM_NOSYS is marked obsolescent.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

ftw.h — file tree traversal

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <ftw.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<ftw.h>** header shall define the **FTW** structure that includes at least the following members:

```
int  base
int  level
```

The **<ftw.h>** header shall define macros for use as values of the third argument to the application-supplied function that is passed as the second argument to *ftw*( ) and *nftw*( ):

| | |
|---|---|
| FTW_F | File. |
| FTW_D | Directory. |
| FTW_DNR | Directory without read permission. |
| FTW_DP | Directory with subdirectories visited. |
| FTW_NS | Unknown type; *stat*( ) failed. |
| FTW_SL | Symbolic link. |
| FTW_SLN | Symbolic link that names a nonexistent file. |

The **<ftw.h>** header shall define macros for use as values of the fourth argument to *nftw*( ):

| | |
|---|---|
| FTW_PHYS | Physical walk, does not follow symbolic links. Otherwise, *nftw*( ) follows links but does not walk down any path that crosses itself. |
| FTW_MOUNT | The walk does not cross a mount point. |
| FTW_DEPTH | All subdirectories are visited before the directory itself. |
| FTW_CHDIR | The walk changes to each directory before reading it. |

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int ftw(const char *, int (*)(const char *, const struct stat *,
    int), int);
int nftw(const char *, int (*)(const char *, const struct stat *,
    int, struct FTW*), int, int);
```

The **<ftw.h>** header shall define the **stat** structure and the symbolic names for *st_mode* and the file type test macros as described in **<sys/stat.h>**.

Inclusion of the **<ftw.h>** header may also make visible all symbols from **<sys/stat.h>**.

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

8304 **APPLICATION USAGE**

8305 None.

8306 **RATIONALE**

8307 None.

8308 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

8309 None.

8310 **SEE ALSO**

8311 **<sys/stat.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *ftw*( ), *nftw*( )

8312 **CHANGE HISTORY**

8313 First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.

8314 **Issue 5**

8315 A description of FTW_DP is added.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

glob.h — pathname pattern-matching types

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <glob.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<glob.h>** header shall define the structures and symbolic constants used by the *glob*( ) function.

The structure type **glob_t** shall contain at least the following members:

| | |
|---|---|
| `size_t gl_pathc` | Count of paths matched by *pattern*. |
| `char **gl_pathv` | Pointer to a list of matched pathnames. |
| `size_t gl_offs` | Slots to reserve at the beginning of *gl_pathv*. |

The following constants shall be provided as values for the *flags* argument:

| | |
|---|---|
| GLOB_APPEND | Append generated pathnames to those previously obtained. |
| GLOB_DOOFFS | Specify how many null pointers to add to the beginning of *gl_pathv*. |
| GLOB_ERR | Cause *glob*( ) to return on error. |
| GLOB_MARK | Each pathname that is a directory that matches *pattern* has a slash appended. |
| GLOB_NOCHECK | If *pattern* does not match any pathname, then return a list consisting of only *pattern*. |
| GLOB_NOESCAPE | Disable backslash escaping. |
| GLOB_NOSORT | Do not sort the pathnames returned. |

The following constants shall be defined as error return values:

| | |
|---|---|
| GLOB_ABORTED | The scan was stopped because GLOB_ERR was set or (**errfunc*)( ) returned non-zero. |
| GLOB_NOMATCH | The pattern does not match any existing pathname, and GLOB_NOCHECK was not set in *flags*. |
| GLOB_NOSPACE | An attempt to allocate memory failed. |
| OB XSI GLOB_NOSYS | Reserved. |

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int  glob(const char *restrict, int, int (*)(const char *, int),
         glob_t *restrict);
void globfree (glob_t *);
```

The implementation may define additional macros or constants using names beginning with GLOB_.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8351 **APPLICATION USAGE**

8352 None.

8353 **RATIONALE**

8354 None.

8355 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

8356 None.

8357 **SEE ALSO**

8358 The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *glob*( ), the Shell and Utilities volume of
8359 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001

8360 **CHANGE HISTORY**

8361 First released in Issue 4. Derived from the ISO POSIX-2 standard.

8362 **Issue 6**

8363 The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototype for *glob*( ).

8364 The constant GLOB_NOSYS is marked obsolescent.

8365 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/8 is applied, correcting the *glob*( ) |
8366 prototype definition by removing the **restrict** qualifier from the function pointer argument. |



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

grp.h — group structure

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <grp.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<grp.h>** header shall declare the structure **group** which shall include the following members:

```
char    *gr_name  The name of the group.
gid_t    gr_gid   Numerical group ID.
char   **gr_mem   Pointer to a null-terminated array of character
                  pointers to member names.
```

The **gid_t** type shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
struct group  *getgrgid(gid_t);
struct group  *getgrnam(const char *);
TSF int            getgrgid_r(gid_t, struct group *, char *,
                       size_t, struct group **);
int            getgrnam_r(const char *, struct group *, char *,
                       size_t , struct group **);
XSI struct group  *getgrent(void);
void           endgrent(void);
void           setgrent(void);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *endgrent*( ), *getgrgid*( ), *getgrnam*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 1.

### Issue 5

The DESCRIPTION is updated for alignment with the POSIX Threads Extension.

### Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The definition of **gid_t** is mandated.
- The *getgrgid_r*( ) and *getgrnam_r*( ) functions are marked as part of the Thread-Safe Functions option.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

iconv.h — codeset conversion facility

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <iconv.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<iconv.h>** header shall define the following type:

**iconv_t** Identifies the conversion from one codeset to another.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
iconv_t iconv_open(const char *, const char *);
size_t  iconv(iconv_t, char **restrict, size_t *restrict,
            char **restrict, size_t *restrict);
int     iconv_close(iconv_t);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *iconv*( ), *iconv_close*( ), *iconv_open*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

### Issue 6

The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototype for *iconv*( ).



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

inttypes.h — fixed size integer types

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <inttypes.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard. Applications shall define the appropriate feature test macro (see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment) to enable the visibility of these symbols in this header.

The **<inttypes.h>** header shall include the **<stdint.h>** header.

The **<inttypes.h>** header shall include a definition of at least the following type:

**imaxdiv_t** Structure type that is the type of the value returned by the *imaxdiv*( ) function.

The following macros shall be defined. Each expands to a character string literal containing a conversion specifier, possibly modified by a length modifier, suitable for use within the *format* argument of a formatted input/output function when converting the corresponding integer type. These macros have the general form of PRI (character string literals for the *fprintf*( ) and *fwprintf*( ) family of functions) or SCN (character string literals for the *fscanf*( ) and *fwscanf*( ) family of functions), followed by the conversion specifier, followed by a name corresponding to a similar type name in **<stdint.h>**. In these names, *N* represents the width of the type as described in **<stdint.h>**. For example, *PRIdFAST32* can be used in a format string to print the value of an integer of type **int_fast32_t**.

The *fprintf*( ) macros for signed integers are:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| PRId*N* | PRIdLEAST*N* | PRIdFAST*N* | PRIdMAX | PRIdPTR |
| PRIi*N* | PRIiLEAST*N* | PRIiFAST*N* | PRIiMAX | PRIiPTR |

The *fprintf*( ) macros for unsigned integers are:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| PRIo*N* | PRIoLEAST*N* | PRIoFAST*N* | PRIoMAX | PRIoPTR |
| PRIu*N* | PRIuLEAST*N* | PRIuFAST*N* | PRIuMAX | PRIuPTR |
| PRIx*N* | PRIxLEAST*N* | PRIxFAST*N* | PRIxMAX | PRIxPTR |
| PRIX*N* | PRIXLEAST*N* | PRIXFAST*N* | PRIXMAX | PRIXPTR |

The *fscanf*( ) macros for signed integers are:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| SCNd*N* | SCNdLEAST*N* | SCNdFAST*N* | SCNdMAX | SCNdPTR |
| SCNi*N* | SCNiLEAST*N* | SCNiFAST*N* | SCNiMAX | SCNiPTR |

The *fscanf*( ) macros for unsigned integers are:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| SCNo*N* | SCNoLEAST*N* | SCNoFAST*N* | SCNoMAX | SCNoPTR |
| SCNu*N* | SCNuLEAST*N* | SCNuFAST*N* | SCNuMAX | SCNuPTR |
| SCNx*N* | SCNxLEAST*N* | SCNxFAST*N* | SCNxMAX | SCNxPTR |

For each type that the implementation provides in **<stdint.h>**, the corresponding *fprintf*( ) and *fwprintf*( ) macros shall be defined and the corresponding *fscanf*( ) and *fwscanf*( ) macros shall be defined unless the implementation does not have a suitable modifier for the type.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
intmax_t  imaxabs(intmax_t);
imaxdiv_t imaxdiv(intmax_t, intmax_t);
intmax_t  strtoimax(const char *restrict, char **restrict, int);
```

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
8480        uintmax_t strtoumax(const char *restrict, char **restrict, int);
8481        intmax_t  wcstoimax(const wchar_t *restrict, wchar_t **restrict, int);
8482        uintmax_t wcstoumax(const wchar_t *restrict, wchar_t **restrict, int);
```

8483 **EXAMPLES**

```
8484        #include <inttypes.h>
8485        #include <wchar.h>
8486        int main(void)
8487        {
8488            uintmax_t i = UINTMAX_MAX; // This type always exists.
8489            wprintf(L"The largest integer value is %020"
8490                PRIxMAX "\n", i);
8491            return 0;
8492        }
```

8493 **APPLICATION USAGE**

8494 The purpose of **<inttypes.h>** is to provide a set of integer types whose definitions are consistent
8495 across machines and independent of operating systems and other implementation
8496 idiosyncrasies. It defines, via **typedef**, integer types of various sizes. Implementations are free to
8497 **typedef** them as ISO C standard integer types or extensions that they support. Consistent use of
8498 this header will greatly increase the portability of applications across platforms.

8499 **RATIONALE**

8500 The ISO/IEC 9899:1990 standard specified that the language should support four signed and
8501 unsigned integer data types—**char**, **short**, **int**, and **long**—but placed very little requirement on
8502 their size other than that **int** and **short** be at least 16 bits and **long** be at least as long as **int** and
8503 not smaller than 32 bits. For 16-bit systems, most implementations assigned 8, 16, 16, and 32 bits
8504 to **char**, **short**, **int**, and **long**, respectively. For 32-bit systems, the common practice has been to
8505 assign 8, 16, 32, and 32 bits to these types. This difference in **int** size can create some problems
8506 for users who migrate from one system to another which assigns different sizes to integer types,
8507 because the ISO C standard integer promotion rule can produce silent changes unexpectedly.
8508 The need for defining an extended integer type increased with the introduction of 64-bit
8509 systems.

8510 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

8511 Macro names beginning with PRI or SCN followed by any lowercase letter or `'X'` may be added
8512 to the macros defined in the **<inttypes.h>** header.

8513 **SEE ALSO**

8514 The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *imaxdiv*( )

8515 **CHANGE HISTORY**

8516 First released in Issue 5.

8517 **Issue 6**

8518 The Open Group Base Resolution bwg97-006 is applied.

8519 This reference page is updated to align with the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

iso646.h — alternative spellings

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <iso646.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX The functionality described on this reference page is aligned with the ISO C standard. Any conflict between the requirements described here and the ISO C standard is unintentional. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 defers to the ISO C standard.

The **<iso646.h>** header shall define the following eleven macros (on the left) that expand to the corresponding tokens (on the right):

| | |
|---|---|
| and | && |
| and_eq | &= |
| bitand | & |
| bitor | \| |
| compl | ~ |
| not | ! |
| not_eq | != |
| or | \|\| |
| or_eq | \|= |
| xor | ^ |
| xor_eq | ^= |

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

None.

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 5. Derived from ISO/IEC 9899:1990/Amendment 1:1995 (E).


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

langinfo.h — language information constants

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <langinfo.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<langinfo.h>** header contains the constants used to identify items of *langinfo* data (see *nl_langinfo*( )). The type of the constant, **nl_item**, shall be defined as described in **<nl_types.h>**.

The following constants shall be defined. The entries under **Category** indicate in which *setlocale*( ) category each item is defined.

| Constant | Category | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| CODESET | *LC_CTYPE* | Codeset name. |
| D_T_FMT | *LC_TIME* | String for formatting date and time. |
| D_FMT | *LC_TIME* | Date format string. |
| T_FMT | *LC_TIME* | Time format string. |
| T_FMT_AMPM | *LC_TIME* | a.m. or p.m. time format string. |
| AM_STR | *LC_TIME* | Ante-meridiem affix. |
| PM_STR | *LC_TIME* | Post-meridiem affix. |
| DAY_1 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the first day of the week (for example, Sunday). |
| DAY_2 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the second day of the week (for example, Monday). |
| DAY_3 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the third day of the week (for example, Tuesday). |
| DAY_4 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the fourth day of the week (for example, Wednesday). |
| DAY_5 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the fifth day of the week (for example, Thursday). |
| DAY_6 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the sixth day of the week (for example, Friday). |
| DAY_7 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the seventh day of the week (for example, Saturday). |
| ABDAY_1 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the first day of the week. |
| ABDAY_2 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the second day of the week. |
| ABDAY_3 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the third day of the week. |
| ABDAY_4 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the fourth day of the week. |
| ABDAY_5 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the fifth day of the week. |
| ABDAY_6 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the sixth day of the week. |
| ABDAY_7 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the seventh day of the week. |
| MON_1 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the first month of the year. |
| MON_2 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the second month. |
| MON_3 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the third month. |
| MON_4 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the fourth month. |
| MON_5 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the fifth month. |
| MON_6 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the sixth month. |
| MON_7 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the seventh month. |
| MON_8 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the eighth month. |
| MON_9 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the ninth month. |
| MON_10 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the tenth month. |
| MON_11 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the eleventh month. |
| MON_12 | *LC_TIME* | Name of the twelfth month. |



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| Constant | Category | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| ABMON_1 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the first month. |
| ABMON_2 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the second month. |
| ABMON_3 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the third month. |
| ABMON_4 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the fourth month. |
| ABMON_5 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the fifth month. |
| ABMON_6 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the sixth month. |
| ABMON_7 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the seventh month. |
| ABMON_8 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the eighth month. |
| ABMON_9 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the ninth month. |
| ABMON_10 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the tenth month. |
| ABMON_11 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the eleventh month. |
| ABMON_12 | *LC_TIME* | Abbreviated name of the twelfth month. |
| ERA | *LC_TIME* | Era description segments. |
| ERA_D_FMT | *LC_TIME* | Era date format string. |
| ERA_D_T_FMT | *LC_TIME* | Era date and time format string. |
| ERA_T_FMT | *LC_TIME* | Era time format string. |
| ALT_DIGITS | *LC_TIME* | Alternative symbols for digits. |
| RADIXCHAR | *LC_NUMERIC* | Radix character. |
| THOUSEP | *LC_NUMERIC* | Separator for thousands. |
| YESEXPR | *LC_MESSAGES* | Affirmative response expression. |
| NOEXPR | *LC_MESSAGES* | Negative response expression. |
| CRNCYSTR | *LC_MONETARY* | Local currency symbol, preceded by '−' if the symbol should appear before the value, '+' if the symbol should appear after the value, or '.' if the symbol should replace the radix character. If the local currency symbol is the empty string, implementations may return the empty string (""). |

If the locale's values for **p_cs_precedes** and **n_cs_precedes** do not match, the value of *nl_langinfo*(CRNCYSTR) is unspecified.

The following shall be declared as a function and may also be defined as a macro. A function prototype shall be provided.

```
char *nl_langinfo(nl_item);
```

Inclusion of the **<langinfo.h>** header may also make visible all symbols from **<nl_types.h>**.

## APPLICATION USAGE

Wherever possible, users are advised to use functions compatible with those in the ISO C standard to access items of *langinfo* data. In particular, the *strftime*( ) function should be used to access date and time information defined in category *LC_TIME*. The *localeconv*( ) function should be used to access information corresponding to RADIXCHAR, THOUSEP, and CRNCYSTR.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *nl_langinfo*( ), *localeconv*( ), *strfmon*( ), *strftime*( ), Chapter 7 (on page 123)


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.

### Issue 5

The constants YESSTR and NOSTR are marked LEGACY.

### Issue 6

The constants YESSTR and NOSTR are removed.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/9 is applied, adding a sentence to the ''Meaning'' column entry for the CRNCYSTR constant. This change is to accommodate historic practice.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

libgen.h — definitions for pattern matching functions

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <libgen.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
char  *basename(char *);
char  *dirname(char *);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *basename*( ), *dirname*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4, Version 2.

### Issue 5

The function prototypes for *basename*( ) and *dirname*( ) are changed to indicate that the first argument is of type **char *** rather than **const char ***.

### Issue 6

The **__loc1** symbol and the *regcmp*( ) and *regex*( ) functions are removed.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8679 **NAME**

8680 limits.h — implementation-defined constants

8681 **SYNOPSIS**

8682 `#include <limits.h>`

8683 **DESCRIPTION**

8684 CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard.
8685 Applications shall define the appropriate feature test macro (see the System Interfaces volume of
8686 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment) to enable the visibility of these
8687 symbols in this header.

8688 CX Many of the symbols listed here are not defined by the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard. Such
8689 symbols are not shown as CX shaded.

8690 The **<limits.h>** header shall define various symbolic names. Different categories of names are
8691 described below.

8692 The names represent various limits on resources that the implementation imposes on
8693 applications.

8694 Implementations may choose any appropriate value for each limit, provided it is not more
8695 restrictive than the Minimum Acceptable Values listed below. Symbolic constant names
8696 beginning with _POSIX may be found in **<unistd.h>**.

8697 Applications should not assume any particular value for a limit. To achieve maximum
8698 portability, an application should not require more resource than the Minimum Acceptable
8699 Value quantity. However, an application wishing to avail itself of the full amount of a resource
8700 available on an implementation may make use of the value given in **<limits.h>** on that
8701 particular implementation, by using the symbolic names listed below. It should be noted,
8702 however, that many of the listed limits are not invariant, and at runtime, the value of the limit
8703 may differ from those given in this header, for the following reasons:

8704 • The limit is pathname-dependent.

8705 • The limit differs between the compile and runtime machines.

8706 For these reasons, an application may use the *fpathconf*( ), *pathconf*( ), and *sysconf*( ) functions to
8707 determine the actual value of a limit at runtime.

8708 The items in the list ending in _MIN give the most negative values that the mathematical types
8709 are guaranteed to be capable of representing. Numbers of a more negative value may be
8710 supported on some implementations, as indicated by the **<limits.h>** header on the
8711 implementation, but applications requiring such numbers are not guaranteed to be portable to
8712 all implementations. For positive constants ending in _MIN, this indicates the minimum
8713 acceptable value.

8714 **Runtime Invariant Values (Possibly Indeterminate)**

8715 A definition of one of the symbolic names in the following list shall be omitted from **<limits.h>**
8716 on specific implementations where the corresponding value is equal to or greater than the stated
8717 minimum, but is unspecified.

8718 This indetermination might depend on the amount of available memory space on a specific
8719 instance of a specific implementation. The actual value supported by a specific instance shall be
8720 provided by the *sysconf*( ) function.

8721 AIO {AIO_LISTIO_MAX}
8722 Maximum number of I/O operations in a single list I/O call supported by the



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

implementation.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_AIO_LISTIO_MAX}

AIO {AIO_MAX}
Maximum number of outstanding asynchronous I/O operations supported by the implementation.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_AIO_MAX}

AIO {AIO_PRIO_DELTA_MAX}
The maximum amount by which a process can decrease its asynchronous I/O priority level from its own scheduling priority.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 0

{ARG_MAX}
Maximum length of argument to the *exec* functions including environment data.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_ARG_MAX}

XSI {ATEXIT_MAX}
Maximum number of functions that may be registered with *atexit*( ).
Minimum Acceptable Value: 32

{CHILD_MAX}
Maximum number of simultaneous processes per real user ID.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_CHILD_MAX}

TMR {DELAYTIMER_MAX}
Maximum number of timer expiration overruns.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_DELAYTIMER_MAX}

{HOST_NAME_MAX}
Maximum length of a host name (not including the terminating null) as returned from the *gethostname*( ) function.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_HOST_NAME_MAX}

XSI {IOV_MAX}
Maximum number of **iovec** structures that one process has available for use with *readv*( ) or *writev*( ).
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_XOPEN_IOV_MAX}

{LOGIN_NAME_MAX}
Maximum length of a login name.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_LOGIN_NAME_MAX}

MSG {MQ_OPEN_MAX}
The maximum number of open message queue descriptors a process may hold.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_MQ_OPEN_MAX}

MSG {MQ_PRIO_MAX}
The maximum number of message priorities supported by the implementation.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_MQ_PRIO_MAX}

{OPEN_MAX}
Maximum number of files that one process can have open at any one time.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_OPEN_MAX}

{PAGESIZE}
Size in bytes of a page.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 1

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

8768 XSI {PAGE_SIZE}
8769 Equivalent to {PAGESIZE}. If either {PAGESIZE} or {PAGE_SIZE} is defined, the other is
8770 defined with the same value.

8771 THR {PTHREAD_DESTRUCTOR_ITERATIONS}
8772 Maximum number of attempts made to destroy a thread's thread-specific data values on
8773 thread exit.
8774 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_THREAD_DESTRUCTOR_ITERATIONS}

8775 THR {PTHREAD_KEYS_MAX}
8776 Maximum number of data keys that can be created by a process.
8777 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_THREAD_KEYS_MAX}

8778 THR {PTHREAD_STACK_MIN}
8779 Minimum size in bytes of thread stack storage.
8780 Minimum Acceptable Value: 0

8781 THR {PTHREAD_THREADS_MAX}
8782 Maximum number of threads that can be created per process.
8783 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_THREAD_THREADS_MAX}

8784 {RE_DUP_MAX}
8785 The number of repeated occurrences of a BRE permitted by the *regexec*( ) and *regcomp*( )
8786 functions when using the interval notation {\(*m*,*n*\}; see Section 9.3.6 (on page 174).
8787 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX2_RE_DUP_MAX}

8788 RTS {RTSIG_MAX}
8789 Maximum number of realtime signals reserved for application use in this implementation.
8790 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_RTSIG_MAX}

8791 SEM {SEM_NSEMS_MAX}
8792 Maximum number of semaphores that a process may have.
8793 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_SEM_NSEMS_MAX}

8794 SEM {SEM_VALUE_MAX}
8795 The maximum value a semaphore may have.
8796 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_SEM_VALUE_MAX}

8797 RTS {SIGQUEUE_MAX}
8798 Maximum number of queued signals that a process may send and have pending at the
8799 receiver(s) at any time.
8800 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_SIGQUEUE_MAX}

8801 SS|TSP {SS_REPL_MAX}
8802 The maximum number of replenishment operations that may be simultaneously pending
8803 for a particular sporadic server scheduler.
8804 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_SS_REPL_MAX}

8805 {STREAM_MAX}
8806 The number of streams that one process can have open at one time. If defined, it has the
8807 same value as {FOPEN_MAX} (see **<stdio.h>**).
8808 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_STREAM_MAX}

8809 {SYMLOOP_MAX}
8810 Maximum number of symbolic links that can be reliably traversed in the resolution of a
8811 pathname in the absence of a loop.
8812 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_SYMLOOP_MAX}



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

8813 TMR {TIMER_MAX}
8814 Maximum number of timers per process supported by the implementation.
8815 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_TIMER_MAX}

8816 TRC {TRACE_EVENT_NAME_MAX}
8817 Maximum length of the trace event name.
8818 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_TRACE_EVENT_NAME_MAX}

8819 TRC {TRACE_NAME_MAX}
8820 Maximum length of the trace generation version string or of the trace stream name.
8821 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_TRACE_NAME_MAX}

8822 TRC {TRACE_SYS_MAX}
8823 Maximum number of trace streams that may simultaneously exist in the system.
8824 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_TRACE_SYS_MAX}

8825 TRC {TRACE_USER_EVENT_MAX}
8826 Maximum number of user trace event type identifiers that may simultaneously exist in a
8827 traced process, including the predefined user trace event
8828 POSIX_TRACE_UNNAMED_USER_EVENT.
8829 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_TRACE_USER_EVENT_MAX}

8830 {TTY_NAME_MAX}
8831 Maximum length of terminal device name.
8832 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_TTY_NAME_MAX}

8833 {TZNAME_MAX}
8834 Maximum number of bytes supported for the name of a timezone (not of the *TZ* variable).
8835 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_TZNAME_MAX}

8836 **Note:** The length given by {TZNAME_MAX} does not include the quoting characters mentioned in
8837 Section 8.3 (on page 165).

8838 **Pathname Variable Values**

8839 The values in the following list may be constants within an implementation or may vary from
8840 one pathname to another. For example, file systems or directories may have different
8841 characteristics.

8842 A definition of one of the values shall be omitted from the **<limits.h>** header on specific
8843 implementations where the corresponding value is equal to or greater than the stated minimum,
8844 but where the value can vary depending on the file to which it is applied. The actual value
8845 supported for a specific pathname shall be provided by the *pathconf*( ) function.

8846 {FILESIZEBITS}
8847 Minimum number of bits needed to represent, as a signed integer value, the maximum size
8848 of a regular file allowed in the specified directory.
8849 Minimum Acceptable Value: 32

8850 {LINK_MAX}
8851 Maximum number of links to a single file.
8852 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_LINK_MAX}

8853 {MAX_CANON}
8854 Maximum number of bytes in a terminal canonical input line.
8855 Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_MAX_CANON}

8856 {MAX_INPUT}
8857 Minimum number of bytes for which space is available in a terminal input queue; therefore,

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

the maximum number of bytes a conforming application may require to be typed as input before reading them.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_MAX_INPUT}

{NAME_MAX}
Maximum number of bytes in a filename (not including terminating null).
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_NAME_MAX}
XSI Minimum Acceptable Value: {_XOPEN_NAME_MAX}

{PATH_MAX}
Maximum number of bytes in a pathname, including the terminating null character.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_PATH_MAX}
XSI Minimum Acceptable Value: {_XOPEN_PATH_MAX}

{PIPE_BUF}
Maximum number of bytes that is guaranteed to be atomic when writing to a pipe.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_PIPE_BUF}

ADV {POSIX_ALLOC_SIZE_MIN}
Minimum number of bytes of storage actually allocated for any portion of a file.
Minimum Acceptable Value: Not specified.

ADV {POSIX_REC_INCR_XFER_SIZE}
Recommended increment for file transfer sizes between the {POSIX_REC_MIN_XFER_SIZE} and {POSIX_REC_MAX_XFER_SIZE} values.
Minimum Acceptable Value: Not specified.

ADV {POSIX_REC_MAX_XFER_SIZE}
Maximum recommended file transfer size.
Minimum Acceptable Value: Not specified.

ADV {POSIX_REC_MIN_XFER_SIZE}
Minimum recommended file transfer size.
Minimum Acceptable Value: Not specified.

ADV {POSIX_REC_XFER_ALIGN}
Recommended file transfer buffer alignment.
Minimum Acceptable Value: Not specified.

{SYMLINK_MAX}
Maximum number of bytes in a symbolic link.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_SYMLINK_MAX}

### Runtime Increasable Values

The magnitude limitations in the following list shall be fixed by specific implementations. An application should assume that the value supplied by **<limits.h>** in a specific implementation is the minimum that pertains whenever the application is run under that implementation. A specific instance of a specific implementation may increase the value relative to that supplied by **<limits.h>** for that implementation. The actual value supported by a specific instance shall be provided by the *sysconf*( ) function.

{BC_BASE_MAX}
Maximum *obase* values allowed by the *bc* utility.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX2_BC_BASE_MAX}

{BC_DIM_MAX}
Maximum number of elements permitted in an array by the *bc* utility.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX2_BC_DIM_MAX}

{BC_SCALE_MAX}
Maximum *scale* value allowed by the *bc* utility.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX2_BC_SCALE_MAX}

{BC_STRING_MAX}
Maximum length of a string constant accepted by the *bc* utility.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX2_BC_STRING_MAX}

{CHARCLASS_NAME_MAX}
Maximum number of bytes in a character class name.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX2_CHARCLASS_NAME_MAX}

{COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX}
Maximum number of weights that can be assigned to an entry of the *LC_COLLATE* **order** keyword in the locale definition file; see Chapter 7 (on page 123).
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX2_COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX}

{EXPR_NEST_MAX}
Maximum number of expressions that can be nested within parentheses by the *expr* utility.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX2_EXPR_NEST_MAX}

{LINE_MAX}
Unless otherwise noted, the maximum length, in bytes, of a utility's input line (either standard input or another file), when the utility is described as processing text files. The length includes room for the trailing <newline>.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX2_LINE_MAX}

{NGROUPS_MAX}
Maximum number of simultaneous supplementary group IDs per process.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_NGROUPS_MAX}

{RE_DUP_MAX}
Maximum number of repeated occurrences of a regular expression permitted when using the interval notation \{*m*,*n*\}; see Chapter 9 (on page 169).
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX2_RE_DUP_MAX}

### Maximum Values

TMR The symbolic constants in the following list shall be defined in **<limits.h>** with the values shown. These are symbolic names for the most restrictive value for certain features on an implementation supporting the Timers option. A conforming implementation shall provide values no larger than these values. A conforming application must not require a smaller value for correct operation.

TMR {_POSIX_CLOCKRES_MIN}
The resolution of the CLOCK_REALTIME clock, in nanoseconds.
Value: 20 000 000

MON If the Monotonic Clock option is supported, the resolution of the CLOCK_MONOTONIC clock, in nanoseconds, is represented by {_POSIX_CLOCKRES_MIN}.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

### Minimum Values

The symbolic constants in the following list shall be defined in **<limits.h>** with the values shown. These are symbolic names for the most restrictive value for certain features on an implementation conforming to this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. Related symbolic constants are defined elsewhere in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 which reflect the actual implementation and which need not be as restrictive. A conforming implementation shall provide values at least this large. A strictly conforming application must not require a larger value for correct operation.

AIO {_POSIX_AIO_LISTIO_MAX}
The number of I/O operations that can be specified in a list I/O call.
Value: 2

AIO {_POSIX_AIO_MAX}
The number of outstanding asynchronous I/O operations.
Value: 1

{_POSIX_ARG_MAX}
Maximum length of argument to the *exec* functions including environment data.
Value: 4 096

{_POSIX_CHILD_MAX}
Maximum number of simultaneous processes per real user ID.
Value: 25

TMR {_POSIX_DELAYTIMER_MAX}
The number of timer expiration overruns.
Value: 32

{_POSIX_HOST_NAME_MAX}
Maximum length of a host name (not including the terminating null) as returned from the *gethostname*( ) function.
Value: 255

{_POSIX_LINK_MAX}
Maximum number of links to a single file.
Value: 8

{_POSIX_LOGIN_NAME_MAX}
The size of the storage required for a login name, in bytes, including the terminating null.
Value: 9

{_POSIX_MAX_CANON}
Maximum number of bytes in a terminal canonical input queue.
Value: 255

{_POSIX_MAX_INPUT}
Maximum number of bytes allowed in a terminal input queue.
Value: 255

MSG {_POSIX_MQ_OPEN_MAX}
The number of message queues that can be open for a single process.
Value: 8

MSG {_POSIX_MQ_PRIO_MAX}
The maximum number of message priorities supported by the implementation.
Value: 32



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

{_POSIX_NAME_MAX}
Maximum number of bytes in a filename (not including terminating null).
Value: 14

{_POSIX_NGROUPS_MAX}
Maximum number of simultaneous supplementary group IDs per process.
Value: 8

{_POSIX_OPEN_MAX}
Maximum number of files that one process can have open at any one time.
Value: 20

{_POSIX_PATH_MAX}
Maximum number of bytes in a pathname.
Value: 256

{_POSIX_PIPE_BUF}
Maximum number of bytes that is guaranteed to be atomic when writing to a pipe.
Value: 512

{_POSIX_RE_DUP_MAX}
The number of repeated occurrences of a BRE permitted by the *regexec*( ) and *regcomp*( ) functions when using the interval notation {\(*m*,*n*\}; see Section 9.3.6 (on page 174).
Value: 255

RTS {_POSIX_RTSIG_MAX}
The number of realtime signal numbers reserved for application use.
Value: 8

SEM {_POSIX_SEM_NSEMS_MAX}
The number of semaphores that a process may have.
Value: 256

SEM {_POSIX_SEM_VALUE_MAX}
The maximum value a semaphore may have.
Value: 32 767

RTS {_POSIX_SIGQUEUE_MAX}
The number of queued signals that a process may send and have pending at the receiver(s) at any time.
Value: 32

{_POSIX_SSIZE_MAX}
The value that can be stored in an object of type **ssize_t**.
Value: 32 767

{_POSIX_STREAM_MAX}
The number of streams that one process can have open at one time.
Value: 8

SS|TSP {_POSIX_SS_REPL_MAX}
The number of replenishment operations that may be simultaneously pending for a particular sporadic server scheduler.
Value: 4

{_POSIX_SYMLINK_MAX}
The number of bytes in a symbolic link.
Value: 255


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

{_POSIX_SYMLOOP_MAX}
The number of symbolic links that can be traversed in the resolution of a pathname in the absence of a loop.
Value: 8

THR {_POSIX_THREAD_DESTRUCTOR_ITERATIONS}
The number of attempts made to destroy a thread's thread-specific data values on thread exit.
Value: 4

THR {_POSIX_THREAD_KEYS_MAX}
The number of data keys per process.
Value: 128

THR {_POSIX_THREAD_THREADS_MAX}
The number of threads per process.
Value: 64

TMR {_POSIX_TIMER_MAX}
The per-process number of timers.
Value: 32

TRC {_POSIX_TRACE_EVENT_NAME_MAX}
The length in bytes of a trace event name.
Value: 30

TRC {_POSIX_TRACE_NAME_MAX}
The length in bytes of a trace generation version string or a trace stream name.
Value: 8

TRC {_POSIX_TRACE_SYS_MAX}
The number of trace streams that may simultaneously exist in the system.
Value: 8

TRC {_POSIX_TRACE_USER_EVENT_MAX}
The number of user trace event type identifiers that may simultaneously exist in a traced process, including the predefined user trace event POSIX_TRACE_UNNAMED_USER_EVENT.
Value: 32

{_POSIX_TTY_NAME_MAX}
The size of the storage required for a terminal device name, in bytes, including the terminating null.
Value: 9

{_POSIX_TZNAME_MAX}
Maximum number of bytes supported for the name of a timezone (not of the *TZ* variable).
Value: 6

**Note:** The length given by {_POSIX_TZNAME_MAX} does not include the quoting characters mentioned in Section 8.3 (on page 165).

{_POSIX2_BC_BASE_MAX}
Maximum *obase* values allowed by the *bc* utility.
Value: 99

{_POSIX2_BC_DIM_MAX}
Maximum number of elements permitted in an array by the *bc* utility.
Value: 2 048



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

{_POSIX2_BC_SCALE_MAX}
Maximum *scale* value allowed by the *bc* utility.
Value: 99

{_POSIX2_BC_STRING_MAX}
Maximum length of a string constant accepted by the *bc* utility.
Value: 1 000

{_POSIX2_CHARCLASS_NAME_MAX}
Maximum number of bytes in a character class name.
Value: 14

{_POSIX2_COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX}
Maximum number of weights that can be assigned to an entry of the *LC_COLLATE* **order** keyword in the locale definition file; see Chapter 7 (on page 123).
Value: 2

{_POSIX2_EXPR_NEST_MAX}
Maximum number of expressions that can be nested within parentheses by the *expr* utility.
Value: 32

{_POSIX2_LINE_MAX}
Unless otherwise noted, the maximum length, in bytes, of a utility's input line (either standard input or another file), when the utility is described as processing text files. The length includes room for the trailing <newline>.
Value: 2 048

{_POSIX2_RE_DUP_MAX]
Maximum number of repeated occurrences of a regular expression permitted when using the interval notation \{*m*,*n*\}; see Chapter 9 (on page 169).
Value: 255

XSI {_XOPEN_IOV_MAX}
Maximum number of **iovec** structures that one process has available for use with *readv*( ) or *writev*( ).
Value: 16

XSI {_XOPEN_NAME_MAX}
Maximum number of bytes in a filename (not including the terminating null).
Value: 255

XSI {_XOPEN_PATH_MAX}
Maximum number of bytes in a pathname.
Value: 1 024

### Numerical Limits

The values in the following lists shall be defined in **<limits.h>** and are constant expressions XSI suitable for use in **#if** preprocessing directives. Moreover, except for {CHAR_BIT}, {DBL_DIG}, {DBL_MAX}, {FLT_DIG}, {FLT_MAX}, {LONG_BIT}, {WORD_BIT}, and {MB_LEN_MAX}, the symbolic names are defined as expressions of the correct type.

If the value of an object of type **char** is treated as a signed integer when used in an expression, the value of {CHAR_MIN} is the same as that of {SCHAR_MIN} and the value of {CHAR_MAX} is the same as that of {SCHAR_MAX}. Otherwise, the value of {CHAR_MIN} is 0 and the value of {CHAR_MAX} is the same as that of {UCHAR_MAX}.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

{CHAR_BIT}
Number of bits in a type **char**.
CX Value: 8

{CHAR_MAX}
Maximum value of type **char**.
Value: {UCHAR_MAX} or {SCHAR_MAX}

{CHAR_MIN}
Minimum value of type **char**.
Value: {SCHAR_MIN} or 0

{INT_MAX}
Maximum value of an **int**.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 2 147 483 647

XSI {LONG_BIT}
Number of bits in a **long**.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 32

{LONG_MAX}
Maximum value of a **long**.
Minimum Acceptable Value: +2 147 483 647

{MB_LEN_MAX}
Maximum number of bytes in a character, for any supported locale.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 1

{SCHAR_MAX}
Maximum value of type **signed char**.
CX Value: +127

{SHRT_MAX}
Maximum value of type **short**.
Minimum Acceptable Value: +32 767

{SSIZE_MAX}
Maximum value of an object of type **ssize_t**.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX_SSIZE_MAX}

{UCHAR_MAX}
Maximum value of type **unsigned char**.
CX Value: 255

{UINT_MAX}
Maximum value of type **unsigned**.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 4 294 967 295

{ULONG_MAX}
Maximum value of type **unsigned long**.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 4 294 967 295

{USHRT_MAX}
Maximum value for a type **unsigned short**.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 65 535

XSI {WORD_BIT}
Number of bits in a word or type **int**.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 16



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

{INT_MIN}
Minimum value of type **int**.
Maximum Acceptable Value: –2 147 483 647

{LONG_MIN}
Minimum value of type **long**.
Maximum Acceptable Value: –2 147 483 647

{SCHAR_MIN}
Minimum value of type **signed char**.
CX Value: –128

{SHRT_MIN}
Minimum value of type **short**.
Maximum Acceptable Value: –32 767

{LLONG_MIN}
Minimum value of type **long long**.
Maximum Acceptable Value: –9 223 372 036 854 775 807

{LLONG_MAX}
Maximum value of type **long long**.
Minimum Acceptable Value: +9 223 372 036 854 775 807

{ULLONG_MAX}
Maximum value of type **unsigned long long**.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 18 446 744 073 709 551 615

**Other Invariant Values**

XSI The following constants shall be defined on all implementations in **<limits.h>**:

XSI {CHARCLASS_NAME_MAX}
Maximum number of bytes in a character class name.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 14

XSI {NL_ARGMAX}
Maximum value of *digit* in calls to the *printf*( ) and *scanf*( ) functions.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 9

XSI {NL_LANGMAX}
Maximum number of bytes in a *LANG* name.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 14

XSI {NL_MSGMAX}
Maximum message number.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 32 767

XSI {NL_NMAX}
Maximum number of bytes in an N-to-1 collation mapping.
Minimum Acceptable Value: No guaranteed value across all conforming implementations.

XSI {NL_SETMAX}
Maximum set number.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 255

XSI {NL_TEXTMAX}
Maximum number of bytes in a message string.
Minimum Acceptable Value: {_POSIX2_LINE_MAX}

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

XSI {NZERO}
Default process priority.
Minimum Acceptable Value: 20

**APPLICATION USAGE**

None.

**RATIONALE**

A request was made to reduce the value of {_POSIX_LINK_MAX} from the value of 8 specified for it in the POSIX.1-1990 standard to 2. The standard developers decided to deny this request for several reasons:

- They wanted to avoid making any changes to the standard that could break conforming applications, and the requested change could have that effect.
- The use of multiple hard links to a file cannot always be replaced with use of symbolic links. Symbolic links are semantically different from hard links in that they associate a pathname with another pathname rather than a pathname with a file. This has implications for access control, file permanence, and transparency.
- The original standard developers had considered the issue of allowing for implementations that did not in general support hard links, and decided that this would reduce consensus on the standard.

Systems that support historical versions of the development option of the ISO POSIX-2 standard retain the name {_POSIX2_RE_DUP_MAX} as an alias for {_POSIX_RE_DUP_MAX}.

{PATH_MAX}
IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.1 #15 addressed the inconsistency in the standard with the definition of pathname and the description of {PATH_MAX}, allowing application writers to allocate either {PATH_MAX} or {PATH_MAX}+1 bytes. The inconsistency has been removed by correction to the {PATH_MAX} definition to include the null character. With this change, applications that previously allocated {PATH_MAX} bytes will continue to succeed.

{SYMLINK_MAX}
This symbol refers to space for data that is stored in the file system, as opposed to {PATH_MAX} which is the length of a name that can be passed to a function. In some existing implementations, the filenames pointed to by symbolic links are stored in the inodes of the links, so it is important that {SYMLINK_MAX} not be constrained to be as large as {PATH_MAX}.

**FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

None.

**SEE ALSO**

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *fpathconf*( ), *pathconf*( ), *sysconf*( )

**CHANGE HISTORY**

First released in Issue 1.

**Issue 5**

The DESCRIPTION is updated for alignment with the POSIX Realtime Extension and the POSIX Threads Extension.

{FILESIZEBITS} is added for the Large File Summit extensions.

The minimum acceptable values for {INT_MAX}, {INT_MIN}, and {UINT_MAX} are changed to make 32-bit values the minimum requirement.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

The entry is restructured to improve readability.

**Issue 6**

The Open Group Corrigendum U033/4 is applied. The wording is made clear for {CHAR_MIN}, {INT_MIN}, {LONG_MIN}, {SCHAR_MIN}, and {SHRT_MIN} that these are maximum acceptable values.

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The minimum value for {CHILD_MAX} is 25. This is a FIPS requirement.
- The minimum value for {OPEN_MAX} is 20. This is a FIPS requirement.
- The minimum value for {NGROUPS_MAX} is 8. This is also a FIPS requirement.

Symbolic constants are added for {_POSIX_SYMLINK_MAX}, {_POSIX_SYMLOOP_MAX}, {_POSIX_RE_DUP_MAX}, {RE_DUP_MAX}, {SYMLOOP_MAX}, and {SYMLINK_MAX}.

The following values are added for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1d-1999:

{_POSIX_SS_REPL_MAX}
{SS_REPL_MAX}
{POSIX_ALLOC_SIZE_MIN}
{POSIX_REC_INCR_XFER_SIZE}
{POSIX_REC_MAX_XFER_SIZE}
{POSIX_REC_MIN_XFER_SIZE}
{POSIX_REC_XFER_ALIGN}

Reference to CLOCK_MONOTONIC is added in the description of {_POSIX_CLOCKRES_MIN} for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1j-2000.

The constants {LLONG_MIN}, {LLONG_MAX}, and {ULLONG_MAX} are added for alignment with the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard.

The following values are added for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1q-2000:

{_POSIX_TRACE_EVENT_NAME_MAX}
{_POSIX_TRACE_NAME_MAX}
{_POSIX_TRACE_SYS_MAX}
{_POSIX_TRACE_USER_EVENT_MAX}
{TRACE_EVENT_NAME_MAX}
{TRACE_NAME_MAX}
{TRACE_SYS_MAX}
{TRACE_USER_EVENT_MAX}

The new limits {_XOPEN_NAME_MAX} and {_XOPEN_PATH_MAX} are added as minimum values for {PATH_MAX} and {NAME_MAX} limits on XSI-conformant systems.

The legacy symbols {PASS_MAX} and {TMP_MAX} are removed.

The values for the limits {CHAR_BIT}, {SCHAR_MAX}, and {UCHAR_MAX} are now required to be 8, +127, and 255, respectively.

The value for the limit {CHAR_MAX} is now {UCHAR_MAX} or {SCHAR_MAX}.

The value for the limit {CHAR_MIN} is now {SCHAR_MIN} or zero.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/10 is applied, correcting the value of {_POSIX_CHILD_MAX} from 6 to 25. This is for FIPS 151-2 alignment.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

9299 **NAME**

9300 locale.h — category macros

9301 **SYNOPSIS**

9302 `#include <locale.h>`

9303 **DESCRIPTION**

9304 CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard. Any
9305 conflict between the requirements described here and the ISO C standard is unintentional. This
9306 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 defers to the ISO C standard.

9307 The **<locale.h>** header shall provide a definition for **lconv** structure, which shall include at least
9308 the following members. (See the definitions of *LC_MONETARY* in Section 7.3.3 (on page 142)
9309 and Section 7.3.4 (on page 145).)

```
9310        char    *currency_symbol
9311        char    *decimal_point
9312        char     frac_digits
9313        char    *grouping
9314        char    *int_curr_symbol
9315        char     int_frac_digits
9316        char     int_n_cs_precedes
9317        char     int_n_sep_by_space
9318        char     int_n_sign_posn
9319        char     int_p_cs_precedes
9320        char     int_p_sep_by_space
9321        char     int_p_sign_posn
9322        char    *mon_decimal_point
9323        char    *mon_grouping
9324        char    *mon_thousands_sep
9325        char    *negative_sign
9326        char     n_cs_precedes
9327        char     n_sep_by_space
9328        char     n_sign_posn
9329        char    *positive_sign
9330        char     p_cs_precedes
9331        char     p_sep_by_space
9332        char     p_sign_posn
9333        char    *thousands_sep
```

9334 The **<locale.h>** header shall define NULL (as defined in **<stddef.h>**) and at least the following as
9335 macros:

9336 *LC_ALL*
9337 *LC_COLLATE*
9338 *LC_CTYPE*
9339 CX *LC_MESSAGES*
9340 *LC_MONETARY*
9341 *LC_NUMERIC*
9342 *LC_TIME*

9343 which shall expand to distinct integer constant expressions, for use as the first argument to the
9344 *setlocale*( ) function.

9345 Additional macro definitions, beginning with the characters *LC_* and an uppercase letter, may
9346 also be given here.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
struct  lconv *localeconv (void);
char   *setlocale(int, const char *);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *localeconv*( ), *setlocale*( ), Chapter 8 (on page 161)

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 3.

Included for alignment with the ISO C standard.

### Issue 6

The **lconv** structure is expanded with new members (**int_n_cs_precedes**, **int_n_sep_by_space**, **int_n_sign_posn**, **int_p_cs_precedes**, **int_p_sep_by_space**, and **int_p_sign_posn**) for alignment with the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard.

Extensions beyond the ISO C standard are marked.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

math.h — mathematical declarations

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <math.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard. Applications shall define the appropriate feature test macro (see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment) to enable the visibility of these symbols in this header.

The **<math.h>** header shall include definitions for at least the following types:

**float_t** A real-floating type at least as wide as **float**.

**double_t** A real-floating type at least as wide as **double**, and at least as wide as **float_t**.

If FLT_EVAL_METHOD equals 0, **float_t** and **double_t** shall be **float** and **double**, respectively; if FLT_EVAL_METHOD equals 1, they shall both be **double**; if FLT_EVAL_METHOD equals 2, they shall both be **long double**; for other values of FLT_EVAL_METHOD, they are otherwise implementation-defined.

The **<math.h>** header shall define the following macros, where real-floating indicates that the argument shall be an expression of real-floating type:

```
int fpclassify(real-floating x);
int isfinite(real-floating x);
int isinf(real-floating x);
int isnan(real-floating x);
int isnormal(real-floating x);
int signbit(real-floating x);
int isgreater(real-floating x, real-floating y);
int isgreaterequal(real-floating x, real-floating y);
int isless(real-floating x, real-floating y);
int islessequal(real-floating x, real-floating y);
int islessgreater(real-floating x, real-floating y);
int isunordered(real-floating x, real-floating y);
```

The **<math.h>** header shall provide for the following constants. The values are of type **double** and are accurate within the precision of the **double** type.

XSI

| | |
|---|---|
| M_E | Value of $e$ |
| M_LOG2E | Value of $\log_2 e$ |
| M_LOG10E | Value of $\log_{10} e$ |
| M_LN2 | Value of $\log_e 2$ |
| M_LN10 | Value of $\log_e 10$ |
| M_PI | Value of $\pi$ |
| M_PI_2 | Value of $\pi/2$ |
| M_PI_4 | Value of $\pi/4$ |
| M_1_PI | Value of $1/\pi$ |
| M_2_PI | Value of $2/\pi$ |



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| M_2_SQRTPI | Value of $2/\sqrt{\pi}$ |
| M_SQRT2 | Value of $\sqrt{2}$ |
| M_SQRT1_2 | Value of $1/\sqrt{2}$ |

The header shall define the following symbolic constants:

XSI

| | |
|---|---|
| MAXFLOAT | Value of maximum non-infinite single-precision floating-point number. |
| HUGE_VAL | A positive **double** expression, not necessarily representable as a **float**. Used as an error value returned by the mathematics library. HUGE_VAL evaluates to +infinity on systems supporting IEEE Std 754-1985. |
| HUGE_VALF | A positive **float** constant expression. Used as an error value returned by the mathematics library. HUGE_VALF evaluates to +infinity on systems supporting IEEE Std 754-1985. |
| HUGE_VALL | A positive **long double** constant expression. Used as an error value returned by the mathematics library. HUGE_VALL evaluates to +infinity on systems supporting IEEE Std 754-1985. |
| INFINITY | A constant expression of type **float** representing positive or unsigned infinity, if available; else a positive constant of type **float** that overflows at translation time. |
| NAN | A constant expression of type **float** representing a quiet NaN. This symbolic constant is only defined if the implementation supports quiet NaNs for the **float** type. |

The following macros shall be defined for number classification. They represent the mutually-exclusive kinds of floating-point values. They expand to integer constant expressions with distinct values. Additional implementation-defined floating-point classifications, with macro definitions beginning with FP_ and an uppercase letter, may also be specified by the implementation.

FP_INFINITE
FP_NAN
FP_NORMAL
FP_SUBNORMAL
FP_ZERO

The following optional macros indicate whether the *fma*( ) family of functions are fast compared with direct code:

FP_FAST_FMA
FP_FAST_FMAF
FP_FAST_FMAL

The FP_FAST_FMA macro shall be defined to indicate that the *fma*( ) function generally executes about as fast as, or faster than, a multiply and an add of **double** operands. The other macros have the equivalent meaning for the **float** and **long double** versions.

The following macros shall expand to integer constant expressions whose values are returned by *ilogb*(*x*) if *x* is zero or NaN, respectively. The value of FP_ILOGB0 shall be either {INT_MIN} or –{INT_MAX}. The value of FP_ILOGBNAN shall be either {INT_MAX} or {INT_MIN}.

FP_ILOGB0
FP_ILOGBNAN

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

The following macros shall expand to the integer constants 1 and 2, respectively;

MATH_ERRNO
MATH_ERREXCEPT

The following macro shall expand to an expression that has type **int** and the value MATH_ERRNO, MATH_ERREXCEPT, or the bitwise-inclusive OR of both:

math_errhandling

The value of math_errhandling is constant for the duration of the program. It is unspecified whether math_errhandling is a macro or an identifier with external linkage. If a macro definition is suppressed or a program defines an identifier with the name math_errhandling , the behavior is undefined. If the expression (math_errhandling & MATH_ERREXCEPT) can be non-zero, the implementation shall define the macros FE_DIVBYZERO, FE_INVALID, and FE_OVERFLOW in **<fenv.h>**.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
double      acos(double);
float       acosf(float);
double      acosh(double);
float       acoshf(float);
long double acoshl(long double);
long double acosl(long double);
double      asin(double);
float       asinf(float);
double      asinh(double);
float       asinhf(float);
long double asinhl(long double);
long double asinl(long double);
double      atan(double);
double      atan2(double, double);
float       atan2f(float, float);
long double atan2l(long double, long double);
float       atanf(float);
double      atanh(double);
float       atanhf(float);
long double atanhl(long double);
long double atanl(long double);
double      cbrt(double);
float       cbrtf(float);
long double cbrtl(long double);
double      ceil(double);
float       ceilf(float);
long double ceill(long double);
double      copysign(double, double);
float       copysignf(float, float);
long double copysignl(long double, long double);
double      cos(double);
float       cosf(float);
double      cosh(double);
float       coshf(float);
long double coshl(long double);
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
9502        long double cosl(long double);
9503        double      erf(double);
9504        double      erfc(double);
9505        float       erfcf(float);
9506        long double erfcl(long double);
9507        float       erff(float);
9508        long double erfl(long double);
9509        double      exp(double);
9510        double      exp2(double);
9511        float       exp2f(float);
9512        long double exp2l(long double);
9513        float       expf(float);
9514        long double expl(long double);
9515        double      expm1(double);
9516        float       expm1f(float);
9517        long double expm1l(long double);
9518        double      fabs(double);
9519        float       fabsf(float);
9520        long double fabsl(long double);
9521        double      fdim(double, double);
9522        float       fdimf(float, float);
9523        long double fdiml(long double, long double);
9524        double      floor(double);
9525        float       floorf(float);
9526        long double floorl(long double);
9527        double      fma(double, double, double);
9528        float       fmaf(float, float, float);
9529        long double fmal(long double, long double, long double);
9530        double      fmax(double, double);
9531        float       fmaxf(float, float);
9532        long double fmaxl(long double, long double);
9533        double      fmin(double, double);
9534        float       fminf(float, float);
9535        long double fminl(long double, long double);
9536        double      fmod(double, double);
9537        float       fmodf(float, float);
9538        long double fmodl(long double, long double);
9539        double      frexp(double, int *);
9540        float       frexpf(float value, int *);
9541        long double frexpl(long double value, int *);
9542        double      hypot(double, double);
9543        float       hypotf(float, float);
9544        long double hypotl(long double, long double);
9545        int         ilogb(double);
9546        int         ilogbf(float);
9547        int         ilogbl(long double);
9548 XSI    double      j0(double);
9549        double      j1(double);
9550        double      jn(int, double);
9551        double      ldexp(double, int);
9552        float       ldexpf(float, int);
9553        long double ldexpl(long double, int);
```

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
9554        double      lgamma(double);
9555        float       lgammaf(float);
9556        long double lgammal(long double);
9557        long long   llrint(double);
9558        long long   llrintf(float);
9559        long long   llrintl(long double);
9560        long long   llround(double);
9561        long long   llroundf(float);
9562        long long   llroundl(long double);
9563        double      log(double);
9564        double      log10(double);
9565        float       log10f(float);
9566        long double log10l(long double);
9567        double      log1p(double);
9568        float       log1pf(float);
9569        long double log1pl(long double);
9570        double      log2(double);
9571        float       log2f(float);
9572        long double log2l(long double);
9573        double      logb(double);
9574        float       logbf(float);
9575        long double logbl(long double);
9576        float       logf(float);
9577        long double logl(long double);
9578        long        lrint(double);
9579        long        lrintf(float);
9580        long        lrintl(long double);
9581        long        lround(double);
9582        long        lroundf(float);
9583        long        lroundl(long double);
9584        double      modf(double, double *);
9585        float       modff(float, float *);
9586        long double modfl(long double, long double *);
9587        double      nan(const char *);
9588        float       nanf(const char *);
9589        long double nanl(const char *);
9590        double      nearbyint(double);
9591        float       nearbyintf(float);
9592        long double nearbyintl(long double);
9593        double      nextafter(double, double);
9594        float       nextafterf(float, float);
9595        long double nextafterl(long double, long double);
9596        double      nexttoward(double, long double);
9597        float       nexttowardf(float, long double);
9598        long double nexttowardl(long double, long double);
9599        double      pow(double, double);
9600        float       powf(float, float);
9601        long double powl(long double, long double);
9602        double      remainder(double, double);
9603        float       remainderf(float, float);
9604        long double remainderl(long double, long double);
9605        double      remquo(double, double, int *);
```



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
        float       remquof(float, float, int *);
        long double remquol(long double, long double, int *);
        double      rint(double);
        float       rintf(float);
        long double rintl(long double);
        double      round(double);
        float       roundf(float);
        long double roundl(long double);
XSI     double      scalb(double, double);
        double      scalbln(double, long);
        float       scalblnf(float, long);
        long double scalblnl(long double, long);
        double      scalbn(double, int);
        float       scalbnf(float, int);
        long double scalbnl(long double, int);
        double      sin(double);
        float       sinf(float);
        double      sinh(double);
        float       sinhf(float);
        long double sinhl(long double);
        long double sinl(long double);
        double      sqrt(double);
        float       sqrtf(float);
        long double sqrtl(long double);
        double      tan(double);
        float       tanf(float);
        double      tanh(double);
        float       tanhf(float);
        long double tanhl(long double);
        long double tanl(long double);
        double      tgamma(double);
        float       tgammaf(float);
        long double tgammal(long double);
        double      trunc(double);
        float       truncf(float);
        long double truncl(long double);
XSI     double      y0(double);
        double      y1(double);
        double      yn(int, double);
```

The following external variable shall be defined:

```
XSI     extern int signgam;
```

The behavior of each of the functions defined in **<math.h>** is specified in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 for all representable values of its input arguments, except where stated otherwise. Each function shall execute as if it were a single operation without generating any externally visible exceptional conditions.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## APPLICATION USAGE

The FP_CONTRACT pragma can be used to allow (if the state is on) or disallow (if the state is off) the implementation to contract expressions. Each pragma can occur either outside external declarations or preceding all explicit declarations and statements inside a compound statement. When outside external declarations, the pragma takes effect from its occurrence until another FP_CONTRACT pragma is encountered, or until the end of the translation unit. When inside a compound statement, the pragma takes effect from its occurrence until another FP_CONTRACT pragma is encountered (including within a nested compound statement), or until the end of the compound statement; at the end of a compound statement the state for the pragma is restored to its condition just before the compound statement. If this pragma is used in any other context, the behavior is undefined. The default state (on or off) for the pragma is implementation-defined.

## RATIONALE

Before the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard, the math library was defined only for the floating type **double**. All the names formed by appending `'f'` or `'l'` to a name in **<math.h>** were reserved to allow for the definition of **float** and **long double** libraries; and the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard provides for all three versions of math functions.

The functions *ecvt*(), *fcvt*(), and *gcvt*() have been dropped from the ISO C standard since their capability is available through *sprintf*(). These are provided on XSI-conformant systems supporting the Legacy Option Group.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<stddef.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *acos*(), *acosh*(), *asin*(), *atan*(), *atan2*(), *cbrt*(), *ceil*(), *cos*(), *cosh*(), *erf*(), *exp*(), *expm1*(), *fabs*(), *floor*(), *fmod*(), *frexp*(), *hypot*(), *ilogb*(), *isnan*(), *j0*(), *ldexp*(), *lgamma*(), *log*(), *log10*(), *log1p*(), *logb*(), *modf*(), *nextafter*(), *pow*(), *remainder*(), *rint*(), *scalb*(), *sin*(), *sinh*(), *sqrt*(), *tan*(), *tanh*(), *y0*()

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 1.

### Issue 6

This reference page is updated to align with the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

## NAME

monetary.h — monetary types

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <monetary.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<monetary.h>** header shall define the following types:

**size_t** As described in **<stddef.h>**.

**ssize_t** As described in **<sys/types.h>**.

The following shall be declared as a function and may also be defined as a macro. A function prototype shall be provided.

```
ssize_t  strfmon(char *restrict, size_t, const char *restrict, ...);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *strfmon*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

### Issue 6

The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototype for *strfmon*( ).


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

mqueue.h — message queues (**REALTIME**)

## SYNOPSIS

MSG
```
#include <mqueue.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<mqueue.h>** header shall define the **mqd_t** type, which is used for message queue descriptors. This is not an array type.

The **<mqueue.h>** header shall define the **sigevent** structure (as described in **<signal.h>**) and the **mq_attr** structure, which is used in getting and setting the attributes of a message queue. Attributes are initially set when the message queue is created. An **mq_attr** structure shall have at least the following fields:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `long` | `mq_flags` | Message queue flags. |
| `long` | `mq_maxmsg` | Maximum number of messages. |
| `long` | `mq_msgsize` | Maximum message size. |
| `long` | `mq_curmsgs` | Number of messages currently queued. |

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int      mq_close(mqd_t);
int      mq_getattr(mqd_t, struct mq_attr *);
int      mq_notify(mqd_t, const struct sigevent *);
mqd_t    mq_open(const char *, int, ...);
ssize_t  mq_receive(mqd_t, char *, size_t, unsigned *);
int      mq_send(mqd_t, const char *, size_t, unsigned );
int      mq_setattr(mqd_t, const struct mq_attr *restrict,
             struct mq_attr *restrict);
```
TMO
```
ssize_t  mq_timedreceive(mqd_t, char *restrict, size_t,
             unsigned *restrict, const struct timespec *restrict);
int      mq_timedsend(mqd_t, const char *, size_t, unsigned ,
             const struct timespec *);
int      mq_unlink(const char *);
```

Inclusion of the **<mqueue.h>** header may make visible symbols defined in the headers **<fcntl.h>**, **<signal.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, and **<time.h>**.

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<fcntl.h>**, **<signal.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, **<time.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *mq_close*( ), *mq_getattr*( ), *mq_notify*( ), *mq_open*( ), *mq_receive*( ), *mq_send*( ), *mq_setattr*( ), *mq_timedreceive*( ), *mq_timedsend*( ), *mq_unlink*( )



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

9750 **CHANGE HISTORY**

9751 First released in Issue 5. Included for alignment with the POSIX Realtime Extension.

9752 **Issue 6**

9753 The **<mqueue.h>** header is marked as part of the Message Passing option.

9754 The *mq_timedreceive*( ) and *mq_timedsend*( ) functions are added for alignment with
9755 IEEE Std 1003.1d-1999.

9756 The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototypes for *mq_setattr*( ) and *mq_timedreceive*( ).


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

## NAME

ndbm.h — definitions for ndbm database operations

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <ndbm.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<ndbm.h>** header shall define the **datum** type as a structure that includes at least the following members:

```
void    *dptr   A pointer to the application's data.
size_t  dsize   The size of the object pointed to by dptr.
```

The **size_t** type shall be defined as described in **<stddef.h>**.

The **<ndbm.h>** header shall define the **DBM** type.

The following constants shall be defined as possible values for the *store_mode* argument to *dbm_store*( ):

DBM_INSERT Insertion of new entries only.

DBM_REPLACE Allow replacing existing entries.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int     dbm_clearerr(DBM *);
void    dbm_close(DBM *);
int     dbm_delete(DBM *, datum);
int     dbm_error(DBM *);
datum   dbm_fetch(DBM *, datum);
datum   dbm_firstkey(DBM *);
datum   dbm_nextkey(DBM *);
DBM    *dbm_open(const char *, int, mode_t);
int     dbm_store(DBM *, datum, datum, int);
```

The **mode_t** type shall be defined through **typedef** as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<stddef.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *dbm_clearerr*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4, Version 2.

### Issue 5

References to the definitions of **size_t** and **mode_t** are added to the DESCRIPTION.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

net/if.h — sockets local interfaces

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <net/if.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<net/if.h>** header shall define the **if_nameindex** structure that includes at least the following members:

```
unsigned  if_index   Numeric index of the interface.
char      *if_name   Null-terminated name of the interface.
```

The **<net/if.h>** header shall define the following macro for the length of a buffer containing an interface name (including the terminating NULL character):

IF_NAMESIZE  Interface name length.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
unsigned              if_nametoindex(const char *);
char                 *if_indextoname(unsigned, char *);
struct if_nameindex  *if_nameindex(void);
void                  if_freenameindex(struct if_nameindex *);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *if_freenameindex*( ), *if_indextoname*( ), *if_nameindex*( ), *if_nametoindex*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 6. Derived from the XNS, Issue 5.2 specification.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

netdb.h — definitions for network database operations

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <netdb.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<netdb.h>** header may define the **in_port_t** type and the **in_addr_t** type as described in **<netinet/in.h>**.

The **<netdb.h>** header shall define the **hostent** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | |
|---|---|
| `char *h_name` | Official name of the host. |
| `char **h_aliases` | A pointer to an array of pointers to alternative host names, terminated by a null pointer. |
| `int h_addrtype` | Address type. |
| `int h_length` | The length, in bytes, of the address. |
| `char **h_addr_list` | A pointer to an array of pointers to network addresses (in network byte order) for the host, terminated by a null pointer. |

The **<netdb.h>** header shall define the **netent** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | |
|---|---|
| `char *n_name` | Official, fully-qualified (including the domain) name of the host. |
| `char **n_aliases` | A pointer to an array of pointers to alternative network names, terminated by a null pointer. |
| `int n_addrtype` | The address type of the network. |
| `uint32_t n_net` | The network number, in host byte order. |

The **uint32_t** type shall be defined as described in **<inttypes.h>**.

The **<netdb.h>** header shall define the **protoent** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | |
|---|---|
| `char *p_name` | Official name of the protocol. |
| `char **p_aliases` | A pointer to an array of pointers to alternative protocol names, terminated by a null pointer. |
| `int p_proto` | The protocol number. |

The **<netdb.h>** header shall define the **servent** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | |
|---|---|
| `char *s_name` | Official name of the service. |
| `char **s_aliases` | A pointer to an array of pointers to alternative service names, terminated by a null pointer. |
| `int s_port` | The port number at which the service resides, in network byte order. |
| `char *s_proto` | The name of the protocol to use when contacting the service. |



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

The **<netdb.h>** header shall define the IPPORT_RESERVED macro with the value of the highest reserved Internet port number.

OB When the **<netdb.h>** header is included, *h_errno* shall be available as a modifiable lvalue of type **int**. It is unspecified whether *h_errno* is a macro or an identifier declared with external linkage.

The **<netdb.h>** header shall define the following macros for use as error values for *gethostbyaddr*( ) and *gethostbyname*( ):

HOST_NOT_FOUND
NO_DATA
NO_RECOVERY
TRY_AGAIN

**Address Information Structure**

The **<netdb.h>** header shall define the **addrinfo** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `int` | `ai_flags` | Input flags. |
| `int` | `ai_family` | Address family of socket. |
| `int` | `ai_socktype` | Socket type. |
| `int` | `ai_protocol` | Protocol of socket. |
| `socklen_t` | `ai_addrlen` | Length of socket address. |
| `struct sockaddr` | `*ai_addr` | Socket address of socket. |
| `char` | `*ai_canonname` | Canonical name of service location. |
| `struct addrinfo` | `*ai_next` | Pointer to next in list. |

The **<netdb.h>** header shall define the following macros that evaluate to bitwise-distinct integer constants for use in the *flags* field of the **addrinfo** structure:

AI_PASSIVE Socket address is intended for *bind*( ).

AI_CANONNAME
Request for canonical name.

AI_NUMERICHOST
Return numeric host address as name.

AI_NUMERICSERV
Inhibit service name resolution.

AI_V4MAPPED If no IPv6 addresses are found, query for IPv4 addresses and return them to the caller as IPv4-mapped IPv6 addresses.

AI_ALL Query for both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

AI_ADDRCONFIG
Query for IPv4 addresses only when an IPv4 address is configured; query for IPv6 addresses only when an IPv6 address is configured.

The **<netdb.h>** header shall define the following macros that evaluate to bitwise-distinct integer constants for use in the *flags* argument to *getnameinfo*( ):

NI_NOFQDN Only the nodename portion of the FQDN is returned for local hosts.

NI_NUMERICHOST
The numeric form of the node's address is returned instead of its name.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

NI_NAMEREQD Return an error if the node's name cannot be located in the database.

NI_NUMERICSERV
The numeric form of the service address is returned instead of its name.

NI_NUMERICSCOPE
For IPv6 addresses, the numeric form of the scope identifier is returned instead of its name.

NI_DGRAM Indicates that the service is a datagram service (SOCK_DGRAM).

**Address Information Errors**

The **<netdb.h>** header shall define the following macros for use as error values for *getaddrinfo*( ) and *getnameinfo*( ):

EAI_AGAIN The name could not be resolved at this time. Future attempts may succeed.

EAI_BADFLAGS The flags had an invalid value.

EAI_FAIL A non-recoverable error occurred.

EAI_FAMILY The address family was not recognized or the address length was invalid for the specified family.

EAI_MEMORY There was a memory allocation failure.

EAI_NONAME The name does not resolve for the supplied parameters.

NI_NAMEREQD is set and the host's name cannot be located, or both *nodename* and *servname* were null.

EAI_SERVICE The service passed was not recognized for the specified socket type.

EAI_SOCKTYPE The intended socket type was not recognized.

EAI_SYSTEM A system error occurred. The error code can be found in *errno*.

EAI_OVERFLOW
An argument buffer overflowed.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
void              endhostent(void);
void              endnetent(void);
void              endprotoent(void);
void              endservent(void);
void              freeaddrinfo(struct addrinfo *);
const char       *gai_strerror(int);
int               getaddrinfo(const char *restrict, const char *restrict,
                      const struct addrinfo *restrict,
                      struct addrinfo **restrict);
struct hostent   *gethostbyaddr(const void *, socklen_t, int);
struct hostent   *gethostbyname(const char *);
struct hostent   *gethostent(void);
int               getnameinfo(const struct sockaddr *restrict, socklen_t,
                      char *restrict, socklen_t, char *restrict,
                      socklen_t, int);
struct netent    *getnetbyaddr(uint32_t, int);
struct netent    *getnetbyname(const char *);
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
struct netent    *getnetent(void);
struct protoent  *getprotobyname(const char *);
struct protoent  *getprotobynumber(int);
struct protoent  *getprotoent(void);
struct servent   *getservbyname(const char *, const char *);
struct servent   *getservbyport(int, const char *);
struct servent   *getservent(void);
void              sethostent(int);
void              setnetent(int);
void              setprotoent(int);
void              setservent(int);
```

The type **socklen_t** shall be defined through **typedef** as described in **<sys/socket.h>**.

Inclusion of the **<netdb.h>** header may also make visible all symbols from **<netinet/in.h>**, **<sys/socket.h>**, and **<inttypes.h>**.

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<netinet/in.h>**, **<inttypes.h>**, **<sys/socket.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *bind*( ), *endhostent*( ), *endnetent*( ), *endprotoent*( ), *endservent*( ), *getaddrinfo*( ), *getnameinfo*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 6. Derived from the XNS, Issue 5.2 specification.

The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-009 is applied, which changes the return type for *gai_strerror*( ) from **char *** to **const char ***. This is for coordination with the IPnG Working Group.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/11 is applied, adding a description of the NI_NUMERICSCOPE macro and correcting the *getnameinfo*( ) function prototype. These changes are for alignment with IPv6.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

netinet/in.h — Internet address family

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <netinet/in.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall define the following types:

**in_port_t** Equivalent to the type **uint16_t** as defined in **<inttypes.h>**.

**in_addr_t** Equivalent to the type **uint32_t** as defined in **<inttypes.h>**.

The **sa_family_t** type shall be defined as described in **<sys/socket.h>**.

The **uint8_t** and **uint32_t** type shall be defined as described in **<inttypes.h>**. Inclusion of the **<netinet/in.h>** header may also make visible all symbols from **<inttypes.h>** and **<sys/socket.h>**.

The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall define the **in_addr** structure that includes at least the following member:

```
in_addr_t  s_addr
```

The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall define the **sockaddr_in** structure that includes at least the following members (all in network byte order):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `sa_family_t` | `sin_family` | AF_INET. |
| `in_port_t` | `sin_port` | Port number. |
| `struct in_addr` | `sin_addr` | IP address. |

The **sockaddr_in** structure is used to store addresses for the Internet address family. Values of this type shall be cast by applications to **struct sockaddr** for use with socket functions.

IP6 The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall define the **in6_addr** structure that contains at least the following member:

```
uint8_t s6_addr[16]
```

This array is used to contain a 128-bit IPv6 address, stored in network byte order.

The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall define the **sockaddr_in6** structure that includes at least the following members (all in network byte order):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `sa_family_t` | `sin6_family` | AF_INET6. |
| `in_port_t` | `sin6_port` | Port number. |
| `uint32_t` | `sin6_flowinfo` | IPv6 traffic class and flow information. |
| `struct in6_addr` | `sin6_addr` | IPv6 address. |
| `uint32_t` | `sin6_scope_id` | Set of interfaces for a scope. |

The **sockaddr_in6** structure shall be set to zero by an application prior to using it, since implementations are free to have additional, implementation-defined fields in **sockaddr_in6**.

The *sin6_scope_id* field is a 32-bit integer that identifies a set of interfaces as appropriate for the scope of the address carried in the *sin6_addr* field. For a link scope *sin6_addr*, the application shall ensure that *sin6_scope_id* is a link index. For a site scope *sin6_addr*, the application shall ensure that *sin6_scope_id* is a site index. The mapping of *sin6_scope_id* to an interface or set of interfaces is implementation-defined.

The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall declare the following external variable:

```
const struct in6_addr in6addr_any
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

This variable is initialized by the system to contain the wildcard IPv6 address. The **<netinet/in.h>** header also defines the IN6ADDR_ANY_INIT macro. This macro must be constant at compile time and can be used to initialize a variable of type **struct in6_addr** to the IPv6 wildcard address.

The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall declare the following external variable:

```
const struct in6_addr in6addr_loopback
```

This variable is initialized by the system to contain the loopback IPv6 address. The **<netinet/in.h>** header also defines the IN6ADDR_LOOPBACK_INIT macro. This macro must be constant at compile time and can be used to initialize a variable of type **struct in6_addr** to the IPv6 loopback address.

The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall define the **ipv6_mreq** structure that includes at least the following members:

```
struct in6_addr  ipv6mr_multiaddr  IPv6 multicast address.
unsigned         ipv6mr_interface  Interface index.
```

The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall define the following macros for use as values of the *level* argument of *getsockopt*( ) and *setsockopt*( ):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | IPPROTO_IP | Internet protocol. |
| IP6 | IPPROTO_IPV6 | Internet Protocol Version 6. |
| | IPPROTO_ICMP | Control message protocol. |
| RS | IPPROTO_RAW | Raw IP Packets Protocol. |
| | IPPROTO_TCP | Transmission control protocol. |
| | IPPROTO_UDP | User datagram protocol. |

The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall define the following macros for use as destination addresses for *connect*( ), *sendmsg*( ), and *sendto*( ):

| | |
|---|---|
| INADDR_ANY | IPv4 local host address. |
| INADDR_BROADCAST | IPv4 broadcast address. |

The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall define the following macro to help applications declare buffers of the proper size to store IPv4 addresses in string form:

| | |
|---|---|
| INET_ADDRSTRLEN | 16. Length of the string form for IP. |

The *htonl*( ), *htons*( ), *ntohl*( ), and *ntohs*( ) functions shall be available as defined in **<arpa/inet.h>**. Inclusion of the **<netinet/in.h>** header may also make visible all symbols from **<arpa/inet.h>**.

IP6 The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall define the following macro to help applications declare buffers of the proper size to store IPv6 addresses in string form:

| | |
|---|---|
| INET6_ADDRSTRLEN | 46. Length of the string form for IPv6. |

The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall define the following macros, with distinct integer values, for use in the *option_name* argument in the *getsockopt*( ) or *setsockopt*( ) functions at protocol level IPPROTO_IPV6:

| | |
|---|---|
| IPV6_JOIN_GROUP | Join a multicast group. |


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | |
|---|---|
| IPV6_LEAVE_GROUP | Quit a multicast group. |
| IPV6_MULTICAST_HOPS | Multicast hop limit. |
| IPV6_MULTICAST_IF | Interface to use for outgoing multicast packets. |
| IPV6_MULTICAST_LOOP | Multicast packets are delivered back to the local application. |
| IPV6_UNICAST_HOPS | Unicast hop limit. |
| IPV6_V6ONLY | Restrict AF_INET6 socket to IPv6 communications only. |

The **<netinet/in.h>** header shall define the following macros that test for special IPv6 addresses. Each macro is of type **int** and takes a single argument of type **const struct in6_addr *****:

IN6_IS_ADDR_UNSPECIFIED
: Unspecified address.

IN6_IS_ADDR_LOOPBACK
: Loopback address.

IN6_IS_ADDR_MULTICAST
: Multicast address.

IN6_IS_ADDR_LINKLOCAL
: Unicast link-local address.

IN6_IS_ADDR_SITELOCAL
: Unicast site-local address.

IN6_IS_ADDR_V4MAPPED
: IPv4 mapped address.

IN6_IS_ADDR_V4COMPAT
: IPv4-compatible address.

IN6_IS_ADDR_MC_NODELOCAL
: Multicast node-local address.

IN6_IS_ADDR_MC_LINKLOCAL
: Multicast link-local address.

IN6_IS_ADDR_MC_SITELOCAL
: Multicast site-local address.

IN6_IS_ADDR_MC_ORGLOCAL
: Multicast organization-local address.

IN6_IS_ADDR_MC_GLOBAL
: Multicast global address.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

10100 **APPLICATION USAGE**

10101 None.

10102 **RATIONALE**

10103 None.

10104 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

10105 None.

10106 **SEE ALSO**

10107 Section 4.8 (on page 101), **<arpa/inet.h>**, **<inttypes.h>**, **<sys/socket.h>**, the System Interfaces
10108 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *connect*( ), *getsockopt*( ), *htonl*( ), *htons*( ), *ntohl*( ), *ntohs*( ),
10109 *sendmsg*( ), *sendto*( ), *setsockopt*( )

10110 **CHANGE HISTORY**

10111 First released in Issue 6. Derived from the XNS, Issue 5.2 specification.

10112 The *sin_zero* member was removed from the **sockaddr_in** structure as per The Open Group Base
10113 Resolution bwg2001-004.

10114 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/12 is applied, adding **const** qualifiers to |
10115 the *in6addr_any* and *in6addr_loopback* external variables. |


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

10116 **NAME**

10117 netinet/tcp.h — definitions for the Internet Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)

10118 **SYNOPSIS**

10119 `#include <netinet/tcp.h>`

10120 **DESCRIPTION**

10121 The **<netinet/tcp.h>** header shall define the following macro for use as a socket option at the
10122 IPPROTO_TCP level:

10123 TCP_NODELAY Avoid coalescing of small segments.

10124 The macro shall be defined in the header. The implementation need not allow the value of the
10125 option to be set via *setsockopt*( ) or retrieved via *getsockopt*( ).

10126 **APPLICATION USAGE**

10127 None.

10128 **RATIONALE**

10129 None.

10130 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

10131 None.

10132 **SEE ALSO**

10133 **<sys/socket.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *getsockopt*( ), *setsockopt*( )

10134 **CHANGE HISTORY**

10135 First released in Issue 6. Derived from the XNS, Issue 5.2 specification.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

nl_types.h — data types

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <nl_types.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<nl_types.h>** header shall contain definitions of at least the following types:

**nl_catd** Used by the message catalog functions *catopen*( ), *catgets*( ), and *catclose*( ) to identify a catalog descriptor.

**nl_item** Used by *nl_langinfo*( ) to identify items of *langinfo* data. Values of objects of type **nl_item** are defined in **<langinfo.h>**.

The **<nl_types.h>** header shall contain definitions of at least the following constants:

NL_SETD Used by *gencat* when no $*set* directive is specified in a message text source file; see the Internationalization Guide. This constant can be passed as the value of *set_id* on subsequent calls to *catgets*( ) (that is, to retrieve messages from the default message set). The value of NL_SETD is implementation-defined.

NL_CAT_LOCALE Value that must be passed as the *oflag* argument to *catopen*( ) to ensure that message catalog selection depends on the *LC_MESSAGES* locale category, rather than directly on the *LANG* environment variable.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int        catclose(nl_catd);
char      *catgets(nl_catd, int, int, const char *);
nl_catd    catopen(const char *, int);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<langinfo.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *catclose*( ), *catgets*( ), *catopen*( ), *nl_langinfo*( ), the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *gencat*

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

10172 **NAME**

10173 poll.h — definitions for the poll( ) function

10174 **SYNOPSIS**

10175 XSI
```
#include <poll.h>
```
10176

10177 **DESCRIPTION**

10178 The **<poll.h>** header shall define the **pollfd** structure that includes at least the following
10179 members:

10180 `int fd` The following descriptor being polled.
10181 `short events` The input event flags (see below).
10182 `short revents` The output event flags (see below).

10183 The **<poll.h>** header shall define the following type through **typedef**:

10184 **nfds_t** An unsigned integer type used for the number of file descriptors.

10185 The implementation shall support one or more programming environments in which the width
10186 of **nfds_t** is no greater than the width of type **long**. The names of these programming
10187 environments can be obtained using the *confstr*( ) function or the *getconf* utility.

10188 The following symbolic constants shall be defined, zero or more of which may be OR'ed together
10189 to form the *events* or *revents* members in the **pollfd** structure:

10190 POLLIN Data other than high-priority data may be read without blocking.

10191 POLLRDNORM Normal data may be read without blocking.

10192 POLLRDBAND Priority data may be read without blocking.

10193 POLLPRI High priority data may be read without blocking.

10194 POLLOUT Normal data may be written without blocking.

10195 POLLWRNORM Equivalent to POLLOUT.

10196 POLLWRBAND Priority data may be written.

10197 POLLERR An error has occurred (*revents* only).

10198 POLLHUP Device has been disconnected (*revents* only).

10199 POLLNVAL Invalid *fd* member (*revents* only).

10200 The significance and semantics of normal, priority, and high-priority data are file and device-
10201 specific.

10202 The following shall be declared as a function and may also be defined as a macro. A function
10203 prototype shall be provided.

10204
```
int   poll(struct pollfd[], nfds_t, int);
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

10205 **APPLICATION USAGE**

10206 None.

10207 **RATIONALE**

10208 None.

10209 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

10210 None.

10211 **SEE ALSO**

10212 The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *confstr*( ), *poll*( ), the Shell and Utilities
10213 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *getconf*

10214 **CHANGE HISTORY**

10215 First released in Issue 4, Version 2.

10216 **Issue 6**

10217 The description of the symbolic constants is updated to match the *poll*( ) function.

10218 Text related to STREAMS has been moved to the *poll*( ) reference page.

10219 A note is added to the DESCRIPTION regarding the significance and semantics of normal,
10220 priority, and high-priority data.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

pthread.h — threads

## SYNOPSIS

THR
```
#include <pthread.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<pthread.h>** header shall define the following symbols:

BAR PTHREAD_BARRIER_SERIAL_THREAD
PTHREAD_CANCEL_ASYNCHRONOUS
PTHREAD_CANCEL_ENABLE
PTHREAD_CANCEL_DEFERRED
PTHREAD_CANCEL_DISABLE
PTHREAD_CANCELED
PTHREAD_COND_INITIALIZER
PTHREAD_CREATE_DETACHED
PTHREAD_CREATE_JOINABLE
PTHREAD_EXPLICIT_SCHED
PTHREAD_INHERIT_SCHED
XSI PTHREAD_MUTEX_DEFAULT
PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK
PTHREAD_MUTEX_INITIALIZER
XSI PTHREAD_MUTEX_NORMAL
PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE
PTHREAD_ONCE_INIT
TPI PTHREAD_PRIO_INHERIT
TPP|TPI PTHREAD_PRIO_NONE
TPP PTHREAD_PRIO_PROTECT
PTHREAD_PROCESS_SHARED
PTHREAD_PROCESS_PRIVATE
TPS PTHREAD_SCOPE_PROCESS
PTHREAD_SCOPE_SYSTEM

The following types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**:

**pthread_attr_t**
BAR **pthread_barrier_t**
**pthread_barrierattr_t**
**pthread_cond_t**
**pthread_condattr_t**
**pthread_key_t**
**pthread_mutex_t**
**pthread_mutexattr_t**
**pthread_once_t**
**pthread_rwlock_t**
**pthread_rwlockattr_t**
SPI **pthread_spinlock_t**
**pthread_t**

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
10269          int   pthread_atfork(void (*)(void), void (*)(void),
10270                    void(*)(void));
10271          int   pthread_attr_destroy(pthread_attr_t *);
10272          int   pthread_attr_getdetachstate(const pthread_attr_t *, int *);
10273 XSI      int   pthread_attr_getguardsize(const pthread_attr_t *restrict,
10274                    size_t *restrict);
10275 TPS      int   pthread_attr_getinheritsched(const pthread_attr_t *restrict,
10276                    int *restrict);
10277          int   pthread_attr_getschedparam(const pthread_attr_t *restrict,
10278                    struct sched_param *restrict);
10279 TPS      int   pthread_attr_getschedpolicy(const pthread_attr_t *restrict,
10280                    int *restrict);
10281 TPS      int   pthread_attr_getscope(const pthread_attr_t *restrict,
10282                    int *restrict);
10283 TSA TSS  int   pthread_attr_getstack(const pthread_attr_t *restrict,
10284                    void **restrict, size_t *restrict);
10285 TSA      int   pthread_attr_getstackaddr(const pthread_attr_t *restrict,
10286                    void **restrict);
10287 TSS      int   pthread_attr_getstacksize(const pthread_attr_t *restrict,
10288                    size_t *restrict);
10289          int   pthread_attr_init(pthread_attr_t *);
10290          int   pthread_attr_setdetachstate(pthread_attr_t *, int);
10291 XSI      int   pthread_attr_setguardsize(pthread_attr_t *, size_t);
10292 TPS      int   pthread_attr_setinheritsched(pthread_attr_t *, int);
10293          int   pthread_attr_setschedparam(pthread_attr_t *restrict,
10294                    const struct sched_param *restrict);
10295 TPS      int   pthread_attr_setschedpolicy(pthread_attr_t *, int);
10296          int   pthread_attr_setscope(pthread_attr_t *, int);
10297 TSA TSS  int   pthread_attr_setstack(pthread_attr_t *, void *, size_t);
10298 TSA      int   pthread_attr_setstackaddr(pthread_attr_t *, void *);
10299 TSS      int   pthread_attr_setstacksize(pthread_attr_t *, size_t);
10300 BAR      int   pthread_barrier_destroy(pthread_barrier_t *);
10301          int   pthread_barrier_init(pthread_barrier_t *restrict,
10302                    const pthread_barrierattr_t *restrict, unsigned);
10303          int   pthread_barrier_wait(pthread_barrier_t *);
10304          int   pthread_barrierattr_destroy(pthread_barrierattr_t *);
10305 BAR TSH  int   pthread_barrierattr_getpshared(
10306                    const pthread_barrierattr_t *restrict, int *restrict);
10307 BAR      int   pthread_barrierattr_init(pthread_barrierattr_t *);
10308 BAR TSH  int   pthread_barrierattr_setpshared(pthread_barrierattr_t *, int);
10309          int   pthread_cancel(pthread_t);
10310          void  pthread_cleanup_push(void (*)(void *), void *);
10311          void  pthread_cleanup_pop(int);
10312          int   pthread_cond_broadcast(pthread_cond_t *);
10313          int   pthread_cond_destroy(pthread_cond_t *);
10314          int   pthread_cond_init(pthread_cond_t *restrict,
10315                    const pthread_condattr_t *restrict);
10316          int   pthread_cond_signal(pthread_cond_t *);
10317          int   pthread_cond_timedwait(pthread_cond_t *restrict,
10318                    pthread_mutex_t *restrict, const struct timespec *restrict);
10319          int   pthread_cond_wait(pthread_cond_t *restrict,
10320                    pthread_mutex_t *restrict);
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

```
10321          int   pthread_condattr_destroy(pthread_condattr_t *);
10322 CS       int   pthread_condattr_getclock(const pthread_condattr_t *restrict,
10323                    clockid_t *restrict);
10324 TSH      int   pthread_condattr_getpshared(const pthread_condattr_t *restrict,
10325                    int *restrict);
10326          int   pthread_condattr_init(pthread_condattr_t *);
10327 CS       int   pthread_condattr_setclock(pthread_condattr_t *, clockid_t);
10328 TSH      int   pthread_condattr_setpshared(pthread_condattr_t *, int);
10329          int   pthread_create(pthread_t *restrict, const pthread_attr_t *restrict,
10330                    void *(*)(void *), void *restrict);
10331          int   pthread_detach(pthread_t);
10332          int   pthread_equal(pthread_t, pthread_t);
10333          void  pthread_exit(void *);
10334 XSI      int   pthread_getconcurrency(void);
10335 TCT      int   pthread_getcpuclockid(pthread_t, clockid_t *);
10336 TPS      int   pthread_getschedparam(pthread_t, int *restrict,
10337                    struct sched_param *restrict);
10338          void *pthread_getspecific(pthread_key_t);
10339          int   pthread_join(pthread_t, void **);
10340          int   pthread_key_create(pthread_key_t *, void (*)(void *));
10341          int   pthread_key_delete(pthread_key_t);
10342          int   pthread_mutex_destroy(pthread_mutex_t *);
10343 TPP      int   pthread_mutex_getprioceiling(const pthread_mutex_t *restrict,
10344                    int *restrict);
10345          int   pthread_mutex_init(pthread_mutex_t *restrict,
10346                    const pthread_mutexattr_t *restrict);
10347          int   pthread_mutex_lock(pthread_mutex_t *);
10348 TPP      int   pthread_mutex_setprioceiling(pthread_mutex_t *restrict, int,
10349                    int *restrict);
10350 TMO      int   pthread_mutex_timedlock(pthread_mutex_t *,
10351                    const struct timespec *);
10352          int   pthread_mutex_trylock(pthread_mutex_t *);
10353          int   pthread_mutex_unlock(pthread_mutex_t *);
10354          int   pthread_mutexattr_destroy(pthread_mutexattr_t *);
10355 TPP      int   pthread_mutexattr_getprioceiling(
10356                    const pthread_mutexattr_t *restrict, int *restrict);
10357 TPP|TPI  int   pthread_mutexattr_getprotocol(const pthread_mutexattr_t *restrict,
10358                    int *restrict);
10359 TSH      int   pthread_mutexattr_getpshared(const pthread_mutexattr_t *restrict,
10360                    int *restrict);
10361 XSI      int   pthread_mutexattr_gettype(const pthread_mutexattr_t *restrict,
10362                    int *restrict);
10363          int   pthread_mutexattr_init(pthread_mutexattr_t *);
10364 TPP      int   pthread_mutexattr_setprioceiling(pthread_mutexattr_t *, int);
10365 TPP|TPI  int   pthread_mutexattr_setprotocol(pthread_mutexattr_t *, int);
10366 TSH      int   pthread_mutexattr_setpshared(pthread_mutexattr_t *, int);
10367 XSI      int   pthread_mutexattr_settype(pthread_mutexattr_t *, int);
10368          int   pthread_once(pthread_once_t *, void (*)(void));
10369          int   pthread_rwlock_destroy(pthread_rwlock_t *);
10370          int   pthread_rwlock_init(pthread_rwlock_t *restrict,
10371                    const pthread_rwlockattr_t *restrict);
10372          int   pthread_rwlock_rdlock(pthread_rwlock_t *);
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
10373 TMO   int   pthread_rwlock_timedrdlock(pthread_rwlock_t *restrict,
10374               const struct timespec *restrict);
10375       int   pthread_rwlock_timedwrlock(pthread_rwlock_t *restrict,
10376               const struct timespec *restrict);
10377       int   pthread_rwlock_tryrdlock(pthread_rwlock_t *);
10378       int   pthread_rwlock_trywrlock(pthread_rwlock_t *);
10379       int   pthread_rwlock_unlock(pthread_rwlock_t *);
10380       int   pthread_rwlock_wrlock(pthread_rwlock_t *);
10381       int   pthread_rwlockattr_destroy(pthread_rwlockattr_t *);
10382 TSH   int   pthread_rwlockattr_getpshared(
10383               const pthread_rwlockattr_t *restrict, int *restrict);
10384       int   pthread_rwlockattr_init(pthread_rwlockattr_t *);
10385 TSH   int   pthread_rwlockattr_setpshared(pthread_rwlockattr_t *, int);
10386       pthread_t
10387             pthread_self(void);
10388       int   pthread_setcancelstate(int, int *);
10389       int   pthread_setcanceltype(int, int *);
10390 XSI   int   pthread_setconcurrency(int);
10391 TPS   int   pthread_setschedparam(pthread_t, int,
10392               const struct sched_param *);
10393 TPS   int   pthread_setschedprio(pthread_t, int);
10394       int   pthread_setspecific(pthread_key_t, const void *);
10395 SPI   int   pthread_spin_destroy(pthread_spinlock_t *);
10396       int   pthread_spin_init(pthread_spinlock_t *, int);
10397       int   pthread_spin_lock(pthread_spinlock_t *);
10398       int   pthread_spin_trylock(pthread_spinlock_t *);
10399       int   pthread_spin_unlock(pthread_spinlock_t *);
10400       void  pthread_testcancel(void);
```

10401 Inclusion of the **<pthread.h>** header shall make symbols defined in the headers **<sched.h>** and
10402 **<time.h>** visible.

10403 **APPLICATION USAGE**

10404 None.

10405 **RATIONALE**

10406 None.

10407 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

10408 None.

10409 **SEE ALSO**

10410 **<sched.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, **<time.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001,
10411 *pthread_attr_getguardsize*( ), *pthread_attr_init*( ), *pthread_attr_setscope*( ), *pthread_barrier_destroy*( ),
10412 *pthread_barrier_init*( ), *pthread_barrier_wait*( ), *pthread_barrierattr_destroy*( ),
10413 *pthread_barrierattr_getpshared*( ), *pthread_barrierattr_init*( ), *pthread_barrierattr_setpshared*( ),
10414 *pthread_cancel*( ), *pthread_cleanup_pop*( ), *pthread_cond_init*( ), *pthread_cond_signal*( ),
10415 *pthread_cond_wait*( ), *pthread_condattr_getclock*( ), *pthread_condattr_init*( ),
10416 *pthread_condattr_setclock*( ), *pthread_create*( ), *pthread_detach*( ), *pthread_equal*( ), *pthread_exit*( ),
10417 *pthread_getconcurrency*( ), *pthread_getcpuclockid*( ), *pthread_getschedparam*( ), *pthread_join*( ),
10418 *pthread_key_create*( ), *pthread_key_delete*( ), *pthread_mutex_init*( ), *pthread_mutex_lock*( ),
10419 *pthread_mutex_setprioceiling*( ), *pthread_mutex_timedlock*( ), *pthread_mutexattr_init*( ),
10420 *pthread_mutexattr_gettype*( ), *pthread_mutexattr_setprotocol*( ), *pthread_once*( ),
10421 *pthread_rwlock_destroy*( ), *pthread_rwlock_init*( ), *pthread_rwlock_rdlock*( ),
10422 *pthread_rwlock_timedrdlock*( ), *pthread_rwlock_timedwrlock*( ), *pthread_rwlock_tryrdlock*( ),


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

10423 *pthread_rwlock_trywrlock*( ), *pthread_rwlock_unlock*( ), *pthread_rwlock_wrlock*( ),
10424 *pthread_rwlockattr_destroy*( ), *pthread_rwlockattr_getpshared*( ), *pthread_rwlockattr_init*( ),
10425 *pthread_rwlockattr_setpshared*( ), *pthread_self*( ), *pthread_setcancelstate*( ), *pthread_setspecific*( ),
10426 *pthread_spin_destroy*( ), *pthread_spin_init*( ), *pthread_spin_lock*( ), *pthread_spin_trylock*( ),
10427 *pthread_spin_unlock*( )

10428 **CHANGE HISTORY**

10429 First released in Issue 5. Included for alignment with the POSIX Threads Extension.

10430 **Issue 6**

10431 The RTT margin markers are broken out into their POSIX options.

10432 The Open Group Corrigendum U021/9 is applied, correcting the prototype for the
10433 *pthread_cond_wait*( ) function.

10434 The Open Group Corrigendum U026/2 is applied, correcting the prototype for the
10435 *pthread_setschedparam*( ) function so that its second argument is of type **int**.

10436 The *pthread_getcpuclockid*( ) and *pthread_mutex_timedlock*( ) functions are added for alignment
10437 with IEEE Std 1003.1d-1999.

10438 The following functions are added for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1j-2000:
10439 *pthread_barrier_destroy*( ), *pthread_barrier_init*( ), *pthread_barrier_wait*( ),
10440 *pthread_barrierattr_destroy*( ), *pthread_barrierattr_getpshared*( ), *pthread_barrierattr_init*( ),
10441 *pthread_barrierattr_setpshared*( ), *pthread_condattr_getclock*( ), *pthread_condattr_setclock*( ),
10442 *pthread_rwlock_timedrdlock*( ), *pthread_rwlock_timedwrlock*( ), *pthread_spin_destroy*( ),
10443 *pthread_spin_init*( ), *pthread_spin_lock*( ), *pthread_spin_trylock*( ), and *pthread_spin_unlock*( ).

10444 PTHREAD_RWLOCK_INITIALIZER is deleted for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1j-2000.

10445 Functions previously marked as part of the Read-Write Locks option are now moved to the
10446 Threads option.

10447 The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototypes for *pthread_attr_getguardsize*( ),
10448 *pthread_attr_getinheritsched*( ), *pthread_attr_getschedparam*( ), *pthread_attr_getschedpolicy*( ),
10449 *pthread_attr_getscope*( ), *pthread_attr_getstackaddr*( ), *pthread_attr_getstacksize*( ),
10450 *pthread_attr_setschedparam*( ), *pthread_barrier_init*( ), *pthread_barrierattr_getpshared*( ),
10451 *pthread_cond_init*( ), *pthread_cond_signal*( ), *pthread_cond_timedwait*( ), *pthread_cond_wait*( ),
10452 *pthread_condattr_getclock*( ), *pthread_condattr_getpshared*( ), *pthread_create*( ),
10453 *pthread_getschedparam*( ), *pthread_mutex_getprioceiling*( ), *pthread_mutex_init*( ),
10454 *pthread_mutex_setprioceiling*( ), *pthread_mutexattr_getprioceiling*( ), *pthread_mutexattr_getprotocol*( ),
10455 *pthread_mutexattr_getpshared*( ), *pthread_mutexattr_gettype*( ), *pthread_rwlock_init*( ),
10456 *pthread_rwlock_timedrdlock*( ), *pthread_rwlock_timedwrlock*( ), *pthread_rwlockattr_getpshared*( ), and
10457 *pthread_sigmask*( ).

10458 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.1 #86 is applied, allowing the symbols from **<sched.h>** and
10459 **<time.h>** to be made visible when **<pthread.h>** is included. Previously this was an XSI
10460 extension.

10461 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.1c #42 is applied, removing the requirement for prototypes for
10462 the *pthread_kill*( ) and *pthread_sigmask*( ) functions. These are required to be in the **<signal.h>**
10463 header. They are allowed here through the name space rules.

10464 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.1 #96 is applied, adding the *pthread_setschedprio*( ) function.

10465 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/13 is applied, correcting shading errors
10466 that were in contradiction with the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

pwd.h — password structure

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <pwd.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<pwd.h>** header shall provide a definition for **struct passwd**, which shall include at least the following members:

```
char     *pw_name    User's login name.
uid_t     pw_uid     Numerical user ID.
gid_t     pw_gid     Numerical group ID.
char     *pw_dir     Initial working directory.
char     *pw_shell   Program to use as shell.
```

The **gid_t** and **uid_t** types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
struct passwd *getpwnam(const char *);
struct passwd *getpwuid(uid_t);
TSF int            getpwnam_r(const char *, struct passwd *, char *,
                       size_t, struct passwd **);
int            getpwuid_r(uid_t, struct passwd *, char *,
                       size_t, struct passwd **);
XSI void           endpwent(void);
struct passwd *getpwent(void);
void           setpwent(void);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *endpwent*( ), *getpwnam*( ), *getpwuid*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 1.

### Issue 5

The DESCRIPTION is updated for alignment with the POSIX Threads Extension.

### Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The **gid_t** and **uid_t** types are mandated.
- The *getpwnam_r*( ) and *getpwuid_r*( ) functions are marked as part of the Thread-Safe Functions option.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

10511 **NAME**

10512 regex.h — regular expression matching types

10513 **SYNOPSIS**

10514 `#include <regex.h>`

10515 **DESCRIPTION**

10516 The **<regex.h>** header shall define the structures and symbolic constants used by the *regcomp*( ),
10517 *regexec*( ), *regerror*( ), and *regfree*( ) functions.

10518 The structure type **regex_t** shall contain at least the following member:

10519 `size_t re_nsub` Number of parenthesized subexpressions.

10520 The type **size_t** shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

10521 The type **regoff_t** shall be defined as a signed integer type that can hold the largest value that
10522 can be stored in either a type **off_t** or type **ssize_t**. The structure type **regmatch_t** shall contain
10523 at least the following members:

10524 `regoff_t rm_so` Byte offset from start of string
10525 to start of substring.
10526 `regoff_t rm_eo` Byte offset from start of string of the
10527 first character after the end of substring.

10528 Values for the *cflags* parameter to the *regcomp*( ) function are as follows:

10529 REG_EXTENDED Use Extended Regular Expressions.

10530 REG_ICASE Ignore case in match.

10531 REG_NOSUB Report only success or fail in *regexec*( ).

10532 REG_NEWLINE Change the handling of <newline>.

10533 Values for the *eflags* parameter to the *regexec*( ) function are as follows:

10534 REG_NOTBOL The circumflex character (`'^'`), when taken as a special character, does
10535 not match the beginning of *string*.

10536 REG_NOTEOL The dollar sign (`'$'`), when taken as a special character, does not match
10537 the end of *string*.

10538 The following constants shall be defined as error return values:

10539 REG_NOMATCH *regexec*( ) failed to match.

10540 REG_BADPAT Invalid regular expression.

10541 REG_ECOLLATE Invalid collating element referenced.

10542 REG_ECTYPE Invalid character class type referenced.

10543 REG_EESCAPE Trailing `'\'` in pattern.

10544 REG_ESUBREG Number in *digit* invalid or in error.

10545 REG_EBRACK `"[]"` imbalance.

10546 REG_EPAREN `"\(\)"` or `"()"` imbalance.

10547 REG_EBRACE `"\{\}"` imbalance.

10548 REG_BADBR Content of `"\{\}"` invalid: not a number, number too large, more than
10549 two numbers, first larger than second.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| REG_ERANGE | Invalid endpoint in range expression. |
| REG_ESPACE | Out of memory. |
| REG_BADRPT | '?', '*', or '+' not preceded by valid regular expression. |
| OB REG_ENOSYS | Reserved. |

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int    regcomp(regex_t *restrict, const char *restrict, int);
size_t regerror(int, const regex_t *restrict, char *restrict, size_t);
int    regexec(const regex_t *restrict, const char *restrict, size_t,
           regmatch_t[restrict], int);
void   regfree(regex_t *);
```

The implementation may define additional macros or constants using names beginning with REG_.

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *regcomp*( ), the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

Originally derived from the ISO POSIX-2 standard.

### Issue 6

The REG_ENOSYS constant is marked obsolescent.

The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototypes for *regcomp*( ), *regerror*( ), and *regexec*( ).

A statement is added that the **size_t** type is defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

sched.h — execution scheduling (**REALTIME**)

## SYNOPSIS

PS
```
#include <sched.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<sched.h>** header shall define the **sched_param** structure, which contains the scheduling parameters required for implementation of each supported scheduling policy. This structure shall contain at least the following member:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `int` | `sched_priority` | Process execution scheduling priority. |

SS|TSP In addition, if _POSIX_SPORADIC_SERVER or _POSIX_THREAD_SPORADIC_SERVER is defined, the **sched_param** structure defined in **<sched.h>** shall contain the following members in addition to those specified above:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `int` | `sched_ss_low_priority` | Low scheduling priority for sporadic server. |
| `struct timespec` | `sched_ss_repl_period` | Replenishment period for sporadic server. |
| `struct timespec` | `sched_ss_init_budget` | Initial budget for sporadic server. |
| `int` | `sched_ss_max_repl` | Maximum pending replenishments for sporadic server. |

Each process is controlled by an associated scheduling policy and priority. Associated with each policy is a priority range. Each policy definition specifies the minimum priority range for that policy. The priority ranges for each policy may overlap the priority ranges of other policies.

Four scheduling policies are defined; others may be defined by the implementation. The four standard policies are indicated by the values of the following symbolic constants:

| | |
|---|---|
| SCHED_FIFO | First in-first out (FIFO) scheduling policy. |
| SCHED_RR | Round robin scheduling policy. |
| SS\|TSP SCHED_SPORADIC | Sporadic server scheduling policy. |
| SCHED_OTHER | Another scheduling policy. |

The values of these constants are distinct.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

TPS
```
int    sched_get_priority_max(int);
int    sched_get_priority_min(int);
int    sched_getparam(pid_t, struct sched_param *);
int    sched_getscheduler(pid_t);
TPS int    sched_rr_get_interval(pid_t, struct timespec *);
int    sched_setparam(pid_t, const struct sched_param *);
int    sched_setscheduler(pid_t, int, const struct sched_param *);
THR int    sched_yield(void);
```

Inclusion of the **<sched.h>** header may make visible all symbols from the **<time.h>** header.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

10622 **APPLICATION USAGE**

10623 None.

10624 **RATIONALE**

10625 None.

10626 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

10627 None.

10628 **SEE ALSO**

10629 **<time.h>**

10630 **CHANGE HISTORY**

10631 First released in Issue 5. Included for alignment with the POSIX Realtime Extension.

10632 **Issue 6**

10633 The **<sched.h>** header is marked as part of the Process Scheduling option.

10634 Sporadic server members are added to the **sched_param** structure, and the SCHED_SPORADIC
10635 scheduling policy is added for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1d-1999.

10636 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.1 #108 is applied, correcting the **sched_param** structure whose
10637 members *sched_ss_repl_period* and *sched_ss_init_budget* should be type **struct timespec** and not
10638 **timespec**.

10639 Symbols from **<time.h>** may be made visible when **<sched.h>** is included.

10640 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, items XSH/TC1/D6/52 and XSH/TC1/D6/53 are applied, |
10641 aligning the function prototype shading and margin codes with the System Interfaces volume of |
10642 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. |


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

search.h — search tables

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <search.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<search.h>** header shall define the **ENTRY** type for structure **entry** which shall include the following members:

```
char    *key
void    *data
```

and shall define **ACTION** and **VISIT** as enumeration data types through type definitions as follows:

```
enum { FIND, ENTER } ACTION;
enum { preorder, postorder, endorder, leaf } VISIT;
```

The **size_t** type shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int    hcreate(size_t);
void   hdestroy(void);
ENTRY *hsearch(ENTRY, ACTION);
void   insque(void *, void *);
void  *lfind(const void *, const void *, size_t *,
           size_t, int (*)(const void *, const void *));
void  *lsearch(const void *, void *, size_t *,
           size_t, int (*)(const void *, const void *));
void   remque(void *);
void  *tdelete(const void *restrict, void **restrict,
           int(*)(const void *, const void *));
void  *tfind(const void *, void *const *,
           int(*)(const void *, const void *));
void  *tsearch(const void *, void **,
           int(*)(const void *, const void *));
void   twalk(const void *,
           void (*)(const void *, VISIT, int ));
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *hcreate*( ), *insque*( ), *lsearch*( ), *remque*( ), *tsearch*( )



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

10686 **CHANGE HISTORY**

10687 First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.

10688 **Issue 6**

10689 The Open Group Corrigendum U021/6 is applied, updating the prototypes for *tdelete*( ) and
10690 *tsearch*( ).

10691 The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototype for *tdelete*( ).


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

10692 **NAME**

10693 semaphore.h — semaphores (**REALTIME**)

10694 **SYNOPSIS**

10695 SEM
```
#include <semaphore.h>
```
10696

10697 **DESCRIPTION**

10698 The **<semaphore.h>** header shall define the **sem_t** type, used in performing semaphore
10699 operations. The semaphore may be implemented using a file descriptor, in which case
10700 applications are able to open up at least a total of {OPEN_MAX} files and semaphores. The
10701 symbol SEM_FAILED shall be defined (see *sem_open*( )).

10702 The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function
10703 prototypes shall be provided.

```
10704 int    sem_close(sem_t *);
10705 int    sem_destroy(sem_t *);
10706 int    sem_getvalue(sem_t *restrict, int *restrict);
10707 int    sem_init(sem_t *, int, unsigned);
10708 sem_t *sem_open(const char *, int, ...);
10709 int    sem_post(sem_t *);
10710 TMO int    sem_timedwait(sem_t *restrict, const struct timespec *restrict);
10711 int    sem_trywait(sem_t *);
10712 int    sem_unlink(const char *);
10713 int    sem_wait(sem_t *);
```

10714 Inclusion of the **<semaphore.h>** header may make visible symbols defined in the headers
10715 **<fcntl.h>** and **<sys/types.h>**.

10716 **APPLICATION USAGE**

10717 None.

10718 **RATIONALE**

10719 None.

10720 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

10721 None.

10722 **SEE ALSO**

10723 **<fcntl.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *sem_destroy*( ),
10724 *sem_getvalue*( ), *sem_init*( ), *sem_open*( ), *sem_post*( ), *sem_timedwait*( ), *sem_trywait*( ), *sem_unlink*( ),
10725 *sem_wait*( )

10726 **CHANGE HISTORY**

10727 First released in Issue 5. Included for alignment with the POSIX Realtime Extension.

10728 **Issue 6**

10729 The **<semaphore.h>** header is marked as part of the Semaphores option.

10730 The Open Group Corrigendum U021/3 is applied, adding a description of SEM_FAILED.

10731 The *sem_timedwait*( ) function is added for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1d-1999.

10732 The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototypes for *sem_getvalue*( ) and *sem_timedwait*( ).



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

setjmp.h — stack environment declarations

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <setjmp.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard. Applications shall define the appropriate feature test macro (see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment) to enable the visibility of these symbols in this header.

CX The **<setjmp.h>** header shall define the array types **jmp_buf** and **sigjmp_buf**.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
void   longjmp(jmp_buf, int);
CX void   siglongjmp(sigjmp_buf, int);
XSI void  _longjmp(jmp_buf, int);
```

The following may be declared as a function, or defined as a macro, or both. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int    setjmp(jmp_buf);
CX int    sigsetjmp(sigjmp_buf, int);
XSI int   _setjmp(jmp_buf);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *longjmp*( ), *_longjmp*( ), *setjmp*( ), *siglongjmp*( ), *sigsetjmp*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 1.

### Issue 6

Extensions beyond the ISO C standard are marked.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

10768 **NAME**

10769 signal.h — signals

10770 **SYNOPSIS**

10771 `#include <signal.h>`

10772 **DESCRIPTION**

10773 CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard.
10774 Applications shall define the appropriate feature test macro (see the System Interfaces volume of
10775 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment) to enable the visibility of these
10776 symbols in this header.

10777 The **<signal.h>** header shall define the following symbolic constants, each of which expands to a
10778 distinct constant expression of the type:

10779 `void (*)(int)`

10780 whose value matches no declarable function.

10781 SIG_DFL Request for default signal handling.

10782 SIG_ERR Return value from *signal*( ) in case of error.

10783 CX SIG_HOLD Request that signal be held.

10784 SIG_IGN Request that signal be ignored.

10785 The following data types shall be defined through **typedef**:

10786 **sig_atomic_t** Possibly volatile-qualified integer type of an object that can be accessed as
10787 an atomic entity, even in the presence of asynchronous interrupts.

10788 CX **sigset_t** Integer or structure type of an object used to represent sets of signals.

10789 CX **pid_t** As described in **<sys/types.h>**.

10790 RTS The **<signal.h>** header shall define the **sigevent** structure, which has at least the following
10791 members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 10792 `int` | `sigev_notify` | Notification type. |
| 10793 `int` | `sigev_signo` | Signal number. |
| 10794 `union sigval` | `sigev_value` | Signal value. |
| 10795 `void(*)(union sigval)` | `sigev_notify_function` | Notification function. |
| 10796 `(pthread_attr_t *)` | `sigev_notify_attributes` | Notification attributes. |

10797 The following values of *sigev_notify* shall be defined:

10798 SIGEV_NONE No asynchronous notification is delivered when the event of interest
10799 occurs.

10800 SIGEV_SIGNAL A queued signal, with an application-defined value, is generated when
10801 the event of interest occurs.

10802 SIGEV_THREAD A notification function is called to perform notification.

10803 The **sigval** union shall be defined as:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 10804 `int` | `sival_int` | Integer signal value. |
| 10805 `void *` | `sival_ptr` | Pointer signal value. |

10806 This header shall also declare the macros SIGRTMIN and SIGRTMAX, which evaluate to integer
10807 expressions, and specify a range of signal numbers that are reserved for application use and for
10808 which the realtime signal behavior specified in this volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 is supported.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

The signal numbers in this range do not overlap any of the signals specified in the following table.

The range SIGRTMIN through SIGRTMAX inclusive shall include at least {RTSIG_MAX} signal numbers.

It is implementation-defined whether realtime signal behavior is supported for other signals.

This header also declares the constants that are used to refer to the signals that occur in the system. Signals defined here begin with the letters SIG. Each of the signals have distinct positive integer values. The value 0 is reserved for use as the null signal (see *kill*()). Additional implementation-defined signals may occur in the system.

CX The ISO C standard only requires the signal names SIGABRT, SIGFPE, SIGILL, SIGINT, SIGSEGV, and SIGTERM to be defined.

The following signals shall be supported on all implementations (default actions are explained below the table):

| Signal | Default Action | Description |
|---|---|---|
| SIGABRT | A | Process abort signal. |
| SIGALRM | T | Alarm clock. |
| SIGBUS | A | Access to an undefined portion of a memory object. |
| SIGCHLD | I | Child process terminated, stopped, |
| XSI | | or continued. |
| SIGCONT | C | Continue executing, if stopped. |
| SIGFPE | A | Erroneous arithmetic operation. |
| SIGHUP | T | Hangup. |
| SIGILL | A | Illegal instruction. |
| SIGINT | T | Terminal interrupt signal. |
| SIGKILL | T | Kill (cannot be caught or ignored). |
| SIGPIPE | T | Write on a pipe with no one to read it. |
| SIGQUIT | A | Terminal quit signal. |
| SIGSEGV | A | Invalid memory reference. |
| SIGSTOP | S | Stop executing (cannot be caught or ignored). |
| SIGTERM | T | Termination signal. |
| SIGTSTP | S | Terminal stop signal. |
| SIGTTIN | S | Background process attempting read. |
| SIGTTOU | S | Background process attempting write. |
| SIGUSR1 | T | User-defined signal 1. |
| SIGUSR2 | T | User-defined signal 2. |
| XSI SIGPOLL | T | Pollable event. |
| SIGPROF | T | Profiling timer expired. |
| SIGSYS | A | Bad system call. |
| SIGTRAP | A | Trace/breakpoint trap. |
| SIGURG | I | High bandwidth data is available at a socket. |
| XSI SIGVTALRM | T | Virtual timer expired. |
| SIGXCPU | A | CPU time limit exceeded. |
| SIGXFSZ | A | File size limit exceeded. |

The default actions are as follows:

T Abnormal termination of the process. The process is terminated with all the consequences of *_exit*() except that the status made available to *wait*() and *waitpid*() indicates abnormal termination by the specified signal.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

A Abnormal termination of the process.

XSI Additionally, implementation-defined abnormal termination actions, such as creation of a **core** file, may occur.

I Ignore the signal.

S Stop the process.

C Continue the process, if it is stopped; otherwise, ignore the signal.

CX The header shall provide a declaration of **struct sigaction**, including at least the following members:

| | |
|---|---|
| `void (*sa_handler)(int)` | Pointer to a signal-catching function or one of the macros SIG_IGN or SIG_DFL. |
| `sigset_t sa_mask` | Set of signals to be blocked during execution of the signal handling function. |
| `int sa_flags` | Special flags. |
| `void (*sa_sigaction)(int, siginfo_t *, void *)` | Pointer to a signal-catching function. |

XSI The storage occupied by *sa_handler* and *sa_sigaction* may overlap, and a conforming application shall not use both simultaneously.

The following shall be declared as constants:

| | |
|---|---|
| CX SA_NOCLDSTOP | Do not generate SIGCHLD when children stop or stopped children continue. |
| CX SIG_BLOCK | The resulting set is the union of the current set and the signal set pointed to by the argument *set*. |
| CX SIG_UNBLOCK | The resulting set is the intersection of the current set and the complement of the signal set pointed to by the argument *set*. |
| CX SIG_SETMASK | The resulting set is the signal set pointed to by the argument *set*. |
| XSI SA_ONSTACK | Causes signal delivery to occur on an alternate stack. |
| XSI SA_RESETHAND | Causes signal dispositions to be set to SIG_DFL on entry to signal handlers. |
| XSI SA_RESTART | Causes certain functions to become restartable. |
| XSI SA_SIGINFO | Causes extra information to be passed to signal handlers at the time of receipt of a signal. |
| XSI SA_NOCLDWAIT | Causes implementations not to create zombie processes on child death. |
| XSI SA_NODEFER | Causes signal not to be automatically blocked on entry to signal handler. |
| XSI SS_ONSTACK | Process is executing on an alternate signal stack. |
| XSI SS_DISABLE | Alternate signal stack is disabled. |
| XSI MINSIGSTKSZ | Minimum stack size for a signal handler. |
| XSI SIGSTKSZ | Default size in bytes for the alternate signal stack. |

XSI The **ucontext_t** structure shall be defined through **typedef** as described in **<ucontext.h>**.

The **mcontext_t** type shall be defined through **typedef** as described in **<ucontext.h>**.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

The **<signal.h>** header shall define the **stack_t** type as a structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `void` | `*ss_sp` | Stack base or pointer. |
| `size_t` | `ss_size` | Stack size. |
| `int` | `ss_flags` | Flags. |

The **<signal.h>** header shall define the **sigstack** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `int` | `ss_onstack` | Non-zero when signal stack is in use. |
| `void` | `*ss_sp` | Signal stack pointer. |

CX The **<signal.h>** header shall define the **siginfo_t** type as a structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| CX | `int` | `si_signo` | Signal number. |
| XSI | `int` | `si_errno` | If non-zero, an *errno* value associated with this signal, as defined in **<errno.h>.** |
| CX | `int` | `si_code` | Signal code. |
| XSI | `pid_t` | `si_pid` | Sending process ID. |
| | `uid_t` | `si_uid` | Real user ID of sending process. |
| | `void` | `*si_addr` | Address of faulting instruction. |
| | `int` | `si_status` | Exit value or signal. |
| | `long` | `si_band` | Band event for SIGPOLL. |
| RTS | `union sigval` | `si_value` | Signal value. |

The macros specified in the **Code** column of the following table are defined for use as values of *si_code* that are signal-specific or non-signal-specific reasons why the signal was generated.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

| Signal | Code | Reason |
|---|---|---|
| SIGILL | ILL_ILLOPC | Illegal opcode. |
| | ILL_ILLOPN | Illegal operand. |
| | ILL_ILLADR | Illegal addressing mode. |
| | ILL_ILLTRP | Illegal trap. |
| | ILL_PRVOPC | Privileged opcode. |
| | ILL_PRVREG | Privileged register. |
| | ILL_COPROC | Coprocessor error. |
| | ILL_BADSTK | Internal stack error. |
| SIGFPE | FPE_INTDIV | Integer divide by zero. |
| | FPE_INTOVF | Integer overflow. |
| | FPE_FLTDIV | Floating-point divide by zero. |
| | FPE_FLTOVF | Floating-point overflow. |
| | FPE_FLTUND | Floating-point underflow. |
| | FPE_FLTRES | Floating-point inexact result. |
| | FPE_FLTINV | Invalid floating-point operation. |
| | FPE_FLTSUB | Subscript out of range. |
| SIGSEGV | SEGV_MAPERR | Address not mapped to object. |
| | SEGV_ACCERR | Invalid permissions for mapped object. |
| SIGBUS | BUS_ADRALN | Invalid address alignment. |
| | BUS_ADRERR | Nonexistent physical address. |
| | BUS_OBJERR | Object-specific hardware error. |
| SIGTRAP | TRAP_BRKPT | Process breakpoint. |
| | TRAP_TRACE | Process trace trap. |
| SIGCHLD | CLD_EXITED | Child has exited. |
| | CLD_KILLED | Child has terminated abnormally and did not create a **core** file. |
| | CLD_DUMPED | Child has terminated abnormally and created a **core** file. |
| | CLD_TRAPPED | Traced child has trapped. |
| | CLD_STOPPED | Child has stopped. |
| | CLD_CONTINUED | Stopped child has continued. |
| SIGPOLL | POLL_IN | Data input available. |
| | POLL_OUT | Output buffers available. |
| | POLL_MSG | Input message available. |
| | POLL_ERR | I/O error. |
| | POLL_PRI | High priority input available. |
| | POLL_HUP | Device disconnected. |
| Any | SI_USER | Signal sent by *kill*(). |
| | SI_QUEUE | Signal sent by the *sigqueue*(). |
| | SI_TIMER | Signal generated by expiration of a timer set by *timer_settime*(). |
| | SI_ASYNCIO | Signal generated by completion of an asynchronous I/O request. |
| | SI_MESGQ | Signal generated by arrival of a message on an empty message queue. |

Implementations may support additional *si_code* values not included in this list, may generate values included in this list under circumstances other than those described in this list, and may contain extensions or limitations that prevent some values from being generated. Implementations do not generate a different value from the ones described in this list for circumstances described in this list.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

In addition, the following signal-specific information shall be available:

| Signal | Member | Value |
|---|---|---|
| SIGILL<br>SIGFPE | **void *** *si_addr* | Address of faulting instruction. |
| SIGSEGV<br>SIGBUS | **void *** *si_addr* | Address of faulting memory reference. |
| SIGCHLD | **pid_t** *si_pid*<br>**int** *si_status*<br>**uid_t** *si_uid* | Child process ID.<br>Exit value or signal.<br>Real user ID of the process that sent the signal. |
| SIGPOLL | **long** *si_band* | Band event for POLL_IN, POLL_OUT, or POLL_MSG. |

For some implementations, the value of *si_addr* may be inaccurate.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros:

```
XSI  void (*bsd_signal(int, void (*)(int)))(int);
CX   int    kill(pid_t, int);
XSI  int    killpg(pid_t, int);
THR  int    pthread_kill(pthread_t, int);
     int    pthread_sigmask(int, const sigset_t *, sigset_t *);
     int    raise(int);
CX   int    sigaction(int, const struct sigaction *restrict,
                struct sigaction *restrict);
     int    sigaddset(sigset_t *, int);
XSI  int    sigaltstack(const stack_t *restrict, stack_t *restrict);
CX   int    sigdelset(sigset_t *, int);
     int    sigemptyset(sigset_t *);
     int    sigfillset(sigset_t *);
XSI  int    sighold(int);
     int    sigignore(int);
     int    siginterrupt(int, int);
CX   int    sigismember(const sigset_t *, int);
     void (*signal(int, void (*)(int)))(int);
XSI  int    sigpause(int);
CX   int    sigpending(sigset_t *);
     int    sigprocmask(int, const sigset_t *restrict, sigset_t *restrict);
RTS  int    sigqueue(pid_t, int, const union sigval);
XSI  int    sigrelse(int);
     void (*sigset(int, void (*)(int)))(int);
CX   int    sigsuspend(const sigset_t *);
RTS  int    sigtimedwait(const sigset_t *restrict, siginfo_t *restrict,
                const struct timespec *restrict);
CX   int    sigwait(const sigset_t *restrict, int *restrict);
RTS  int    sigwaitinfo(const sigset_t *restrict, siginfo_t *restrict);
```

CX Inclusion of the **<signal.h>** header may make visible all symbols from the **<time.h>** header.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

11015 **APPLICATION USAGE**

11016 None.

11017 **RATIONALE**

11018 None.

11019 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

11020 None.

11021 **SEE ALSO**

11022 **<errno.h>**, **<stropts.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, **<time.h>**, **<ucontext.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of
11023 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *alarm*( ), *bsd_signal*( ), *ioctl*( ), *kill*( ), *killpg*( ), *raise*( ), *sigaction*( ), *sigaddset*( ),
11024 *sigaltstack*( ), *sigdelset*( ), *sigemptyset*( ), *sigfillset*( ), *siginterrupt*( ), *sigismember*( ), *signal*( ),
11025 *sigpending*( ), *sigprocmask*( ), *sigqueue*( ), *sigsuspend*( ), *sigwaitinfo*( ), *wait*( ), *waitid*( )

11026 **CHANGE HISTORY**

11027 First released in Issue 1.

11028 **Issue 5**

11029 The DESCRIPTION is updated for alignment with the POSIX Realtime Extension and the POSIX
11030 Threads Extension.

11031 The default action for SIGURG is changed from i to iii. The function prototype for *sigmask*( ) is
11032 removed.

11033 **Issue 6**

11034 The Open Group Corrigendum U035/2 is applied. In the DESCRIPTION, the wording for
11035 abnormal termination is clarified.

11036 The Open Group Corrigendum U028/8 is applied, correcting the prototype for the *sigset*( )
11037 function.

11038 The Open Group Corrigendum U026/3 is applied, correcting the type of the *sigev_notify_function*
11039 function member of the **sigevent** structure.

11040 The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the
11041 Single UNIX Specification:

11042 • The SIGCHLD, SIGCONT, SIGSTOP, SIGTSTP, SIGTTIN, and SIGTTOU signals are now
11043 mandated. This is also a FIPS requirement.

11044 • The **pid_t** definition is mandated.

11045 The RT markings are changed to RTS to denote that the semantics are part of the Realtime
11046 Signals Extension option.

11047 The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototypes for *sigaction*( ), *sigaltstack*( ), *sigprocmask*( ),
11048 *sigtimedwait*( ), *sigwait*( ), and *sigwaitinfo*( ).

11049 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.1 #85 is applied, adding the statement that symbols from
11050 **<time.h>** may be made visible when **<signal.h>** is included.

11051 Extensions beyond the ISO C standard are marked.

11052 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/14 is applied, changing the descriptive
11053 text for members of **struct sigaction**.

11054 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/15 is applied, correcting the definition of
11055 the *sa_sigaction* member of **struct sigaction**.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

spawn.h — spawn (**ADVANCED REALTIME**)

## SYNOPSIS

SPN
```
#include <spawn.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<spawn.h>** header shall define the **posix_spawnattr_t** and **posix_spawn_file_actions_t** types used in performing spawn operations.

The **<spawn.h>** header shall define the flags that may be set in a **posix_spawnattr_t** object using the *posix_spawnattr_setflags*( ) function:

POSIX_SPAWN_RESETIDS
POSIX_SPAWN_SETPGROUP
PS POSIX_SPAWN_SETSCHEDPARAM
POSIX_SPAWN_SETSCHEDULER
POSIX_SPAWN_SETSIGDEF
POSIX_SPAWN_SETSIGMASK

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int   posix_spawn(pid_t *restrict, const char *restrict,
          const posix_spawn_file_actions_t *,
          const posix_spawnattr_t *restrict, char *const [restrict],
          char *const [restrict]);
int   posix_spawn_file_actions_addclose(posix_spawn_file_actions_t *,
          int);
int   posix_spawn_file_actions_adddup2(posix_spawn_file_actions_t *,
          int, int);
int   posix_spawn_file_actions_addopen(posix_spawn_file_actions_t *restrict,
          int, const char *restrict, int, mode_t);
int   posix_spawn_file_actions_destroy(posix_spawn_file_actions_t *);
int   posix_spawn_file_actions_init(posix_spawn_file_actions_t *);
int   posix_spawnattr_destroy(posix_spawnattr_t *);
int   posix_spawnattr_getsigdefault(const posix_spawnattr_t *restrict,
          sigset_t *restrict);
int   posix_spawnattr_getflags(const posix_spawnattr_t *restrict,
          short *restrict);
int   posix_spawnattr_getpgroup(const posix_spawnattr_t *restrict,
          pid_t *restrict);
PS int   posix_spawnattr_getschedparam(const posix_spawnattr_t *restrict,
          struct sched_param *restrict);
int   posix_spawnattr_getschedpolicy(const posix_spawnattr_t *restrict,
          int *restrict);
int   posix_spawnattr_getsigmask(const posix_spawnattr_t *restrict,
          sigset_t *restrict);
int   posix_spawnattr_init(posix_spawnattr_t *);
int   posix_spawnattr_setsigdefault(posix_spawnattr_t *restrict,
          const sigset_t *restrict);
int   posix_spawnattr_setflags(posix_spawnattr_t *, short);
int   posix_spawnattr_setpgroup(posix_spawnattr_t *, pid_t);
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
11104 PS    int   posix_spawnattr_setschedparam(posix_spawnattr_t *restrict,
11105               const struct sched_param *restrict);
11106       int   posix_spawnattr_setschedpolicy(posix_spawnattr_t *, int);
11107       int   posix_spawnattr_setsigmask(posix_spawnattr_t *restrict,
11108               const sigset_t *restrict);
11109       int   posix_spawnp(pid_t *restrict, const char *restrict,
11110               const posix_spawn_file_actions_t *,
11111               const posix_spawnattr_t *restrict,
11112               char *const [restrict], char *const [restrict]);
```

11113 Inclusion of the **<spawn.h>** header may make visible symbols defined in the **<sched.h>**,
11114 **<signal.h>**, and **<sys/types.h>** headers.

11115 **APPLICATION USAGE**

11116 None.

11117 **RATIONALE**

11118 None.

11119 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

11120 None.

11121 **SEE ALSO**

11122 **<sched.h>**, **<semaphore.h>**, **<signal.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of
11123 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *posix_spawnattr_destroy*( ), *posix_spawnattr_getsigdefault*( ),
11124 *posix_spawnattr_getflags*( ), *posix_spawnattr_getpgroup*( ), *posix_spawnattr_getschedparam*( ),
11125 *posix_spawnattr_getschedpolicy*( ), *posix_spawnattr_getsigmask*( ), *posix_spawnattr_init*( ),
11126 *posix_spawnattr_setsigdefault*( ), *posix_spawnattr_setflags*( ), *posix_spawnattr_setpgroup*( ),
11127 *posix_spawnattr_setschedparam*( ), *posix_spawnattr_setschedpolicy*( ), *posix_spawnattr_setsigmask*( ),
11128 *posix_spawn*( ), *posix_spawn_file_actions_addclose*( ), *posix_spawn_file_actions_adddup2*( ),
11129 *posix_spawn_file_actions_addopen*( ), *posix_spawn_file_actions_destroy*( ),
11130 *posix_spawn_file_actions_init*( ), *posix_spawnp*( )

11131 **CHANGE HISTORY**

11132 First released in Issue 6. Included for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1d-1999.

11133 The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototypes for *posix_spawn*( ),
11134 *posix_spawn_file_actions_addopen*( ), *posix_spawnattr_getsigdefault*( ), *posix_spawnattr_getflags*( ),
11135 *posix_spawnattr_getpgroup*( ), *posix_spawnattr_getschedparam*( ), *posix_spawnattr_getschedpolicy*( ),
11136 *posix_spawnattr_getsigmask*( ), *posix_spawnattr_setsigdefault*( ), *posix_spawnattr_setschedparam*( ),
11137 *posix_spawnattr_setsigmask*( ), and *posix_spawnp*( ).



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

11138 **NAME**

11139 stdarg.h — handle variable argument list

11140 **SYNOPSIS**

11141 ```
#include <stdarg.h>

void va_start(va_list ap, argN);
void va_copy(va_list dest, va_list src);
type va_arg(va_list ap, type);
void va_end(va_list ap);
```

11146 **DESCRIPTION**

11147 CX The functionality described on this reference page is aligned with the ISO C standard. Any
11148 conflict between the requirements described here and the ISO C standard is unintentional. This
11149 volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 defers to the ISO C standard.

11150 The **<stdarg.h>** header shall contain a set of macros which allows portable functions that accept
11151 variable argument lists to be written. Functions that have variable argument lists (such as
11152 *printf*()) but do not use these macros are inherently non-portable, as different systems use
11153 different argument-passing conventions.

11154 The type **va_list** shall be defined for variables used to traverse the list.

11155 The *va_start*() macro is invoked to initialize *ap* to the beginning of the list before any calls to
11156 *va_arg*().

11157 The *va_copy*() macro initializes *dest* as a copy of *src*, as if the *va_start*() macro had been applied
11158 to *dest* followed by the same sequence of uses of the *va_arg*() macro as had previously been used
11159 to reach the present state of *src*. Neither the *va_copy*() nor *va_start*() macro shall be invoked to
11160 reinitialize *dest* without an intervening invocation of the *va_end*() macro for the same *dest*.

11161 The object *ap* may be passed as an argument to another function; if that function invokes the
11162 *va_arg*() macro with parameter *ap*, the value of *ap* in the calling function is unspecified and shall
11163 be passed to the *va_end*() macro prior to any further reference to *ap*. The parameter *argN* is the
11164 identifier of the rightmost parameter in the variable parameter list in the function definition (the
11165 one just before the ...). If the parameter *argN* is declared with the **register** storage class, with a
11166 function type or array type, or with a type that is not compatible with the type that results after
11167 application of the default argument promotions, the behavior is undefined.

11168 The *va_arg*() macro shall return the next argument in the list pointed to by *ap*. Each invocation
11169 of *va_arg*() modifies *ap* so that the values of successive arguments are returned in turn. The *type*
11170 parameter shall be a type name specified such that the type of a pointer to an object that has the
11171 specified type can be obtained simply by postfixing a '*' to type. If there is no actual next
11172 argument, or if *type* is not compatible with the type of the actual next argument (as promoted
11173 according to the default argument promotions), the behavior is undefined, except for the
11174 following cases:

11175 - One type is a signed integer type, the other type is the corresponding unsigned integer type,
11176 and the value is representable in both types.

11177 - One type is a pointer to **void** and the other is a pointer to a character type.

11178 XSI - Both types are pointers.

11179 Different types can be mixed, but it is up to the routine to know what type of argument is
11180 expected.

11181 The *va_end*() macro is used to clean up; it invalidates *ap* for use (unless *va_start*() or *va_copy*() is
11182 invoked again).

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale
```

Each invocation of the *va_start*( ) and *va_copy*( ) macros shall be matched by a corresponding invocation of the *va_end*( ) macro in the same function.

Multiple traversals, each bracketed by *va_start*( ) ... *va_end*( ), are possible.

## EXAMPLES

This example is a possible implementation of *execl*( ):

```
#include <stdarg.h>

#define  MAXARGS     31

/*
 * execl is called by
 * execl(file, arg1, arg2, ..., (char *)(0));
 */
int execl(const char *file, const char *args, ...)
{
    va_list ap;
    char *array[MAXARGS +1];
    int argno = 0;

    va_start(ap, args);
    while (args != 0 && argno < MAXARGS)
    {
        array[argno++] = args;
        args = va_arg(ap, const char *);
    }
    array[argno] = (char *) 0;
    va_end(ap);
    return execv(file, array);
}
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

It is up to the calling routine to communicate to the called routine how many arguments there are, since it is not always possible for the called routine to determine this in any other way. For example, *execl*( ) is passed a null pointer to signal the end of the list. The *printf*( ) function can tell how many arguments are there by the *format* argument.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *exec*, *printf*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4. Derived from the ANSI C standard.

### Issue 6

This reference page is updated to align with the ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

stdbool.h — boolean type and values

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <stdbool.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX The functionality described on this reference page is aligned with the ISO C standard. Any conflict between the requirements described here and the ISO C standard is unintentional. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 defers to the ISO C standard.

The **<stdbool.h>** header shall define the following macros:

bool Expands to **_Bool**.

true Expands to the integer constant 1.

false Expands to the integer constant 0.

__bool_true_false_are_defined
Expands to the integer constant 1.

An application may undefine and then possibly redefine the macros bool, true, and false.

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

The ability to undefine and redefine the macros bool, true, and false is an obsolescent feature and may be withdrawn in a future version.

## SEE ALSO

None.

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 6. Included for alignment with the ISO/IEC 9899: 1999 standard.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

stddef.h — standard type definitions

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <stddef.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX The functionality described on this reference page is aligned with the ISO C standard. Any conflict between the requirements described here and the ISO C standard is unintentional. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 defers to the ISO C standard.

The **<stddef.h>** header shall define the following macros:

NULL Null pointer constant.

offsetof(*type*, *member-designator*)
Integer constant expression of type **size_t**, the value of which is the offset in bytes to the structure member (*member-designator*), from the beginning of its structure (*type*).

The **<stddef.h>** header shall define the following types:

**ptrdiff_t** Signed integer type of the result of subtracting two pointers.

**wchar_t** Integer type whose range of values can represent distinct wide-character codes for all members of the largest character set specified among the locales supported by the compilation environment: the null character has the code value 0 and each member of the portable character set has a code value equal to its value when used as the lone character in an integer character constant.

**size_t** Unsigned integer type of the result of the *sizeof* operator.

The implementation shall support one or more programming environments in which the widths of **ptrdiff_t**, **size_t**, and **wchar_t** are no greater than the width of type **long**. The names of these programming environments can be obtained using the *confstr*( ) function or the *getconf* utility.

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<wchar.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *confstr*( ), the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *getconf*

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4. Derived from the ANSI C standard.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

stdint.h — integer types

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <stdint.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard. Applications shall define the appropriate feature test macro (see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment) to enable the visibility of these symbols in this header.

The **<stdint.h>** header shall declare sets of integer types having specified widths, and shall define corresponding sets of macros. It shall also define macros that specify limits of integer types corresponding to types defined in other standard headers.

**Note:** The ''width'' of an integer type is the number of bits used to store its value in a pure binary system; the actual type may use more bits than that (for example, a 28-bit type could be stored in 32 bits of actual storage). An $N$-bit signed type has values in the range $-2^{N-1}$ or $1-2^{N-1}$ to $2^{N-1}-1$, while an $N$-bit unsigned type has values in the range 0 to $2^{N}-1$.

Types are defined in the following categories:

- Integer types having certain exact widths
- Integer types having at least certain specified widths
- Fastest integer types having at least certain specified widths
- Integer types wide enough to hold pointers to objects
- Integer types having greatest width

(Some of these types may denote the same type.)

Corresponding macros specify limits of the declared types and construct suitable constants.

For each type described herein that the implementation provides, the **<stdint.h>** header shall declare that **typedef** name and define the associated macros. Conversely, for each type described herein that the implementation does not provide, the **<stdint.h>** header shall not declare that **typedef** name, nor shall it define the associated macros. An implementation shall provide those types described as required, but need not provide any of the others (described as optional).

### Integer Types

When **typedef** names differing only in the absence or presence of the initial *u* are defined, they shall denote corresponding signed and unsigned types as described in the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard, Section 6.2.5; an implementation providing one of these corresponding types shall also provide the other.

In the following descriptions, the symbol $N$ represents an unsigned decimal integer with no leading zeros (for example, 8 or 24, but not 04 or 048).

- Exact-width integer types

  The **typedef** name **int**$N$**_t** designates a signed integer type with width $N$, no padding bits, and a two's-complement representation. Thus, **int8_t** denotes a signed integer type with a width of exactly 8 bits.

  The **typedef** name **uint**$N$**_t** designates an unsigned integer type with width $N$. Thus, **uint24_t** denotes an unsigned integer type with a width of exactly 24 bits.

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

11328 CX The following types are required:

11329 **int8_t**
11330 **int16_t**
11331 **int32_t**
11332 **uint8_t**
11333 **uint16_t**
11334 **uint32_t**

11335 If an implementation provides integer types with width 64 that meet these requirements,
11336 then the following types are required:

11337 **int64_t**
11338 **uint64_t**

11339 CX In particular, this will be the case if any of the following are true:

11340 — The implementation supports the _POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFFBIG programming
11341 environment and the application is being built in the _POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFFBIG
11342 programming environment (see the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001,
11343 *c99*, Programming Environments).

11344 — The implementation supports the _POSIX_V6_LP64_OFF64 programming environment
11345 and the application is being built in the _POSIX_V6_LP64_OFF64 programming
11346 environment.

11347 — The implementation supports the _POSIX_V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG programming
11348 environment and the application is being built in the _POSIX_V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG
11349 programming environment.

11350 All other types of this form are optional.

11351 • Minimum-width integer types

11352 The **typedef** name **int_least***N***_t** designates a signed integer type with a width of at least *N*,
11353 such that no signed integer type with lesser size has at least the specified width. Thus,
11354 **int_least32_t** denotes a signed integer type with a width of at least 32 bits.

11355 The **typedef** name **uint_least***N***_t** designates an unsigned integer type with a width of at least
11356 *N*, such that no unsigned integer type with lesser size has at least the specified width. Thus,
11357 **uint_least16_t** denotes an unsigned integer type with a width of at least 16 bits.

11358 The following types are required:

11359 **int_least8_t**
11360 **int_least16_t**
11361 **int_least32_t**
11362 **int_least64_t**
11363 **uint_least8_t**
11364 **uint_least16_t**
11365 **uint_least32_t**
11366 **uint_least64_t**

11367 All other types of this form are optional.

11368 • Fastest minimum-width integer types

11369 Each of the following types designates an integer type that is usually fastest to operate with
11370 among all integer types that have at least the specified width.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

The designated type is not guaranteed to be fastest for all purposes; if the implementation has no clear grounds for choosing one type over another, it will simply pick some integer type satisfying the signedness and width requirements.

The **typedef** name **int_fast***N***_t** designates the fastest signed integer type with a width of at least *N*. The **typedef** name **uint_fast***N***_t** designates the fastest unsigned integer type with a width of at least *N*.

The following types are required:

**int_fast8_t**
**int_fast16_t**
**int_fast32_t**
**int_fast64_t**
**uint_fast8_t**
**uint_fast16_t**
**uint_fast32_t**
**uint_fast64_t**

All other types of this form are optional.

- Integer types capable of holding object pointers

The following type designates a signed integer type with the property that any valid pointer to **void** can be converted to this type, then converted back to a pointer to **void**, and the result will compare equal to the original pointer:

**intptr_t**

The following type designates an unsigned integer type with the property that any valid pointer to **void** can be converted to this type, then converted back to a pointer to **void**, and the result will compare equal to the original pointer:

**uintptr_t**

XSI On XSI-conformant systems, the **intptr_t** and **uintptr_t** types are required; otherwise, they are optional.

- Greatest-width integer types

The following type designates a signed integer type capable of representing any value of any signed integer type:

**intmax_t**

The following type designates an unsigned integer type capable of representing any value of any unsigned integer type:

**uintmax_t**

These types are required.

**Note:** Applications can test for optional types by using the corresponding limit macro from **Limits of Specified-Width Integer Types** (on page 319).


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

11408 **Limits of Specified-Width Integer Types**

11409 The following macros specify the minimum and maximum limits of the types declared in the
11410 **<stdint.h>** header. Each macro name corresponds to a similar type name in **Integer Types** (on
11411 page 316).

11412 Each instance of any defined macro shall be replaced by a constant expression suitable for use in
11413 **#if** preprocessing directives, and this expression shall have the same type as would an
11414 expression that is an object of the corresponding type converted according to the integer
11415 promotions. Its implementation-defined value shall be equal to or greater in magnitude
11416 (absolute value) than the corresponding value given below, with the same sign, except where
11417 stated to be exactly the given value.

11418 • Limits of exact-width integer types

11419 — Minimum values of exact-width signed integer types:

11420 {INT*N*_MIN} Exactly $-(2^{N-1})$

11421 — Maximum values of exact-width signed integer types:

11422 {INT*N*_MAX} Exactly $2^{N-1}-1$

11423 — Maximum values of exact-width unsigned integer types:

11424 {UINT*N*_MAX} Exactly $2^{N}-1$

11425 • Limits of minimum-width integer types

11426 — Minimum values of minimum-width signed integer types:

11427 {INT_LEAST*N*_MIN} $-(2^{N-1}-1)$

11428 — Maximum values of minimum-width signed integer types:

11429 {INT_LEAST*N*_MAX} $2^{N-1}-1$

11430 — Maximum values of minimum-width unsigned integer types:

11431 {UINT_LEAST*N*_MAX} $2^{N}-1$

11432 • Limits of fastest minimum-width integer types

11433 — Minimum values of fastest minimum-width signed integer types:

11434 {INT_FAST*N*_MIN} $-(2^{N-1}-1)$

11435 — Maximum values of fastest minimum-width signed integer types:

11436 {INT_FAST*N*_MAX} $2^{N-1}-1$

11437 — Maximum values of fastest minimum-width unsigned integer types:

11438 {UINT_FAST*N*_MAX} $2^{N}-1$

11439 • Limits of integer types capable of holding object pointers

11440 — Minimum value of pointer-holding signed integer type:

11441 {INTPTR_MIN} $-(2^{15}-1)$

11442 — Maximum value of pointer-holding signed integer type:

11443 {INTPTR_MAX} $2^{15}-1$

11444 — Maximum value of pointer-holding unsigned integer type:



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

{UINTPTR_MAX} $2^{16} - 1$

- Limits of greatest-width integer types
  - — Minimum value of greatest-width signed integer type:

    {INTMAX_MIN} $-(2^{63} - 1)$
  - — Maximum value of greatest-width signed integer type:

    {INTMAX_MAX} $2^{63} - 1$
  - — Maximum value of greatest-width unsigned integer type:

    {UINTMAX_MAX} $2^{64} - 1$

**Limits of Other Integer Types**

The following macros specify the minimum and maximum limits of integer types corresponding to types defined in other standard headers.

Each instance of these macros shall be replaced by a constant expression suitable for use in **#if** preprocessing directives, and this expression shall have the same type as would an expression that is an object of the corresponding type converted according to the integer promotions. Its implementation-defined value shall be equal to or greater in magnitude (absolute value) than the corresponding value given below, with the same sign.

- Limits of **ptrdiff_t**:

  {PTRDIFF_MIN} –65 535

  {PTRDIFF_MAX} +65 535
- Limits of **sig_atomic_t**:

  {SIG_ATOMIC_MIN} See below.

  {SIG_ATOMIC_MAX} See below.
- Limit of **size_t**:

  {SIZE_MAX} 65 535
- Limits of **wchar_t**:

  {WCHAR_MIN} See below.

  {WCHAR_MAX} See below.
- Limits of **wint_t**:

  {WINT_MIN} See below.

  {WINT_MAX} See below.

If **sig_atomic_t** (see the **<signal.h>** header) is defined as a signed integer type, the value of {SIG_ATOMIC_MIN} shall be no greater than –127 and the value of {SIG_ATOMIC_MAX} shall be no less than 127; otherwise, **sig_atomic_t** shall be defined as an unsigned integer type, and the value of {SIG_ATOMIC_MIN} shall be 0 and the value of {SIG_ATOMIC_MAX} shall be no less than 255.

If **wchar_t** (see the **<stddef.h>** header) is defined as a signed integer type, the value of {WCHAR_MIN} shall be no greater than –127 and the value of {WCHAR_MAX} shall be no less than 127; otherwise, **wchar_t** shall be defined as an unsigned integer type, and the value of {WCHAR_MIN} shall be 0 and the value of {WCHAR_MAX} shall be no less than 255.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

If **wint_t** (see the **<wchar.h>** header) is defined as a signed integer type, the value of {WINT_MIN} shall be no greater than –32 767 and the value of {WINT_MAX} shall be no less than 32 767; otherwise, **wint_t** shall be defined as an unsigned integer type, and the value of {WINT_MIN} shall be 0 and the value of {WINT_MAX} shall be no less than 65 535.

**Macros for Integer Constant Expressions**

The following macros expand to integer constant expressions suitable for initializing objects that have integer types corresponding to types defined in the **<stdint.h>** header. Each macro name corresponds to a similar type name listed under *Minimum-width integer types* and *Greatest-width integer types*.

Each invocation of one of these macros shall expand to an integer constant expression suitable for use in **#if** preprocessing directives. The type of the expression shall have the same type as would an expression that is an object of the corresponding type converted according to the integer promotions. The value of the expression shall be that of the argument.

The argument in any instance of these macros shall be a decimal, octal, or hexadecimal constant with a value that does not exceed the limits for the corresponding type.

- Macros for minimum-width integer constant expressions

  The macro *INTN_C*(*value*) shall expand to an integer constant expression corresponding to the type **int_least***N***_t**. The macro *UINTN_C*(*value*) shall expand to an integer constant expression corresponding to the type **uint_least***N***_t**. For example, if **uint_least64_t** is a name for the type **unsigned long long**, then *UINT64_C*(0x123) might expand to the integer constant 0x123ULL.

- Macros for greatest-width integer constant expressions

  The following macro expands to an integer constant expression having the value specified by its argument and the type **intmax_t**:

  INTMAX_C(*value*)

  The following macro expands to an integer constant expression having the value specified by its argument and the type **uintmax_t**:

  UINTMAX_C(*value*)

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

The **<stdint.h>** header is a subset of the **<inttypes.h>** header more suitable for use in freestanding environments, which might not support the formatted I/O functions. In some environments, if the formatted conversion support is not wanted, using this header instead of the **<inttypes.h>** header avoids defining such a large number of macros.

As a consequence of adding **int8_t**, the following are true:

- A byte is exactly 8 bits.
- {CHAR_BIT} has the value 8, {SCHAR_MAX} has the value 127, {SCHAR_MIN} has the value –127 or –128, and {UCHAR_MAX} has the value 255.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

**typedef** names beginning with **int** or **uint** and ending with _t may be added to the types defined in the **<stdint.h>** header. Macro names beginning with INT or UINT and ending with _MAX, _MIN, or _C may be added to the macros defined in the **<stdint.h>** header.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

11527 **SEE ALSO**

11528 **<inttypes.h>**, **<signal.h>**, **<stddef.h>**, **<wchar.h>**

11529 **CHANGE HISTORY**

11530 First released in Issue 6. Included for alignment with the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard.

11531 ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard, Technical Corrigendum 1 is incorporated.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

stdio.h — standard buffered input/output

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <stdio.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard. Applications shall define the appropriate feature test macro (see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment) to enable the visibility of these symbols in this header.

The **<stdio.h>** header shall define the following macros as positive integer constant expressions:

| | |
|---|---|
| BUFSIZ | Size of **<stdio.h>** buffers. |
| _IOFBF | Input/output fully buffered. |
| _IOLBF | Input/output line buffered. |
| _IONBF | Input/output unbuffered. |
| CX L_ctermid | Maximum size of character array to hold *ctermid*( ) output. |
| L_tmpnam | Maximum size of character array to hold *tmpnam*( ) output. |
| SEEK_CUR | Seek relative to current position. |
| SEEK_END | Seek relative to end-of-file. |
| SEEK_SET | Seek relative to start-of-file. |

The following macros shall be defined as positive integer constant expressions which denote implementation limits:

| | |
|---|---|
| {FILENAME_MAX} | Maximum size in bytes of the longest filename string that the implementation guarantees can be opened. |
| {FOPEN_MAX} | Number of streams which the implementation guarantees can be open simultaneously. The value is at least eight. |
| {TMP_MAX} | Minimum number of unique filenames generated by *tmpnam*( ). Maximum number of times an application can call *tmpnam*( ) reliably. The XSI value of {TMP_MAX} is at least 25. On XSI-conformant systems, the value of {TMP_MAX} is at least 10 000. |

The following macro name shall be defined as a negative integer constant expression:

| | |
|---|---|
| EOF | End-of-file return value. |

The following macro name shall be defined as a null pointer constant:

| | |
|---|---|
| NULL | Null pointer. |

The following macro name shall be defined as a string constant:

| | |
|---|---|
| XSI P_tmpdir | Default directory prefix for *tempnam*( ). |

The following shall be defined as expressions of type ''pointer to **FILE**'' that point to the **FILE** objects associated, respectively, with the standard error, input, and output streams:

| | |
|---|---|
| *stderr* | Standard error output stream. |
| *stdin* | Standard input stream. |



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

*stdout* Standard output stream.

The following data types shall be defined through **typedef**:

**FILE** A structure containing information about a file.

**fpos_t** A non-array type containing all information needed to specify uniquely every position within a file.

XSI **va_list** As described in **<stdarg.h>**.

**size_t** As described in **<stddef.h>**.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
void     clearerr(FILE *);
CX char    *ctermid(char *);
int      fclose(FILE *);
CX FILE    *fdopen(int, const char *);
int      feof(FILE *);
int      ferror(FILE *);
int      fflush(FILE *);
int      fgetc(FILE *);
int      fgetpos(FILE *restrict, fpos_t *restrict);
char    *fgets(char *restrict, int, FILE *restrict);
CX int      fileno(FILE *);
TSF void     flockfile(FILE *);
FILE    *fopen(const char *restrict, const char *restrict);
int      fprintf(FILE *restrict, const char *restrict, ...);
int      fputc(int, FILE *);
int      fputs(const char *restrict, FILE *restrict);
size_t   fread(void *restrict, size_t, size_t, FILE *restrict);
FILE    *freopen(const char *restrict, const char *restrict,
                FILE *restrict);
int      fscanf(FILE *restrict, const char *restrict, ...);
int      fseek(FILE *, long, int);
CX int      fseeko(FILE *, off_t, int);
int      fsetpos(FILE *, const fpos_t *);
long     ftell(FILE *);
CX off_t    ftello(FILE *);
TSF int      ftrylockfile(FILE *);
void     funlockfile(FILE *);
size_t   fwrite(const void *restrict, size_t, size_t, FILE *restrict);
int      getc(FILE *);
int      getchar(void);
TSF int      getc_unlocked(FILE *);
int      getchar_unlocked(void);
char    *gets(char *);
CX int      pclose(FILE *);
void     perror(const char *);
CX FILE    *popen(const char *, const char *);
int      printf(const char *restrict, ...);
int      putc(int, FILE *);
int      putchar(int);
TSF
```

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
11620          int       putc_unlocked(int, FILE *);
11621          int       putchar_unlocked(int);
11622          int       puts(const char *);
11623          int       remove(const char *);
11624          int       rename(const char *, const char *);
11625          void      rewind(FILE *);
11626          int       scanf(const char *restrict, ...);
11627          void      setbuf(FILE *restrict, char *restrict);
11628          int       setvbuf(FILE *restrict, char *restrict, int, size_t);
11629          int       snprintf(char *restrict, size_t, const char *restrict, ...);
11630          int       sprintf(char *restrict, const char *restrict, ...);
11631          int       sscanf(const char *restrict, const char *restrict, int ...);
11632 XSI      char     *tempnam(const char *, const char *);
11633          FILE     *tmpfile(void);
11634          char     *tmpnam(char *);
11635          int       ungetc(int, FILE *);
11636          int       vfprintf(FILE *restrict, const char *restrict, va_list);
11637          int       vfscanf(FILE *restrict, const char *restrict, va_list);
11638          int       vprintf(const char *restrict, va_list);
11639          int       vscanf(const char *restrict, va_list);
11640          int       vsnprintf(char *restrict, size_t, const char *restrict, va_list;
11641          int       vsprintf(char *restrict, const char *restrict, va_list);
11642          int       vsscanf(const char *restrict, const char *restrict, va_list arg);
```

11643 XSI Inclusion of the **<stdio.h>** header may also make visible all symbols from **<stddef.h>**.

11644 **APPLICATION USAGE**

11645 None.

11646 **RATIONALE**

11647 None.

11648 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

11649 None.

11650 **SEE ALSO**

11651 **<stdarg.h>**, **<stddef.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001,
11652 *clearerr*( ), *ctermid*( ), *fclose*( ), *fdopen*( ), *fgetc*( ), *fgetpos*( ), *ferror*( ), *feof*( ), *fflush*( ), *fgets*( ), *fileno*( ),
11653 *flockfile*( ), *fopen*( ), *fputc*( ), *fputs*( ), *fread*( ), *freopen*( ), *fseek*( ), *fsetpos*( ), *ftell*( ), *fwrite*( ), *getc*( ),
11654 *getc_unlocked*( ), *getwchar*( ), *getchar*( ), *getopt*( ), *gets*( ), *pclose*( ), *perror*( ), *popen*( ), *printf*( ), *putc*( ),
11655 *putchar*( ), *puts*( ), *putwchar*( ), *remove*( ), *rename*( ), *rewind*( ), *scanf*( ), *setbuf*( ), *setvbuf*( ), *sscanf*( ),
11656 *stdin*, *system*( ), *tempnam*( ), *tmpfile*( ), *tmpnam*( ), *ungetc*( ), *vfscanf*( ), *vscanf*( ), *vprintf*( ), *vsscanf*( )

11657 **CHANGE HISTORY**

11658 First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.

11659 **Issue 5**

11660 The DESCRIPTION is updated for alignment with the POSIX Threads Extension.

11661 Large File System extensions are added.

11662 The constant L_cuserid and the external variables *optarg*, *opterr*, *optind*, and *optopt* are marked as
11663 extensions and LEGACY.

11664 The *cuserid*( ) and *getopt*( ) functions are marked LEGACY.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

**Issue 6**

The constant L_cuserid and the external variables *optarg*, *opterr*, *optind*, and *optopt* are removed as they were previously marked LEGACY.

The *cuserid*(), *getopt*(), and *getw*() functions are removed as they were previously marked LEGACY.

Several functions are marked as part of the Thread-Safe Functions option.

This reference page is updated to align with the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard. Note that the description of the **fpos_t** type is now explicitly updated to exclude array types.

Extensions beyond the ISO C standard are marked.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

stdlib.h — standard library definitions

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <stdlib.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard. Applications shall define the appropriate feature test macro (see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment) to enable the visibility of these symbols in this header.

The **<stdlib.h>** header shall define the following macros:

| | |
|---|---|
| EXIT_FAILURE | Unsuccessful termination for *exit*( ); evaluates to a non-zero value. |
| EXIT_SUCCESS | Successful termination for *exit*( ); evaluates to 0. |
| NULL | Null pointer. |
| {RAND_MAX} | Maximum value returned by *rand*( ); at least 32 767. |
| {MB_CUR_MAX} | Integer expression whose value is the maximum number of bytes in a character specified by the current locale. |

The following data types shall be defined through **typedef**:

| | |
|---|---|
| **div_t** | Structure type returned by the *div*( ) function. |
| **ldiv_t** | Structure type returned by the *ldiv*( ) function. |
| **lldiv_t** | Structure type returned by the *lldiv*( ) function. |
| **size_t** | As described in **<stddef.h>**. |
| **wchar_t** | As described in **<stddef.h>**. |

In addition, the following symbolic names and macros shall be defined as in **<sys/wait.h>**, for use in decoding the return value from *system*( ):

XSI
WNOHANG
WUNTRACED
WEXITSTATUS
WIFEXITED
WIFSIGNALED
WIFSTOPPED
WSTOPSIG
WTERMSIG

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
void            _Exit(int);
XSI long        a64l(const char *);
void            abort(void);
int             abs(int);
int             atexit(void (*)(void));
double          atof(const char *);
int             atoi(const char *);
long            atol(const char *);
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
11717          long long     atoll(const char *);
11718          void         *bsearch(const void *, const void *, size_t, size_t,
11719                            int (*)(const void *, const void *));
11720          void         *calloc(size_t, size_t);
11721          div_t         div(int, int);
11722 XSI      double        drand48(void);
11723          char         *ecvt(double, int, int *restrict, int *restrict); (LEGACY)
11724          double        erand48(unsigned short[3]);
11725          void          exit(int);
11726 XSI      char         *fcvt(double, int, int *restrict, int *restrict); (LEGACY)
11727          void          free(void *);
11728 XSI      char         *gcvt(double, int, char *); (LEGACY)
11729          char         *getenv(const char *);
11730 XSI      int           getsubopt(char **, char *const *, char **);
11731          int           grantpt(int);
11732          char         *initstate(unsigned, char *, size_t);
11733          long          jrand48(unsigned short[3]);
11734          char         *l64a(long);
11735          long          labs(long);
11736 XSI      void          lcong48(unsigned short[7]);
11737          ldiv_t        ldiv(long, long);
11738          long long     llabs(long long);
11739          lldiv_t       lldiv(long long, long long);
11740 XSI      long          lrand48(void);
11741          void         *malloc(size_t);
11742          int           mblen(const char *, size_t);
11743          size_t        mbstowcs(wchar_t *restrict, const char *restrict, size_t);
11744          int           mbtowc(wchar_t *restrict, const char *restrict, size_t);
11745 XSI      char         *mktemp(char *); (LEGACY)
11746          int           mkstemp(char *);
11747          long          mrand48(void);
11748          long          nrand48(unsigned short[3]);
11749 ADV      int           posix_memalign(void **, size_t, size_t);
11750 XSI      int           posix_openpt(int);
11751          char         *ptsname(int);
11752          int           putenv(char *);
11753          void          qsort(void *, size_t, size_t, int (*)(const void *,
11754                            const void *));
11755          int           rand(void);
11756 TSF      int           rand_r(unsigned *);
11757 XSI      long          random(void);
11758          void         *realloc(void *, size_t);
11759 XSI      char         *realpath(const char *restrict, char *restrict);
11760          unsigned short seed48(unsigned short[3]);
11761 CX       int           setenv(const char *, const char *, int);
11762 XSI      void          setkey(const char *);
11763          char         *setstate(const char *);
11764          void          srand(unsigned);
11765 XSI      void          srand48(long);
11766          void          srandom(unsigned);
11767          double        strtod(const char *restrict, char **restrict);
11768          float         strtof(const char *restrict, char **restrict);
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

```
11769          long           strtol(const char *restrict, char **restrict, int);
11770          long double    strtold(const char *restrict, char **restrict);
11771          long long      strtoll(const char *restrict, char **restrict, int);
11772          unsigned long  strtoul(const char *restrict, char **restrict, int);
11773          unsigned long long
11774                         strtoull(const char *restrict, char **restrict, int);
11775          int            system(const char *);
11776 XSI      int            unlockpt(int);
11777 CX       int            unsetenv(const char *);
11778          size_t         wcstombs(char *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict, size_t);
11779          int            wctomb(char *, wchar_t);
```

11780 XSI Inclusion of the **<stdlib.h>** header may also make visible all symbols from **<stddef.h>**,
11781 **<limits.h>**, **<math.h>**, and **<sys/wait.h>**.

## 11782 APPLICATION USAGE

11783 None.

## 11784 RATIONALE

11785 None.

## 11786 FUTURE DIRECTIONS

11787 None.

## 11788 SEE ALSO

11789 **<limits.h>**, **<math.h>**, **<stddef.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, **<sys/wait.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of
11790 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *_Exit*( ), *a64l*( ), *abort*( ), *abs*( ), *atexit*( ), *atof*( ), *atoi*( ), *atol*( ), *atoll*( ), *bsearch*( ),
11791 *calloc*( ), *div*( ), *drand48*( ), *erand48*( ), *exit*( ), *free*( ), *getenv*( ), *getsubopt*( ), *grantpt*( ), *initstate*( ),
11792 *jrand48*( ), *l64a*( ), *labs*( ), *lcong48*( ), *ldiv*( ), *llabs*( ), *lldiv*( ), *lrand48*( ), *malloc*( ), *mblen*( ), *mbstowcs*( ),
11793 *mbtowc*( ), *mkstemp*( ), *mrand48*( ), *nrand48*( ), *posix_memalign*( ), *ptsname*( ), *putenv*( ), *qsort*( ),
11794 *rand*( ), *realloc*( ), *realpath*( ), *setstate*( ), *srand*( ), *srand48*( ), *srandom*( ), *strtod*( ), *strtof*( ), *strtol*( ),
11795 *strtold*( ), *strtoll*( ), *strtoul*( ), *strtoull*( ), *unlockpt*( ), *wcstombs*( ), *wctomb*( )

## 11796 CHANGE HISTORY

11797 First released in Issue 3.

### 11798 Issue 5

11799 The DESCRIPTION is updated for alignment with the POSIX Threads Extension.

11800 The *ttyslot*( ) and *valloc*( ) functions are marked LEGACY.

11801 The type of the third argument to *initstate*( ) is changed from **int** to **size_t**. The type of the return
11802 value from *setstate*( ) is changed from **char** to **char ***, and the type of the first argument is
11803 changed from **char *** to **const char ***.

### 11804 Issue 6

11805 The Open Group Corrigendum U021/1 is applied, correcting the prototype for *realpath*( ) to be
11806 consistent with the reference page.

11807 The Open Group Corrigendum U028/13 is applied, correcting the prototype for *putenv*( ) to be
11808 consistent with the reference page.

11809 The *rand_r*( ) function is marked as part of the Thread-Safe Functions option.

11810 Function prototypes for *setenv*( ) and *unsetenv*( ) are added.

11811 The *posix_memalign*( ) function is added for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1d-1999.

11812 This reference page is updated to align with the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

The *ecvt*( ), *fcvt*( ), *gcvt*( ), and *mktemp*( ) functions are marked LEGACY.

The *ttyslot*( ) and *valloc*( ) functions are removed as they were previously marked LEGACY.

Extensions beyond the ISO C standard are marked.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

## NAME

string.h — string operations

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <string.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard. Applications shall define the appropriate feature test macro (see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment) to enable the visibility of these symbols in this header.

The **<string.h>** header shall define the following:

NULL Null pointer constant.

**size_t** As described in **<stddef.h>**.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
XSI void    *memccpy(void *restrict, const void *restrict, int, size_t);
    void    *memchr(const void *, int, size_t);
    int      memcmp(const void *, const void *, size_t);
    void    *memcpy(void *restrict, const void *restrict, size_t);
    void    *memmove(void *, const void *, size_t);
    void    *memset(void *, int, size_t);
    char    *strcat(char *restrict, const char *restrict);
    char    *strchr(const char *, int);
    int      strcmp(const char *, const char *);
    int      strcoll(const char *, const char *);
    char    *strcpy(char *restrict, const char *restrict);
    size_t   strcspn(const char *, const char *);
XSI char    *strdup(const char *);
    char    *strerror(int);
TSF int     *strerror_r(int, char *, size_t);
    size_t   strlen(const char *);
    char    *strncat(char *restrict, const char *restrict, size_t);
    int      strncmp(const char *, const char *, size_t);
    char    *strncpy(char *restrict, const char *restrict, size_t);
    char    *strpbrk(const char *, const char *);
    char    *strrchr(const char *, int);
    size_t   strspn(const char *, const char *);
    char    *strstr(const char *, const char *);
    char    *strtok(char *restrict, const char *restrict);
TSF char    *strtok_r(char *, const char *, char **);
    size_t   strxfrm(char *restrict, const char *restrict, size_t);
```

XSI Inclusion of the **<string.h>** header may also make visible all symbols from **<stddef.h>**.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

11857 **APPLICATION USAGE**

11858 None.

11859 **RATIONALE**

11860 None.

11861 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

11862 None.

11863 **SEE ALSO**

11864 **<stddef.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *memccpy*( ),
11865 *memchr*( ), *memcmp*( ), *memcpy*( ), *memmove*( ), *memset*( ), *strcat*( ), *strchr*( ), *strcmp*( ), *strcoll*( ),
11866 *strcpy*( ), *strcspn*( ), *strdup*( ), *strerror*( ), *strlen*( ), *strncat*( ), *strncmp*( ), *strncpy*( ), *strpbrk*( ), *strrchr*( ),
11867 *strspn*( ), *strstr*( ), *strtok*( ), *strxfrm*( )

11868 **CHANGE HISTORY**

11869 First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.

11870 **Issue 5**

11871 The DESCRIPTION is updated for alignment with the POSIX Threads Extension.

11872 **Issue 6**

11873 The *strtok_r*( ) function is marked as part of the Thread-Safe Functions option.

11874 This reference page is updated to align with the ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard.

11875 The *strerror_r*( ) function is added in response to IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.1c #39.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

strings.h — string operations

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <strings.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int    bcmp(const void *, const void *, size_t); (LEGACY)
void   bcopy(const void *, void *, size_t); (LEGACY)
void   bzero(void *, size_t); (LEGACY)
int    ffs(int);
char  *index(const char *, int); (LEGACY)
char  *rindex(const char *, int); (LEGACY)
int    strcasecmp(const char *, const char *);
int    strncasecmp(const char *, const char *, size_t);
```

The **size_t** type shall be defined through **typedef** as described in **<stddef.h>**.

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<stddef.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *ffs*( ), *strcasecmp*( ), *strncasecmp*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4, Version 2.

### Issue 6

The Open Group Corrigendum U021/2 is applied, correcting the prototype for *index*( ) to be consistent with the reference page.

The *bcmp*( ), *bcopy*( ), *bzero*( ), *index*( ), and *rindex*( ) functions are marked LEGACY.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

stropts.h — STREAMS interface (**STREAMS**)

## SYNOPSIS

XSR
```
#include <stropts.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<stropts.h>** header shall define the **bandinfo** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `unsigned char` | `bi_pri` | Priority band. |
| `int` | `bi_flag` | Flushing type. |

The **<stropts.h>** header shall define the **strpeek** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `struct strbuf` | `ctlbuf` | The control portion of the message. |
| `struct strbuf` | `databuf` | The data portion of the message. |
| `t_uscalar_t` | `flags` | RS_HIPRI or 0. |

The **<stropts.h>** header shall define the **strbuf** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `int` | `maxlen` | Maximum buffer length. |
| `int` | `len` | Length of data. |
| `char *` | `buf` | Pointer to buffer. |

The **<stropts.h>** header shall define the **strfdinsert** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `struct strbuf` | `ctlbuf` | The control portion of the message. |
| `struct strbuf` | `databuf` | The data portion of the message. |
| `t_uscalar_t` | `flags` | RS_HIPRI or 0. |
| `int` | `fildes` | File descriptor of the other STREAM. |
| `int` | `offset` | Relative location of the stored value. |

The **<stropts.h>** header shall define the **strioctl** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `int` | `ic_cmd` | *ioctl*( ) command. |
| `int` | `ic_timout` | Timeout for response. |
| `int` | `ic_len` | Length of data. |
| `char *` | `ic_dp` | Pointer to buffer. |

The **<stropts.h>** header shall define the **strrecvfd** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `int` | `fda` | Received file descriptor. |
| `uid_t` | `uid` | UID of sender. |
| `gid_t` | `gid` | GID of sender. |

The **uid_t** and **gid_t** types shall be defined through **typedef** as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

The **<stropts.h>** header shall define the **t_scalar_t** and **t_uscalar_t** types, respectively, as signed and unsigned opaque types of equal length of at least 32 bits.

The **<stropts.h>** header shall define the **str_list** structure that includes at least the following members:


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `int` | `sl_nmods` | Number of STREAMS module names. |
| `struct str_mlist` | `*sl_modlist` | STREAMS module names. |

The **<stropts.h>** header shall define the **str_mlist** structure that includes at least the following member:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `char` | `l_name[FMNAMESZ+1]` | A STREAMS module name. |

At least the following macros shall be defined for use as the *request* argument to *ioctl*( ):

| | |
|---|---|
| I_PUSH | Push a STREAMS module. |
| I_POP | Pop a STREAMS module. |
| I_LOOK | Get the top module name. |
| I_FLUSH | Flush a STREAM. |
| I_FLUSHBAND | Flush one band of a STREAM. |
| I_SETSIG | Ask for notification signals. |
| I_GETSIG | Retrieve current notification signals. |
| I_FIND | Look for a STREAMS module. |
| I_PEEK | Peek at the top message on a STREAM. |
| I_SRDOPT | Set the read mode. |
| I_GRDOPT | Get the read mode. |
| I_NREAD | Size the top message. |
| I_FDINSERT | Send implementation-defined information about another STREAM. |
| I_STR | Send a STREAMS *ioctl*( ). |
| I_SWROPT | Set the write mode. |
| I_GWROPT | Get the write mode. |
| I_SENDFD | Pass a file descriptor through a STREAMS pipe. |
| I_RECVFD | Get a file descriptor sent via I_SENDFD. |
| I_LIST | Get all the module names on a STREAM. |
| I_ATMARK | Is the top message ‘‘marked’’? |
| I_CKBAND | See if any messages exist in a band. |
| I_GETBAND | Get the band of the top message on a STREAM. |
| I_CANPUT | Is a band writable? |
| I_SETCLTIME | Set close time delay. |
| I_GETCLTIME | Get close time delay. |
| I_LINK | Connect two STREAMs. |
| I_UNLINK | Disconnect two STREAMs. |
| I_PLINK | Persistently connect two STREAMs. |
| I_PUNLINK | Dismantle a persistent STREAMS link. |



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

11986 At least the following macros shall be defined for use with I_LOOK:

11987 FMNAMESZ The minimum size in bytes of the buffer referred to by the *arg* argument.

11988 At least the following macros shall be defined for use with I_FLUSH:

11989 FLUSHR Flush read queues.

11990 FLUSHW Flush write queues.

11991 FLUSHRW Flush read and write queues.

11992 At least the following macros shall be defined for use with I_SETSIG:

11993 S_RDNORM A normal (priority band set to 0) message has arrived at the head of a
11994 STREAM head read queue.

11995 S_RDBAND A message with a non-zero priority band has arrived at the head of a STREAM
11996 head read queue.

11997 S_INPUT A message, other than a high-priority message, has arrived at the head of a
11998 STREAM head read queue.

11999 S_HIPRI A high-priority message is present on a STREAM head read queue.

12000 S_OUTPUT The write queue for normal data (priority band 0) just below the STREAM
12001 head is no longer full. This notifies the process that there is room on the queue
12002 for sending (or writing) normal data downstream.

12003 S_WRNORM Equivalent to S_OUTPUT.

12004 S_WRBAND The write queue for a non-zero priority band just below the STREAM head is
12005 no longer full.

12006 S_MSG A STREAMS signal message that contains the SIGPOLL signal reaches the
12007 front of the STREAM head read queue.

12008 S_ERROR Notification of an error condition reaches the STREAM head.

12009 S_HANGUP Notification of a hangup reaches the STREAM head.

12010 S_BANDURG When used in conjunction with S_RDBAND, SIGURG is generated instead of
12011 SIGPOLL when a priority message reaches the front of the STREAM head read
12012 queue.

12013 At least the following macros shall be defined for use with I_PEEK:

12014 RS_HIPRI Only look for high-priority messages.

12015 At least the following macros shall be defined for use with I_SRDOPT:

12016 RNORM Byte-STREAM mode, the default.

12017 RMSGD Message-discard mode.

12018 RMSGN Message-non-discard mode.

12019 RPROTNORM Fail *read*( ) with [EBADMSG] if a message containing a control part is at the
12020 front of the STREAM head read queue.

12021 RPROTDAT Deliver the control part of a message as data when a process issues a *read*( ).

12022 RPROTDIS Discard the control part of a message, delivering any data part, when a
12023 process issues a *read*( ).

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

12024 At least the following macros shall be defined for use with I_SWOPT:

12025 SNDZERO Send a zero-length message downstream when a *write*( ) of 0 bytes occurs.

12026 At least the following macros shall be defined for use with I_ATMARK:

12027 ANYMARK Check if the message is marked.

12028 LASTMARK Check if the message is the last one marked on the queue.

12029 At least the following macros shall be defined for use with I_UNLINK:

12030 MUXID_ALL Unlink all STREAMs linked to the STREAM associated with *fildes*.

12031 The following macros shall be defined for *getmsg*( ), *getpmsg*( ), *putmsg*( ), and *putpmsg*( ):

12032 MSG_ANY Receive any message.

12033 MSG_BAND Receive message from specified band.

12034 MSG_HIPRI Send/receive high-priority message.

12035 MORECTL More control information is left in message.

12036 MOREDATA More data is left in message.

12037 The **<stropts.h>** header may make visible all of the symbols from **<unistd.h>**.

12038 The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function
12039 prototypes shall be provided.

```
12040       int     isastream(int);
12041       int     getmsg(int, struct strbuf *restrict, struct strbuf *restrict,
12042                   int *restrict);
12043       int     getpmsg(int, struct strbuf *restrict, struct strbuf *restrict,
12044                   int *restrict, int *restrict);
12045       int     ioctl(int, int, ... );
12046       int     putmsg(int, const struct strbuf *, const struct strbuf *, int);
12047       int     putpmsg(int, const struct strbuf *, const struct strbuf *, int,
12048                   int);
12049       int     fattach(int, const char *);
12050       int     fdetach(const char *);
```

12051 **APPLICATION USAGE**

12052 None.

12053 **RATIONALE**

12054 None.

12055 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

12056 None.

12057 **SEE ALSO**

12058 **<sys/types.h>**, **<unistd.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *close*( ), *fcntl*( ),
12059 *getmsg*( ), *ioctl*( ), *open*( ), *pipe*( ), *read*( ), *poll*( ), *putmsg*( ), *signal*( ), *write*( )

12060 **CHANGE HISTORY**

12061 First released in Issue 4, Version 2.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

12062 **Issue 5**

12063 The *flags* members of the **strpeek** and **strfdinsert** structures are changed from **type long** to
12064 **t_uscalar_t**.

12065 **Issue 6**

12066 This header is marked as part of the XSI STREAMS Option Group.

12067 The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototypes for *getmsg*( ) and *getpmsg*( ).


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

sys/ipc.h — XSI interprocess communication access structure

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <sys/ipc.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<sys/ipc.h>** header is used by three mechanisms for XSI interprocess communication (IPC): messages, semaphores, and shared memory. All use a common structure type, **ipc_perm**, to pass information used in determining permission to perform an IPC operation.

The **ipc_perm** structure shall contain the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `uid_t` | `uid` | Owner's user ID. |
| `gid_t` | `gid` | Owner's group ID. |
| `uid_t` | `cuid` | Creator's user ID. |
| `gid_t` | `cgid` | Creator's group ID. |
| `mode_t` | `mode` | Read/write permission. |

The **uid_t**, **gid_t**, **mode_t**, and **key_t** types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

Definitions shall be provided for the following constants:

Mode bits:

| | |
|---|---|
| IPC_CREAT | Create entry if key does not exist. |
| IPC_EXCL | Fail if key exists. |
| IPC_NOWAIT | Error if request must wait. |

Keys:

| | |
|---|---|
| IPC_PRIVATE | Private key. |

Control commands:

| | |
|---|---|
| IPC_RMID | Remove identifier. |
| IPC_SET | Set options. |
| IPC_STAT | Get options. |

The following shall be declared as a function and may also be defined as a macro. A function prototype shall be provided.

```
key_t  ftok(const char *, int);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *ftok*( )



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

12106 **CHANGE HISTORY**

12107 First released in Issue 2. Derived from System V Release 2.0.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

12108 **NAME**

12109 sys/mman.h — memory management declarations

12110 **SYNOPSIS**

12111 `#include <sys/mman.h>`

12112 **DESCRIPTION**

12113 The **<sys/mman.h>** header shall be supported if the implementation supports at least one of the
12114 following options:

12115 MF • The Memory Mapped Files option

12116 SHM • The Shared Memory Objects option

12117 ML • The Process Memory Locking option

12118 MPR • The Memory Protection option

12119 TYM • The Typed Memory Objects option

12120 SIO • The Synchronized Input and Output option

12121 ADV • The Advisory Information option

12122 TYM • The Typed Memory Objects option

12123 MC2 If one or more of the Advisory Information, Memory Mapped Files, or Shared Memory Objects
12124 options are supported, the following protection options shall be defined:

12125 MC2 PROT_READ Page can be read.

12126 MC2 PROT_WRITE Page can be written.

12127 MC2 PROT_EXEC Page can be executed.

12128 MC2 PROT_NONE Page cannot be accessed.

12129 The following *flag* options shall be defined:

12130 MF|SHM MAP_SHARED Share changes.

12131 MF|SHM MAP_PRIVATE Changes are private.

12132 MF|SHM MAP_FIXED Interpret *addr* exactly.

12133 The following flags shall be defined for *msync*( ):

12134 MF|SIO MS_ASYNC Perform asynchronous writes.

12135 MF|SIO MS_SYNC Perform synchronous writes.

12136 MF|SIO MS_INVALIDATE Invalidate mappings.

12137 ML The following symbolic constants shall be defined for the *mlockall*( ) function:

12138 ML MCL_CURRENT Lock currently mapped pages.

12139 ML MCL_FUTURE Lock pages that become mapped.

12140 MF|SHM The symbolic constant MAP_FAILED shall be defined to indicate a failure from the *mmap*( )
12141 function.

12142 MC1 If the Advisory Information and either the Memory Mapped Files or Shared Memory Objects
12143 options are supported, values for *advice* used by *posix_madvise*( ) shall be defined as follows:

12144 POSIX_MADV_NORMAL
12145 The application has no advice to give on its behavior with respect to the specified range. It



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

is the default characteristic if no advice is given for a range of memory.

POSIX_MADV_SEQUENTIAL
The application expects to access the specified range sequentially from lower addresses to higher addresses.

POSIX_MADV_RANDOM
The application expects to access the specified range in a random order.

POSIX_MADV_WILLNEED
The application expects to access the specified range in the near future.

POSIX_MADV_DONTNEED
The application expects that it will not access the specified range in the near future.

TYM The following flags shall be defined for *posix_typed_mem_open*( ):

POSIX_TYPED_MEM_ALLOCATE
Allocate on *mmap*( ).

POSIX_TYPED_MEM_ALLOCATE_CONTIG
Allocate contiguously on *mmap*( ).

POSIX_TYPED_MEM_MAP_ALLOCATABLE
Map on *mmap*( ), without affecting allocatability.

The **mode_t**, **off_t**, and **size_t** types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

TYM The **<sys/mman.h>** header shall define the structure **posix_typed_mem_info**, which includes at least the following member:

```
size_t  posix_tmi_length   Maximum length which may be allocated
                           from a typed memory object.
```

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
MLR     int    mlock(const void *, size_t);
ML      int    mlockall(int);
MC3     void  *mmap(void *, size_t, int, int, int, off_t);
MPR     int    mprotect(void *, size_t, int);
MF|SIO  int    msync(void *, size_t, int);
MLR     int    munlock(const void *, size_t);
ML      int    munlockall(void);
MC3     int    munmap(void *, size_t);
ADV     int    posix_madvise(void *, size_t, int);
TYM     int    posix_mem_offset(const void *restrict, size_t, off_t *restrict,
                    size_t *restrict, int *restrict);
        int    posix_typed_mem_get_info(int, struct posix_typed_mem_info *);
        int    posix_typed_mem_open(const char *, int, int);
SHM     int    shm_open(const char *, int, mode_t);
        int    shm_unlink(const char *);
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

12189 **APPLICATION USAGE**

12190 None.

12191 **RATIONALE**

12192 None.

12193 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

12194 None.

12195 **SEE ALSO**

12196 **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *mlock*( ), *mlockall*( ),
12197 *mmap*( ), *mprotect*( ), *msync*( ), *munlock*( ), *munlockall*( ), *munmap*( ), *posix_mem_offset*( ),
12198 *posix_typed_mem_get_info*( ), *posix_typed_mem_open*( ), *shm_open*( ), *shm_unlink*( )

12199 **CHANGE HISTORY**

12200 First released in Issue 4, Version 2.

12201 **Issue 5**

12202 Updated for alignment with the POSIX Realtime Extension.

12203 **Issue 6**

12204 The **<sys/mman.h>** header is marked as dependent on support for either the Memory Mapped
12205 Files, Process Memory Locking, or Shared Memory Objects options.

12206 The following changes are made for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1j-2000:

12207 • The TYM margin code is added to the list of margin codes for the **<sys/mman.h>** header line,
12208 as well as for other lines.

12209 • The POSIX_TYPED_MEM_ALLOCATE, POSIX_TYPED_MEM_ALLOCATE_CONTIG, and
12210 POSIX_TYPED_MEM_MAP_ALLOCATABLE flags are added.

12211 • The **posix_tmi_length** structure is added.

12212 • The *posix_mem_offset*( ), *posix_typed_mem_get_info*( ), and *posix_typed_mem_open*( ) functions
12213 are added.

12214 The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototype for *posix_mem_offset*( ).

12215 IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.1 #102 is applied, adding the prototype for *posix_madvise*( ).

12216 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/16 is applied, correcting margin code and
12217 shading errors for the *mlock*( ) and *munlock*( ) functions.

12218 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XSH/TC1/D6/34 is applied, changing the margin code
12219 for the *mmap*( ) function from MF|SHM to MC3 (notation for MF|SHM|TYM).

12220 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XSH/TC1/D6/36 is applied, changing the margin code
12221 for the *munmap*( ) function from MF|SHM to MC3 (notation for MF|SHM|TYM).



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

12222 **NAME**

12223 sys/msg.h — XSI message queue structures

12224 **SYNOPSIS**

12225 XSI
```
#include <sys/msg.h>
```
12226

12227 **DESCRIPTION**

12228 The **<sys/msg.h>** header shall define the following data types through **typedef**:

12229 **msgqnum_t** Used for the number of messages in the message queue.

12230 **msglen_t** Used for the number of bytes allowed in a message queue.

12231 These types shall be unsigned integer types that are able to store values at least as large as a type
12232 **unsigned short**.

12233 The **<sys/msg.h>** header shall define the following constant as a message operation flag:

12234 MSG_NOERROR No error if big message.

12235 The **msqid_ds** structure shall contain the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 12236 | `struct ipc_perm msg_perm` | Operation permission structure. |
| 12237 | `msgqnum_t msg_qnum` | Number of messages currently on queue. |
| 12238 | `msglen_t msg_qbytes` | Maximum number of bytes allowed on queue. |
| 12239 | `pid_t msg_lspid` | Process ID of last *msgsnd*( ). |
| 12240 | `pid_t msg_lrpid` | Process ID of last *msgrcv*( ). |
| 12241 | `time_t msg_stime` | Time of last *msgsnd*( ). |
| 12242 | `time_t msg_rtime` | Time of last *msgrcv*( ). |
| 12243 | `time_t msg_ctime` | Time of last change. |

12244 The **pid_t**, **time_t**, **key_t**, **size_t**, and **ssize_t** types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

12245 The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function
12246 prototypes shall be provided.

```
12247 int     msgctl(int, int, struct msqid_ds *);
12248 int     msgget(key_t, int);
12249 ssize_t msgrcv(int, void *, size_t, long, int);
12250 int     msgsnd(int, const void *, size_t, int);
```

12251 In addition, all of the symbols from **<sys/ipc.h>** shall be defined when this header is included.

12252 **APPLICATION USAGE**

12253 None.

12254 **RATIONALE**

12255 None.

12256 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

12257 None.

12258 **SEE ALSO**

12259 **<sys/ipc.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, *msgctl*( ), *msgget*( ), *msgrcv*( ), *msgsnd*( )

12260 **CHANGE HISTORY**

12261 First released in Issue 2. Derived from System V Release 2.0.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

12262 **NAME**

12263 sys/resource.h — definitions for XSI resource operations

12264 **SYNOPSIS**

12265 XSI
```
#include <sys/resource.h>
```
12266

12267 **DESCRIPTION**

12268 The **<sys/resource.h>** header shall define the following symbolic constants as possible values of
12269 the *which* argument of *getpriority*( ) and *setpriority*( ):

12270 PRIO_PROCESS Identifies the *who* argument as a process ID.

12271 PRIO_PGRP Identifies the *who* argument as a process group ID.

12272 PRIO_USER Identifies the *who* argument as a user ID.

12273 The following type shall be defined through **typedef**:

12274 **rlim_t** Unsigned integer type used for limit values.

12275 The following symbolic constants shall be defined:

12276 RLIM_INFINITY A value of **rlim_t** indicating no limit.

12277 RLIM_SAVED_MAX A value of type **rlim_t** indicating an unrepresentable saved hard
12278 limit.

12279 RLIM_SAVED_CUR A value of type **rlim_t** indicating an unrepresentable saved soft limit.

12280 On implementations where all resource limits are representable in an object of type **rlim_t**,
12281 RLIM_SAVED_MAX and RLIM_SAVED_CUR need not be distinct from RLIM_INFINITY.

12282 The following symbolic constants shall be defined as possible values of the *who* parameter of
12283 *getrusage*( ):

12284 RUSAGE_SELF Returns information about the current process.

12285 RUSAGE_CHILDREN Returns information about children of the current process.

12286 The **<sys/resource.h>** header shall define the **rlimit** structure that includes at least the following
12287 members:

12288 `rlim_t rlim_cur` The current (soft) limit.
12289 `rlim_t rlim_max` The hard limit.

12290 The **<sys/resource.h>** header shall define the **rusage** structure that includes at least the following
12291 members:

12292 `struct timeval ru_utime` User time used.
12293 `struct timeval ru_stime` System time used.

12294 The **timeval** structure shall be defined as described in **<sys/time.h>**.

12295 The following symbolic constants shall be defined as possible values for the *resource* argument of
12296 *getrlimit*( ) and *setrlimit*( ):

12297 RLIMIT_CORE Limit on size of **core** file.

12298 RLIMIT_CPU Limit on CPU time per process.

12299 RLIMIT_DATA Limit on data segment size.

12300 RLIMIT_FSIZE Limit on file size.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 12301 | RLIMIT_NOFILE | Limit on number of open files. |
| 12302 | RLIMIT_STACK | Limit on stack size. |
| 12303 | RLIMIT_AS | Limit on address space size. |

12304 The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function
12305 prototypes shall be provided.

```
12306 int  getpriority(int, id_t);
12307 int  getrlimit(int, struct rlimit *);
12308 int  getrusage(int, struct rusage *);
12309 int  setpriority(int, id_t, int);
12310 int  setrlimit(int, const struct rlimit *);
```

12311 The **id_t** type shall be defined through **typedef** as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

12312 Inclusion of the **<sys/resource.h>** header may also make visible all symbols from **<sys/time.h>**.

12313 **APPLICATION USAGE**

12314 None.

12315 **RATIONALE**

12316 None.

12317 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

12318 None.

12319 **SEE ALSO**

12320 **<sys/time.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *getpriority*( ),
12321 *getrusage*( ), *getrlimit*( )

12322 **CHANGE HISTORY**

12323 First released in Issue 4, Version 2.

12324 **Issue 5**

12325 Large File System extensions are added.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

12326 **NAME**

12327 sys/select.h — select types

12328 **SYNOPSIS**

12329
```
#include <sys/select.h>
```

12330 **DESCRIPTION**

12331 The **<sys/select.h>** header shall define the **timeval** structure that includes at least the following
12332 members:

12333 `time_t` `tv_sec` Seconds.
12334 `suseconds_t` `tv_usec` Microseconds.

12335 The **time_t** and **suseconds_t** types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

12336 The **sigset_t** type shall be defined as described in **<signal.h>**.

12337 The **timespec** structure shall be defined as described in **<time.h>**.

12338 The **<sys/select.h>** header shall define the **fd_set** type as a structure.

12339 Each of the following may be declared as a function, or defined as a macro, or both:

12340 **void** *FD_CLR*(**int** *fd*, **fd_set ***fdset*)
12341 Clears the bit for the file descriptor *fd* in the file descriptor set *fdset*.

12342 **int** *FD_ISSET*(**int** *fd*, **fd_set ***fdset*)
12343 Returns a non-zero value if the bit for the file descriptor *fd* is set in the file descriptor set by
12344 *fdset*, and 0 otherwise.

12345 **void** *FD_SET*(**int** *fd*, **fd_set ***fdset*)
12346 Sets the bit for the file descriptor *fd* in the file descriptor set *fdset*.

12347 **void** *FD_ZERO*(**fd_set ***fdset*)
12348 Initializes the file descriptor set *fdset* to have zero bits for all file descriptors.

12349 If implemented as macros, these may evaluate their arguments more than once, so applications
12350 should ensure that the arguments they supply are never expressions with side effects.

12351 The following shall be defined as a macro:

12352 FD_SETSIZE
12353 Maximum number of file descriptors in an **fd_set** structure.

12354 The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function
12355 prototypes shall be provided.

12356
```
int  pselect(int, fd_set *restrict, fd_set *restrict, fd_set *restrict,
12357         const struct timespec *restrict, const sigset_t *restrict);
12358 int  select(int, fd_set *restrict, fd_set *restrict, fd_set *restrict,
12359         struct timeval *restrict);
```

12360 Inclusion of the **<sys/select.h>** header may make visible all symbols from the headers
12361 **<signal.h>**, **<sys/time.h>**, and **<time.h>**.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved. 

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

12362 **APPLICATION USAGE**

12363 None.

12364 **RATIONALE**

12365 None.

12366 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

12367 None.

12368 **SEE ALSO**

12369 **<signal.h>**, **<sys/time.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, **<time.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of
12370 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *pselect*( ), *select*( )

12371 **CHANGE HISTORY**

12372 First released in Issue 6. Derived from IEEE Std 1003.1g-2000.

12373 The requirement for the **fd_set** structure to have a member *fds_bits* has been removed as per The
12374 Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-005.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

## NAME

sys/sem.h — XSI semaphore facility

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <sys/sem.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<sys/sem.h>** header shall define the following constants and structures.

Semaphore operation flags:

SEM_UNDO Set up adjust on exit entry.

Command definitions for the *semctl*( ) function shall be provided as follows:

GETNCNT Get *semncnt*.

GETPID Get *sempid*.

GETVAL Get *semval*.

GETALL Get all cases of *semval*.

GETZCNT Get *semzcnt*.

SETVAL Set *semval*.

SETALL Set all cases of *semval*.

The **semid_ds** structure shall contain the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `struct ipc_perm` | `sem_perm` | Operation permission structure. |
| `unsigned short` | `sem_nsems` | Number of semaphores in set. |
| `time_t` | `sem_otime` | Last *semop*( ) time. |
| `time_t` | `sem_ctime` | Last time changed by *semctl*( ). |

The **pid_t**, **time_t**, **key_t**, and **size_t** types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

A semaphore shall be represented by an anonymous structure containing the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `unsigned short` | `semval` | Semaphore value. |
| `pid_t` | `sempid` | Process ID of last operation. |
| `unsigned short` | `semncnt` | Number of processes waiting for *semval* to become greater than current value. |
| `unsigned short` | `semzcnt` | Number of processes waiting for *semval* to become 0. |

The **sembuf** structure shall contain the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `unsigned short` | `sem_num` | Semaphore number. |
| `short` | `sem_op` | Semaphore operation. |
| `short` | `sem_flg` | Operation flags. |

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int   semctl(int, int, int, ...);
int   semget(key_t, int, int);
int   semop(int, struct sembuf *, size_t);
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

In addition, all of the symbols from **<sys/ipc.h>** shall be defined when this header is included.

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<sys/ipc.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, *semctl*( ), *semget*( ), *semop*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 2. Derived from System V Release 2.0.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

sys/shm.h — XSI shared memory facility

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <sys/shm.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<sys/shm.h>** header shall define the following symbolic constants:

SHM_RDONLY Attach read-only (else read-write).

SHM_RND Round attach address to SHMLBA.

The **<sys/shm.h>** header shall define the following symbolic value:

SHMLBA Segment low boundary address multiple.

The following data types shall be defined through **typedef**:

**shmatt_t** Unsigned integer used for the number of current attaches that must be able to store values at least as large as a type **unsigned short**.

The **shmid_ds** structure shall contain the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `struct ipc_perm` | `shm_perm` | Operation permission structure. |
| `size_t` | `shm_segsz` | Size of segment in bytes. |
| `pid_t` | `shm_lpid` | Process ID of last shared memory operation. |
| `pid_t` | `shm_cpid` | Process ID of creator. |
| `shmatt_t` | `shm_nattch` | Number of current attaches. |
| `time_t` | `shm_atime` | Time of last *shmat*( ). |
| `time_t` | `shm_dtime` | Time of last *shmdt*( ). |
| `time_t` | `shm_ctime` | Time of last change by *shmctl*( ). |

The **pid_t**, **time_t**, **key_t**, and **size_t** types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
void *shmat(int, const void *, int);
int   shmctl(int, int, struct shmid_ds *);
int   shmdt(const void *);
int   shmget(key_t, size_t, int);
```

In addition, all of the symbols from **<sys/ipc.h>** shall be defined when this header is included.

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<sys/ipc.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *shmat*( ), *shmctl*( ), *shmdt*( ), *shmget*( )



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

12466 **CHANGE HISTORY**

12467 First released in Issue 2. Derived from System V Release 2.0.

12468 **Issue 5**

12469 The type of *shm_segsz* is changed from **int** to **size_t**.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

12470 **NAME**

12471 sys/socket.h — main sockets header

12472 **SYNOPSIS**

12473 `#include <sys/socket.h>`

12474 **DESCRIPTION**

12475 The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the type **socklen_t**, which is an integer type of width of
12476 at least 32 bits; see APPLICATION USAGE.

12477 The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the unsigned integer type **sa_family_t**.

12478 The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the **sockaddr** structure that includes at least the
12479 following members:

12480 `sa_family_t  sa_family`  Address family.
12481 `char  sa_data[]`  Socket address (variable-length data).

12482 The **sockaddr** structure is used to define a socket address which is used in the *bind*( ), *connect*( ),
12483 *getpeername*( ), *getsockname*( ), *recvfrom*( ), and *sendto*( ) functions.

12484 The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the **sockaddr_storage** structure. This structure shall be:

12485 • Large enough to accommodate all supported protocol-specific address structures

12486 • Aligned at an appropriate boundary so that pointers to it can be cast as pointers to protocol-
12487 specific address structures and used to access the fields of those structures without
12488 alignment problems

12489 The **sockaddr_storage** structure shall contain at least the following members:

12490 `sa_family_t  ss_family`

12491 When a **sockaddr_storage** structure is cast as a **sockaddr** structure, the *ss_family* field of the
12492 **sockaddr_storage** structure shall map onto the *sa_family* field of the **sockaddr** structure. When a
12493 **sockaddr_storage** structure is cast as a protocol-specific address structure, the *ss_family* field
12494 shall map onto a field of that structure that is of type **sa_family_t** and that identifies the
12495 protocol's address family.

12496 The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the **msghdr** structure that includes at least the following
12497 members:

12498 `void  *msg_name`  Optional address.
12499 `socklen_t  msg_namelen`  Size of address.
12500 `struct iovec  *msg_iov`  Scatter/gather array.
12501 `int  msg_iovlen`  Members in *msg_iov*.
12502 `void  *msg_control`  Ancillary data; see below.
12503 `socklen_t  msg_controllen`  Ancillary data buffer *len*.
12504 `int  msg_flags`  Flags on received message.

12505 The **msghdr** structure is used to minimize the number of directly supplied parameters to the
12506 *recvmsg*( ) and *sendmsg*( ) functions. This structure is used as a *value-result* parameter in the
12507 *recvmsg*( ) function and *value* only for the *sendmsg*( ) function.

12508 The **iovec** structure shall be defined as described in **<sys/uio.h>**.

12509 The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the **cmsghdr** structure that includes at least the following
12510 members:

12511 `socklen_t  cmsg_len`  Data byte count, including the **cmsghdr**.
12512 `int  cmsg_level`  Originating protocol.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

12513 `int cmsg_type` Protocol-specific type.

12514 The **cmsghdr** structure is used for storage of ancillary data object information.

12515 Ancillary data consists of a sequence of pairs, each consisting of a **cmsghdr** structure followed
12516 by a data array. The data array contains the ancillary data message, and the **cmsghdr** structure
12517 contains descriptive information that allows an application to correctly parse the data.

12518 The values for *cmsg_level* shall be legal values for the *level* argument to the *getsockopt*( ) and
12519 *setsockopt*( ) functions. The system documentation shall specify the *cmsg_type* definitions for the
12520 supported protocols.

12521 Ancillary data is also possible at the socket level. The **<sys/socket.h>** header defines the
12522 following macro for use as the *cmsg_type* value when *cmsg_level* is SOL_SOCKET:

12523 SCM_RIGHTS Indicates that the data array contains the access rights to be sent or
12524 received.

12525 The **<sys/socket.h>** header defines the following macros to gain access to the data arrays in the
12526 ancillary data associated with a message header:

12527 CMSG_DATA(*cmsg*)
12528 If the argument is a pointer to a **cmsghdr** structure, this macro shall return an unsigned
12529 character pointer to the data array associated with the **cmsghdr** structure.

12530 CMSG_NXTHDR(*mhdr*,*cmsg*)
12531 If the first argument is a pointer to a **msghdr** structure and the second argument is a pointer
12532 to a **cmsghdr** structure in the ancillary data pointed to by the *msg_control* field of that
12533 **msghdr** structure, this macro shall return a pointer to the next **cmsghdr** structure, or a null
12534 pointer if this structure is the last **cmsghdr** in the ancillary data.

12535 CMSG_FIRSTHDR(*mhdr*)
12536 If the argument is a pointer to a **msghdr** structure, this macro shall return a pointer to the
12537 first **cmsghdr** structure in the ancillary data associated with this **msghdr** structure, or a null
12538 pointer if there is no ancillary data associated with the **msghdr** structure.

12539 The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the **linger** structure that includes at least the following
12540 members:

12541 `int l_onoff` Indicates whether linger option is enabled.
12542 `int l_linger` Linger time, in seconds.

12543 The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the following macros, with distinct integer values:

12544 SOCK_DGRAM Datagram socket.

12545 RS SOCK_RAW Raw Protocol Interface.

12546 SOCK_SEQPACKET Sequenced-packet socket.

12547 SOCK_STREAM Byte-stream socket.

12548 The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the following macro for use as the *level* argument of
12549 *setsockopt*( ) and *getsockopt*( ).

12550 SOL_SOCKET Options to be accessed at socket level, not protocol level.

12551 The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the following macros, with distinct integer values, for
12552 use as the *option_name* argument in *getsockopt*( ) or *setsockopt*( ) calls:

12553 SO_ACCEPTCONN Socket is accepting connections.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| SO_BROADCAST | Transmission of broadcast messages is supported. |
| SO_DEBUG | Debugging information is being recorded. |
| SO_DONTROUTE | Bypass normal routing. |
| SO_ERROR | Socket error status. |
| SO_KEEPALIVE | Connections are kept alive with periodic messages. |
| SO_LINGER | Socket lingers on close. |
| SO_OOBINLINE | Out-of-band data is transmitted in line. |
| SO_RCVBUF | Receive buffer size. |
| SO_RCVLOWAT | Receive ‘‘low water mark’’. |
| SO_RCVTIMEO | Receive timeout. |
| SO_REUSEADDR | Reuse of local addresses is supported. |
| SO_SNDBUF | Send buffer size. |
| SO_SNDLOWAT | Send ‘‘low water mark’’. |
| SO_SNDTIMEO | Send timeout. |
| SO_TYPE | Socket type. |

The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the following macro as the maximum *backlog* queue length which may be specified by the *backlog* field of the *listen*( ) function:

| | |
|---|---|
| SOMAXCONN | The maximum *backlog* queue length. |

The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the following macros, with distinct integer values, for use as the valid values for the *msg_flags* field in the **msghdr** structure, or the *flags* parameter in *recvfrom*( ), *recvmsg*( ), *sendmsg*( ), or *sendto*( ) calls:

| | |
|---|---|
| MSG_CTRUNC | Control data truncated. |
| MSG_DONTROUTE | Send without using routing tables. |
| MSG_EOR | Terminates a record (if supported by the protocol). |
| MSG_OOB | Out-of-band data. |
| MSG_PEEK | Leave received data in queue. |
| MSG_TRUNC | Normal data truncated. |
| MSG_WAITALL | Attempt to fill the read buffer. |

The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the following macros, with distinct integer values:

| | |
|---|---|
| AF_INET | Internet domain sockets for use with IPv4 addresses. |
| IP6 AF_INET6 | Internet domain sockets for use with IPv6 addresses. |
| AF_UNIX | UNIX domain sockets. |
| AF_UNSPEC | Unspecified. |

The **<sys/socket.h>** header shall define the following macros, with distinct integer values:

| | |
|---|---|
| SHUT_RD | Disables further receive operations. |



--`,,,-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

12589 SHUT_RDWR Disables further send and receive operations.

12590 SHUT_WR Disables further send operations.

12591 The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function
12592 prototypes shall be provided.

```
12593 int     accept(int, struct sockaddr *restrict, socklen_t *restrict);
12594 int     bind(int, const struct sockaddr *, socklen_t);
12595 int     connect(int, const struct sockaddr *, socklen_t);
12596 int     getpeername(int, struct sockaddr *restrict, socklen_t *restrict);
12597 int     getsockname(int, struct sockaddr *restrict, socklen_t *restrict);
12598 int     getsockopt(int, int, int, void *restrict, socklen_t *restrict);
12599 int     listen(int, int);
12600 ssize_t recv(int, void *, size_t, int);
12601 ssize_t recvfrom(int, void *restrict, size_t, int,
12602         struct sockaddr *restrict, socklen_t *restrict);
12603 ssize_t recvmsg(int, struct msghdr *, int);
12604 ssize_t send(int, const void *, size_t, int);
12605 ssize_t sendmsg(int, const struct msghdr *, int);
12606 ssize_t sendto(int, const void *, size_t, int, const struct sockaddr *,
12607         socklen_t);
12608 int     setsockopt(int, int, int, const void *, socklen_t);
12609 int     shutdown(int, int);
12610 int     socket(int, int, int);
12611 int     sockatmark(int);
12612 int     socketpair(int, int, int, int[2]);
```

12613 Inclusion of **<sys/socket.h>** may also make visible all symbols from **<sys/uio.h>**.

12614 **APPLICATION USAGE**

12615 To forestall portability problems, it is recommended that applications not use values larger than
12616 $2^{31}$ –1 for the **socklen_t** type.

12617 The **sockaddr_storage** structure solves the problem of declaring storage for automatic variables
12618 which is both large enough and aligned enough for storing the socket address data structure of
12619 any family. For example, code with a file descriptor and without the context of the address
12620 family can pass a pointer to a variable of this type, where a pointer to a socket address structure
12621 is expected in calls such as *getpeername*( ), and determine the address family by accessing the
12622 received content after the call.

12623 The example below illustrates a data structure which aligns on a 64-bit boundary. An
12624 implementation-defined field *_ss_align* following *_ss_pad1* is used to force a 64-bit alignment
12625 which covers proper alignment good enough for needs of at least **sockaddr_in6** (IPv6) and
12626 **sockaddr_in** (IPv4) address data structures. The size of padding field *_ss_pad1* depends on the
12627 chosen alignment boundary. The size of padding field *_ss_pad2* depends on the value of overall
12628 size chosen for the total size of the structure. This size and alignment are represented in the
12629 above example by implementation-defined (not required) constants _SS_MAXSIZE (chosen
12630 value 128) and _SS_ALIGNMENT (with chosen value 8). Constants _SS_PAD1SIZE (derived
12631 value 6) and _SS_PAD2SIZE (derived value 112) are also for illustration and not required. The
12632 implementation-defined definitions and structure field names above start with an underscore to
12633 denote implementation private name space. Portable code is not expected to access or reference
12634 those fields or constants.

```
12635 /*
12636  *  Desired design of maximum size and alignment.
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
12637         */
12638        #define _SS_MAXSIZE 128
12639            /* Implementation-defined maximum size. */
12640        #define _SS_ALIGNSIZE (sizeof(int64_t))
12641            /* Implementation-defined desired alignment. */
12642        /*
12643         *  Definitions used for sockaddr_storage structure paddings design.
12644         */
12645        #define _SS_PAD1SIZE (_SS_ALIGNSIZE - sizeof(sa_family_t))
12646        #define _SS_PAD2SIZE (_SS_MAXSIZE - (sizeof(sa_family_t)+ \
12647                              _SS_PAD1SIZE + _SS_ALIGNSIZE))
12648        struct sockaddr_storage {
12649            sa_family_t  ss_family;  /* Address family. */
12650        /*
12651         *  Following fields are implementation-defined.
12652         */
12653            char _ss_pad1[_SS_PAD1SIZE];
12654                /* 6-byte pad; this is to make implementation-defined
12655                   pad up to alignment field that follows explicit in
12656                   the data structure. */
12657            int64_t _ss_align;  /* Field to force desired structure
12658                                   storage alignment. */
12659            char _ss_pad2[_SS_PAD2SIZE];
12660                /* 112-byte pad to achieve desired size,
12661                   _SS_MAXSIZE value minus size of ss_family
12662                   __ss_pad1, __ss_align fields is 112. */
12663        };
```

12664 **RATIONALE**

12665 None.

12666 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

12667 None.

12668 **SEE ALSO**

12669 **<sys/uio.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *accept*( ), *bind*( ), *connect*( ),
12670 *getpeername*( ), *getsockname*( ), *getsockopt*( ), *listen*( ), *recv*( ), *recvfrom*( ), *recvmsg*( ), *send*( ),
12671 *sendmsg*( ), *sendto*( ), *setsockopt*( ), *shutdown*( ), *socket*( ), *socketpair*( )

12672 **CHANGE HISTORY**

12673 First released in Issue 6. Derived from the XNS, Issue 5.2 specification.

12674 The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototypes for *accept*( ), *getpeername*( ), *getsockname*( ),
12675 *getsockopt*( ), and *recvfrom*( ).



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

12676 **NAME**

12677 sys/stat.h — data returned by the stat( ) function

12678 **SYNOPSIS**

12679 `#include <sys/stat.h>`

12680 **DESCRIPTION**

12681 The **<sys/stat.h>** header shall define the structure of the data returned by the functions *fstat*( ),
12682 *lstat*( ), and *stat*( ).

12683 The **stat** structure shall contain at least the following members:

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 12684 | | `dev_t` | `st_dev` | Device ID of device containing file. |
| 12685 | | `ino_t` | `st_ino` | File serial number. |
| 12686 | | `mode_t` | `st_mode` | Mode of file (see below). |
| 12687 | | `nlink_t` | `st_nlink` | Number of hard links to the file. |
| 12688 | | `uid_t` | `st_uid` | User ID of file. |
| 12689 | | `gid_t` | `st_gid` | Group ID of file. |
| 12690 | XSI | `dev_t` | `st_rdev` | Device ID (if file is character or block special). |
| 12691 | | `off_t` | `st_size` | For regular files, the file size in bytes. |
| 12692 | | | | For symbolic links, the length in bytes of the |
| 12693 | | | | pathname contained in the symbolic link. |
| 12694 | SHM | | | For a shared memory object, the length in bytes. |
| 12695 | TYM | | | For a typed memory object, the length in bytes. |
| 12696 | | | | For other file types, the use of this field is |
| 12697 | | | | unspecified. |
| 12698 | | `time_t` | `st_atime` | Time of last access. |
| 12699 | | `time_t` | `st_mtime` | Time of last data modification. |
| 12700 | | `time_t` | `st_ctime` | Time of last status change. |
| 12701 | XSI | `blksize_t` | `st_blksize` | A file system-specific preferred I/O block size for |
| 12702 | | | | this object. In some file system types, this may |
| 12703 | | | | vary from file to file. |
| 12704 | | `blkcnt_t` | `st_blocks` | Number of blocks allocated for this object. |

12705

12706 The *st_ino* and *st_dev* fields taken together uniquely identify the file within the system. The
12707 **blkcnt_t**, **blksize_t**, **dev_t**, **ino_t**, **mode_t**, **nlink_t**, **uid_t**, **gid_t**, **off_t**, and **time_t** types shall be
12708 defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**. Times shall be given in seconds since the Epoch.

12709 Unless otherwise specified, the structure members *st_mode*, *st_ino*, *st_dev*, *st_uid*, *st_gid*, *st_atime*,
12710 *st_ctime*, and *st_mtime* shall have meaningful values for all file types defined in
12711 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

12712 For symbolic links, the *st_mode* member shall contain meaningful information, which can be
12713 used with the file type macros described below, that take a *mode* argument. The *st_size* member
12714 shall contain the length, in bytes, of the pathname contained in the symbolic link. File mode bits
12715 and the contents of the remaining members of the **stat** structure are unspecified. The value
12716 returned in the *st_size* field shall be the length of the contents of the symbolic link, and shall not
12717 count a trailing null if one is present.

12718 The following symbolic names for the values of type **mode_t** shall also be defined.

12719 File type:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 12720 | XSI | S_IFMT | Type of file. |
| 12721 | | S_IFBLK | Block special. |


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 12722 | | S_IFCHR | Character special. |
| 12723 | | S_IFIFO | FIFO special. |
| 12724 | | S_IFREG | Regular. |
| 12725 | | S_IFDIR | Directory. |
| 12726 | | S_IFLNK | Symbolic link. |
| 12727 | | S_IFSOCK | Socket. |

12728 File mode bits:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 12729 | S_IRWXU | Read, write, execute/search by owner. | |
| 12730 | | S_IRUSR | Read permission, owner. |
| 12731 | | S_IWUSR | Write permission, owner. |
| 12732 | | S_IXUSR | Execute/search permission, owner. |
| 12733 | S_IRWXG | Read, write, execute/search by group. | |
| 12734 | | S_IRGRP | Read permission, group. |
| 12735 | | S_IWGRP | Write permission, group. |
| 12736 | | S_IXGRP | Execute/search permission, group. |
| 12737 | S_IRWXO | Read, write, execute/search by others. | |
| 12738 | | S_IROTH | Read permission, others. |
| 12739 | | S_IWOTH | Write permission, others. |
| 12740 | | S_IXOTH | Execute/search permission, others. |
| 12741 | S_ISUID | Set-user-ID on execution. | |
| 12742 | S_ISGID | Set-group-ID on execution. | |
| 12743 XSI | S_ISVTX | On directories, restricted deletion flag. | |

12744 The bits defined by S_IRUSR, S_IWUSR, S_IXUSR, S_IRGRP, S_IWGRP, S_IXGRP, S_IROTH,
12745 XSI S_IWOTH, S_IXOTH, S_ISUID, S_ISGID, and S_ISVTX shall be unique.

12746 S_IRWXU is the bitwise-inclusive OR of S_IRUSR, S_IWUSR, and S_IXUSR.

12747 S_IRWXG is the bitwise-inclusive OR of S_IRGRP, S_IWGRP, and S_IXGRP.

12748 S_IRWXO is the bitwise-inclusive OR of S_IROTH, S_IWOTH, and S_IXOTH.

12749 Implementations may OR other implementation-defined bits into S_IRWXU, S_IRWXG, and
12750 S_IRWXO, but they shall not overlap any of the other bits defined in this volume of
12751 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. The *file permission bits* are defined to be those corresponding to the
12752 bitwise-inclusive OR of S_IRWXU, S_IRWXG, and S_IRWXO.

12753 The following macros shall be provided to test whether a file is of the specified type. The value
12754 *m* supplied to the macros is the value of *st_mode* from a **stat** structure. The macro shall evaluate
12755 to a non-zero value if the test is true; 0 if the test is false.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 12756 | S_ISBLK(*m*) | Test for a block special file. |
| 12757 | S_ISCHR(*m*) | Test for a character special file. |



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

S_ISDIR(*m*) Test for a directory.

S_ISFIFO(*m*) Test for a pipe or FIFO special file.

S_ISREG(*m*) Test for a regular file.

S_ISLNK(*m*) Test for a symbolic link.

S_ISSOCK(*m*) Test for a socket.

The implementation may implement message queues, semaphores, or shared memory objects as distinct file types. The following macros shall be provided to test whether a file is of the specified type. The value of the *buf* argument supplied to the macros is a pointer to a **stat** structure. The macro shall evaluate to a non-zero value if the specified object is implemented as a distinct file type and the specified file type is contained in the **stat** structure referenced by *buf*. Otherwise, the macro shall evaluate to zero.

S_TYPEISMQ(*buf*) Test for a message queue.

S_TYPEISSEM(*buf*) Test for a semaphore.

S_TYPEISSHM(*buf*) Test for a shared memory object.

TYM The implementation may implement typed memory objects as distinct file types, and the following macro shall test whether a file is of the specified type. The value of the *buf* argument supplied to the macros is a pointer to a **stat** structure. The macro shall evaluate to a non-zero value if the specified object is implemented as a distinct file type and the specified file type is contained in the **stat** structure referenced by *buf*. Otherwise, the macro shall evaluate to zero.

S_TYPEISTMO(*buf*) Test macro for a typed memory object.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int    chmod(const char *, mode_t);
int    fchmod(int, mode_t);
int    fstat(int, struct stat *);
int    lstat(const char *restrict, struct stat *restrict);
int    mkdir(const char *, mode_t);
int    mkfifo(const char *, mode_t);
XSI int    mknod(const char *, mode_t, dev_t);
int    stat(const char *restrict, struct stat *restrict);
mode_t umask(mode_t);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

Use of the macros is recommended for determining the type of a file.

## RATIONALE

A conforming C-language application must include **<sys/stat.h>** for functions that have arguments or return values of type **mode_t**, so that symbolic values for that type can be used. An alternative would be to require that these constants are also defined by including **<sys/types.h>**.

The S_ISUID and S_ISGID bits may be cleared on any write, not just on *open*( ), as some historical implementations do.

System calls that update the time entry fields in the **stat** structure must be documented by the implementors. POSIX-conforming systems should not update the time entry fields for functions listed in the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 unless the standard requires that


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

they do, except in the case of documented extensions to the standard.

Note that *st_dev* must be unique within a Local Area Network (LAN) in a ''system'' made up of multiple computers' file systems connected by a LAN.

Networked implementations of a POSIX-conforming system must guarantee that all files visible within the file tree (including parts of the tree that may be remotely mounted from other machines on the network) on each individual processor are uniquely identified by the combination of the *st_ino* and *st_dev* fields.

The unit for the *st_blocks* member of the **stat** structure is not defined within IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. In some implementations it is 512 bytes. It may differ on a file system basis. There is no correlation between values of the *st_blocks* and *st_blksize*, and the *f_bsize* (from **<sys/statvfs.h>**) structure members.

Traditionally, some implementations defined the multiplier for *st_blocks* in **<sys/param.h>** as the symbol DEV_BSIZE.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

No new S_IFMT symbolic names for the file type values of **mode_t** will be defined by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001; if new file types are required, they will only be testable through *S_ISxx*( ) or *S_TYPEISxxx*( ) macros instead.

## SEE ALSO

**<sys/statvfs.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *chmod*( ), *fchmod*( ), *fstat*( ), *lstat*( ), *mkdir*( ), *mkfifo*( ), *mknod*( ), *stat*( ), *umask*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.

### Issue 5

The DESCRIPTION is updated for alignment with the POSIX Realtime Extension.

The type of *st_blksize* is changed from **long** to **blksize_t**; the type of *st_blocks* is changed from **long** to **blkcnt_t**.

### Issue 6

The S_TYPEISMQ( ), S_TYPEISSEM( ), and S_TYPEISSHM( ) macros are unconditionally mandated.

The Open Group Corrigendum U035/4 is applied. In the DESCRIPTION, the types **blksize_t** and **blkcnt_t** have been described.

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The **dev_t**, **ino_t**, **mode_t**, **nlink_t**, **uid_t**, **gid_t**, **off_t**, and **time_t** types are mandated.

S_IFSOCK and S_ISSOCK are added for sockets.

The description of **stat** structure members is changed to reflect contents when file type is a symbolic link.

The test macro S_TYPEISTMO is added for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1j-2000.

The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototypes for *lstat*( ) and *stat*( ).

The *lstat*( ) function is made mandatory.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/17 is applied, adding text regarding the *st_blocks* member of the **stat** structure to the RATIONALE.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

12844 **NAME**

12845 sys/statvfs.h — VFS File System information structure

12846 **SYNOPSIS**

12847 XSI
```
#include <sys/statvfs.h>
```
12848

12849 **DESCRIPTION**

12850 The **<sys/statvfs.h>** header shall define the **statvfs** structure that includes at least the following
12851 members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 12852 | `unsigned long f_bsize` | File system block size. |
| 12853 | `unsigned long f_frsize` | Fundamental file system block size. |
| 12854 | `fsblkcnt_t f_blocks` | Total number of blocks on file system in units of *f_frsize*. |
| 12855 | `fsblkcnt_t f_bfree` | Total number of free blocks. |
| 12856 | `fsblkcnt_t f_bavail` | Number of free blocks available to |
| 12857 | | non-privileged process. |
| 12858 | `fsfilcnt_t f_files` | Total number of file serial numbers. |
| 12859 | `fsfilcnt_t f_ffree` | Total number of free file serial numbers. |
| 12860 | `fsfilcnt_t f_favail` | Number of file serial numbers available to |
| 12861 | | non-privileged process. |
| 12862 | `unsigned long f_fsid` | File system ID. |
| 12863 | `unsigned long f_flag` | Bit mask of *f_flag* values. |
| 12864 | `unsigned long f_namemax` | Maximum filename length. |

12865 The **fsblkcnt_t** and **fsfilcnt_t** types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

12866 The following flags for the *f_flag* member shall be defined:

12867 ST_RDONLY Read-only file system.

12868 ST_NOSUID Does not support the semantics of the ST_ISUID and ST_ISGID file mode bits. |

12869 The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function
12870 prototypes shall be provided.

```
12871 int statvfs(const char *restrict, struct statvfs *restrict);
12872 int fstatvfs(int, struct statvfs *);
```

12873 **APPLICATION USAGE**

12874 None.

12875 **RATIONALE**

12876 None.

12877 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

12878 None.

12879 **SEE ALSO**

12880 **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *fstatvfs*( ), *statvfs*( )

12881 **CHANGE HISTORY**

12882 First released in Issue 4, Version 2.

12883 **Issue 5**

12884 The type of *f_blocks*, *f_bfree*, and *f_bavail* is changed from **unsigned long** to **fsblkcnt_t**; the type
12885 of *f_files*, *f_ffree*, and *f_favail* is changed from **unsigned long** to **fsfilcnt_t**.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

**Issue 6**

The Open Group Corrigendum U035/5 is applied. In the DESCRIPTION, the types **fsblkcnt_t** and **fsfilcnt_t** have been described.

The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototype for *statvfs*().

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/18 is applied, changing the description of ST_NOSUID from ''Does not support *setuid*()/*setgid*() semantics'' to ''Does not support the semantics of the ST_ISUID and ST_ISGID file mode bits''.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

sys/time.h — time types

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <sys/time.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<sys/time.h>** header shall define the **timeval** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `time_t` | `tv_sec` | Seconds. |
| `suseconds_t` | `tv_usec` | Microseconds. |

The **<sys/time.h>** header shall define the **itimerval** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `struct timeval` | `it_interval` | Timer interval. |
| `struct timeval` | `it_value` | Current value. |

The **time_t** and **suseconds_t** types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

The **fd_set** type shall be defined as described in **<sys/select.h>**.

The **<sys/time.h>** header shall define the following values for the *which* argument of *getitimer*( ) and *setitimer*( ):

| | |
|---|---|
| ITIMER_REAL | Decrements in real time. |
| ITIMER_VIRTUAL | Decrements in process virtual time. |
| ITIMER_PROF | Decrements both in process virtual time and when the system is running on behalf of the process. |

The following shall be defined as described in **<sys/select.h>**:

*FD_CLR*( )
*FD_ISSET*( )
*FD_SET*( )
*FD_ZERO*( )
FD_SETSIZE

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int   getitimer(int, struct itimerval *);
int   gettimeofday(struct timeval *restrict, void *restrict);
int   select(int, fd_set *restrict, fd_set *restrict, fd_set *restrict,
          struct timeval *restrict);
int   setitimer(int, const struct itimerval *restrict,
          struct itimerval *restrict);
int   utimes(const char *, const struct timeval [2]); (LEGACY)
```

Inclusion of the **<sys/time.h>** header may make visible all symbols from the **<sys/select.h>** header.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

12932 **APPLICATION USAGE**

12933 None.

12934 **RATIONALE**

12935 None.

12936 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

12937 None.

12938 **SEE ALSO**

12939 **<sys/select.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *getitimer*( ),
12940 *gettimeofday*( ), *select*( ), *setitimer*( )

12941 **CHANGE HISTORY**

12942 First released in Issue 4, Version 2.

12943 **Issue 5**

12944 The type of *tv_usec* is changed from **long** to **suseconds_t**.

12945 **Issue 6**

12946 The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototypes for *gettimeofday*( ), *select*( ), and *setitimer*( ).

12947 The note is added that inclusion of this header may also make symbols visible from
12948 **<sys/select.h>**.

12949 The *utimes*( ) function is marked LEGACY.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

sys/timeb.h — additional definitions for date and time

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <sys/timeb.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<sys/timeb.h>** header shall define the **timeb** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `time_t` | `time` | The seconds portion of the current time. |
| `unsigned short` | `millitm` | The milliseconds portion of the current time. |
| `short` | `timezone` | The local timezone in minutes west of Greenwich. |
| `short` | `dstflag` | TRUE if Daylight Savings Time is in effect. |

The **time_t** type shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

The following shall be declared as a function and may also be defined as a macro. A function prototype shall be provided.

```
int   ftime(struct timeb *);
```
(**LEGACY**)

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<sys/types.h>**, **<time.h>**

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4, Version 2.

### Issue 6

The *ftime*( ) function is marked LEGACY.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

12978 **NAME**

12979 sys/times.h — file access and modification times structure

12980 **SYNOPSIS**

12981 `#include <sys/times.h>`

12982 **DESCRIPTION**

12983 The **<sys/times.h>** header shall define the structure **tms**, which is returned by *times*() and
12984 includes at least the following members:

12985 `clock_t tms_utime` User CPU time.
12986 `clock_t tms_stime` System CPU time.
12987 `clock_t tms_cutime` User CPU time of terminated child processes.
12988 `clock_t tms_cstime` System CPU time of terminated child processes.

12989 The **clock_t** type shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

12990 The following shall be declared as a function and may also be defined as a macro. A function
12991 prototype shall be provided.

12992 `clock_t times(struct tms *);`

12993 **APPLICATION USAGE**

12994 None.

12995 **RATIONALE**

12996 None.

12997 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

12998 None.

12999 **SEE ALSO**

13000 **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *times*()

13001 **CHANGE HISTORY**

13002 First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

13003 **NAME**

13004 sys/types.h — data types

13005 **SYNOPSIS**

13006
```
#include <sys/types.h>
```

13007 **DESCRIPTION**

13008 The **<sys/types.h>** header shall include definitions for at least the following types:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 13009 | **blkcnt_t** | Used for file block counts. |
| 13010 | **blksize_t** | Used for block sizes. |
| 13011 XSI | **clock_t** | Used for system times in clock ticks or CLOCKS_PER_SEC; see **<time.h>**. |
| 13013 TMR | **clockid_t** | Used for clock ID type in the clock and timer functions. |
| 13014 | **dev_t** | Used for device IDs. |
| 13015 XSI | **fsblkcnt_t** | Used for file system block counts. |
| 13016 XSI | **fsfilcnt_t** | Used for file system file counts. |
| 13017 | **gid_t** | Used for group IDs. |
| 13018 XSI | **id_t** | Used as a general identifier; can be used to contain at least a **pid_t**, **uid_t**, or **gid_t**. |
| 13020 | **ino_t** | Used for file serial numbers. |
| 13021 XSI | **key_t** | Used for XSI interprocess communication. |
| 13022 | **mode_t** | Used for some file attributes. |
| 13023 | **nlink_t** | Used for link counts. |
| 13024 | **off_t** | Used for file sizes. |
| 13025 | **pid_t** | Used for process IDs and process group IDs. |
| 13026 THR | **pthread_attr_t** | Used to identify a thread attribute object. |
| 13027 BAR | **pthread_barrier_t** | Used to identify a barrier. |
| 13028 BAR | **pthread_barrierattr_t** | Used to define a barrier attributes object. |
| 13029 THR | **pthread_cond_t** | Used for condition variables. |
| 13030 THR | **pthread_condattr_t** | Used to identify a condition attribute object. |
| 13031 THR | **pthread_key_t** | Used for thread-specific data keys. |
| 13032 THR | **pthread_mutex_t** | Used for mutexes. |
| 13033 THR | **pthread_mutexattr_t** | Used to identify a mutex attribute object. |
| 13034 THR | **pthread_once_t** | Used for dynamic package initialization. |
| 13035 THR | **pthread_rwlock_t** | Used for read-write locks. |
| 13036 THR | **pthread_rwlockattr_t** | Used for read-write lock attributes. |
| 13037 SPI | **pthread_spinlock_t** | Used to identify a spin lock. |
| 13038 THR | **pthread_t** | Used to identify a thread. |


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 13039 | | **size_t** | Used for sizes of objects. |
| 13040 | | **ssize_t** | Used for a count of bytes or an error indication. |
| 13041 | XSI | **suseconds_t** | Used for time in microseconds. |
| 13042 | | **time_t** | Used for time in seconds. |
| 13043 | TMR | **timer_t** | Used for timer ID returned by *timer_create*( ). |
| 13044 | TRC | **trace_attr_t** | Used to identify a trace stream attributes object. |
| 13045 | TRC | **trace_event_id_t** | Used to identify a trace event type. |
| 13046 | TRC TEF | **trace_event_set_t** | Used to identify a trace event type set. |
| 13047 | TRC | **trace_id_t** | Used to identify a trace stream. |
| 13048 | | **uid_t** | Used for user IDs. |
| 13049 | XSI | **useconds_t** | Used for time in microseconds. |

13050 All of the types shall be defined as arithmetic types of an appropriate length, with the following
13051 exceptions:

13052 XSI **key_t**
13053 THR **pthread_attr_t**
13054 BAR **pthread_barrier_t**
13055 **pthread_barrierattr_t**
13056 THR **pthread_cond_t**
13057 **pthread_condattr_t**
13058 **pthread_key_t**
13059 **pthread_mutex_t**
13060 **pthread_mutexattr_t**
13061 **pthread_once_t**
13062 **pthread_rwlock_t**
13063 **pthread_rwlockattr_t**
13064 SPI **pthread_spinlock_t**
13065 TRC **trace_attr_t**
13066 **trace_event_id_t**
13067 TRC TEF **trace_event_set_t**
13068 TRC **trace_id_t**
13069

13070 Additionally:

13071 - **mode_t** shall be an integer type.
13072 - **nlink_t**, **uid_t**, **gid_t**, and **id_t** shall be integer types.
13073 - **blkcnt_t** and **off_t** shall be signed integer types.
13074 XSI - **fsblkcnt_t**, **fsfilcnt_t**, and **ino_t** shall be defined as unsigned integer types.
13075 - **size_t** shall be an unsigned integer type.
13076 - **blksize_t**, **pid_t**, and **ssize_t** shall be signed integer types.
13077 - **time_t** and **clock_t** shall be integer or real-floating types.

13078 XSI The type **ssize_t** shall be capable of storing values at least in the range [–1, {SSIZE_MAX}]. The
13079 type **useconds_t** shall be an unsigned integer type capable of storing values at least in the range
13080 [0, 1 000 000]. The type **suseconds_t** shall be a signed integer type capable of storing values at



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

least in the range [–1, 1 000 000].

The implementation shall support one or more programming environments in which the widths of **blksize_t**, **pid_t**, **size_t**, **ssize_t**, **suseconds_t**, and **useconds_t** are no greater than the width of type **long**. The names of these programming environments can be obtained using the *confstr*( ) function or the *getconf* utility.

There are no defined comparison or assignment operators for the following types:

THR **pthread_attr_t**
BAR **pthread_barrier_t**
**pthread_barrierattr_t**
THR **pthread_cond_t**
**pthread_condattr_t**
**pthread_mutex_t**
**pthread_mutexattr_t**
**pthread_rwlock_t**
**pthread_rwlockattr_t**
SPI **pthread_spinlock_t**
TRC **trace_attr_t**

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<time.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *confstr*( ), the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *getconf*

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.

### Issue 5

The **clockid_t** and **timer_t** types are defined for alignment with the POSIX Realtime Extension.

The types **blkcnt_t**, **blksize_t**, **fsblkcnt_t**, **fsfilcnt_t**, and **suseconds_t** are added.

Large File System extensions are added.

Updated for alignment with the POSIX Threads Extension.

### Issue 6

The **pthread_barrier_t**, **pthread_barrierattr_t**, and **pthread_spinlock_t** types are added for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1j-2000.

The margin code is changed from XSI to THR for the **pthread_rwlock_t** and **pthread_rwlockattr_t** types as Read-Write Locks have been absorbed into the POSIX Threads option. The threads types are marked THR.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

sys/uio.h — definitions for vector I/O operations

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <sys/uio.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<sys/uio.h>** header shall define the **iovec** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | |
|---|---|
| `void *iov_base` | Base address of a memory region for input or output. |
| `size_t iov_len` | The size of the memory pointed to by *iov_base*. |

The **<sys/uio.h>** header uses the **iovec** structure for scatter/gather I/O.

The **ssize_t** and **size_t** types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
ssize_t readv(int, const struct iovec *, int);
ssize_t writev(int, const struct iovec *, int);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

The implementation can put a limit on the number of scatter/gather elements which can be processed in one call. The symbol {IOV_MAX} defined in **<limits.h>** should always be used to learn about the limits instead of assuming a fixed value.

## RATIONALE

Traditionally, the maximum number of scatter/gather elements the system can process in one call were described by the symbolic value {UIO_MAXIOV}. In IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 this value is replaced by the constant {IOV_MAX} which can be found in **<limits.h>**.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<limits.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *read*( ), *write*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4, Version 2.

### Issue 6

Text referring to scatter/gather I/O is added to the DESCRIPTION.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

sys/un.h — definitions for UNIX domain sockets

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <sys/un.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<sys/un.h>** header shall define the **sockaddr_un** structure that includes at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `sa_family_t` | `sun_family` | Address family. |
| `char` | `sun_path[]` | Socket pathname. |

The **sockaddr_un** structure is used to store addresses for UNIX domain sockets. Values of this type shall be cast by applications to **struct sockaddr** for use with socket functions.

The **sa_family_t** type shall be defined as described in **<sys/socket.h>**.

## APPLICATION USAGE

The size of *sun_path* has intentionally been left undefined. This is because different implementations use different sizes. For example, 4.3 BSD uses a size of 108, and 4.4 BSD uses a size of 104. Since most implementations originate from BSD versions, the size is typically in the range 92 to 108.

Applications should not assume a particular length for *sun_path* or assume that it can hold {_POSIX_PATH_MAX} characters (255).

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<sys/socket.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *bind*( ), *socket*( ), *socketpair*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 6. Derived from the XNS, Issue 5.2 specification.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

sys/utsname.h — system name structure

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <sys/utsname.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<sys/utsname.h>** header shall define the structure **utsname** which shall include at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `char` | `sysname[]` | Name of this implementation of the operating system. |
| `char` | `nodename[]` | Name of this node within an implementation-defined communications network. |
| `char` | `release[]` | Current release level of this implementation. |
| `char` | `version[]` | Current version level of this release. |
| `char` | `machine[]` | Name of the hardware type on which the system is running. |

The character arrays are of unspecified size, but the data stored in them shall be terminated by a null byte.

The following shall be declared as a function and may also be defined as a macro:

```
int uname(struct utsname *);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *uname*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

13208 **NAME**

13209 sys/wait.h — declarations for waiting

13210 **SYNOPSIS**

13211 `#include <sys/wait.h>`

13212 **DESCRIPTION**

13213 The **<sys/wait.h>** header shall define the following symbolic constants for use with *waitpid*( ):

13214 WNOHANG Do not hang if no status is available; return immediately.

13215 WUNTRACED Report status of stopped child process.

13216 The **<sys/wait.h>** header shall define the following macros for analysis of process status values:

13217 WEXITSTATUS Return exit status.

13218 XSI WIFCONTINUED True if child has been continued.

13219 WIFEXITED True if child exited normally.

13220 WIFSIGNALED True if child exited due to uncaught signal.

13221 WIFSTOPPED True if child is currently stopped.

13222 WSTOPSIG Return signal number that caused process to stop.

13223 WTERMSIG Return signal number that caused process to terminate.

13224 XSI The following symbolic constants shall be defined as possible values for the *options* argument to
13225 *waitid*( ):

13226 WEXITED Wait for processes that have exited.

13227 WSTOPPED Status is returned for any child that has stopped upon receipt of a signal.

13228 WCONTINUED Status is returned for any child that was stopped and has been continued.

13229 WNOHANG Return immediately if there are no children to wait for.

13230 WNOWAIT Keep the process whose status is returned in *infop* in a waitable state.

13231 The type **idtype_t** shall be defined as an enumeration type whose possible values shall include
13232 at least the following:

13233 P_ALL
13234 P_PID
13235 P_PGID

13236

13237 The **id_t** and **pid_t** types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

13238 XSI The **siginfo_t** type shall be defined as described in **<signal.h>**.

13239 The **rusage** structure shall be defined as described in **<sys/resource.h>**.

13240 Inclusion of the **<sys/wait.h>** header may also make visible all symbols from **<signal.h>** and
13241 **<sys/resource.h>**.

13242 The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function
13243 prototypes shall be provided.

13244 `pid_t  wait(int *);`
13245 XSI `int    waitid(idtype_t, id_t, siginfo_t *, int);`
13246 `pid_t  waitpid(pid_t, int *, int);`

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

13247 **APPLICATION USAGE**

13248 None.

13249 **RATIONALE**

13250 None.

13251 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

13252 None.

13253 **SEE ALSO**

13254 **<signal.h>**, **<sys/resource.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of
13255 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *wait*( ), *waitid*( )

13256 **CHANGE HISTORY**

13257 First released in Issue 3.

13258 Included for alignment with the POSIX.1-1988 standard.

13259 **Issue 6**

13260 The *wait3*( ) function is removed.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

13261 **NAME**

13262 syslog.h — definitions for system error logging

13263 **SYNOPSIS**

13264 XSI
```
#include <syslog.h>
```
13265

13266 **DESCRIPTION**

13267 The **<syslog.h>** header shall define the following symbolic constants, zero or more of which may
13268 be OR'ed together to form the *logopt* option of *openlog*( ):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 13269 | LOG_PID | Log the process ID with each message. |
| 13270 | LOG_CONS | Log to the system console on error. |
| 13271 | LOG_NDELAY | Connect to syslog daemon immediately. |
| 13272 | LOG_ODELAY | Delay open until *syslog*( ) is called. |
| 13273 | LOG_NOWAIT | Do not wait for child processes. |

13274 The following symbolic constants shall be defined as possible values of the *facility* argument to
13275 *openlog*( ):

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 13276 | LOG_KERN | Reserved for message generated by the system. |
| 13277 | LOG_USER | Message generated by a process. |
| 13278 | LOG_MAIL | Reserved for message generated by mail system. |
| 13279 | LOG_NEWS | Reserved for message generated by news system. |
| 13280 | LOG_UUCP | Reserved for message generated by UUCP system. |
| 13281 | LOG_DAEMON | Reserved for message generated by system daemon. |
| 13282 | LOG_AUTH | Reserved for message generated by authorization daemon. |
| 13283 | LOG_CRON | Reserved for message generated by clock daemon. |
| 13284 | LOG_LPR | Reserved for message generated by printer system. |
| 13285 | LOG_LOCAL0 | Reserved for local use. |
| 13286 | LOG_LOCAL1 | Reserved for local use. |
| 13287 | LOG_LOCAL2 | Reserved for local use. |
| 13288 | LOG_LOCAL3 | Reserved for local use. |
| 13289 | LOG_LOCAL4 | Reserved for local use. |
| 13290 | LOG_LOCAL5 | Reserved for local use. |
| 13291 | LOG_LOCAL6 | Reserved for local use. |
| 13292 | LOG_LOCAL7 | Reserved for local use. |

13293 The following shall be declared as macros for constructing the *maskpri* argument to *setlogmask*( ).
13294 The following macros expand to an expression of type **int** when the argument *pri* is an
13295 expression of type **int**:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 13296 | LOG_MASK(*pri*) | A mask for priority *pri*. |

13297 The following constants shall be defined as possible values for the *priority* argument of *syslog*( ):

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| LOG_EMERG | A panic condition was reported to all processes. |
| LOG_ALERT | A condition that should be corrected immediately. |
| LOG_CRIT | A critical condition. |
| LOG_ERR | An error message. |
| LOG_WARNING | A warning message. |
| LOG_NOTICE | A condition requiring special handling. |
| LOG_INFO | A general information message. |
| LOG_DEBUG | A message useful for debugging programs. |

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
void  closelog(void);
void  openlog(const char *, int, int);
int   setlogmask(int);
void  syslog(int, const char *, ...);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *closelog*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4, Version 2.

**Issue 5**

Moved from X/Open UNIX to BASE.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

13324 **NAME**

13325 tar.h — extended tar definitions

13326 **SYNOPSIS**

13327
```
#include <tar.h>
```

13328 **DESCRIPTION**

13329 The **<tar.h>** header shall define header block definitions as follows.

13330 General definitions:

13331

13332

| Name | Description | Value |
|---|---|---|
| 13333 TMAGIC | "ustar" | ustar plus null byte. |
| 13334 TMAGLEN | 6 | Length of the above. |
| 13335 TVERSION | "00" | 00 without a null byte. |
| 13336 TVERSLEN | 2 | Length of the above. |

13337 *Typeflag* field definitions:

13338

13339

| Name | Description | Value |
|---|---|---|
| 13340 REGTYPE | '0' | Regular file. |
| 13341 AREGTYPE | '\0' | Regular file. |
| 13342 LNKTYPE | '1' | Link. |
| 13343 SYMTYPE | '2' | Symbolic link. |
| 13344 CHRTYPE | '3' | Character special. |
| 13345 BLKTYPE | '4' | Block special. |
| 13346 DIRTYPE | '5' | Directory. |
| 13347 FIFOTYPE | '6' | FIFO special. |
| 13348 CONTTYPE | '7' | Reserved. |

13349 *Mode* field bit definitions (octal):

13350

13351

| Name | Description | Value |
|---|---|---|
| 13352 TSUID | 04000 | Set UID on execution. |
| 13353 TSGID | 02000 | Set GID on execution. |
| 13354 XSI TSVTX | 01000 | On directories, restricted deletion flag. |
| 13355 TUREAD | 00400 | Read by owner. |
| 13356 TUWRITE | 00200 | Write by owner special. |
| 13357 TUEXEC | 00100 | Execute/search by owner. |
| 13358 TGREAD | 00040 | Read by group. |
| 13359 TGWRITE | 00020 | Write by group. |
| 13360 TGEXEC | 00010 | Execute/search by group. |
| 13361 TOREAD | 00004 | Read by other. |
| 13362 TOWRITE | 00002 | Write by other. |
| 13363 TOEXEC | 00001 | Execute/search by other. |

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

13364 **APPLICATION USAGE**

13365 None.

13366 **RATIONALE**

13367 None.

13368 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

13369 None.

13370 **SEE ALSO**

13371 The Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *pax*

13372 **CHANGE HISTORY**

13373 First released in Issue 3. Derived from the POSIX.1-1988 standard.

13374 **Issue 6**

13375 The SEE ALSO section now refers to *pax* since the Shell and Utilities volume of
13376 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 no longer contains the *tar* utility.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

13377 **NAME**

13378 termios.h — define values for termios

13379 **SYNOPSIS**

13380 `#include <termios.h>`

13381 **DESCRIPTION**

13382 The **<termios.h>** header contains the definitions used by the terminal I/O interfaces (see
13383 Chapter 11 (on page 187) for the structures and names defined).

13384 **The termios Structure**

13385 The following data types shall be defined through **typedef**:

13386 **cc_t** Used for terminal special characters.

13387 **speed_t** Used for terminal baud rates.

13388 **tcflag_t** Used for terminal modes.

13389 The above types shall be all unsigned integer types.

13390 The implementation shall support one or more programming environments in which the widths
13391 of **cc_t**, **speed_t**, and **tcflag_t** are no greater than the width of type **long**. The names of these
13392 programming environments can be obtained using the *confstr*( ) function or the *getconf* utility.

13393 The **termios** structure shall be defined, and shall include at least the following members:

13394 `tcflag_t c_iflag` Input modes.
13395 `tcflag_t c_oflag` Output modes.
13396 `tcflag_t c_cflag` Control modes.
13397 `tcflag_t c_lflag` Local modes.
13398 `cc_t c_cc[NCCS]` Control characters.

13399 A definition shall be provided for:

13400 NCCS Size of the array *c_cc* for control characters.

13401 The following subscript names for the array *c_cc* shall be defined:

13402
13403
13404

| Subscript Usage | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Canonical Mode** | **Non-Canonical Mode** | **Description** |
| 13405 VEOF | | EOF character. |
| 13406 VEOL | | EOL character. |
| 13407 VERASE | | ERASE character. |
| 13408 VINTR | VINTR | INTR character. |
| 13409 VKILL | | KILL character. |
| 13410 | VMIN | MIN value. |
| 13411 VQUIT | VQUIT | QUIT character. |
| 13412 VSTART | VSTART | START character. |
| 13413 VSTOP | VSTOP | STOP character. |
| 13414 VSUSP | VSUSP | SUSP character. |
| 13415 | VTIME | TIME value. |

13416 The subscript values shall be unique, except that the VMIN and VTIME subscripts may have the
13417 same values as the VEOF and VEOL subscripts, respectively.

13418 The following flags shall be provided.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

13419 **Input Modes**

13420 The *c_iflag* field describes the basic terminal input control:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 13421 | BRKINT | Signal interrupt on break. |
| 13422 | ICRNL | Map CR to NL on input. |
| 13423 | IGNBRK | Ignore break condition. |
| 13424 | IGNCR | Ignore CR. |
| 13425 | IGNPAR | Ignore characters with parity errors. |
| 13426 | INLCR | Map NL to CR on input. |
| 13427 | INPCK | Enable input parity check. |
| 13428 | ISTRIP | Strip character. |
| 13429 XSI | IXANY | Enable any character to restart output. |
| 13430 | IXOFF | Enable start/stop input control. |
| 13431 | IXON | Enable start/stop output control. |
| 13432 | PARMRK | Mark parity errors. |

13433 **Output Modes**

13434 The *c_oflag* field specifies the system treatment of output:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 13435 | OPOST | Post-process output. | |
| 13436 XSI | ONLCR | Map NL to CR-NL on output. | |
| 13437 | OCRNL | Map CR to NL on output. | |
| 13438 | ONOCR | No CR output at column 0. | |
| 13439 | ONLRET | NL performs CR function. | |
| 13440 | OFILL | Use fill characters for delay. | |
| 13441 | NLDLY | Select newline delays: | |
| 13442 | | NL0 | Newline type 0. |
| 13443 | | NL1 | Newline type 1. |
| 13444 | CRDLY | Select carriage-return delays: | |
| 13445 | | CR0 | Carriage-return delay type 0. |
| 13446 | | CR1 | Carriage-return delay type 1. |
| 13447 | | CR2 | Carriage-return delay type 2. |
| 13448 | | CR3 | Carriage-return delay type 3. |
| 13449 | TABDLY | Select horizontal-tab delays: | |
| 13450 | | TAB0 | Horizontal-tab delay type 0. |
| 13451 | | TAB1 | Horizontal-tab delay type 1. |
| 13452 | | TAB2 | Horizontal-tab delay type 2. |



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | TAB3 | Expand tabs to spaces. |
| BSDLY | Select backspace delays: | |
| | BS0 | Backspace-delay type 0. |
| | BS1 | Backspace-delay type 1. |
| VTDLY | Select vertical-tab delays: | |
| | VT0 | Vertical-tab delay type 0. |
| | VT1 | Vertical-tab delay type 1. |
| FFDLY | Select form-feed delays: | |
| | FF0 | Form-feed delay type 0. |
| | FF1 | Form-feed delay type 1. |

**Baud Rate Selection**

The input and output baud rates are stored in the **termios** structure. These are the valid values for objects of type **speed_t**. The following values shall be defined, but not all baud rates need be supported by the underlying hardware.

| | |
|---|---|
| B0 | Hang up |
| B50 | 50 baud |
| B75 | 75 baud |
| B110 | 110 baud |
| B134 | 134.5 baud |
| B150 | 150 baud |
| B200 | 200 baud |
| B300 | 300 baud |
| B600 | 600 baud |
| B1200 | 1 200 baud |
| B1800 | 1 800 baud |
| B2400 | 2 400 baud |
| B4800 | 4 800 baud |
| B9600 | 9 600 baud |
| B19200 | 19 200 baud |
| B38400 | 38 400 baud |


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

13483 **Control Modes**

13484 The *c_cflag* field describes the hardware control of the terminal; not all values specified are
13485 required to be supported by the underlying hardware:

13486 CSIZE Character size:

13487 CS5 5 bits

13488 CS6 6 bits

13489 CS7 7 bits

13490 CS8 8 bits

13491 CSTOPB Send two stop bits, else one.

13492 CREAD Enable receiver.

13493 PARENB Parity enable.

13494 PARODD Odd parity, else even.

13495 HUPCL Hang up on last close.

13496 CLOCAL Ignore modem status lines.

13497 The implementation shall support the functionality associated with the symbols CS7, CS8,
13498 CSTOPB, PARODD, and PARENB.

13499 **Local Modes**

13500 The *c_lflag* field of the argument structure is used to control various terminal functions:

13501 ECHO Enable echo.

13502 ECHOE Echo erase character as error-correcting backspace.

13503 ECHOK Echo KILL.

13504 ECHONL Echo NL.

13505 ICANON Canonical input (erase and kill processing).

13506 IEXTEN Enable extended input character processing.

13507 ISIG Enable signals.

13508 NOFLSH Disable flush after interrupt or quit.

13509 TOSTOP Send SIGTTOU for background output.

13510 **Attribute Selection**

13511 The following symbolic constants for use with *tcsetattr*( ) are defined:

13512 TCSANOW Change attributes immediately.

13513 TCSADRAIN Change attributes when output has drained.

13514 TCSAFLUSH Change attributes when output has drained; also flush pending input.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

13515 **Line Control**

13516 The following symbolic constants for use with *tcflush*( ) shall be defined:

13517 TCIFLUSH Flush pending input.

13518 TCIOFLUSH Flush both pending input and untransmitted output.

13519 TCOFLUSH Flush untransmitted output.

13520 The following symbolic constants for use with *tcflow*( ) shall be defined:

13521 TCIOFF Transmit a STOP character, intended to suspend input data.

13522 TCION Transmit a START character, intended to restart input data.

13523 TCOOFF Suspend output.

13524 TCOON Restart output.

13525 The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function
13526 prototypes shall be provided.

```
13527 speed_t cfgetispeed(const struct termios *);
13528 speed_t cfgetospeed(const struct termios *);
13529 int     cfsetispeed(struct termios *, speed_t);
13530 int     cfsetospeed(struct termios *, speed_t);
13531 int     tcdrain(int);
13532 int     tcflow(int, int);
13533 int     tcflush(int, int);
13534 int     tcgetattr(int, struct termios *);
13535 XSI pid_t   tcgetsid(int);
13536 int     tcsendbreak(int, int);
13537 int     tcsetattr(int, int, const struct termios *);
```

13538 **APPLICATION USAGE**

13539 The following names are reserved for XSI-conformant systems to use as an extension to the
13540 above; therefore strictly conforming applications shall not use them:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 13541 CBAUD | EXTB | VDSUSP |
| 13542 DEFECHO | FLUSHO | VLNEXT |
| 13543 ECHOCTL | LOBLK | VREPRINT |
| 13544 ECHOKE | PENDIN | VSTATUS |
| 13545 ECHOPRT | SWTCH | VWERASE |
| 13546 EXTA | VDISCARD | |

13547 **RATIONALE**

13548 None.

13549 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

13550 None.

13551 **SEE ALSO**

13552 The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *cfgetispeed*( ), *cfgetospeed*( ), *cfsetispeed*( ),
13553 *cfsetospeed*( ), *confstr*( ), *tcdrain*( ), *tcflow*( ), *tcflush*( ), *tcgetattr*( ), *tcgetsid*( ), *tcsendbreak*( ), *tcsetattr*( ),
13554 the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *getconf*, Chapter 11 (on page 187)

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

13555 **CHANGE HISTORY**

13556 First released in Issue 3.

13557 Included for alignment with the ISO POSIX-1 standard.

13558 **Issue 6**

13559 The LEGACY symbols IUCLC, OLCUC, and XCASE are removed.

13560 FIPS 151-2 requirements for the symbols CS7, CS8, CSTOPB, PARODD, and PARENB are
13561 reaffirmed.

13562 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/19 is applied, changing ECHOK to
13563 ECHOKE in the APPLICATION USAGE section.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

tgmath.h — type-generic macros

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <tgmath.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX The functionality described on this reference page is aligned with the ISO C standard. Any conflict between the requirements described here and the ISO C standard is unintentional. This volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 defers to the ISO C standard.

The **<tgmath.h>** header shall include the headers **<math.h>** and **<complex.h>** and shall define several type-generic macros.

Of the functions contained within the **<math.h>** and **<complex.h>** headers without an *f* (**float**) or *l* (**long double**) suffix, several have one or more parameters whose corresponding real type is **double**. For each such function, except *modf*( ), there shall be a corresponding type-generic macro. The parameters whose corresponding real type is **double** in the function synopsis are generic parameters. Use of the macro invokes a function whose corresponding real type and type domain are determined by the arguments for the generic parameters.

Use of the macro invokes a function whose generic parameters have the corresponding real type determined as follows:

- First, if any argument for generic parameters has type **long double**, the type determined is **long double**.
- Otherwise, if any argument for generic parameters has type **double** or is of integer type, the type determined is **double**.
- Otherwise, the type determined is **float**.

For each unsuffixed function in the **<math.h>** header for which there is a function in the **<complex.h>** header with the same name except for a *c* prefix, the corresponding type-generic macro (for both functions) has the same name as the function in the **<math.h>** header. The corresponding type-generic macro for *fabs*( ) and *cabs*( ) is *fabs*( ).

| **<math.h> Function** | **<complex.h> Function** | **Type-Generic Macro** |
|---|---|---|
| *acos*( ) | *cacos*( ) | *acos*( ) |
| *asin*( ) | *casin*( ) | *asin*( ) |
| *atan*( ) | *catan*( ) | *atan*( ) |
| *acosh*( ) | *cacosh*( ) | *acosh*( ) |
| *asinh*( ) | *casinh*( ) | *asinh*( ) |
| *atanh*( ) | *catanh*( ) | *atanh*( ) |
| *cos*( ) | *ccos*( ) | *cos*( ) |
| *sin*( ) | *csin*( ) | *sin*( ) |
| *tan*( ) | *ctan*( ) | *tan*( ) |
| *cosh*( ) | *ccosh*( ) | *cosh*( ) |
| *sinh*( ) | *csinh*( ) | *sinh*( ) |
| *tanh*( ) | *ctanh*( ) | *tanh*( ) |
| *exp*( ) | *cexp*( ) | *exp*( ) |
| *log*( ) | *clog*( ) | *log*( ) |
| *pow*( ) | *cpow*( ) | *pow*( ) |
| *sqrt*( ) | *csqrt*( ) | *sqrt*( ) |
| *fabs*( ) | *cabs*( ) | *fabs*( ) |

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

If at least one argument for a generic parameter is complex, then use of the macro invokes a complex function; otherwise, use of the macro invokes a real function.

For each unsuffixed function in the **<math.h>** header without a *c*-prefixed counterpart in the **<complex.h>** header, the corresponding type-generic macro has the same name as the function. These type-generic macros are:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *atan2*( ) | *fma*( ) | *llround*( ) | *remainder*( ) |
| *cbrt*( ) | *fmax*( ) | *log10*( ) | *remquo*( ) |
| *ceil*( ) | *fmin*( ) | *log1p*( ) | *rint*( ) |
| *copysign*( ) | *fmod*( ) | *log2*( ) | *round*( ) |
| *erf*( ) | *frexp*( ) | *logb*( ) | *scalbn*( ) |
| *erfc*( ) | *hypot*( ) | *lrint*( ) | *scalbln*( ) |
| *exp2*( ) | *ilogb*( ) | *lround*( ) | *tgamma*( ) |
| *expm1*( ) | *ldexp*( ) | *nearbyint*( ) | *trunc*( ) |
| *fdim*( ) | *lgamma*( ) | *nextafter*( ) | |
| *floor*( ) | *llrint*( ) | *nexttoward*( ) | |

If all arguments for generic parameters are real, then use of the macro invokes a real function; otherwise, use of the macro results in undefined behavior.

For each unsuffixed function in the **<complex.h>** header that is not a *c*-prefixed counterpart to a function in the **<math.h>** header, the corresponding type-generic macro has the same name as the function. These type-generic macros are:

*carg*( )
*cimag*( )
*conj*( )
*cproj*( )
*creal*( )

Use of the macro with any real or complex argument invokes a complex function.

## APPLICATION USAGE

With the declarations:

```
#include <tgmath.h>
int n;
float f;
double d;
long double ld;
float complex fc;
double complex dc;
long double complex ldc;
```

functions invoked by use of type-generic macros are shown in the following table:

| Macro | Use Invokes |
|---|---|
| *exp*(*n*) | *exp*(*n*), the function |
| *acosh*(*f*) | *acoshf*(*f*) |
| *sin*(*d*) | *sin*(*d*), the function |
| *atan*(*ld*) | *atanl*(*ld*) |



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

| Macro | Use Invokes |
|---|---|
| *log*(*fc*) | *clogf*(*fc*) |
| *sqrt*(*dc*) | *csqrt*(*dc*) |
| *pow*(*ldc*,*f*) | *cpowl*(*ldc*, *f*) |
| *remainder*(*n*,*n*) | *remainder*(*n*, *n*), the function |
| *nextafter*(*d*,*f*) | *nextafter*(*d*, *f*), the function |
| *nexttoward*(*f*,*ld*) | *nexttowardf*(*f*, *ld*) |
| *copysign*(*n*,*ld*) | *copysignl*(*n*, *ld*) |
| *ceil*(*fc*) | Undefined behavior |
| *rint*(*dc*) | Undefined behavior |
| *fmax*(*ldc*,*ld*) | Undefined behavior |
| *carg*(*n*) | *carg*(*n*), the function |
| *cproj*(*f*) | *cprojf*(*f*) |
| *creal*(*d*) | *creal*(*d*), the function |
| *cimag*(*ld*) | *cimagl*(*ld*) |
| *cabs*(*fc*) | *cabsf*(*fc*) |
| *carg*(*dc*) | *carg*(*dc*), the function |
| *cproj*(*ldc*) | *cprojl*(*ldc*) |

## RATIONALE

Type-generic macros allow calling a function whose type is determined by the argument type, as is the case for C operators such as `'+'` and `'*'`. For example, with a type-generic *cos*( ) macro, the expression *cos*((**float**)*x*) will have type **float**. This feature enables writing more portably efficient code and alleviates need for awkward casting and suffixing in the process of porting or adjusting precision. Generic math functions are a widely appreciated feature of Fortran.

The only arguments that affect the type resolution are the arguments corresponding to the parameters that have type **double** in the synopsis. Hence the type of a type-generic call to *nexttoward*( ), whose second parameter is **long double** in the synopsis, is determined solely by the type of the first argument.

The term ‘‘type-generic’’ was chosen over the proposed alternatives of intrinsic and overloading. The term is more specific than intrinsic, which already is widely used with a more general meaning, and reflects a closer match to Fortran’s generic functions than to C++ overloading.

The macros are placed in their own header in order not to silently break old programs that include the **<math.h>** header; for example, with:

```
printf ("%e", sin(x))
```

*modf*(**double**, **double ***) is excluded because no way was seen to make it safe without complicating the type resolution.

The implementation might, as an extension, endow appropriate ones of the macros that IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 specifies only for real arguments with the ability to invoke the complex functions.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 does not prescribe any particular implementation mechanism for generic macros. It could be implemented simply with built-in macros. The generic macro for *sqrt*( ), for example, could be implemented with:

```
#undef sqrt
#define sqrt(x) __BUILTIN_GENERIC_sqrt(x)
```

Generic macros are designed for a useful level of consistency with C++ overloaded math functions.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

The great majority of existing C programs are expected to be unaffected when the **<tgmath.h>** header is included instead of the **<math.h>** or **<complex.h>** headers. Generic macros are similar to the ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard library masking macros, though the semantic types of return values differ.

The ability to overload on integer as well as floating types would have been useful for some functions; for example, *copysign*( ). Overloading with different numbers of arguments would have allowed reusing names; for example, *remainder*( ) for *remquo*( ). However, these facilities would have complicated the specification; and their natural consistent use, such as for a floating *abs*( ) or a two-argument *atan*( ), would have introduced further inconsistencies with the ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard for insufficient benefit.

The ISO C standard in no way limits the implementation's options for efficiency, including inlining library functions.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<math.h>**, **<complex.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *cabs*( ), *fabs*( ), *modf*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 6. Included for alignment with the ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

time.h — time types

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <time.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard. Applications shall define the appropriate feature test macro (see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment) to enable the visibility of these symbols in this header.

The **<time.h>** header shall declare the structure **tm**, which shall include at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `int` | `tm_sec` | Seconds [0,60]. |
| `int` | `tm_min` | Minutes [0,59]. |
| `int` | `tm_hour` | Hour [0,23]. |
| `int` | `tm_mday` | Day of month [1,31]. |
| `int` | `tm_mon` | Month of year [0,11]. |
| `int` | `tm_year` | Years since 1900. |
| `int` | `tm_wday` | Day of week [0,6] (Sunday =0). |
| `int` | `tm_yday` | Day of year [0,365]. |
| `int` | `tm_isdst` | Daylight Savings flag. |

The value of *tm_isdst* shall be positive if Daylight Savings Time is in effect, 0 if Daylight Savings Time is not in effect, and negative if the information is not available.

The **<time.h>** header shall define the following symbolic names:

NULL Null pointer constant.

CLOCKS_PER_SEC A number used to convert the value returned by the *clock*( ) function into seconds.

TMR|CPT CLOCK_PROCESS_CPUTIME_ID
The identifier of the CPU-time clock associated with the process making a *clock*( ) or *timer**( ) function call.

TMR|TCT CLOCK_THREAD_CPUTIME_ID
The identifier of the CPU-time clock associated with the thread making a *clock*( ) or *timer**( ) function call.

TMR The **<time.h>** header shall declare the structure **timespec**, which has at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `time_t` | `tv_sec` | Seconds. |
| `long` | `tv_nsec` | Nanoseconds. |

The **<time.h>** header shall also declare the **itimerspec** structure, which has at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `struct timespec` | `it_interval` | Timer period. |
| `struct timespec` | `it_value` | Timer expiration. |

The following manifest constants shall be defined:

CLOCK_REALTIME The identifier of the system-wide realtime clock.

TIMER_ABSTIME Flag indicating time is absolute. For functions taking timer objects, this refers to the clock associated with the timer.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

13763 MON CLOCK_MONOTONIC
13764 The identifier for the system-wide monotonic clock, which is defined as a
13765 clock whose value cannot be set via *clock_settime*() and which cannot
13766 have backward clock jumps. The maximum possible clock jump shall be
13767 implementation-defined.

13768 TMR The **clock_t**, **size_t**, **time_t**, **clockid_t**, and **timer_t** types shall be defined as described in
13769 **<sys/types.h>**.

13770 XSI Although the value of CLOCKS_PER_SEC is required to be 1 million on all XSI-conformant
13771 systems, it may be variable on other systems, and it should not be assumed that
13772 CLOCKS_PER_SEC is a compile-time constant.

13773 XSI The **<time.h>** header shall provide a declaration for *getdate_err*.

13774 The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function
13775 prototypes shall be provided.

```
13776        char       *asctime(const struct tm *);
13777 TSF    char       *asctime_r(const struct tm *restrict, char *restrict);
13778        clock_t     clock(void);
13779 CPT    int         clock_getcpuclockid(pid_t, clockid_t *);
13780 TMR    int         clock_getres(clockid_t, struct timespec *);
13781        int         clock_gettime(clockid_t, struct timespec *);
13782 CS     int         clock_nanosleep(clockid_t, int, const struct timespec *,
13783                        struct timespec *);
13784 TMR    int         clock_settime(clockid_t, const struct timespec *);
13785        char       *ctime(const time_t *);
13786 TSF    char       *ctime_r(const time_t *, char *);
13787        double      difftime(time_t, time_t);
13788 XSI    struct tm  *getdate(const char *);
13789        struct tm  *gmtime(const time_t *);
13790 TSF    struct tm  *gmtime_r(const time_t *restrict, struct tm *restrict);
13791        struct tm  *localtime(const time_t *);
13792 TSF    struct tm  *localtime_r(const time_t *restrict, struct tm *restrict);
13793        time_t      mktime(struct tm *);
13794 TMR    int         nanosleep(const struct timespec *, struct timespec *);
13795        size_t      strftime(char *restrict, size_t, const char *restrict,
13796                        const struct tm *restrict);
13797 XSI    char       *strptime(const char *restrict, const char *restrict,
13798                        struct tm *restrict);
13799        time_t      time(time_t *);
13800 TMR    int         timer_create(clockid_t, struct sigevent *restrict,
13801                        timer_t *restrict);
13802        int         timer_delete(timer_t);
13803        int         timer_gettime(timer_t, struct itimerspec *);
13804        int         timer_getoverrun(timer_t);
13805        int         timer_settime(timer_t, int, const struct itimerspec *restrict,
13806                        struct itimerspec *restrict);
13807 CX     void        tzset(void);
13808
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

The following shall be declared as variables:

XSI
```
extern int    daylight;
extern long   timezone;
```
CX
```
extern char  *tzname[];
```

CX Inclusion of the **<time.h>** header may make visible all symbols from the **<signal.h>** header.

## APPLICATION USAGE

The range [0,60] for *tm_sec* allows for the occasional leap second.

*tm_year* is a signed value; therefore, years before 1900 may be represented.

To obtain the number of clock ticks per second returned by the *times*( ) function, applications should call *sysconf*(_SC_CLK_TCK).

## RATIONALE

The range [0,60] seconds allows for positive or negative leap seconds. The formal definition of UTC does not permit double leap seconds, so all mention of double leap seconds has been removed, and the range shortened from the former [0,61] seconds seen in previous versions of POSIX.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<signal.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *asctime*( ), *clock*( ), *clock_getcpuclockid*( ), *clock_getres*( ), *clock_nanosleep*( ), *ctime*( ), *difftime*( ), *getdate*( ), *gmtime*( ), *localtime*( ), *mktime*( ), *nanosleep*( ), *strftime*( ), *strptime*( ), *sysconf*( ), *time*( ), *timer_create*( ), *timer_delete*( ), *timer_getoverrun*( ), *tzname*, *tzset*( ), *utime*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.

### Issue 5

The DESCRIPTION is updated for alignment with the POSIX Realtime Extension and the POSIX Threads Extension.

### Issue 6

The Open Group Corrigendum U035/6 is applied. In the DESCRIPTION, the types **clockid_t** and **timer_t** have been described.

The following changes are made for alignment with the ISO POSIX-1: 1996 standard:

- The POSIX timer-related functions are marked as part of the Timers option.

The symbolic name CLK_TCK is removed. Application usage is added describing how its equivalent functionality can be obtained using *sysconf*( ).

The *clock_getcpuclockid*( ) function and manifest constants CLOCK_PROCESS_CPUTIME_ID and CLOCK_THREAD_CPUTIME_ID are added for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1d-1999.

The manifest constant CLOCK_MONOTONIC and the *clock_nanosleep*( ) function are added for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1j-2000.

The following changes are made for alignment with the ISO/IEC 9899: 1999 standard:

- The range for seconds is changed from [0,61] to [0,60].
- The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototypes for *asctime_r*( ), *gmtime_r*( ), *localtime_r*( ), *strftime*( ), *strptime*( ), *timer_create*( ), and *timer_settime*( ).


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

IEEE PASC Interpretation 1003.1 #84 is applied adding the statement that symbols from the **<signal.h>** header may be made visible when the **<time.h>** header is included.

Extensions beyond the ISO C standard are marked.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

trace.h — tracing

## SYNOPSIS

TRC
```
#include <trace.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<trace.h>** header shall define the **posix_trace_event_info** structure that includes at least the following members:

```
trace_event_id_t  posix_event_id
pid_t             posix_pid
void             *posix_prog_address
int               posix_truncation_status
struct timespec   posix_timestamp
```
THR
```
pthread_t         posix_thread_id
```

The **<trace.h>** header shall define the **posix_trace_status_info** structure that includes at least the following members:

```
int     posix_stream_status
int     posix_stream_full_status
int     posix_stream_overrun_status
```
TRL
```
int     posix_stream_flush_status
int     posix_stream_flush_error
int     posix_log_overrun_status
int     posix_log_full_status
```

The **<trace.h>** header shall define the following symbols:

POSIX_TRACE_ALL_EVENTS
TRL POSIX_TRACE_APPEND
TRI POSIX_TRACE_CLOSE_FOR_CHILD
TEF POSIX_TRACE_FILTER
TRL POSIX_TRACE_FLUSH
POSIX_TRACE_FLUSH_START
POSIX_TRACE_FLUSH_STOP
POSIX_TRACE_FLUSHING
POSIX_TRACE_FULL
POSIX_TRACE_LOOP
POSIX_TRACE_NO_OVERRUN
TRL POSIX_TRACE_NOT_FLUSHING
POSIX_TRACE_NOT_FULL
TRI POSIX_TRACE_INHERITED
POSIX_TRACE_NOT_TRUNCATED
POSIX_TRACE_OVERFLOW
POSIX_TRACE_OVERRUN
POSIX_TRACE_RESUME
POSIX_TRACE_RUNNING
POSIX_TRACE_START
POSIX_TRACE_STOP
POSIX_TRACE_SUSPENDED
POSIX_TRACE_SYSTEM_EVENTS

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

POSIX_TRACE_TRUNCATED_READ
POSIX_TRACE_TRUNCATED_RECORD
POSIX_TRACE_UNNAMED_USER_EVENT
POSIX_TRACE_UNTIL_FULL
POSIX_TRACE_WOPID_EVENTS

The following types shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**:

**trace_attr_t**
**trace_id_t**
**trace_event_id_t**
TEF **trace_event_set_t**

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int  posix_trace_attr_destroy(trace_attr_t *);
int  posix_trace_attr_getclockres(const trace_attr_t *,
         struct timespec *);
int  posix_trace_attr_getcreatetime(const trace_attr_t *,
         struct timespec *);
int  posix_trace_attr_getgenversion(const trace_attr_t *, char *);
TRI int  posix_trace_attr_getinherited(const trace_attr_t *restrict,
         int *restrict);
TRL int  posix_trace_attr_getlogfullpolicy(const trace_attr_t *restrict,
         int *restrict);
int  posix_trace_attr_getlogsize(const trace_attr_t *restrict,
         size_t *restrict);
int  posix_trace_attr_getmaxdatasize(const trace_attr_t *restrict,
         size_t *restrict);
int  posix_trace_attr_getmaxsystemeventsize(const trace_attr_t *restrict,
         size_t *restrict);
int  posix_trace_attr_getmaxusereventsize(const trace_attr_t *restrict,
         size_t, size_t *restrict);
int  posix_trace_attr_getname(const trace_attr_t *, char *);
int  posix_trace_attr_getstreamfullpolicy(const trace_attr_t *restrict,
         int *restrict);
int  posix_trace_attr_getstreamsize(const trace_attr_t *restrict,
         size_t *restrict);
int  posix_trace_attr_init(trace_attr_t *);
TRI int  posix_trace_attr_setinherited(trace_attr_t *, int);
TRL int  posix_trace_attr_setlogfullpolicy(trace_attr_t *, int);
int  posix_trace_attr_setlogsize(trace_attr_t *, size_t);
int  posix_trace_attr_setmaxdatasize(trace_attr_t *, size_t);
int  posix_trace_attr_setname(trace_attr_t *, const char *);
int  posix_trace_attr_setstreamsize(trace_attr_t *, size_t);
int  posix_trace_attr_setstreamfullpolicy(trace_attr_t *, int);
int  posix_trace_clear(trace_id_t);
TRL int  posix_trace_close(trace_id_t);
int  posix_trace_create(pid_t, const trace_attr_t *restrict,
         trace_id_t *restrict);
TRL int  posix_trace_create_withlog(pid_t, const trace_attr_t *restrict,
         int, trace_id_t *restrict);
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

```
13954          void posix_trace_event(trace_event_id_t, const void *restrict, size_t);
13955          int  posix_trace_eventid_equal(trace_id_t, trace_event_id_t,
13956                   trace_event_id_t);
13957          int  posix_trace_eventid_get_name(trace_id_t, trace_event_id_t, char *);
13958          int  posix_trace_eventid_open(const char *restrict,
13959                   trace_event_id_t *restrict);
13960 TEF      int  posix_trace_eventset_add(trace_event_id_t, trace_event_set_t *);
13961          int  posix_trace_eventset_del(trace_event_id_t, trace_event_set_t *);
13962          int  posix_trace_eventset_empty(trace_event_set_t *);
13963          int  posix_trace_eventset_fill(trace_event_set_t *, int);
13964          int  posix_trace_eventset_ismember(trace_event_id_t,
13965                   const trace_event_set_t *restrict, int *restrict);
13966          int  posix_trace_eventtypelist_getnext_id(trace_id_t,
13967                   trace_event_id_t *restrict, int *restrict);
13968          int  posix_trace_eventtypelist_rewind(trace_id_t);
13969 TRL      int  posix_trace_flush(trace_id_t);
13970          int  posix_trace_get_attr(trace_id_t, trace_attr_t *);
13971 TEF      int  posix_trace_get_filter(trace_id_t, trace_event_set_t *);
13972          int  posix_trace_get_status(trace_id_t,
13973                   struct posix_trace_status_info *);
13974          int  posix_trace_getnext_event(trace_id_t,
13975                   struct posix_trace_event_info *restrict , void *restrict,
13976                   size_t, size_t *restrict, int *restrict);
13977 TRL      int  posix_trace_open(int, trace_id_t *);
13978          int  posix_trace_rewind(trace_id_t);
13979 TEF      int  posix_trace_set_filter(trace_id_t, const trace_event_set_t *, int);
13980          int  posix_trace_shutdown(trace_id_t);
13981          int  posix_trace_start(trace_id_t);
13982          int  posix_trace_stop(trace_id_t);
13983 TMO      int  posix_trace_timedgetnext_event(trace_id_t,
13984                   struct posix_trace_event_info *restrict, void *restrict,
13985                   size_t, size_t *restrict, int *restrict,
13986                   const struct timespec *restrict);
13987 TEF      int  posix_trace_trid_eventid_open(trace_id_t, const char *restrict,
13988                   trace_event_id_t *restrict);
13989          int  posix_trace_trygetnext_event(trace_id_t,
13990                   struct posix_trace_event_info *restrict, void *restrict, size_t,
13991                   size_t *restrict, int *restrict);
```

13992 **APPLICATION USAGE**

13993 None.

13994 **RATIONALE**

13995 None.

13996 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

13997 None.

13998 **SEE ALSO**

13999 **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.11, Tracing,
14000 *posix_trace_attr_destroy*( ), *posix_trace_attr_getclockres*( ), *posix_trace_attr_getcreatetime*( ),
14001 *posix_trace_attr_getgenversion*( ), *posix_trace_attr_getinherited*( ), *posix_trace_attr_getlogfullpolicy*( ),
14002 *posix_trace_attr_getlogsize*( ), *posix_trace_attr_getmaxdatasize*( ),
14003 *posix_trace_attr_getmaxsystemeventsize*( ), *posix_trace_attr_getmaxusereventsize*( ),


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

14004 *posix_trace_attr_getname*( ), *posix_trace_attr_getstreamfullpolicy*( ), *posix_trace_attr_getstreamsize*( ),
14005 *posix_trace_attr_init*( ), *posix_trace_attr_setinherited*( ), *posix_trace_attr_setlogfullpolicy*( ),
14006 *posix_trace_attr_setlogsize*( ), *posix_trace_attr_setmaxdatasize*( ), *posix_trace_attr_setname*( ),
14007 *posix_trace_attr_setstreamsize*( ), *posix_trace_attr_setstreamfullpolicy*( ), *posix_trace_clear*( ),
14008 *posix_trace_close*( ), *posix_trace_create*( ), *posix_trace_create_withlog*( ), *posix_trace_event*( ),
14009 *posix_trace_eventid_equal*( ), *posix_trace_eventid_get_name*( ), *posix_trace_eventid_open*( ),
14010 *posix_trace_eventtypelist_getnext_id*( ), *posix_trace_eventtypelist_rewind*( ),
14011 *posix_trace_eventset_add*( ), *posix_trace_eventset_del*( ), *posix_trace_eventset_empty*( ),
14012 *posix_trace_eventset_fill*( ), *posix_trace_eventset_ismember*( ), *posix_trace_flush*( ),
14013 *posix_trace_get_attr*( ), *posix_trace_get_filter*( ), *posix_trace_get_status*( ), *posix_trace_getnext_event*( ),
14014 *posix_trace_open*( ), *posix_trace_rewind*( ), *posix_trace_set_filter*( ), *posix_trace_shutdown*( ),
14015 *posix_trace_start*( ), *posix_trace_stop*( ), *posix_trace_timedgetnext_event*( ),
14016 *posix_trace_trid_eventid_open*( ), *posix_trace_trygetnext_event*( )

14017 **CHANGE HISTORY**

14018 First released in Issue 6. Derived from IEEE Std 1003.1q-2000.

14019 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XSH/TC1/D6/40 is applied, adding the TRL margin |
14020 code to the *posix_trace_flush*( ) function, for alignment with the System Interfaces volume of |
14021 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001. |



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

ucontext.h — user context

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <ucontext.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<ucontext.h>** header shall define the **mcontext_t** type through **typedef**.

The **<ucontext.h>** header shall define the **ucontext_t** type as a structure that shall include at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `ucontext_t *uc_link` | | Pointer to the context that is resumed when this context returns. |
| `sigset_t` | `uc_sigmask` | The set of signals that are blocked when this context is active. |
| `stack_t` | `uc_stack` | The stack used by this context. |
| `mcontext_t` | `uc_mcontext` | A machine-specific representation of the saved context. |

The types **sigset_t** and **stack_t** shall be defined as in **<signal.h>**.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros, Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int  getcontext(ucontext_t *);
int  setcontext(const ucontext_t *);
void makecontext(ucontext_t *, void (*)(void), int, ...);
int  swapcontext(ucontext_t *restrict, const ucontext_t *restrict);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<signal.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *getcontext*( ), *makecontext*( ), *sigaction*( ), *sigprocmask*( ), *sigaltstack*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4, Version 2.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

## NAME

ulimit.h — ulimit commands

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <ulimit.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<ulimit.h>** header shall define the symbolic constants used by the *ulimit*( ) function.

Symbolic constants:

UL_GETFSIZE Get maximum file size.

UL_SETFSIZE Set maximum file size.

The following shall be declared as a function and may also be defined as a macro. A function prototype shall be provided.

```
long ulimit(int, ...);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

The System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *ulimit*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 3.



--`,,,-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

## NAME

unistd.h — standard symbolic constants and types

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <unistd.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<unistd.h>** header defines miscellaneous symbolic constants and types, and declares miscellaneous functions. The actual values of the constants are unspecified except as shown. The contents of this header are shown below.

### Version Test Macros

The following symbolic constants shall be defined:

_POSIX_VERSION
: Integer value indicating version of IEEE Std 1003.1 (C-language binding) to which the implementation conforms. For implementations conforming to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, the value shall be 200112L.

_POSIX2_VERSION
: Integer value indicating version of the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1 to which the implementation conforms. For implementations conforming to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, the value shall be 200112L.

The following symbolic constant shall be defined only if the implementation supports the XSI option; see Section 2.1.4 (on page 21).

XSI _XOPEN_VERSION
: Integer value indicating version of the X/Open Portability Guide to which the implementation conforms. The value shall be 600.

### Constants for Options and Option Groups

The following symbolic constants, if defined in **<unistd.h>**, shall have a value of –1, 0, or greater, unless otherwise specified below. If these are undefined, the *fpathconf*( ), *pathconf*( ), or *sysconf*( ) functions can be used to determine whether the option is provided for a particular invocation of the application.

If a symbolic constant is defined with the value –1, the option is not supported. Headers, data types, and function interfaces required only for the option need not be supplied. An application that attempts to use anything associated only with the option is considered to be requiring an extension.

If a symbolic constant is defined with a value greater than zero, the option shall always be supported when the application is executed. All headers, data types, and functions shall be present and shall operate as specified.

If a symbolic constant is defined with the value zero, all headers, data types, and functions shall be present. The application can check at runtime to see whether the option is supported by calling *fpathconf*( ), *pathconf*( ), or *sysconf*( ) with the indicated *name* parameter.

Unless explicitly specified otherwise, the behavior of functions associated with an unsupported option is unspecified, and an application that uses such functions without first checking *fpathconf*( ), *pathconf*( ), or *sysconf*( ) is considered to be requiring an extension.

For conformance requirements, refer to Chapter 2 (on page 17).


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

ADV _POSIX_ADVISORY_INFO
The implementation supports the Advisory Information option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

AIO _POSIX_ASYNCHRONOUS_IO
The implementation supports the Asynchronous Input and Output option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

BAR _POSIX_BARRIERS
The implementation supports the Barriers option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

_POSIX_CHOWN_RESTRICTED
The use of *chown*( ) and *fchown*( ) is restricted to a process with appropriate privileges, and to changing the group ID of a file only to the effective group ID of the process or to one of its supplementary group IDs. This symbol shall always be set to a value other than –1.

CS _POSIX_CLOCK_SELECTION
The implementation supports the Clock Selection option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

CPT _POSIX_CPUTIME
The implementation supports the Process CPU-Time Clocks option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

FSC _POSIX_FSYNC
The implementation supports the File Synchronization option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

_POSIX_IPV6
The implementation supports the IPv6 option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

_POSIX_JOB_CONTROL
The implementation supports job control. This symbol shall always be set to a value greater than zero.

MF _POSIX_MAPPED_FILES
The implementation supports the Memory Mapped Files option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

ML _POSIX_MEMLOCK
The implementation supports the Process Memory Locking option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

MLR _POSIX_MEMLOCK_RANGE
The implementation supports the Range Memory Locking option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

MPR _POSIX_MEMORY_PROTECTION
The implementation supports the Memory Protection option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

MSG _POSIX_MESSAGE_PASSING
The implementation supports the Message Passing option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

MON _POSIX_MONOTONIC_CLOCK
The implementation supports the Monotonic Clock option. If this symbol has a value other



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

_POSIX_NO_TRUNC
Pathname components longer than {NAME_MAX} generate an error. This symbol shall always be set to a value other than –1.

PIO _POSIX_PRIORITIZED_IO
The implementation supports the Prioritized Input and Output option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

PS _POSIX_PRIORITY_SCHEDULING
The implementation supports the Process Scheduling option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

RS _POSIX_RAW_SOCKETS
The implementation supports the Raw Sockets option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

THR _POSIX_READER_WRITER_LOCKS
The implementation supports the Read-Write Locks option. This is always set to a value greater than zero if the Threads option is supported. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

RTS _POSIX_REALTIME_SIGNALS
The implementation supports the Realtime Signals Extension option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

_POSIX_REGEXP
The implementation supports the Regular Expression Handling option. This symbol shall always be set to a value greater than zero.

_POSIX_SAVED_IDS
Each process has a saved set-user-ID and a saved set-group-ID. This symbol shall always be set to a value greater than zero.

SEM _POSIX_SEMAPHORES
The implementation supports the Semaphores option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

SHM _POSIX_SHARED_MEMORY_OBJECTS
The implementation supports the Shared Memory Objects option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

_POSIX_SHELL
The implementation supports the POSIX shell. This symbol shall always be set to a value greater than zero.

SPN _POSIX_SPAWN
The implementation supports the Spawn option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

SPI _POSIX_SPIN_LOCKS
The implementation supports the Spin Locks option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

SS _POSIX_SPORADIC_SERVER
The implementation supports the Process Sporadic Server option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

14210 SIO _POSIX_SYNCHRONIZED_IO
14211 The implementation supports the Synchronized Input and Output option. If this symbol
14212 has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14213 TSA _POSIX_THREAD_ATTR_STACKADDR
14214 The implementation supports the Thread Stack Address Attribute option. If this symbol
14215 has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14216 TSS _POSIX_THREAD_ATTR_STACKSIZE
14217 The implementation supports the Thread Stack Size Attribute option. If this symbol has a
14218 value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14219 TCT _POSIX_THREAD_CPUTIME
14220 The implementation supports the Thread CPU-Time Clocks option. If this symbol has a
14221 value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14222 TPI _POSIX_THREAD_PRIO_INHERIT
14223 The implementation supports the Thread Priority Inheritance option. If this symbol has a
14224 value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14225 TPP _POSIX_THREAD_PRIO_PROTECT
14226 The implementation supports the Thread Priority Protection option. If this symbol has a
14227 value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14228 TPS _POSIX_THREAD_PRIORITY_SCHEDULING
14229 The implementation supports the Thread Execution Scheduling option. If this symbol has a
14230 value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14231 TSH _POSIX_THREAD_PROCESS_SHARED
14232 The implementation supports the Thread Process-Shared Synchronization option. If this
14233 symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14234 TSF _POSIX_THREAD_SAFE_FUNCTIONS
14235 The implementation supports the Thread-Safe Functions option. If this symbol has a value
14236 other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14237 TSP _POSIX_THREAD_SPORADIC_SERVER
14238 The implementation supports the Thread Sporadic Server option. If this symbol has a value
14239 other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14240 THR _POSIX_THREADS
14241 The implementation supports the Threads option. If this symbol has a value other than –1
14242 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14243 TMO _POSIX_TIMEOUTS
14244 The implementation supports the Timeouts option. If this symbol has a value other than –1
14245 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14246 TMR _POSIX_TIMERS
14247 The implementation supports the Timers option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or
14248 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14249 TRC _POSIX_TRACE
14250 The implementation supports the Trace option. If this symbol has a value other than –1 or 0,
14251 it shall have the value 200112L.

14252 TEF _POSIX_TRACE_EVENT_FILTER
14253 The implementation supports the Trace Event Filter option. If this symbol has a value other
14254 than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

14255 TRI _POSIX_TRACE_INHERIT
14256 The implementation supports the Trace Inherit option. If this symbol has a value other than
14257 –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14258 TRL _POSIX_TRACE_LOG
14259 The implementation supports the Trace Log option. If this symbol has a value other than –1
14260 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14261 TYM _POSIX_TYPED_MEMORY_OBJECTS
14262 The implementation supports the Typed Memory Objects option. If this symbol has a value
14263 other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14264 _POSIX_VDISABLE
14265 This symbol shall be defined to be the value of a character that shall disable terminal special
14266 character handling as described in **<termios.h>**. This symbol shall always be set to a value
14267 other than –1.

14268 _POSIX2_C_BIND
14269 The implementation supports the C-Language Binding option. This symbol shall always
14270 have the value 200112L.

14271 CD _POSIX2_C_DEV
14272 The implementation supports the C-Language Development Utilities option. If this symbol
14273 has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14274 _POSIX2_CHAR_TERM
14275 The implementation supports at least one terminal type.

14276 FD _POSIX2_FORT_DEV
14277 The implementation supports the FORTRAN Development Utilities option. If this symbol
14278 has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14279 FR _POSIX2_FORT_RUN
14280 The implementation supports the FORTRAN Runtime Utilities option. If this symbol has a
14281 value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14282 _POSIX2_LOCALEDEF
14283 The implementation supports the creation of locales by the *localedef* utility. If this symbol
14284 has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14285 BE _POSIX2_PBS
14286 The implementation supports the Batch Environment Services and Utilities option. If this
14287 symbol has a value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14288 BE _POSIX2_PBS_ACCOUNTING
14289 The implementation supports the Batch Accounting option. If this symbol has a value other
14290 than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14291 BE _POSIX2_PBS_CHECKPOINT
14292 The implementation supports the Batch Checkpoint/Restart option. If this symbol has a
14293 value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14294 BE _POSIX2_PBS_LOCATE
14295 The implementation supports the Locate Batch Job Request option. If this symbol has a
14296 value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14297 BE _POSIX2_PBS_MESSAGE
14298 The implementation supports the Batch Job Message Request option. If this symbol has a
14299 value other than –1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

14300 BE _POSIX2_PBS_TRACK
14301 The implementation supports the Track Batch Job Request option. If this symbol has a value
14302 other than −1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14303 SD _POSIX2_SW_DEV
14304 The implementation supports the Software Development Utilities option. If this symbol has
14305 a value other than −1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14306 UP _POSIX2_UPE
14307 The implementation supports the User Portability Utilities option. If this symbol has a value
14308 other than −1 or 0, it shall have the value 200112L.

14309 _V6_ILP32_OFF32
14310 The implementation provides a C-language compilation environment with 32-bit **int**, **long**,
14311 **pointer**, and **off_t** types.

14312 _V6_ILP32_OFFBIG
14313 The implementation provides a C-language compilation environment with 32-bit **int**, **long**,
14314 and **pointer** types and an **off_t** type using at least 64 bits.

14315 _V6_LP64_OFF64
14316 The implementation provides a C-language compilation environment with 32-bit **int** and
14317 64-bit **long**, **pointer**, and **off_t** types.

14318 _V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG
14319 The implementation provides a C-language compilation environment with an **int** type
14320 using at least 32 bits and **long**, **pointer**, and **off_t** types using at least 64 bits.

14321 XSI _XBS5_ILP32_OFF32 (**LEGACY**)
14322 The implementation provides a C-language compilation environment with 32-bit **int**, **long**,
14323 **pointer**, and **off_t** types.

14324 XSI _XBS5_ILP32_OFFBIG (**LEGACY**)
14325 The implementation provides a C-language compilation environment with 32-bit **int**, **long**,
14326 and **pointer** types and an **off_t** type using at least 64 bits.

14327 XSI _XBS5_LP64_OFF64 (**LEGACY**)
14328 The implementation provides a C-language compilation environment with 32-bit **int** and
14329 64-bit **long**, **pointer**, and **off_t** types.

14330 XSI _XBS5_LPBIG_OFFBIG (**LEGACY**)
14331 The implementation provides a C-language compilation environment with an **int** type
14332 using at least 32 bits and **long**, **pointer**, and **off_t** types using at least 64 bits.

14333 XSI _XOPEN_CRYPT
14334 The implementation supports the X/Open Encryption Option Group.

14335 _XOPEN_ENH_I18N
14336 The implementation supports the Issue 4, Version 2 Enhanced Internationalization Option
14337 Group. This symbol shall always be set to a value other than −1.

14338 _XOPEN_LEGACY
14339 The implementation supports the Legacy Option Group.

14340 _XOPEN_REALTIME
14341 The implementation supports the X/Open Realtime Option Group.

14342 _XOPEN_REALTIME_THREADS
14343 The implementation supports the X/Open Realtime Threads Option Group.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

14344 _XOPEN_SHM
14345 The implementation supports the Issue 4, Version 2 Shared Memory Option Group. This
14346 symbol shall always be set to a value other than –1.

14347 _XOPEN_STREAMS
14348 The implementation supports the XSI STREAMS Option Group.

14349 XSI _XOPEN_UNIX
14350 The implementation supports the XSI extension.

14351 **Execution-Time Symbolic Constants**

14352 If any of the following constants are not defined in the **<unistd.h>** header, the value shall vary
14353 depending on the file to which it is applied.

14354 If any of the following constants are defined to have value –1 in the **<unistd.h>** header, the
14355 implementation shall not provide the option on any file; if any are defined to have a value other
14356 than –1 in the **<unistd.h>** header, the implementation shall provide the option on all applicable
14357 files.

14358 All of the following constants, whether defined in **<unistd.h>** or not, may be queried with
14359 respect to a specific file using the *pathconf*( ) or *fpathconf*( ) functions:

14360 _POSIX_ASYNC_IO
14361 Asynchronous input or output operations may be performed for the associated file.

14362 _POSIX_PRIO_IO
14363 Prioritized input or output operations may be performed for the associated file.

14364 _POSIX_SYNC_IO
14365 Synchronized input or output operations may be performed for the associated file.

14366 **Constants for Functions**

14367 The following symbolic constant shall be defined:

14368 NULL Null pointer

14369 The following symbolic constants shall be defined for the *access*( ) function:

14370 F_OK Test for existence of file.

14371 R_OK Test for read permission.

14372 W_OK Test for write permission.

14373 X_OK Test for execute (search) permission.

14374 The constants F_OK, R_OK, W_OK, and X_OK and the expressions *R_OK* | *W_OK*, *R_OK* | *X_OK*,
14375 and *R_OK* | *W_OK* | *X_OK* shall all have distinct values.

14376 The following symbolic constants shall be defined for the *confstr*( ) function:

14377 _CS_PATH
14378 This is the value for the *PATH* environment variable that finds all standard utilities.

14379 _CS_POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFF32_CFLAGS
14380 If *sysconf*(_SC_V6_ILP32_OFF32) returns –1, the meaning of this value is unspecified.
14381 Otherwise, this value is the set of initial options to be given to the *c99* utility to build an
14382 application using a programming model with 32-bit **int**, **long**, **pointer**, and **off_t** types.

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

14383 _CS_POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFF32_LDFLAGS
14384 If *sysconf*(_SC_V6_ILP32_OFF32) returns –1, the meaning of this value is unspecified.
14385 Otherwise, this value is the set of final options to be given to the *c99* utility to build an
14386 application using a programming model with 32-bit **int**, **long**, **pointer**, and **off_t** types.

14387 _CS_POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFF32_LIBS
14388 If *sysconf*(_SC_V6_ILP32_OFF32) returns –1, the meaning of this value is unspecified.
14389 Otherwise, this value is the set of libraries to be given to the *c99* utility to build an
14390 application using a programming model with 32-bit **int**, **long**, **pointer**, and **off_t** types.

14391 _CS_POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFFBIG_CFLAGS
14392 If *sysconf*(_SC_V6_ILP32_OFFBIG) returns –1, the meaning of this value is unspecified.
14393 Otherwise, this value is the set of initial options to be given to the *c99* utility to build an
14394 application using a programming model with 32-bit **int**, **long**, and **pointer** types, and an
14395 **off_t** type using at least 64 bits.

14396 _CS_POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFFBIG_LDFLAGS
14397 If *sysconf*(_SC_V6_ILP32_OFFBIG) returns –1, the meaning of this value is unspecified.
14398 Otherwise, this value is the set of final options to be given to the *c99* utility to build an
14399 application using a programming model with 32-bit **int**, **long**, and **pointer** types, and an
14400 **off_t** type using at least 64 bits.

14401 _CS_POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFFBIG_LIBS
14402 If *sysconf*(_SC_V6_ILP32_OFFBIG) returns –1, the meaning of this value is unspecified.
14403 Otherwise, this value is the set of libraries to be given to the *c99* utility to build an
14404 application using a programming model with 32-bit **int**, **long**, and **pointer** types, and an
14405 **off_t** type using at least 64 bits.

14406 _CS_POSIX_V6_LP64_OFF64_CFLAGS
14407 If *sysconf*(_SC_V6_LP64_OFF64) returns –1, the meaning of this value is unspecified.
14408 Otherwise, this value is the set of initial options to be given to the *c99* utility to build an
14409 application using a programming model with 32-bit **int** and 64-bit **long**, **pointer**, and **off_t**
14410 types.

14411 _CS_POSIX_V6_LP64_OFF64_LDFLAGS
14412 If *sysconf*(_SC_V6_LP64_OFF64) returns –1, the meaning of this value is unspecified.
14413 Otherwise, this value is the set of final options to be given to the *c99* utility to build an
14414 application using a programming model with 32-bit **int** and 64-bit **long**, **pointer**, and **off_t**
14415 types.

14416 _CS_POSIX_V6_LP64_OFF64_LIBS
14417 If *sysconf*(_SC_V6_LP64_OFF64) returns –1, the meaning of this value is unspecified.
14418 Otherwise, this value is the set of libraries to be given to the *c99* utility to build an
14419 application using a programming model with 32-bit **int** and 64-bit **long**, **pointer**, and **off_t**
14420 types.

14421 _CS_POSIX_V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG_CFLAGS
14422 If *sysconf*(_SC_V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG) returns –1, the meaning of this value is unspecified.
14423 Otherwise, this value is the set of initial options to be given to the *c99* utility to build an
14424 application using a programming model with an **int** type using at least 32 bits and **long**,
14425 **pointer**, and **off_t** types using at least 64 bits.

14426 _CS_POSIX_V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG_LDFLAGS
14427 If *sysconf*(_SC_V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG) returns –1, the meaning of this value is unspecified.
14428 Otherwise, this value is the set of final options to be given to the *c99* utility to build an
14429 application using a programming model with an **int** type using at least 32 bits and **long**,
14430 **pointer**, and **off_t** types using at least 64 bits.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

14431 _CS_POSIX_V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG_LIBS
14432 If *sysconf*(_SC_V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG) returns −1, the meaning of this value is unspecified.
14433 Otherwise, this value is the set of libraries to be given to the *c99* utility to build an
14434 application using a programming model with an **int** type using at least 32 bits and **long**,
14435 **pointer**, and **off_t** types using at least 64 bits.

14436 _CS_POSIX_V6_WIDTH_RESTRICTED_ENVS
14437 This value is a <newline>-separated list of names of programming environments supported
14438 by the implementation in which the widths of the **blksize_t**, **cc_t**, **mode_t**, **nfds_t**, **pid_t**,
14439 **ptrdiff_t**, **size_t**, **speed_t**, **ssize_t**, **suseconds_t**, **tcflag_t**, **useconds_t**, **wchar_t**, and **wint_t**
14440 types are no greater than the width of type **long**.

14441 XSI The following symbolic constants are reserved for compatibility with Issue 5:

14442 _CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFF32_CFLAGS (**LEGACY**)
14443 _CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFF32_LDFLAGS (**LEGACY**)
14444 _CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFF32_LIBS (**LEGACY**)
14445 _CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFF32_LINTFLAGS (**LEGACY**)
14446 _CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFFBIG_CFLAGS (**LEGACY**)
14447 _CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFFBIG_LDFLAGS (**LEGACY**)
14448 _CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFFBIG_LIBS (**LEGACY**)
14449 _CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFFBIG_LINTFLAGS (**LEGACY**)
14450 _CS_XBS5_LP64_OFF64_CFLAGS (**LEGACY**)
14451 _CS_XBS5_LP64_OFF64_LDFLAGS (**LEGACY**)
14452 _CS_XBS5_LP64_OFF64_LIBS (**LEGACY**)
14453 _CS_XBS5_LP64_OFF64_LINTFLAGS (**LEGACY**)
14454 _CS_XBS5_LPBIG_OFFBIG_CFLAGS (**LEGACY**)
14455 _CS_XBS5_LPBIG_OFFBIG_LDFLAGS (**LEGACY**)
14456 _CS_XBS5_LPBIG_OFFBIG_LIBS (**LEGACY**)
14457 _CS_XBS5_LPBIG_OFFBIG_LINTFLAGS (**LEGACY**)
14458

14459 The following symbolic constants shall be defined for the *lseek*( ) and *fcntl*( ) functions and shall
14460 have distinct values:

14461 SEEK_CUR Set file offset to current plus *offset*.

14462 SEEK_END Set file offset to EOF plus *offset*.

14463 SEEK_SET Set file offset to *offset*.

14464 The following symbolic constants shall be defined as possible values for the *function* argument
14465 to the *lockf*( ) function:

14466 F_LOCK Lock a section for exclusive use.

14467 F_TEST Test section for locks by other processes.

14468 F_TLOCK Test and lock a section for exclusive use.

14469 F_ULOCK Unlock locked sections.

14470 The following symbolic constants shall be defined for *pathconf*( ):

14471 _PC_ALLOC_SIZE_MIN
14472 _PC_ASYNC_IO
14473 _PC_CHOWN_RESTRICTED
14474 _PC_FILESIZEBITS
14475 _PC_LINK_MAX


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

14476 _PC_MAX_CANON
14477 _PC_MAX_INPUT
14478 _PC_NAME_MAX
14479 _PC_NO_TRUNC
14480 _PC_PATH_MAX
14481 _PC_PIPE_BUF
14482 _PC_PRIO_IO
14483 _PC_REC_INCR_XFER_SIZE |
14484 _PC_REC_MIN_XFER_SIZE |
14485 _PC_REC_XFER_ALIGN
14486 _PC_SYMLINK_MAX |
14487 _PC_SYNC_IO |
14488 _PC_VDISABLE

14489 The following symbolic constants shall be defined for *sysconf*( ):

14490 _SC_2_C_BIND
14491 _SC_2_C_DEV
14492 _SC_2_C_VERSION
14493 _SC_2_CHAR_TERM
14494 _SC_2_FORT_DEV
14495 _SC_2_FORT_RUN
14496 _SC_2_LOCALEDEF
14497 _SC_2_PBS
14498 _SC_2_PBS_ACCOUNTING
14499 _SC_2_PBS_CHECKPOINT
14500 _SC_2_PBS_LOCATE
14501 _SC_2_PBS_MESSAGE
14502 _SC_2_PBS_TRACK
14503 _SC_2_SW_DEV
14504 _SC_2_UPE
14505 _SC_2_VERSION
14506 _SC_ADVISORY_INFO
14507 _SC_ARG_MAX
14508 _SC_AIO_LISTIO_MAX
14509 _SC_AIO_MAX
14510 _SC_AIO_PRIO_DELTA_MAX
14511 _SC_ASYNCHRONOUS_IO
14512 _SC_ATEXIT_MAX |
14513 _SC_BARRIERS |
14514 _SC_BC_BASE_MAX |
14515 _SC_BC_DIM_MAX
14516 _SC_BC_SCALE_MAX
14517 _SC_BC_STRING_MAX
14518 _SC_CHILD_MAX
14519 _SC_CLK_TCK
14520 _SC_CLOCK_SELECTION |
14521 _SC_COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX |
14522 _SC_CPUTIME
14523 _SC_DELAYTIMER_MAX
14524 _SC_EXPR_NEST_MAX
14525 _SC_FILE_LOCKING
14526 _SC_FSYNC



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

14527 _SC_GETGR_R_SIZE_MAX
14528 _SC_GETPW_R_SIZE_MAX
14529 _SC_HOST_NAME_MAX
14530 _SC_IOV_MAX |
14531 _SC_IPV6 |
14532 _SC_JOB_CONTROL |
14533 _SC_LINE_MAX
14534 _SC_LOGIN_NAME_MAX
14535 _SC_MAPPED_FILES
14536 _SC_MEMLOCK
14537 _SC_MEMLOCK_RANGE
14538 _SC_MEMORY_PROTECTION
14539 _SC_MESSAGE_PASSING
14540 _SC_MONOTONIC_CLOCK |
14541 _SC_MQ_OPEN_MAX |
14542 _SC_MQ_PRIO_MAX
14543 _SC_NGROUPS_MAX
14544 _SC_OPEN_MAX
14545 _SC_PAGE_SIZE |
14546 _SC_PAGESIZE
14547 _SC_PRIORITIZED_IO |
14548 _SC_PRIORITY_SCHEDULING
14549 _SC_RAW_SOCKETS |
14550 _SC_RE_DUP_MAX |
14551 _SC_READER_WRITER_LOCKS |
14552 _SC_REALTIME_SIGNALS |
14553 _SC_REGEXP
14554 _SC_RTSIG_MAX
14555 _SC_SAVED_IDS
14556 _SC_SEMAPHORES
14557 _SC_SEM_NSEMS_MAX
14558 _SC_SEM_VALUE_MAX
14559 _SC_SHARED_MEMORY_OBJECTS
14560 _SC_SHELL
14561 _SC_SIGQUEUE_MAX
14562 _SC_SPAWN
14563 _SC_SPIN_LOCKS |
14564 _SC_SPORADIC_SERVER |
14565 _SC_STREAM_MAX
14566 _SC_SYMLOOP_MAX |
14567 _SC_SYNCHRONIZED_IO |
14568 _SC_THREAD_ATTR_STACKADDR
14569 _SC_THREAD_ATTR_STACKSIZE
14570 _SC_THREAD_CPUTIME
14571 _SC_THREAD_DESTRUCTOR_ITERATIONS
14572 _SC_THREAD_KEYS_MAX
14573 _SC_THREAD_PRIO_INHERIT
14574 _SC_THREAD_PRIO_PROTECT
14575 _SC_THREAD_PRIORITY_SCHEDULING
14576 _SC_THREAD_PROCESS_SHARED
14577 _SC_THREAD_SAFE_FUNCTIONS
14578 _SC_THREAD_SPORADIC_SERVER

 Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

14579 _SC_THREAD_STACK_MIN
14580 _SC_THREAD_THREADS_MAX
14581 _SC_TIMEOUTS
14582 _SC_THREADS
14583 _SC_TIMER_MAX
14584 _SC_TIMERS |
14585 _SC_TRACE |
14586 _SC_TRACE_EVENT_FILTER |
14587 _SC_TRACE_INHERIT |
14588 _SC_TRACE_LOG |
14589 _SC_TTY_NAME_MAX |
14590 _SC_TYPED_MEMORY_OBJECTS |
14591 _SC_TZNAME_MAX |
14592 _SC_V6_ILP32_OFF32
14593 _SC_V6_ILP32_OFFBIG
14594 _SC_V6_LP64_OFF64
14595 _SC_V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG
14596 _SC_VERSION
14597 _SC_XBS5_ILP32_OFF32 (**LEGACY**) |
14598 _SC_XBS5_ILP32_OFFBIG (**LEGACY**)
14599 _SC_XBS5_LP64_OFF64 (**LEGACY**)
14600 _SC_XBS5_LPBIG_OFFBIG (**LEGACY**)
14601 _SC_XOPEN_CRYPT
14602 _SC_XOPEN_ENH_I18N
14603 _SC_XOPEN_LEGACY
14604 _SC_XOPEN_REALTIME
14605 _SC_XOPEN_REALTIME_THREADS
14606 _SC_XOPEN_SHM
14607 _SC_XOPEN_STREAMS
14608 _SC_XOPEN_UNIX
14609 _SC_XOPEN_VERSION
14610 _SC_XOPEN_XCU_VERSION

14611 The two constants _SC_PAGESIZE and _SC_PAGE_SIZE may be defined to have the same |
14612 value.

14613 The following symbolic constants shall be defined for file streams:

14614 STDERR_FILENO File number of *stderr*; 2.

14615 STDIN_FILENO File number of *stdin*; 0.

14616 STDOUT_FILENO File number of *stdout*; 1.

14617 **Type Definitions**

14618 The **size_t**, **ssize_t**, **uid_t**, **gid_t**, **off_t**, **pid_t**, and **useconds_t** types shall be defined as described
14619 in **<sys/types.h>**.

14620 The **intptr_t** type shall be defined as described in **<inttypes.h>**.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

**Declarations**

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int           access(const char *, int);
unsigned      alarm(unsigned);
int           chdir(const char *);
int           chown(const char *, uid_t, gid_t);
int           close(int);
size_t        confstr(int, char *, size_t);
XSI char      *crypt(const char *, const char *);
XSI char      *ctermid(char *);
int           dup(int);
int           dup2(int, int);
XSI void      encrypt(char[64], int);
int           execl(const char *, const char *, ...);
int           execle(const char *, const char *, ...);
int           execlp(const char *, const char *, ...);
int           execv(const char *, char *const []);
int           execve(const char *, char *const [], char *const []);
int           execvp(const char *, char *const []);
void          _exit(int);
int           fchown(int, uid_t, gid_t);
XSI int       fchdir(int);
SIO int       fdatasync(int);
pid_t         fork(void);
long          fpathconf(int, int);
FSC int       fsync(int);
int           ftruncate(int, off_t);
char          *getcwd(char *, size_t);
gid_t         getegid(void);
uid_t         geteuid(void);
gid_t         getgid(void);
int           getgroups(int, gid_t []);
XSI long      gethostid(void);
int           gethostname(char *, size_t);
char          *getlogin(void);
int           getlogin_r(char *, size_t);
int           getopt(int, char * const [], const char *);
XSI pid_t     getpgid(pid_t);
pid_t         getpgrp(void);
pid_t         getpid(void);
pid_t         getppid(void);
XSI pid_t     getsid(pid_t);
uid_t         getuid(void);
XSI char      *getwd(char *); (LEGACY)
int           isatty(int);
XSI int       lchown(const char *, uid_t, gid_t);
int           link(const char *, const char *);
XSI int       lockf(int, int, off_t);
off_t         lseek(int, off_t, int);
XSI
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
int           nice(int);
long          pathconf(const char *, int);
int           pause(void);
int           pipe(int [2]);
ssize_t       pread(int, void *, size_t, off_t);
ssize_t       pwrite(int, const void *, size_t, off_t);
ssize_t       read(int, void *, size_t);
ssize_t       readlink(const char *restrict, char *restrict, size_t);
int           rmdir(const char *);
int           setegid(gid_t);
int           seteuid(uid_t);
int           setgid(gid_t);
int           setpgid(pid_t, pid_t);
pid_t         setpgrp(void);
int           setregid(gid_t, gid_t);
int           setreuid(uid_t, uid_t);
pid_t         setsid(void);
int           setuid(uid_t);
unsigned      sleep(unsigned);
void          swab(const void *restrict, void *restrict, ssize_t);
int           symlink(const char *, const char *);
void          sync(void);
long          sysconf(int);
pid_t         tcgetpgrp(int);
int           tcsetpgrp(int, pid_t);
int           truncate(const char *, off_t);
char         *ttyname(int);
int           ttyname_r(int, char *, size_t);
useconds_t    ualarm(useconds_t, useconds_t);
int           unlink(const char *);
int           usleep(useconds_t);
pid_t         vfork(void);
ssize_t       write(int, const void *, size_t);
```

Implementations may also include the *pthread_atfork*( ) prototype as defined in **<pthread.h>** (on page 289).

The following external variables shall be declared:

```
extern char  *optarg;
extern int    optind, opterr, optopt;
```

**APPLICATION USAGE**

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 only describes the behavior of systems that claim conformance to it. However, application developers who want to write applications that adapt to other versions of IEEE Std 1003.1 (or to systems that do not conform to any POSIX standard) may find it useful to code them so as to conditionally compile different code depending on the value of _POSIX_VERSION, for example:

```
#if _POSIX_VERSION >= 200112L
/* Use the newer function that copes with large files. */
off_t pos=ftello(fp);
#else
/* Either this is an old version of POSIX, or _POSIX_VERSION is
   not even defined, so use the traditional function. */
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
long pos=ftell(fp);
#endif
```

Earlier versions of IEEE Std 1003.1 and of the Single UNIX Specification can be identified by the following macros:

POSIX.1-1988 standard
_POSIX_VERSION==198808L

POSIX.1-1990 standard
_POSIX_VERSION==199009L

ISO POSIX-1:1996 standard
_POSIX_VERSION==199506L

Single UNIX Specification, Version 1
_XOPEN_UNIX and _XOPEN_VERSION==4

Single UNIX Specification, Version 2
_XOPEN_UNIX and _XOPEN_VERSION==500

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 does not make any attempt to define application binary interaction with the underlying operating system. However, application developers may find it useful to query _SC_VERSION at runtime via *sysconf*( ) to determine whether the current version of the operating system supports the necessary functionality as in the following program fragment:

```
if (sysconf(_SC_VERSION) < 200112L) {
    fprintf(stderr, "POSIX.1-2001 system required, terminating \n");
    exit(1);
}
```

New applications should not use _XOPEN_SHM or _XOPEN_ENH_I18N.

**RATIONALE**

As IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 evolved, certain options became sufficiently standardized that it was concluded that simply requiring one of the option choices was simpler than retaining the option. However, for backwards-compatibility, the option flags (with required constant values) are retained.

**Version Test Macros**

The standard developers considered altering the definition of _POSIX_VERSION and removing _SC_VERSION from the specification of *sysconf*( ) since the utility to an application was deemed by some to be minimal, and since the implementation of the functionality is potentially problematic. However, they recognized that support for existing application binaries is a concern to manufacturers, application developers, and the users of implementations conforming to IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

While the example using _SC_VERSION in the APPLICATION USAGE section does not provide the greatest degree of imaginable utility to the application developer or user, it is arguably better than a **core** file or some other equally obscure result. (It is also possible for implementations to encode and recognize application binaries compiled in various POSIX.1-conforming environments, and modify the semantics of the underlying system to conform to the expectations of the application.) For the reasons outlined in the preceding paragraphs and in the APPLICATION USAGE section, the standard developers elected to retain the _POSIX_VERSION and _SC_VERSION functionality.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

14765 **Compile-Time Symbolic Constants for System-Wide Options**

14766 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 now includes support in certain areas for the newly adopted policy
14767 governing options and stubs.

14768 This policy provides flexibility for implementations in how they support options. It also
14769 specifies how conforming applications can adapt to different implementations that support
14770 different sets of options. It allows the following:

14771 1. If an implementation has no interest in supporting an option, it does not have to provide
14772 anything associated with that option beyond the announcement that it does not support it.

14773 2. An implementation can support a partial or incompatible version of an option (as a non-
14774 standard extension) as long as it does not claim to support the option.

14775 3. An application can determine whether the option is supported. A strictly conforming
14776 application must check this announcement mechanism before first using anything
14777 associated with the option.

14778 There is an important implication of this policy. IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 cannot dictate the
14779 behavior of interfaces associated with an option when the implementation does not claim to
14780 support the option. In particular, it cannot require that a function associated with an
14781 unsupported option will fail if it does not perform as specified. However, this policy does not
14782 prevent a standard from requiring certain functions to always be present, but that they shall
14783 always fail on some implementations. The *setpgid*( ) function in the POSIX.1-1990 standard, for
14784 example, is considered appropriate.

14785 The POSIX standards include various options, and the C-language binding support for an option
14786 implies that the implementation must supply data types and function interfaces. An application
14787 must be able to discover whether the implementation supports each option.

14788 Any application must consider the following three cases for each option:

14789 1. Option never supported.

14790 The implementation advertises at compile time that the option will never be supported. In
14791 this case, it is not necessary for the implementation to supply any of the data types or
14792 function interfaces that are provided only as part of the option. The implementation might
14793 provide data types and functions that are similar to those defined by IEEE Std 1003.1-2001,
14794 but there is no guarantee for any particular behavior.

14795 2. Option always supported.

14796 The implementation advertises at compile time that the option will always be supported.
14797 In this case, all data types and function interfaces shall be available and shall operate as
14798 specified.

14799 3. Option might or might not be supported.

14800 Some implementations might not provide a mechanism to specify support of options at
14801 compile time. In addition, the implementation might be unable or unwilling to specify
14802 support or non-support at compile time. In either case, any application that might use the
14803 option at runtime must be able to compile and execute. The implementation must provide,
14804 at compile time, all data types and function interfaces that are necessary to allow this. In
14805 this situation, there must be a mechanism that allows the application to query, at runtime,
14806 whether the option is supported. If the application attempts to use the option when it is
14807 not supported, the result is unspecified unless explicitly specified otherwise in
14808 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

14809 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

14810 None.

14811 **SEE ALSO**

14812 **<inttypes.h>**, **<limits.h>**, **<sys/socket.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, **<termios.h>**, **<wctype.h>**, the System
14813 Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *access*( ), *alarm*( ), *chdir*( ), *chown*( ), *close*( ), *crypt*( ),
14814 *ctermid*( ), *dup*( ), *encrypt*( ), *environ*, *exec*, *exit*( ), *fchdir*( ), *fchown*( ), *fcntl*( ), *fork*( ), *fpathconf*( ),
14815 *fsync*( ), *ftruncate*( ), *getcwd*( ), *getegid*( ), *geteuid*( ), *getgid*( ), *getgroups*( ), *gethostid*( ), *gethostname*( ),
14816 *getlogin*( ), *getpgid*( ), *getpgrp*( ), *getpid*( ), *getppid*( ), *getsid*( ), *getuid*( ), *isatty*( ), *lchown*( ), *link*( ),
14817 *lockf*( ), *lseek*( ), *nice*( ), *pathconf*( ), *pause*( ), *pipe*( ), *read*( ), *readlink*( ), *rmdir*( ), *setgid*( ), *setpgid*( ),
14818 *setpgrp*( ), *setregid*( ), *setreuid*( ), *setsid*( ), *setuid*( ), *sleep*( ), *swab*( ), *symlink*( ), *sync*( ), *sysconf*( ),
14819 *tcgetpgrp*( ), *tcsetpgrp*( ), *truncate*( ), *ttyname*( ), *ualarm*( ), *unlink*( ), *usleep*( ), *vfork*( ), *write*( )

14820 **CHANGE HISTORY**

14821 First released in Issue 1. Derived from Issue 1 of the SVID.

14822 **Issue 5**

14823 The DESCRIPTION is updated for alignment with the POSIX Realtime Extension and the POSIX
14824 Threads Extension.

14825 The symbolic constants _XOPEN_REALTIME and _XOPEN_REALTIME_THREADS are added.
14826 _POSIX2_C_BIND, _XOPEN_ENH_I18N, and _XOPEN_SHM must now be set to a value other
14827 than −1 by a conforming implementation.

14828 Large File System extensions are added.

14829 The type of the argument to *sbrk*( ) is changed from **int** to **intptr_t**.

14830 _XBS_ constants are added to the list of constants for Options and Option Groups, to the list of
14831 constants for the *confstr*( ) function, and to the list of constants to the *sysconf*( ) function. These
14832 are all marked EX.

14833 **Issue 6**

14834 _POSIX2_C_VERSION is removed.

14835 The Open Group Corrigendum U026/4 is applied, adding the prototype for *fdatasync*( ).

14836 The Open Group Corrigendum U026/1 is applied, adding the symbols _SC_XOPEN_LEGACY,
14837 _SC_XOPEN_REALTIME, and _SC_XOPEN_REALTIME_THREADS.

14838 The symbols _XOPEN_STREAMS and _SC_XOPEN_STREAMS are added to support the XSI
14839 STREAMS Option Group.

14840 Text in the DESCRIPTION relating to conformance requirements is moved elsewhere in
14841 IEEE Std 1003.1-2001.

14842 The legacy symbol _SC_PASS_MAX is removed.

14843 The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the
14844 Single UNIX Specification:

14845 • The _CS_POSIX_* and _CS_XBS5_* constants are added for the *confstr*( ) function.

14846 • The _SC_XBS5_* constants are added for the *sysconf*( ) function.

14847 • The symbolic constants F_ULOCK, F_LOCK, F_TLOCK, and F_TEST are added.

14848 • The **uid_t**, **gid_t**, **off_t**, **pid_t**, and **useconds_t** types are mandated.

14849 The *gethostname*( ) prototype is added for sockets.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

A new section is added for System-Wide Options.

Function prototypes for *setegid*( ) and *seteuid*( ) are added.

Option symbolic constants are added for _POSIX_ADVISORY_INFO, _POSIX_CPUTIME, _POSIX_SPAWN, _POSIX_SPORADIC_SERVER, _POSIX_THREAD_CPUTIME, _POSIX_THREAD_SPORADIC_SERVER, and _POSIX_TIMEOUTS, and *pathconf*( ) variables are added for _PC_ALLOC_SIZE_MIN, _PC_REC_INCR_XFER_SIZE, _PC_REC_MAX_XFER_SIZE, _PC_REC_MIN_XFER_SIZE, and _PC_REC_XFER_ALIGN for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1d-1999.

The following are added for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1j-2000:

- Option symbolic constants _POSIX_BARRIERS, _POSIX_CLOCK_SELECTION, _POSIX_MONOTONIC_CLOCK, _POSIX_READER_WRITER_LOCKS, _POSIX_SPIN_LOCKS, and _POSIX_TYPED_MEMORY_OBJECTS
- *sysconf*( ) variables _SC_BARRIERS, _SC_CLOCK_SELECTION, _SC_MONOTONIC_CLOCK, _SC_READER_WRITER_LOCKS, _SC_SPIN_LOCKS, and _SC_TYPED_MEMORY_OBJECTS

The _SC_XBS5 macros associated with the ISO/IEC 9899:1990 standard are marked LEGACY, and new equivalent _SC_V6 macros associated with the ISO/IEC 9899:1999 standard are introduced.

The *getwd*( ) function is marked LEGACY.

The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototypes for *readlink*( ) and *swab*( ).

Constants for options are now harmonized, so when supported they take the year of approval of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 as the value.

The following are added for alignment with IEEE Std 1003.1q-2000:

- Optional symbolic constants _POSIX_TRACE, _POSIX_TRACE_EVENT_FILTER, _POSIX_TRACE_LOG, and _POSIX_TRACE_INHERIT
- The *sysconf*( ) symbolic constants _SC_TRACE, _SC_TRACE_EVENT_FILTER, _SC_TRACE_LOG, and _SC_TRACE_INHERIT

The *brk*( ) and *sbrk*( ) legacy functions are removed.

The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-006 is applied, which reworks the XSI versioning information.

The Open Group Base Resolution bwg2001-008 is applied, changing the *namelen* parameter for *gethostname*( ) from **socklen_t** to **size_t**.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/2 is applied, changing ‘‘Thread Stack Address Size’’ to ‘‘Thread Stack Size Attribute’’.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/20 is applied, adding the _POSIX_IPV6, _SC_V6, and _SC_RAW_SOCKETS symbols.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/21 is applied, correcting the description in ‘‘Constants for Functions’’ for the _CS_POSIX_V6_LP64_OFF64_CFLAGS, _CS_POSIX_V6_LP64_OFF64_LDFLAGS, and _CS_POSIX_V6_LP64_OFF64_LIBS symbols.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/22 is applied, removing the shading for the _PC* and _SC* constants, since these are mandatory on all implementations.



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/23 is applied, adding the _PC_SYMLINK_MAX and _SC_SYMLOOP_MAX constants.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/24 is applied, correcting the shading and margin code for the *fsync*() function.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001/Cor 1-2002, item XBD/TC1/D6/25 is applied, adding the following text to the APPLICATION USAGE section: ''New applications should not use _XOPEN_SHM or _XOPEN_ENH_I18N.''.

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

utime.h — access and modification times structure

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <utime.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<utime.h>** header shall declare the structure **utimbuf**, which shall include the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `time_t` | `actime` | Access time. |
| `time_t` | `modtime` | Modification time. |

The times shall be measured in seconds since the Epoch.

The type **time_t** shall be defined as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

The following shall be declared as a function and may also be defined as a macro. A function prototype shall be provided.

```
int utime(const char *, const struct utimbuf *);
```

## APPLICATION USAGE

None.

## RATIONALE

None.

## FUTURE DIRECTIONS

None.

## SEE ALSO

**<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *utime*( )

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 3.

### Issue 6

The following new requirements on POSIX implementations derive from alignment with the Single UNIX Specification:

- The **time_t** type is defined.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

utmpx.h — user accounting database definitions

## SYNOPSIS

XSI
```
#include <utmpx.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<utmpx.h>** header shall define the **utmpx** structure that shall include at least the following members:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| `char` | `ut_user[]` | User login name. |
| `char` | `ut_id[]` | Unspecified initialization process identifier. |
| `char` | `ut_line[]` | Device name. |
| `pid_t` | `ut_pid` | Process ID. |
| `short` | `ut_type` | Type of entry. |
| `struct timeval` | `ut_tv` | Time entry was made. |

The **pid_t** type shall be defined through **typedef** as described in **<sys/types.h>**.

The **timeval** structure shall be defined as described in **<sys/time.h>**.

Inclusion of the **<utmpx.h>** header may also make visible all symbols from **<sys/time.h>**.

The following symbolic constants shall be defined as possible values for the *ut_type* member of the **utmpx** structure:

| | |
|---|---|
| EMPTY | No valid user accounting information. |
| BOOT_TIME | Identifies time of system boot. |
| OLD_TIME | Identifies time when system clock changed. |
| NEW_TIME | Identifies time after system clock changed. |
| USER_PROCESS | Identifies a process. |
| INIT_PROCESS | Identifies a process spawned by the init process. |
| LOGIN_PROCESS | Identifies the session leader of a logged-in user. |
| DEAD_PROCESS | Identifies a session leader who has exited. |

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
void          endutxent(void);
struct utmpx *getutxent(void);
struct utmpx *getutxid(const struct utmpx *);
struct utmpx *getutxline(const struct utmpx *);
struct utmpx *pututxline(const struct utmpx *);
void          setutxent(void);
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

14961 **APPLICATION USAGE**

14962 None.

14963 **RATIONALE**

14964 None.

14965 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

14966 None.

14967 **SEE ALSO**

14968 **<sys/time.h>**, **<sys/types.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *endutxent*( )

14969 **CHANGE HISTORY**

14970 First released in Issue 4, Version 2.



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

wchar.h — wide-character handling

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <wchar.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard. Applications shall define the appropriate feature test macro (see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment) to enable the visibility of these symbols in this header.

The **<wchar.h>** header shall define the following types:

**wchar_t** As described in **<stddef.h>**.

**wint_t** An integer type capable of storing any valid value of **wchar_t** or WEOF.

XSI **wctype_t** A scalar type of a data object that can hold values which represent locale-specific character classification.

**mbstate_t** An object type other than an array type that can hold the conversion state information necessary to convert between sequences of (possibly multi-byte) characters and wide characters. If a codeset is being used such that an **mbstate_t** needs to preserve more than 2 levels of reserved state, the results are unspecified.

XSI **FILE** As described in **<stdio.h>**.

**size_t** As described in **<stddef.h>**.

XSI **va_list** As described in **<stdarg.h>**.

The implementation shall support one or more programming environments in which the width of **wint_t** is no greater than the width of type **long**. The names of these programming environments can be obtained using the *confstr*( ) function or the *getconf* utility.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
wint_t     btowc(int);
wint_t     fgetwc(FILE *);
wchar_t   *fgetws(wchar_t *restrict, int, FILE *restrict);
wint_t     fputwc(wchar_t, FILE *);
int        fputws(const wchar_t *restrict, FILE *restrict);
int        fwide(FILE *, int);
int        fwprintf(FILE *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict, ...);
int        fwscanf(FILE *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict, ...);
wint_t     getwc(FILE *);
wint_t     getwchar(void);
XSI int    iswalnum(wint_t);
int        iswalpha(wint_t);
int        iswcntrl(wint_t);
int        iswctype(wint_t, wctype_t);
int        iswdigit(wint_t);
int        iswgraph(wint_t);
int        iswlower(wint_t);
int        iswprint(wint_t);
int        iswpunct(wint_t);
```


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
15017          int             iswspace(wint_t);
15018          int             iswupper(wint_t);
15019          int             iswxdigit(wint_t);
15020          size_t          mbrlen(const char *restrict, size_t, mbstate_t *restrict);
15021          size_t          mbrtowc(wchar_t *restrict, const char *restrict, size_t,
15022                              mbstate_t *restrict);
15023          int             mbsinit(const mbstate_t *);
15024          size_t          mbsrtowcs(wchar_t *restrict, const char **restrict, size_t,
15025                              mbstate_t *restrict);
15026          wint_t          putwc(wchar_t, FILE *);
15027          wint_t          putwchar(wchar_t);
15028          int             swprintf(wchar_t *restrict, size_t,
15029                              const wchar_t *restrict, ...);
15030          int             swscanf(const wchar_t *restrict,
15031                              const wchar_t *restrict, ...);
15032 XSI      wint_t          towlower(wint_t);
15033          wint_t          towupper(wint_t);
15034          wint_t          ungetwc(wint_t, FILE *);
15035          int             vfwprintf(FILE *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict, va_list);
15036          int             vfwscanf(FILE *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict, va_list);
15037          int             vwprintf(const wchar_t *restrict, va_list);
15038          int             vswprintf(wchar_t *restrict, size_t,
15039                              const wchar_t *restrict, va_list);
15040          int             vswscanf(const wchar_t *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict,
15041                              va_list);
15042          int             vwscanf(const wchar_t *restrict, va_list);
15043          size_t          wcrtomb(char *restrict, wchar_t, mbstate_t *restrict);
15044          wchar_t        *wcscat(wchar_t *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict);
15045          wchar_t        *wcschr(const wchar_t *, wchar_t);
15046          int             wcscmp(const wchar_t *, const wchar_t *);
15047          int             wcscoll(const wchar_t *, const wchar_t *);
15048          wchar_t        *wcscpy(wchar_t *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict);
15049          size_t          wcscspn(const wchar_t *, const wchar_t *);
15050          size_t          wcsftime(wchar_t *restrict, size_t,
15051                              const wchar_t *restrict, const struct tm *restrict);
15052          size_t          wcslen(const wchar_t *);
15053          wchar_t        *wcsncat(wchar_t *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict, size_t);
15054          int             wcsncmp(const wchar_t *, const wchar_t *, size_t);
15055          wchar_t        *wcsncpy(wchar_t *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict, size_t);
15056          wchar_t        *wcspbrk(const wchar_t *, const wchar_t *);
15057          wchar_t        *wcsrchr(const wchar_t *, wchar_t);
15058          size_t          wcsrtombs(char *restrict, const wchar_t **restrict,
15059                              size_t, mbstate_t *restrict);
15060          size_t          wcsspn(const wchar_t *, const wchar_t *);
15061          wchar_t        *wcsstr(const wchar_t *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict);
15062          double          wcstod(const wchar_t *restrict, wchar_t **restrict);
15063          float           wcstof(const wchar_t *restrict, wchar_t **restrict);
15064          wchar_t        *wcstok(wchar_t *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict,
15065                              wchar_t **restrict);
15066          long            wcstol(const wchar_t *restrict, wchar_t **restrict, int);
15067          long double     wcstold(const wchar_t *restrict, wchar_t **restrict);
15068          long long       wcstoll(const wchar_t *restrict, wchar_t **restrict, int);
```



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

```
15069       unsigned long wcstoul(const wchar_t *restrict, wchar_t **restrict, int);
15070       unsigned long long
15071                     wcstoull(const wchar_t *restrict, wchar_t **restrict, int);
15072 XSI   wchar_t      *wcswcs(const wchar_t *, const wchar_t *);
15073       int           wcswidth(const wchar_t *, size_t);
15074       size_t        wcsxfrm(wchar_t *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict, size_t);
15075       int           wctob(wint_t);
15076 XSI   wctype_t      wctype(const char *);
15077       int           wcwidth(wchar_t);
15078       wchar_t      *wmemchr(const wchar_t *, wchar_t, size_t);
15079       int           wmemcmp(const wchar_t *, const wchar_t *, size_t);
15080       wchar_t      *wmemcpy(wchar_t *restrict, const wchar_t *restrict, size_t);
15081       wchar_t      *wmemmove(wchar_t *, const wchar_t *, size_t);
15082       wchar_t      *wmemset(wchar_t *, wchar_t, size_t);
15083       int           wprintf(const wchar_t *restrict, ...);
15084       int           wscanf(const wchar_t *restrict, ...);
```

15085 The **<wchar.h>** header shall define the following macros:

15086 WCHAR_MAX The maximum value representable by an object of type **wchar_t**.

15087 WCHAR_MIN The minimum value representable by an object of type **wchar_t**.

15088 WEOF Constant expression of type **wint_t** that is returned by several WP functions
15089 to indicate end-of-file.

15090 NULL As described in **<stddef.h>**.

15091 The tag **tm** shall be declared as naming an incomplete structure type, the contents of which are
15092 described in the header **<time.h>**.

15093 CX Inclusion of the **<wchar.h>** header may make visible all symbols from the headers **<ctype.h>**,
15094 **<string.h>**, **<stdarg.h>**, **<stddef.h>**, **<stdio.h>**, **<stdlib.h>**, and **<time.h>**.

15095 **APPLICATION USAGE**

15096 The *iswblank*( ) function was a late addition to the ISO C standard and was introduced at the
15097 same time as the ISO C standard introduced **<wctype.h>**, which contains all of the *isw**( )
15098 functions. The Open Group Base Specifications had previously aligned with the MSE working
15099 draft and had introduced the rest of the *isw**( ) functions into **<wchar.h>**. For backwards-
15100 compatibility, the original set of *isw**( ) functions, without *iswblank*( ), are permitted (as an XSI
15101 extension) in **<wchar.h>**. For maximum portability, applications should include **<wctype.h>** in
15102 order to obtain declarations for the *isw**( ) functions.

15103 **RATIONALE**

15104 In the ISO C standard, the symbols referenced as XSI extensions are in **<wctype.h>**. Their
15105 presence here is thus an extension.

15106 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

15107 None.

15108 **SEE ALSO**

15109 **<ctype.h>**, **<stdarg.h>**, **<stddef.h>**, **<stdio.h>**, **<stdlib.h>**, **<string.h>**, **<time.h>**, **<wctype.h>**, the
15110 System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *btowc*( ), *confstr*( ), *fgetwc*( ), *fgetws*( ), *fputwc*( ),
15111 *fputws*( ), *fwide*( ), *fwprintf*( ), *fwscanf*( ), *getwc*( ), *getwchar*( ), *iswalnum*( ), *iswalpha*( ), *iswcntrl*( ),
15112 *iswctype*( ), *iswdigit*( ), *iswgraph*( ), *iswlower*( ), *iswprint*( ), *iswpunct*( ), *iswspace*( ), *iswupper*( ),
15113 *iswxdigit*( ), *iswctype*( ), *mbsinit*( ), *mbrlen*( ), *mbrtowc*( ), *mbsrtowcs*( ), *putwc*( ), *putwchar*( ),
15114 *swprintf*( ), *swscanf*( ), *towlower*( ), *towupper*( ), *ungetwc*( ), *vfwprintf*( ), *vfwscanf*( ), *vswprintf*( ),
15115 *vswscanf*( ), *vwscanf*( ), *wcrtomb*( ), *wcsrtombs*( ), *wcscat*( ), *wcschr*( ), *wcscmp*( ), *wcscoll*( ), *wcscpy*( ),


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

*wcscspn*( ), *wcsftime*( ), *wcslen*( ), *wcsncat*( ), *wcsncmp*( ), *wcsncpy*( ), *wcspbrk*( ), *wcsrchr*( ), *wcsspn*( ), *wcsstr*( ), *wcstod*( ), *wcstof*( ), *wcstok*( ), *wcstol*( ), *wcstold*( ), *wcstoll*( ), *wcstoul*( ), *wcstoull*( ), *wcswcs*( ), *wcswidth*( ), *wcsxfrm*( ), *wctob*( ), *wctype*( ), *wcwidth*( ), *wmemchr*( ), *wmemcmp*( ), *wmemcpy*( ), *wmemmove*( ), *wmemset*( ), *wprintf*( ), *wscanf*( ), the Shell and Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *getconf*

## CHANGE HISTORY

First released in Issue 4.

### Issue 5

Aligned with the ISO / IEC 9899: 1990 / Amendment 1: 1995 (E).

### Issue 6

The Open Group Corrigendum U021 / 10 is applied. The prototypes for *wcswidth*( ) and *wcwidth*( ) are marked as extensions.

The Open Group Corrigendum U028 / 5 is applied, correcting the prototype for the *mbsinit*( ) function.

The following changes are made for alignment with the ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard:

- Various function prototypes are updated to add the **restrict** keyword.
- The functions *vfwscanf*( ), *vswscanf*( ), *wcstof*( ), *wcstold*( ), *wcstoll*( ), and *wcstoull*( ) are added.

The type **wctype_t**, the *isw**( ), *to**( ), and *wctype*( ) functions are marked as XSI extensions.

IEEE Std 1003.1-2001 / Cor 1-2002, item XBD / TC1 / D6 / 26 is applied, adding the APPLICATION USAGE section.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

wctype.h — wide-character classification and mapping utilities

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <wctype.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

CX Some of the functionality described on this reference page extends the ISO C standard. Applications shall define the appropriate feature test macro (see the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, Section 2.2, The Compilation Environment) to enable the visibility of these symbols in this header.

The **<wctype.h>** header shall define the following types:

**wint_t** As described in **<wchar.h>**.

**wctrans_t** A scalar type that can hold values which represent locale-specific character mappings.

**wctype_t** As described in **<wchar.h>**.

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int        iswalnum(wint_t);
int        iswalpha(wint_t);
int        iswblank(wint_t);
int        iswcntrl(wint_t);
int        iswdigit(wint_t);
int        iswgraph(wint_t);
int        iswlower(wint_t);
int        iswprint(wint_t);
int        iswpunct(wint_t);
int        iswspace(wint_t);
int        iswupper(wint_t);
int        iswxdigit(wint_t);
int        iswctype(wint_t, wctype_t);
wint_t     towctrans(wint_t, wctrans_t);
wint_t     towlower(wint_t);
wint_t     towupper(wint_t);
wctrans_t  wctrans(const char *);
wctype_t   wctype(const char *);
```

The **<wctype.h>** header shall define the following macro name:

WEOF Constant expression of type **wint_t** that is returned by several MSE functions to indicate end-of-file.

For all functions described in this header that accept an argument of type **wint_t**, the value is representable as a **wchar_t** or equals the value of WEOF. If this argument has any other value, the behavior is undefined.

The behavior of these functions shall be affected by the *LC_CTYPE* category of the current locale.

CX Inclusion of the **<wctype.h>** header may make visible all symbols from the headers **<ctype.h>**, **<stdarg.h>**, **<stddef.h>**, **<stdio.h>**, **<stdlib.h>**, **<string.h>**, **<time.h>**, and **<wchar.h>**.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS Not for Resale

15179 **APPLICATION USAGE**

15180 None.

15181 **RATIONALE**

15182 None.

15183 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

15184 None.

15185 **SEE ALSO**

15186 **<ctype.h>**, **<locale.h>**, **<stdarg.h>**, **<stddef.h>**, **<stdio.h>**, **<stdlib.h>**, **<string.h>**, **<time.h>**,
15187 **<wchar.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *iswalnum*( ), *iswalpha*( ),
15188 *iswblank*( ), *iswcntrl*( ), *iswctype*( ), *iswdigit*( ), *iswgraph*( ), *iswlower*( ), *iswprint*( ), *iswpunct*( ),
15189 *iswspace*( ), *iswupper*( ), *iswxdigit*( ), *setlocale*( ), *towctrans*( ), *towlower*( ), *towupper*( ), *wctrans*( ),
15190 *wctype*( )

15191 **CHANGE HISTORY**

15192 First released in Issue 5. Derived from the ISO / IEC 9899: 1990 / Amendment 1: 1995 (E).

15193 **Issue 6**

15194 The *iswblank*( ) function is added for alignment with the ISO / IEC 9899: 1999 standard.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

## NAME

wordexp.h — word-expansion types

## SYNOPSIS

```
#include <wordexp.h>
```

## DESCRIPTION

The **<wordexp.h>** header shall define the structures and symbolic constants used by the *wordexp*( ) and *wordfree*( ) functions.

The structure type **wordexp_t** shall contain at least the following members:

```
size_t   we_wordc   Count of words matched by words.
char    **we_wordv  Pointer to list of expanded words.
size_t   we_offs    Slots to reserve at the beginning of we_wordv.
```

The *flags* argument to the *wordexp*( ) function shall be the bitwise-inclusive OR of the following flags:

| | |
|---|---|
| WRDE_APPEND | Append words to those previously generated. |
| WRDE_DOOFFS | Number of null pointers to prepend to *we_wordv*. |
| WRDE_NOCMD | Fail if command substitution is requested. |
| WRDE_REUSE | The *pwordexp* argument was passed to a previous successful call to *wordexp*( ), and has not been passed to *wordfree*( ). The result is the same as if the application had called *wordfree*( ) and then called *wordexp*( ) without WRDE_REUSE. |
| WRDE_SHOWERR | Do not redirect *stderr* to **/dev/null**. |
| WRDE_UNDEF | Report error on an attempt to expand an undefined shell variable. |

The following constants shall be defined as error return values:

| | |
|---|---|
| WRDE_BADCHAR | One of the unquoted characters—<newline>, '\|', '&', ';', '<', '>', '(', ')', '{', '}'—appears in *words* in an inappropriate context. |
| WRDE_BADVAL | Reference to undefined shell variable when WRDE_UNDEF is set in *flags*. |
| WRDE_CMDSUB | Command substitution requested when WRDE_NOCMD was set in *flags*. |
| WRDE_NOSPACE | Attempt to allocate memory failed. |
| OB XSI WRDE_NOSYS | Reserved. |
| WRDE_SYNTAX | Shell syntax error, such as unbalanced parentheses or unterminated string. |

The **<wordexp.h>** header shall define the following type:

| | |
|---|---|
| XSI **size_t** | As described in **<stddef.h>**. |

The following shall be declared as functions and may also be defined as macros. Function prototypes shall be provided.

```
int  wordexp(const char *restrict, wordexp_t *restrict, int);
void wordfree(wordexp_t *);
```

The implementation may define additional macros or constants using names beginning with WRDE_.


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

15234 **APPLICATION USAGE**

15235 None.

15236 **RATIONALE**

15237 None.

15238 **FUTURE DIRECTIONS**

15239 None.

15240 **SEE ALSO**

15241 **<stddef.h>**, the System Interfaces volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001, *wordexp*( ), the Shell and
15242 Utilities volume of IEEE Std 1003.1-2001

15243 **CHANGE HISTORY**

15244 First released in Issue 4. Derived from the ISO POSIX-2 standard.

15245 **Issue 6**

15246 The **restrict** keyword is added to the prototype for *wordexp*( ).

15247 The WRDE_NOSYS constant is marked obsolescent.



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

# Index


(time) resolution ....79
/ ....**185**
/dev ....**185**
/dev/console ....**185**
/dev/null ....**185**
/dev/tty ....**185**
/tmp ....**185**
<aio.h> ....**206**
<alert> ....36
<arpa/inet.h> ....**208**
<assert.h> ....**209**
<backspace> ....40
<blank> ....45
<carriage-return> ....47
<complex.h> ....**210**
<cpio.h> ....**213**
<ctype.h> ....**214**
<dirent.h> ....216
<dlfcn.h> ....**218**
<errno.h> ....**219**
<fcntl.h> ....**223**
<fenv.h> ....**226**
<float.h> ....**229**
<fmtmsg.h> ....**233**
<fnmatch.h> ....**235**
<form-feed> ....60
<ftw.h> ....**236**
<glob.h> ....**238**
<grp.h> ....**240**
<iconv.h> ....**241**
<inttypes.h> ....**242**
<iso646.h> ....**244**
<langinfo.h> ....**245**
<libgen.h> ....**248**
<limits.h> ....**249**
<locale.h> ....**263**
<math.h> ....**265**
<monetary.h> ....**272**
<mqueue.h> ....**273**
<ndbm.h> ....**275**
<net/if.h> ....**276**
<netdb.h> ....**277**
<netinet/in.h> ....**281**
<netinet/tcp.h> ....**285**
<newline> ....68
<nl_types.h> ....**286**
<poll.h> ....**287**
<pthread.h> ....**289**
<pwd.h> ....**294**
<regex.h> ....**295**
<sched.h> ....**297**
<search.h> ....**299**
<semaphore.h> ....**301**
<setjmp.h> ....**302**
<signal.h> ....**303**
<space> ....84
<spawn.h> ....**310**
<stdarg.h> ....**312**
<stdbool.h> ....**314**
<stddef.h> ....**315**
<stdint.h> ....**316**
<stdio.h> ....**323**
<stdlib.h> ....**327**
<string.h> ....**331**
<strings.h> ....**333**
<stropts.h> ....**334**
<sys/dir.h> ....216
<sys/ipc.h> ....**339**
<sys/mman.h> ....**341**
<sys/msg.h> ....**344**
<sys/resource.h> ....**345**
<sys/select.h> ....**347**
<sys/sem.h> ....**349**
<sys/shm.h> ....**351**
<sys/socket.h> ....**353**
<sys/stat.h> ....**358**
<sys/statvfs.h> ....**362**
<sys/time.h> ....**364**
<sys/timeb.h> ....**366**
<sys/times.h> ....**367**
<sys/types.h> ....**368**
<sys/uio.h> ....**371**
<sys/un.h> ....**372**
<sys/utsname.h> ....**373**
<sys/wait.h> ....**374**
<syslog.h> ....**376**
<tab> ....89
<tar.h> ....**378**
<termios.h> ....**380**
<tgmath.h> ....**386**
<time.h> ....**390**
<trace.h> ....**394**




Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

<ucontext.h> ..... **398**
<ulimit.h> ..... **399**
<unistd.h> ..... **400**
<utime.h> ..... **419**
<utmpx.h> ..... **420**
<vertical-tab> ..... 95
<wchar.h> ..... **422**
<wctype.h> ..... **426**
<wordexp.h> ..... **428**
±0 ..... 97
_Complex_I ..... 210
_CS_PATH ..... 406
_CS_POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFF32_CFLAGS ..... 406
_CS_POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFF32_LDFLAGS ..... 407
_CS_POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFF32_LIBS ..... 407
_CS_POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFFBIG_CFLAGS ..... 407
_CS_POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFFBIG_LDFLAGS ..... 407
_CS_POSIX_V6_ILP32_OFFBIG_LIBS ..... 407
_CS_POSIX_V6_LP64_OFF64_CFLAGS ..... 407
_CS_POSIX_V6_LP64_OFF64_LDFLAGS ..... 407
_CS_POSIX_V6_LP64_OFF64_LIBS ..... 407
_CS_POSIX_V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG_CFLAGS ..... 407
_CS_POSIX_V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG_LDFLAGS ..... 407
_CS_POSIX_V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG_LIBS ..... 408
_CS_POSIX_V6_WIDTH_RESTRICTED_ENVS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFF32_CFLAGS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFF32_LDFLAGS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFF32_LIBS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFF32_LINTFLAGS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFFBIG_LDFLAGS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFFBIG_LIBS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_ILP32_OFFBIG_LINTFLAGS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_LP64_OFF64_CFLAGS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_LP64_OFF64_LDFLAGS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_LP64_OFF64_LIBS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_LP64_OFF64_LINTFLAGS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_LPBIG_OFFBIG_CFLAGS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_LPBIG_OFFBIG_LDFLAGS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_LPBIG_OFFBIG_LIBS ..... 408
_CS_XBS5_LPBIG_OFFBIG_LINTFLAGS ..... 408
_Imaginary_I ..... 210
_IOFBF ..... 323
_IOLBF ..... 323
_IONBF ..... 323
_MIN ..... 249
_PC constants
  defined in <unistd.h> ..... **408**
_POSIX ..... 249
_POSIX maximum values
  in <limits.h> ..... **254**
_POSIX minimum values
  in <limits.h> ..... **255**
_POSIX2_BC_BASE_MAX ..... 253, 257
_POSIX2_BC_DIM_MAX ..... 254, 257
_POSIX2_BC_SCALE_MAX ..... 254, 258
_POSIX2_BC_STRING_MAX ..... 254, 258
_POSIX2_CHARCLASS_NAME_MAX ..... 254, 258
_POSIX2_CHAR_TERM ..... 404
_POSIX2_COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX ..... 254, 258
_POSIX2_C_BIND ..... 404
_POSIX2_C_DEV ..... 404
_POSIX2_EXPR_NEST_MAX ..... 254, 258
_POSIX2_FORT_DEV ..... 404
_POSIX2_FORT_RUN ..... 404
_POSIX2_LINE_MAX ..... 254, 258, 260
_POSIX2_LOCALEDEF ..... 404
_POSIX2_PBS ..... 404
_POSIX2_PBS_ACCOUNTING ..... 404
_POSIX2_PBS_CHECKPOINT ..... 404
_POSIX2_PBS_LOCATE ..... 404
_POSIX2_PBS_MESSAGE ..... 404
_POSIX2_PBS_TRACK ..... 405
_POSIX2_RE_DUP_MAX ..... 251, 254, 258
_POSIX2_SW_DEV ..... 405
_POSIX2_UPE ..... 405
_POSIX2_VERSION ..... 400
_POSIX_ADVISORY_INFO ..... 19, 25-26, 401
_POSIX_AIO_LISTIO_MAX ..... 250, 255
_POSIX_AIO_MAX ..... 250, 255
_POSIX_ARG_MAX ..... 250, 255
_POSIX_ASYNCHRONOUS_IO ..... 19, 24-25, 401
_POSIX_ASYNC_IO ..... 406
_POSIX_BARRIERS ..... 19, 27, 401
_POSIX_CHILD_MAX ..... 250, 255
_POSIX_CHOWN_RESTRICTED ..... 18, 401
_POSIX_CLOCKRES_MIN ..... 254
_POSIX_CLOCK_SELECTION ..... 19, 25-26, 401
_POSIX_CPUTIME ..... 19, 25-26, 401
_POSIX_DELAYTIMER_MAX ..... 250, 255
_POSIX_FSYNC ..... 19, 21, 24-25, 401
_POSIX_HOST_NAME_MAX ..... 250, 255
_POSIX_IPV6 ..... 19
_POSIX_JOB_CONTROL ..... 18, 401
_POSIX_LINK_MAX ..... 252, 255
_POSIX_LOGIN_NAME_MAX ..... 250, 255
_POSIX_MAPPED_FILES ..... 19, 21, 24, 401
_POSIX_MAPPED_FILES, ..... 25
_POSIX_MAX_CANON ..... 252, 255
_POSIX_MAX_INPUT ..... 253, 255
_POSIX_MEMLOCK ..... 19, 24-25, 401
_POSIX_MEMLOCK_RANGE ..... 19, 24-25, 401

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

_POSIX_MEMORY_PROTECTION .....19, 21, .....24-25, 401
_POSIX_MESSAGE_PASSING.....19, 24-25, 401
_POSIX_MONOTONIC_CLOCK.....19, 25-26, 401
_POSIX_MQ_OPEN_MAX .....250, 255
_POSIX_MQ_PRIO_MAX .....250, 255
_POSIX_NAME_MAX .....253, 256
_POSIX_NGROUPS_MAX.....254, 256
_POSIX_NO_TRUNC .....18, 102, 402
_POSIX_OPEN_MAX.....250, 256
_POSIX_PATH_MAX.....253, 256, 372
_POSIX_PIPE_BUF .....253, 256
_POSIX_PRIORITIZED_IO .....19, 24-25, 402
_POSIX_PRIORITY_SCHEDULING 19, 24-26, 402
_POSIX_PRIO_IO .....406
_POSIX_RAW_SOCKETS.....19, 402
_POSIX_READER_WRITER_LOCKS .....402
_POSIX_REALTIME_SIGNALS .....19, 24-25, 402
_POSIX_REGEXP .....402
_POSIX_RE_DUP_MAX .....256
_POSIX_RTSIG_MAX .....251, 256
_POSIX_SAVED_IDS.....18, 402
_POSIX_SEMAPHORES .....19, 24-25, 402
_POSIX_SEM_NSEMS_MAX .....251, 256
_POSIX_SEM_VALUE_MAX.....251, 256
_POSIX_SHARED_MEMORY_OBJECTS.....19 .....24-25, 402
_POSIX_SHELL.....402
_POSIX_SIGQUEUE_MAX.....251, 256
_POSIX_SPAWN .....19, 25-26, 402
_POSIX_SPIN_LOCKS.....19, 27, 402
_POSIX_SPORADIC_SERVER .....19, 25-26, 402
_POSIX_SSIZE_MAX .....256, 259
_POSIX_SS_REPL_MAX.....251, 256
_POSIX_STREAM_MAX .....251, 256
_POSIX_SYMLINK_MAX .....253, 256
_POSIX_SYMLOOP_MAX.....251, 257
_POSIX_SYNCHRONIZED_IO .....19, 24-25, 403
_POSIX_SYNC_IO .....406
_POSIX_THREADS .....19, 21, 27, 403
_POSIX_THREAD_ATTR_STACKADDR.....19 .....21, 403
_POSIX_THREAD_ATTR_STACKSIZE .....19 .....21, 403
_POSIX_THREAD_CPUTIME .....19, 27, 403
_POSIX_THREAD_DESTRUCTOR_..... ITERATIONS.....251, 257
_POSIX_THREAD_KEYS_MAX .....251, 257
_POSIX_THREAD_PRIORITY_ ..... SCHEDULING.....19, 26-27, 403
_POSIX_THREAD_PRIO_INHERIT.....19, 26, 403
_POSIX_THREAD_PRIO_PROTECT ....19, 26, 403
_POSIX_THREAD_PROCESS_SHARED.....19 .....21, 403
_POSIX_THREAD_SAFE_FUNCTIONS.....19 .....21, 27, 403
_POSIX_THREAD_SPORADIC_SERVER .....19 .....27, 403
_POSIX_THREAD_THREADS_MAX.....251, 257
_POSIX_TIMEOUTS.....20, 25-26, 403
_POSIX_TIMERS .....20, 24-27, 403
_POSIX_TIMER_MAX .....252, 257
_POSIX_TRACE .....20, 27, 403
_POSIX_TRACE_EVENT_FILTER .....20, 27, 403
_POSIX_TRACE_EVENT_NAME_MAX..252, 257
_POSIX_TRACE_INHERIT .....20, 27, 404
_POSIX_TRACE_LOG .....20, 27, 404
_POSIX_TRACE_NAME_MAX .....252, 257
_POSIX_TRACE_SYS_MAX .....252, 257
_POSIX_TRACE_USER_EVENT_MAX ....252, 257
_POSIX_TTY_NAME_MAX .....252, 257
_POSIX_TYPED_MEMORY_OBJECTS .....20 .....25-26, 404
_POSIX_TZNAME_MAX.....252, 257
_POSIX_VDISABLE.....18, 404
_POSIX_VERSION .....18, 400
_SC constants
defined in <unistd.h> .....**409**
_V6_ILP32_OFF32 .....405
_V6_ILP32_OFFBIG .....405
_V6_LP64_OFF64 .....405
_V6_LPBIG_OFFBIG.....405
_XBS5_ILP32_OFF32.....405
_XBS5_ILP32_OFFBIG.....405
_XBS5_LP64_OFF64.....405
_XBS5_LPBIG_OFFBIG .....405
_XOPEN_CRYPT .....20, 24, 405
_XOPEN_ENH_I18N.....405
_XOPEN_IOV_MAX .....250, 258
_XOPEN_LEGACY.....20, 28, 405
_XOPEN_NAME_MAX.....253, 258
_XOPEN_PATH_MAX.....253, 258
_XOPEN_REALTIME .....20, 24-25, 405
_XOPEN_REALTIME_THREADS.....20, 26, 405
_XOPEN_SHM.....406
_XOPEN_STREAMS.....28, 406
_XOPEN_UNIX.....20-21, 406
_XOPEN_VERSION.....400
ABDAY_.....246
ABMON_.....246
abortive release .....35
absolute pathname.....35, 102



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

access mode ....35
additional file access control mechanism ....35
address space ....35
ADV ....**6**
advanced realtime ....25
ADVANCED REALTIME ....310
advanced realtime threads ....26
advisory information ....35
affirmative response ....36
AF_INET ....355
AF_INET6 ....355
AF_UNIX ....355
AF_UNSPEC ....355
AIO ....**6**
AIO_ALLDONE ....206
AIO_CANCELED ....206
AIO_LISTIO_MAX ....249
AIO_MAX ....250
AIO_NOTCANCELED ....206
AIO_PRIO_DELTA_MAX ....250
AI_ADDRCONFIG ....278
AI_ALL ....278
AI_CANONNAME ....278
AI_NUMERICHOST ....278
AI_NUMERICSERV ....278
AI_PASSIVE ....278
AI_V4MAPPED ....278
alert ....36
alert character ....36
alias name ....36
alignment ....36
alternate file access control mechanism ....36
alternate signal stack ....37
ALT_DIGITS ....246
AM_STR ....246
anchoring ....175
ancillary data ....37
angle brackets ....37
ANYMARK ....337
API ....37
application ....37
application address ....37
application conformance ....31
application program interface ....37
appropriate privileges ....37
AREGTYPE ....378
argument ....38
ARG_MAX ....250
arm (a timer) ....38
asterisk ....38
async-cancel-safe function ....38
async-signal-safe function ....38
asynchronous events ....38
asynchronous I/O completion ....39
asynchronous I/O operation ....39
asynchronous input and output ....38
asynchronously-generated signal ....39
ATEXIT_MAX ....250
attribute selection ....383
authentication ....39
authorization ....39
background job ....39
background process ....39
background process group ....39
backquote ....40
BACKREF ....179
backslash ....40
backspace character ....40
bandinfo ....**334**
BAR ....**7**
barrier ....40
base character ....40
basename ....40
basic regular expression ....40, 171
batch access list ....40
batch administrator ....41
batch client ....41
batch destination ....41
batch destination identifier ....41
batch directive ....41
batch job ....41
batch job attribute ....42
batch job identifier ....42
batch job name ....42
batch job owner ....42
batch job priority ....42
batch job state ....42
batch name service ....42
batch name space ....42
batch node ....43
batch operator ....43
batch queue ....43
batch queue attribute ....43
batch queue position ....43
batch queue priority ....43
batch rerunability ....43
batch restart ....44
batch server ....44
batch server name ....44
batch service ....44
batch service request ....44
batch submission ....44


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

batch system ....44
batch target user ....45
batch user ....45
baud rate selection ....382
BC_BASE_MAX ....253
BC_DIM_MAX ....253
BC_SCALE_MAX ....254
BC_STRING_MAX ....254
BE ....**7**
bind ....45
blank character ....45
blank line ....45
blkcnt_t ....368
blksize_t ....368
BLKTYPE ....378
block special file ....46
block-mode terminal ....45
blocked process (or thread) ....45
blocking ....45
BOOT_TIME ....420
braces ....46
brackets ....46
BRE (ERE) matching a single character ....170
BRE (ERE) matching multiple characters ....170
BRKINT ....381
broadcast ....46
BSD ....216
BSDLY ....382
BSn ....382
BUFSIZ ....323
built-in ....46
built-in utility ....46
BUS_ADRALN ....307
BUS_ADRERR ....307
BUS_OBJERR ....307
byte ....46
byte input/output functions ....47
can ....5
canonical mode input processing ....189
carriage-return character ....47
CD ....**7**
character ....47
character array ....47
character class ....47
character encoding ....118
  state-dependent ....122
character set ....47
character special file ....48
character string ....48
CHARCLASS_NAME_MAX ....254, 260
charmap
  description ....119
CHAR_BIT ....258-259
CHAR_MAX ....259
CHAR_MIN ....259
child process ....48
CHILD_MAX ....250
CHRTYPE ....378
circumflex ....48
CLD_CONTINUED ....307
CLD_DUMPED ....307
CLD_EXITED ....307
CLD_KILLED ....307
CLD_STOPPED ....307
CLD_TRAPPED ....307
CLOCAL ....383
clock ....48
clock jump ....48
clock tick ....48
clockid_t ....368
CLOCKS_PER_SEC ....368, 390-391
CLOCK_MONOTONIC ....391
CLOCK_PROCESS_CPUTIME_ID ....390
CLOCK_REALTIME ....254, 390
clock_t ....368
CLOCK_THREAD_CPUTIME_ID ....390
CMSG_DATA ....354
CMSG_FIRSTHDR ....354
CMSG_NXTHDR ....354
coded character set ....48
codeset ....49
CODESET ....246
collating element ....49
collation ....49
collation sequence ....49
COLL_ELEM_MULTI ....179
COLL_ELEM_SINGLE ....179
COLL_WEIGHTS_MAX ....254
column position ....49
COLUMNS ....**165**
command ....50
command language interpreter ....50
complex ....210
composite graphic symbol ....50
concurrent execution ....99
condition variable ....50
conformance ....17, 31
  POSIX ....17
  POSIX system interfaces ....18
  XSI ....17
  XSI system interfaces ....21



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

conformance document....17
conforming application....17
conforming implementation options....22
connection....50
connection mode....50
connectionless mode....50
control character....51
control modes....383
control operator....51
controlling process....51
controlling terminal....51, 188
CONTTYPE....378
conversion descriptor....51
copy....142
core file....51
CPT....**7**
CPU....367
CPU time....51
  clock....52
  timer....52
CRDLY....381
CREAD....383
CRn....381
CRNCYSTR....246
CS....**7**
CSIZE....383
CSn....383
CSTOPB....383
currency_symbol....142
current job....52
current working directory....52, 96
cursor position....52
CX....**7**
C_ constants in <cpio.h>....**213**
C_IRGRP....213
C_IROTH....213
C_IRUSR....213
C_ISBLK....213
C_ISCHR....213
C_ISCTG....213
C_ISDIR....213
C_ISFIFO....213
C_ISGID....213
C_ISLNK....213
C_ISREG....213
C_ISSOCK....213
C_ISUID....213
C_ISVTX....213
C_IWGRP....213
C_IWOTH....213
C_IWUSR....213
C_IXGRP....213
C_IXOTH....213
C_IXUSR....213
data segment....52
data structure
  dirent....216
  entry....299
  group....240
  lconv....263
  msqid_ds....344
  stat....358
  tms....367
  utimbuf....419
data type
  ACTION....299
  cc_t....380
  DIR....216
  div_t....327
  ENTRY....299
  FILE....324
  fpos_t....324
  glob_t....238
  ldiv_t....327
  lldiv_t....327
  mbstate_t....422
  msglen_t....344
  msgqnum_t....344
  nl_catd....286
  nl_item....286
  pid_t....303
  ptrdiff_t....315
  regex_t....295
  regmatch_t....295
  regoff_t....295
  shmatt_t....351
  sigset_t....303
  sig_atomic_t....303
  size_t....315
  speed_t....380
  tcflag_t....380
  VISIT....299
  wchar_t....315
  wctrans_t....426
  wctype_t....422
  wint_t....422
data types
  defined in <fenv.h>....**226**
  defined in <sys/types.h>....368
DATEMSK....**165**
DAY_....246


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

DBL_ constants
  defined in <float.h>....**230**
DBL_DIG....230, 258
DBL_EPSILON....231
DBL_MANT_DIG....230
DBL_MAX....231, 258
DBL_MAX_10_EXP....231
DBL_MAX_EXP....231
DBL_MIN....232
DBL_MIN_10_EXP....231
DBL_MIN_EXP....231
DBM....275
DBM_INSERT....275
DBM_REPLACE....275
DEAD_PROCESS....420
DECIMAL_DIG....230
deferred batch service....52
DELAYTIMER_MAX....250
device....52
  output....185
device ID....52
dev_t....368
DIR....216
directory....53
directory entry (or link)....53
directory protection....99
directory stream....53
dirent structure....216
DIRTYPE....378
disarm (a timer)....53
display....53
display line....53
documentation....17
dollar sign....53
domain error....107
dot....53
dot-dot....54
double-quote....54
downshifting....54
driver....54
DUP_COUNT....179
D_FMT....246
D_T_FMT....246
E2BIG....219
EACCES....219
EADDRINUSE....219
EADDRNOTAVAIL....219
EAFNOSUPPORT....219
EAGAIN....219
EAI_AGAIN....279
EAI_BADFLAGS....279
EAI_FAIL....279
EAI_FAMILY....279
EAI_MEMORY....279
EAI_NONAME....279
EAI_OVERFLOW....279
EAI_SERVICE....279
EAI_SOCKTYPE....279
EAI_SYSTEM....279
EALREADY....219
EBADF....219
EBADMSG....219
EBUSY....219
ECANCELED....219
ECHILD....219
ECHO....383
ECHOE....383
ECHOK....383
ECHONL....383
ECONNABORTED....219
ECONNREFUSED....219
ECONNRESET....219
EDEADLK....219
EDESTADDRREQ....219
EDOM....219
EDQUOT....219
EEXIST....219
EFAULT....219
EFBIG....219
effective group ID....54
effective user ID....54
EHOSTUNREACH....219
EIDRM....219
eight-bit transparency....54
EILSEQ....219
EINPROGRESS....220
EINTR....220
EINVAL....220
EIO....220
EISCONN....220
EISDIR....220
ELOOP....220
EMFILE....220
EMLINK....220
EMPTY....420
empty directory....54
empty line....55
empty string (or null string)....55
empty wide-character string....55
EMSGSIZE....220
EMULTIHOP....220
ENAMETOOLONG....220



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

encoding
character ..... 118
encoding rule ..... 55
encryption ..... 24
ENETDOWN ..... 220
ENETRESET ..... 220
ENETUNREACH ..... 220
ENFILE ..... 220
ENOBUFS ..... 220
ENODATA ..... 220
ENODEV ..... 220
ENOENT ..... 220
ENOEXEC ..... 220
ENOLCK ..... 220
ENOLINK ..... 220
ENOMEM ..... 220
ENOMSG ..... 220
ENOPROTOOPT ..... 220
ENOSPC ..... 220
ENOSR ..... 220
ENOSTR ..... 220
ENOSYS ..... 220
ENOTCONN ..... 220
ENOTDIR ..... 220
ENOTEMPTY ..... 220
ENOTSOCK ..... 220
ENOTSUP ..... 221
ENOTTY ..... 221
entire regular expression ..... 55, 169
environment variables
internationalization ..... 162
ENXIO ..... 221
EOF ..... 323
EOPNOTSUPP ..... 221
EOVERFLOW ..... 221
EPERM ..... 221
EPIPE ..... 221
epoch ..... 55
EPROTO ..... 221
EPROTONOSUPPORT ..... 221
EPROTOTYPE ..... 221
equivalence class ..... 55
era ..... 55
ERA ..... 246
ERANGE ..... 221
ERA_D_FMT ..... 246
ERA_D_T_FMT ..... 246
ERA_T_FMT ..... 246
EROFS ..... 221
error conditions
mathematical functions ..... 107
ESPIPE ..... 221
ESRCH ..... 221
ESTALE ..... 221
ETIME ..... 221
ETIMEDOUT ..... 221
ETXTBSY ..... 221
event management ..... 56
EWOULDBLOCK ..... 221
EXDEV ..... 221
executable file ..... 56
execute ..... 56
execution time ..... 51, 56
measurement ..... 101
monitoring ..... 56
EXIT_FAILURE ..... 327
EXIT_SUCCESS ..... 327
expand ..... 56
EXPR_NEST_MAX ..... 254
extended regular expression ..... 56, 175
extended security controls ..... 57, 99
extension
CX ..... 7
OH ..... 10
XSI ..... 14
F-LOCK ..... **408**
FD ..... **7**
FD_CLOEXEC ..... 223
FD_CLR ..... 347
FD_ISSET ..... 347
FD_SET ..... 347
fd_set ..... **347**, 364
FD_SETSIZE ..... 347
FD_ZERO ..... 347
feature test macro ..... 57
fenv_t ..... 226
fexcept_t ..... 226
FE_ constants
defined in <fenv.h> ..... **226**
FE_ALL_EXCEPT ..... 226
FE_DFL_ENV ..... 227
FE_DIVBYZERO ..... 226
FE_DOWNWARD ..... 226
FE_INEXACT ..... 226
FE_INVALID ..... 226
FE_OVERFLOW ..... 226
FE_TONEAREST ..... 226
FE_TOWARDZERO ..... 226
FE_UNDERFLOW ..... 226
FE_UPWARD ..... 226
FFDLY ..... 382
FFn ..... 382


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

field ....57
FIFO ....57
FIFO special file ....57
FIFOTYPE ....378
file ....57
FILE ....323, 422
file access permissions ....99
file characteristics
  data structure ....360
  header ....360
file description ....58
file descriptor ....58
file group class ....58
file hierarchy ....100
file mode ....58
file mode bits ....58
file offset ....59
file other class ....59
file owner class ....59
file permission bits ....59
file serial number ....59
file system ....59
file times update ....100
file type ....59
filename ....58
filename portability ....58
FILENAME_MAX ....323
FILESIZEBITS ....252
filter ....60
FIPS ....18
first open (of a file) ....60
flow control ....60
FLT_ constants
  defined in <float.h> ....**230**
FLT_DIG ....230, 258
FLT_EPSILON ....231
FLT_EVAL_METHOD ....229
FLT_MANT_DIG ....230
FLT_MAX ....231, 258
FLT_MAX_10_EXP ....231
FLT_MAX_EXP ....231
FLT_MIN ....232
FLT_MIN_10_EXP ....231
FLT_MIN_EXP ....231
FLT_RADIX ....230
FLT_ROUNDS ....229
FLUSHR ....336
FLUSHRW ....336
FLUSHW ....336
FMNAMESZ ....335-336
FNM_ constants
  in <fnmatch.h> ....**235**
FNM_NOESCAPE ....235
FNM_NOMATCH ....235
FNM_NOSYS ....235
FNM_PATHNAME ....235
FNM_PERIOD ....235
FOPEN_MAX ....251, 323
foreground job ....60
foreground process ....60
foreground process group ....60
foreground process group ID ....60
form-feed character ....60
format of entries ....**205**
FPE_FLTDIV ....307
FPE_FLTINV ....307
FPE_FLTOVF ....307
FPE_FLTRES ....307
FPE_FLTSUB ....307
FPE_FLTUND ....307
FPE_INTDIV ....307
FPE_INTOVF ....307
FR ....**7**
frac_digits ....143
fsblkcnt_t ....368
FSC ....**8**
fsfilcnt_t ....368
FTW ....236
FTW_ constants
  in <ftw.h> ....**236**
FTW_CHDIR ....236
FTW_D ....236
FTW_DEPTH ....236
FTW_DNR ....236
FTW_DP ....236
FTW_F ....236
FTW_MOUNT ....236
FTW_NS ....236
FTW_PHYS ....236
FTW_SL ....236
FTW_SLN ....236
F_DUPFD ....223
F_GETFD ....223
F_GETFL ....223
F_GETLK ....223
F_GETOWN ....223
F_OK ....406
F_RDLCK ....223
F_SETFD ....223
F_SETFL ....223
F_SETLK ....223

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved. 

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS

Not for Resale

F_SETLKW....223
F_SETOWN....223
F_TEST....**408**
F_TLOCK....**408**
F_ULOCK....**408**
F_UNLCK....223
F_WRLCK....223
GETALL....349
GETNCNT....349
GETPID....349
GETVAL....349
GETZCNT....349
gid_t....368
GLOB_ constants
  defined in <glob.h>....**238**
GLOB_ABORTED....238
GLOB_APPEND....238
GLOB_DOOFFS....238
GLOB_ERR....238
GLOB_MARK....238
GLOB_NOCHECK....238
GLOB_NOESCAPE....238
GLOB_NOMATCH....238
GLOB_NOSORT....238
GLOB_NOSPACE....238
GLOB_NOSYS....238
grammar
  locale....153
  regular expression....179
graphic character....61
group database....61
group ID....61
group name....61
hard limit....61
hard link....61
headers....**205**
HOME....**165**
home directory....61
host byte order....62, 101
HOST_NAME_MAX....250
HUGE_VAL....266
HUGE_VALF....266
HUGE_VALL....266
HUPCL....383
I....210
ICANON....383
ICRNL....381
idtype_t....**374**
id_t....368
IEXTEN....383
IGNBRK....381
IGNCR....381
IGNPAR....381
ILL_BADSTK....307
ILL_COPROC....307
ILL_ILLADR....307
ILL_ILLOPC....307
ILL_ILLOPN....307
ILL_ILLTRP....307
ILL_PRVOPC....307
ILL_PRVREG....307
imaginary....210
implementation-defined....5
IN6_IS_ADDR_LINKLOCAL....283
IN6_IS_ADDR_LOOPBACK....283
IN6_IS_ADDR_MC_GLOBAL....283
IN6_IS_ADDR_MC_LINKLOCAL....283
IN6_IS_ADDR_MC_NODELOCAL....283
IN6_IS_ADDR_MC_ORGLOCAL....283
IN6_IS_ADDR_MC_SITELOCAL....283
IN6_IS_ADDR_MULTICAST....283
IN6_IS_ADDR_SITELOCAL....283
IN6_IS_ADDR_UNSPECIFIED....283
IN6_IS_ADDR_V4COMPAT....283
IN6_IS_ADDR_V4MAPPED....283
INADDR_ANY....282
INADDR_BROADCAST....282
incomplete line....62
INET6_ADDRSTRLEN....282
INET_ADDRSTRLEN....282
Inf....62
INFINITY....266
INIT_PROCESS....420
INLCR....381
ino_t....368
INPCK....381
instrumented application....62
interactive shell....62
internationalization....62
interprocess communication....62
INTMAX_MAX....320
INTMAX_MIN....320
INTN_MAX....319
INTN_MIN....319
INTPTR_MAX....319
INTPTR_MIN....319
int_curr_symbol....142
INT_FASTN_MAX....319
INT_FASTN_MIN....319
int_frac_digits....143
INT_LEASTN_MAX....319
INT_LEASTN_MIN....319


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

INT_MAX ..... 259
INT_MIN ..... 260
int_n_cs_precedes ..... 144
int_n_sep_by_space ..... 144
int_n_sign_posn ..... 144
int_p_cs_precedes ..... 144
int_p_sep_by_space ..... 144
int_p_sign_posn ..... 144
invalid ..... 170
invariant values ..... 260
invoke ..... 62
iovec ..... **371**
IOV_MAX ..... 250, 371
IP6 ..... **8**
IPC ..... 339
IPC_ constants
  defined in <sys/ipc.h> ..... **339**
IPC_CREAT ..... 339
IPC_EXCL ..... 339
IPC_NOWAIT ..... 339
IPC_PRIVATE ..... 339
IPC_RMID ..... 339
IPC_SET ..... 339
IPC_STAT ..... 339
IPPROTO_ICMP ..... 282
IPPROTO_IP ..... 282
IPPROTO_IPV6 ..... 282
IPPROTO_RAW ..... 282
IPPROTO_TCP ..... 282
IPPROTO_UDP ..... 282
IPV6_JOIN_GROUP ..... 282
IPV6_LEAVE_GROUP ..... 283
IPV6_MULTICAST_HOPS ..... 283
IPV6_MULTICAST_IF ..... 283
IPV6_MULTICAST_LOOP ..... 283
IPV6_UNICAST_HOPS ..... 283
IPV6_V6ONLY ..... 283
ISIG ..... 383
ISO C standard ..... 210
ISTRIP ..... 381
itimerval ..... **364**
ITIMER_PROF ..... 364
ITIMER_REAL ..... 364
ITIMER_VIRTUAL ..... 364
IXANY ..... 381
IXOFF ..... 381
IXON ..... 381
I_ATMARK ..... 335
I_CANPUT ..... 335
I_CKBAND ..... 335
I_FDINSERT ..... 335
I_FIND ..... 335
I_FLUSH ..... 335
I_FLUSHBAND ..... 335
I_GETBAND ..... 335
I_GETCLTIME ..... 335
I_GETSIG ..... 335
I_GRDOPT ..... 335
I_GWROPT ..... 335
I_LINK ..... 335
I_LIST ..... 335
I_LOOK ..... 335
I_NREAD ..... 335
I_PEEK ..... 335
I_PLINK ..... 335
I_POP ..... 335
I_PUNLINK ..... 335
I_PUSH ..... 335
I_RECVFD ..... 335
I_SENDFD ..... 335
I_SETCLTIME ..... 335
I_SETSIG ..... 335
I_SRDOPT ..... 335
I_STR ..... 335
I_SWROPT ..... 335
I_UNLINK ..... 335
job ..... 63
job control ..... 63
job control job ID ..... 63
key_t ..... 368
LANG ..... **162**
last close (of a file) ..... 63
LASTMARK ..... 337
LC_ALL ..... **163**, 263
LC_COLLATE ..... **163**, 254, 263
  description ..... 134
LC_CTYPE ..... **163**, 246, 263, 426
  description ..... 126
LC_MESSAGES ..... **163**, 246, 263, 286
  description ..... 152
LC_MONETARY ..... **163**, 246, 263
  description ..... 142
LC_NUMERIC ..... **163**, 246, 263
  description ..... 145
LC_TIME ..... **163**, 246, 263
  description ..... 147
LDBL_ constants
  defined in <float.h> ..... **230**
LDBL_DIG ..... 231
LDBL_EPSILON ..... 232
LDBL_MANT_DIG ..... 230
LDBL_MAX ..... 231



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

LDBL_MAX_10_EXP ....231
LDBL_MAX_EXP....231
LDBL_MIN....232
LDBL_MIN_10_EXP ....231
LDBL_MIN_EXP....231
legacy ....5, 28
limit
  numerical ....258
line ....63
line control ....384
LINES....**165**
LINE_MAX ....254
linger....63
link ....63
link count....64
LINK_MAX....252
LIO_NOP....206
LIO_NOWAIT....206
LIO_READ ....206
LIO_WAIT....206
LIO_WRITE ....206
LLONG_MAX....260
LLONG_MIN ....260
LNKTYPE....378
local customs ....64
local IPC....64
local modes ....383
locale ....64, 123
  grammar....153
  POSIX....124
locale definition....124
localization....64
login....64
login name....64
LOGIN_NAME_MAX....250
LOGIN_PROCESS....420
LOGNAME....**166**
LOG_ALERT ....377
LOG_AUTH....376
LOG_CONS....376
LOG_CRIT ....377
LOG_CRON ....376
LOG_DAEMON ....376
LOG_DEBUG ....377
LOG_EMERG ....377
LOG_ERR....377
LOG_INFO....377
LOG_KERN ....376
LOG_LOCAL....376
LOG_LPR ....376
LOG_MAIL....376
LOG_MASK....376
LOG_NDELAY....376
LOG_NEWS....376
LOG_NOTICE....377
LOG_NOWAIT....376
LOG_ODELAY....376
LOG_PID....376
LOG_USER ....376
LOG_UUCP ....376
LOG_WARNING ....377
LONG_BIT ....258-259
LONG_MAX....259
LONG_MIN....260
lower multiplexing....85
L_ANCHOR ....179
L_ctermid ....323
L_tmpnam....323
MAGIC ....213
map....64
MAP_FIXED ....341
MAP_PRIVATE....341
MAP_SHARED....341
margin codes
  notation....14
marked message ....65
matched....65, 169
mathematical functions
  domain error....107
  error conditions ....107
  NaN arguments....108
  pole error....108
  range error ....108
MAXARGS....313
MAXFLOAT....266
maximum values....254
MAX_CANON....252
MAX_INPUT....252
may ....5
MB_CUR_MAX....327
MB_LEN_MAX ....258-259
MC1 ....**8**
MC2 ....**8**
MC3 ....**8**
MCL_CURRENT ....341
MCL_FUTURE....341
mcontext_t ....**398**
memory mapped files....65
memory object....65
memory synchronization....102
memory-resident ....65
message....65


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

message catalog ....66
message catalog descriptor ....66
message queue ....66
META_CHAR....179
MF ....**8**
minimum values....255
MINSIGSTKSZ....305
ML ....**9**
MLR ....**9**
MM_ macros....**233**
MM_APPL....233
MM_CONSOLE....233
MM_ERROR....233
MM_FIRM....233
MM_HALT....233
MM_HARD....233
MM_INFO....233
MM_NOCON....234
MM_NOMSG....233
MM_NOSEV....233
MM_NOTOK....233
MM_NRECOV....233
MM_NULLACT....233
MM_NULLLBL....233
MM_NULLMC....233
MM_NULLSEV....233
MM_NULLTAG....233
MM_NULLTXT....233
MM_OK....233
MM_OPSYS....233
MM_PRINT....233
MM_RECOVER....233
MM_SOFT....233
MM_UTIL....233
MM_WARNING....233
mode....66
mode_t....368
MON....**9**
monotonic clock....66
MON_....246
mon_decimal_point....142
mon_grouping....143
mon_thousands_sep....143
MORECTL....337
MOREDATA....337
mount point....66
MPR....**9**
MQ_OPEN_MAX....250
MQ_PRIO_MAX....250
MSG....**9**
MSGVERB....**166**
MSG_ANY....337
MSG_BAND....337
MSG_CTRUNC....355
MSG_DONTROUTE....355
MSG_EOR....355
MSG_HIPRI....337
MSG_NOERROR....344
MSG_OOB....355
MSG_PEEK....355
MSG_TRUNC....355
MSG_WAITALL....355
MS_ASYNC....341
MS_INVALIDATE....341
MS_SYNC....341
multi-character collating element....66
mutex....66
MUXID_ALL....337
MX....**9**
M_....265
M_E....265
M_LN....265
M_LOG10E....265
M_LOG2E....265
M_PI....265
M_SQRT1_2....266
M_SQRT2....266
name....67
named STREAM....67
NAME_MAX....102, 216, 253
NaN (Not a Number)....67, 229, 266
NaN arguments
  mathematical functions....108
native language....67
NCCS....380
NDEBUG....209
negative response....67
negative_sign....143
network....67
network address....67
network byte order....68, 101
newline character....68
NEW_TIME....420
NGROUPS_MAX....254
nice value....68
NI_DGRAM....279
NI_NAMEREQD....279
NI_NOFQDN....278
NI_NUMERICHOST....278
NI_NUMERICSERV....279
NLDLY....381
nlink_t....368



--`,,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

NLn....381
NLSPATH....**163**
NL_ARGMAX....260
NL_CAT_LOCALE....286
NL_LANGMAX....260
NL_MSGMAX....260
NL_NMAX....260
NL_SETD....286
NL_SETMAX....260
NL_TEXTMAX....260
NOEXPR....246
NOFLSH....383
non-blocking....68
non-canonical mode input processing....190
non-spacing characters....68
NOSTR....246
NUL....68
NULL....315, 323, 327, 331, 390, 406
null byte....69
null pointer....69
null string....69
null wide-character code....69
number sign....69
numerical limits....258
NZERO....261
n_cs_precedes....143
n_sep_by_space....143
n_sign_posn....144
OB....**9**
object file....69
OCRNL....381
octet....69
OF....**10**
offset maximum....69
off_t....368
OFILL....381
OH....**10**
OLD_TIME....420
ONLCR....381
ONLRET....381
ONOCR....381
opaque address....69
open file....70
open file description....70
OPEN_MAX....250, 301
operand....70
operator....70
OPOST....381
option....70
ADV....6
AIO....6
BAR....7
BE....7
CD....7
CPT....7
CS....7
FD....7
FR....7
FSC....8
IP6....8
MC1....8
MC2....8
MC3....8
MF....8
ML....9
MLR....9
MON....9
MPR....9
MSG....9
MX....9
PIO....10
PS....10
RS....10
RTS....10
SD....10
SEM....10
SHM....11
SIO....11
SPI....11
SPN....11
SS....11
TCT....11
TEF....11
THR....12
TMO....12
TMR....12
TPI....12
TPP....12
TPS....12
TRC....12
TRI....12
TRL....13
TSA....13
TSF....13
TSH....13
TSP....13
TSS....13
TYM....13
UP....14
XSR....14
option-argument....70


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

options
shell and utilities....29
system interfaces....29
ORD_CHAR....179
orientation....70
orphaned process group....70
output devices....185
O_ constants
defined in <fcntl.h>....**223**-224
O_ACCMODE....224
O_APPEND....223
O_CREAT....223
O_DSYNC....223
O_EXCL....223
O_NOCTTY....223
O_NONBLOCK....223
O_RDONLY....224
O_RDWR....224
O_RSYNC....224
O_SYNC....224
O_TRUNC....223
O_WRONLY....224
page....71
page size....71
PAGESIZE....250
PAGE_SIZE....251
parameter....71
PARENB....383
parent directory....71
parent process....71
parent process ID....71
PARMRK....381
PARODD....383
PATH....**166**
path prefix....72
pathname....72
pathname component....72
pathname resolution....102
pathname variable values....252
PATH_MAX....253, 261
pattern....72
period....72
permissions....72
persistence....72
pid_t....368
PIO....**10**
pipe....73
PIPE_BUF....253
PM_STR....246
pole error....108
POLLERR....287
pollfd....**287**
POLLHUP....287
POLLIN....287
polling....73
POLLNVAL....287
POLLOUT....287
POLLPRI....287
POLLRDBAND....287
POLLRDNORM....287
POLLWRBAND....287
POLLWRNORM....287
POLL_ERR....307
POLL_HUP....307
POLL_IN....307
POLL_MSG....307
POLL_OUT....307
POLL_PRI....307
portable character set....73, 115
portable filename character set....73, 100
positional parameter....73
positive_sign....143
POSIX
conformance....17
POSIX locale....124
POSIX shell and utilities....20
POSIX system interfaces
conformance....18
POSIX2_CHAR_TERM....20, 29
POSIX2_C_DEV....20, 29
POSIX2_FORT_DEV....20, 29
POSIX2_FORT_RUN....20, 29
POSIX2_LOCALEDEF....20, 30
POSIX2_PBS....20, 30
POSIX2_PBS_ACCOUNTING....20, 30
POSIX2_PBS_CHECKPOINT....30
POSIX2_PBS_LOCATE....20, 30
POSIX2_PBS_MESSAGE....20, 30
POSIX2_PBS_TRACK....20, 30
POSIX2_SW_DEV....20, 30
POSIX2_UPE....20, 30
POSIX_ALLOC_SIZE_MIN....253
POSIX_FADV_DONTNEED....224
POSIX_FADV_NOREUSE....224
POSIX_FADV_NORMAL....224
POSIX_FADV_RANDOM....224
POSIX_FADV_SEQUENTIAL....224
POSIX_FADV_WILLNEED....224
POSIX_MADV_DONTNEED....342
POSIX_MADV_NORMAL....341
POSIX_MADV_RANDOM....342
POSIX_MADV_SEQUENTIAL....342



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

POSIX_MADV_WILLNEED .....342
POSIX_REC_INCR_XFER_SIZE .....253
POSIX_REC_MAX_XFER_SIZE .....253
POSIX_REC_MIN_XFER_SIZE .....253
POSIX_REC_XFER_ALIGN .....253
POSIX_TYPED_MEM_ALLOCATE .....342
POSIX_TYPED_MEM_ALLOCATE_CONTIG.....
.....342
POSIX_TYPED_MEM_MAP_ALLOCATABLE.....
.....342
preallocation .....73
preempted process (or thread) .....74
previous job .....74
printable character.....74
printable file.....74
priority .....74
priority band.....74
priority inversion.....74
priority scheduling.....74
priority-based scheduling.....75
PRIO_ constants
defined in <sys/resource.h> .....**345**
PRIO_PGRP .....345
PRIO_PROCESS.....345
PRIO_USER .....345
privilege.....75
process .....75
process group .....75
process group ID.....75
process group leader.....75
process group lifetime .....75
process ID.....76
process ID reuse.....103
process lifetime .....76
process memory locking .....76
process termination.....76
process virtual time.....76
process-to-process communication.....76
program .....77
protocol.....77
PROT_EXEC .....341
PROT_NONE .....341
PROT_READ .....341
PROT_READ constants
in <sys/mman.h> .....**341**
PROT_WRITE .....341
PS.....**10**
pseudo-terminal.....77
PTHREAD_BARRIER_SERIAL_THREAD .....289
PTHREAD_CANCELED .....289
PTHREAD_CANCEL_ASYNCHRONOUS .....289
PTHREAD_CANCEL_DEFERRED .....289
PTHREAD_CANCEL_DISABLE .....289
PTHREAD_CANCEL_ENABLE .....289
PTHREAD_COND_INITIALIZER .....289
PTHREAD_CREATE_DETACHED .....289
PTHREAD_CREATE_JOINABLE .....289
PTHREAD_DESTRUCTOR_ITERATIONS .....251
PTHREAD_EXPLICIT_SCHED.....289
PTHREAD_INHERIT_SCHED.....289
PTHREAD_KEYS_MAX .....251
PTHREAD_MUTEX_DEFAULT.....289
PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK .....289
PTHREAD_MUTEX_INITIALIZER .....289
PTHREAD_MUTEX_NORMAL .....289
PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE .....289
PTHREAD_ONCE_INIT .....289
PTHREAD_PRIO_INHERIT .....289
PTHREAD_PRIO_NONE.....289
PTHREAD_PRIO_PROTECT .....289
PTHREAD_PROCESS_PRIVATE.....289
PTHREAD_PROCESS_SHARED.....289
PTHREAD_RWLOCK_INITIALIZER .....289
PTHREAD_SCOPE_PROCESS.....289
PTHREAD_SCOPE_SYSTEM.....289
PTHREAD_STACK_MIN .....251
PTHREAD_THREADS_MAX.....251
PTRDIFF_MAX.....320
PTRDIFF_MIN .....320
PWD .....**166**
P_ALL .....374
p_cs_precedes .....143
P_GID.....374
P_PID .....374
p_sep_by_space .....143
p_sign_posn.....143
P_tmpdir.....323
quiet NaN.....229
QUOTED_CHAR .....179
radix character.....77
RADIXCHAR .....246
RAND_MAX .....327
range error.....108
result overflows .....108
result underflows .....108
read-only file system.....77
read-write lock .....77
real group ID.....77
real user ID.....78
realtime.....24, 78
REALTIME .....206, 273, 297, 301
realtime signal extension .....78


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

REALTIME THREADS ....26
realtime threads ....26
record ....78
redirection ....78
redirection operator ....78
reentrant function ....78
referenced shared memory object ....78
refresh ....79
region ....79
REGTYPE ....378
regular expression ....79
  basic ....171
  extended ....175
  grammar ....179
regular file ....79
REG_ constants
  defined in <regex.h> ....**295**
REG_BADBR ....295
REG_BADPAT ....295
REG_BADRPT ....296
REG_EBRACE ....295
REG_EBRACK ....295
REG_ECOLLATE ....295
REG_ECTYPE ....295
REG_EESCAPE ....295
REG_ENOSYS ....296
REG_EPAREN ....295
REG_ERANGE ....296
REG_ESPACE ....296
REG_ESUBREG ....295
REG_EXTENDED ....295
REG_ICASE ....295
REG_NEWLINE ....295
REG_NOMATCH ....295
REG_NOSUB ....295
REG_NOTBOL ....295
REG_NOTEOL ....295
relative pathname ....79, 102
relocatable file ....79
relocation ....79
requested batch service ....79
requirements ....17
result overflows ....108
result underflows ....108
RE_DUP_MAX ....251, 254
rlimit ....**345**
RLIMIT_AS ....346
RLIMIT_CORE ....345
RLIMIT_CPU ....345
RLIMIT_DATA ....345
RLIMIT_FSIZE ....345
RLIMIT_NOFILE ....346
RLIMIT_STACK ....346
RLIM_INFINITY ....345
RLIM_SAVED_CUR ....345
RLIM_SAVED_MAX ....345
RMSGD ....336
RMSGN ....336
RNORM ....336
root directory ....80
RPROTDAT ....336
RPROTDIS ....336
RPROTNORM ....336
RS ....**10**
RS_HIPRI ....336
RTLD_GLOBAL ....218
RTLD_LAZY ....218
RTLD_LOCAL ....218
RTLD_NOW ....218
RTS ....**10**
RTSIG_MAX ....251, 304
runnable process (or thread) ....80
running process (or thread) ....80
runtime values
  increasable ....253
  invariant ....249
rusage ....**345**
RUSAGE_CHILDREN ....345
RUSAGE_SELF ....345
R_ANCHOR ....179
R_OK ....406
saved resource limits ....80
saved set-group-ID ....80
saved set-user-ID ....80
SA_ constants
  declared in <signal.h> ....305
SA_NOCLDSTOP ....305
SA_NOCLDWAIT ....305
SA_NODEFER ....305
SA_ONSTACK ....305
SA_RESETHAND ....305
SA_RESTART ....305
SA_SIGINFO ....305
SCHAR_MAX ....259
SCHAR_MIN ....259-260
scheduling ....80
scheduling allocation domain ....80
scheduling contention scope ....81
scheduling policy ....81, 103
SCHED_FIFO ....297
SCHED_OTHER ....297
SCHED_RR ....297



--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

SCHED_SPORADIC ..... 297
SCM_RIGHTS ..... 354
screen ..... 81
scroll ..... 81
SD ..... **10**
seconds since the Epoch ..... 104
SEEK_CUR ..... 223, 323, 408
SEEK_END ..... 223, 323, 408
SEEK_SET ..... 223, 323, 408
SEGV_ACCERR ..... 307
SEGV_MAPERR ..... 307
SEM ..... **10**
semaphore ..... 81, 104
semaphore lock operation ..... 104
semaphore unlock operation ..... 105
SEM_NSEMS_MAX ..... 251
SEM_UNDO ..... 349
SEM_VALUE_MAX ..... 251
session ..... 81
session leader ..... 82
session lifetime ..... 82
SETALL ..... 349
SETVAL ..... 349
shall ..... 5
shared memory object ..... 82
shell ..... 82
SHELL ..... **166**
shell script ..... 82
shell, the ..... 82
SHM ..... **11**
SHMLBA ..... 351
SHM_RDONLY ..... 351
SHM_RND ..... 351
should ..... 5
SHRT_MAX ..... 259
SHRT_MIN ..... 260
SHUT_RD ..... 355
SHUT_RDWR ..... 356
SHUT_WR ..... 356
SIGABRT ..... 304
SIGALRM ..... 304
SIGBUS ..... 304, 307
SIGCHLD ..... 304, 307
SIGCONT ..... 304
SIGEV_NONE ..... 303
SIGEV_SIGNAL ..... 303
SIGEV_THREAD ..... 303
SIGFPE ..... 304, 307
SIGHUP ..... 304
SIGILL ..... 304, 307
siginfo_t ..... **306**
SIGINT ..... 304
SIGKILL ..... 304
signal ..... 82
signal stack ..... 83
signaling NaN ..... 229
SIGPIPE ..... 304
SIGPOLL ..... 304, 307
SIGPROF ..... 304
SIGQUEUE_MAX ..... 251
SIGQUIT ..... 304
SIGRTMAX ..... 303
SIGRTMIN ..... 303
SIGSEGV ..... 304, 307
SIGSTKSZ ..... 305
SIGSTOP ..... 304
SIGSYS ..... 304
SIGTERM ..... 304
SIGTRAP ..... 304, 307
SIGTSTP ..... 304
SIGTTIN ..... 304
SIGTTOU ..... 304
SIGURG ..... 304
SIGUSR1 ..... 304
SIGUSR2 ..... 304
SIGVTALRM ..... 304
SIGXCPU ..... 304
SIGXFSZ ..... 304
SIG_ATOMIC_MAX ..... 320
SIG_ATOMIC_MIN ..... 320
SIG_BLOCK ..... 305
SIG_DFL ..... 303
SIG_ERR ..... 303
SIG_HOLD ..... 303
SIG_IGN ..... 303
SIG_SETMASK ..... 305
SIG_UNBLOCK ..... 305
single-quote ..... 83
SIO ..... **11**
SIZE_MAX ..... 320
size_t ..... 331, 368
SI_ASYNCIO ..... 307
SI_MESGQ ..... 307
SI_QUEUE ..... 307
SI_TIMER ..... 307
SI_USER ..... 307
slash ..... 83
SNDZERO ..... 337
socket ..... 83
socket address ..... 83
SOCK_DGRAM ..... 354
SOCK_RAW ..... 354

 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

SOCK_SEQPACKET....354
SOCK_STREAM....354
soft limit....83
SOL_SOCKET....354
SOMAXCONN....355
source code....83
SO_ACCEPTCONN....354
SO_BROADCAST....355
SO_DEBUG....355
SO_DONTROUTE....355
SO_ERROR....355
SO_KEEPALIVE....355
SO_LINGER....355
SO_OOBINLINE....355
SO_RCVBUF....355
SO_RCVLOWAT....355
SO_RCVTIMEO....355
SO_REUSEADDR....355
SO_SNDBUF....355
SO_SNDLOWAT....355
SO_SNDTIMEO....355
SO_TYPE....355
space character....84
spawn....84
special built-in....84
special parameter....84
SPEC_CHAR....180
SPI....**11**
spin lock....84
SPN....**11**
sporadic server....84
SS....**11**
SSIZE_MAX....259, 369
ssize_t....368
SS_DISABLE....305
SS_ONSTACK....305
SS_REPL_MAX....251
stack_t....**306**
standard error....84
standard input....84
standard output....84
standard utilities....85
stat data structure....**358**
stderr....323
STDERR_FILENO....411
stdin....323
STDIN_FILENO....411
stdout....324
STDOUT_FILENO....411
strbuf....**334**
STREAM....85
stream....85
STREAM....220
STREAM end....85
STREAM head....85
STREAMS....28, 334
STREAMS multiplexor....85
STREAM_MAX....251
strfdinsert....**334**
string....85
strioctl....**334**
strpeek....**334**
strrecvfd....**334**
str_list....**334**
str_mlist....**335**
ST_NOSUID....362
ST_RDONLY....362
subprofiling....22
subshell....86
successfully transferred....86
supplementary group ID....86
suseconds_t....368
suspended job....86
symbolic link....86
SYMLINK_MAX....253, 261
SYMLOOP_MAX....251
SYMTYPE....378
synchronized I/O completion....86
synchronized I/O data integrity completion....87
synchronized I/O file integrity completion....87
synchronized I/O operation....87
synchronized input and output....86
synchronous I/O operation....87
synchronously-generated signal....87
system....87
system console....88
system crash....88
system databases....88
system documentation....88
system process....88
system reboot....89
system trace event....89
system-wide....89
S_ constants
  defined in <sys/stat.h>....**358**-359
S_ macros
  defined in <sys/stat.h>....**359**
S_BANDURG....336
S_ERROR....336
S_HANGUP....336
S_HIPRI....336
S_IFBLK....358



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

S_IFCHR....359
S_IFDIR....359
S_IFIFO....359
S_IFLNK....359
S_IFMT....358
S_IFREG....359
S_IFSOCK....359
S_INPUT....336
S_IRGRP....359
S_IROTH....359
S_IRUSR....359
S_IRWXG....359
S_IRWXO....359
S_IRWXU....359
S_ISBLK....359
S_ISCHR....359
S_ISDIR....360
S_ISFIFO....360
S_ISGID....359-360
S_ISLNK....360
S_ISREG....360
S_ISSOCK....360
S_ISUID....359-360
S_ISVTX....359
S_IWGRP....359
S_IWOTH....359
S_IWUSR....359
S_IXGRP....359
S_IXOTH....359
S_IXUSR....359
S_MSG....336
S_OUTPUT....336
S_RDBAND....336
S_RDNORM....336
S_TYPEISMQ....360
S_TYPEISSEM....360
S_TYPEISSHM....360
S_TYPEISTMO....360
S_WRBAND....336
S_WRNORM....336
tab character....89
TABDLY....381
TABn....381
TCIFLUSH....384
TCIOFF....384
TCIOFLUSH....384
TCION....384
TCOOFF....384
TCOON....384
TCP_NODELAY....285
TCSADRAIN....383
TCSAFLUSH....383
TCSANOW....383
TCT....**11**
TEF....**11**
TERM....**166**
terminal
  controlling....188
terminal (or terminal device)....89
terminal types....185
termios....187
  canonical mode input processing....189
  control modes....196
  controlling terminal....188
  input modes....193
  local modes....197
  non-canonical mode input processing....190
  output modes....194
  special control characters....198
text column....89
text file....90
TGEXEC....378
TGREAD....378
TGWRITE....378
THOUSEP....246
THR....**12**
thread....90
thread ID....90
thread list....90
thread-safe....90
thread-safety....105
thread-specific data key....90
tilde....91
timeb....**366**
timeouts....91
timer....91
timer overrun....91
TIMER_ABSTIME....390
TIMER_MAX....252
timer_t....368
timeval....**347**, 364
time_t....368
TMAGIC....378
TMAGLEN....378
TMO....**12**
TMPDIR....**166**
TMP_MAX....323
TMR....**12**
TOEXEC....378
token....91
TOREAD....378
TOSTOP....383


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

TOWRITE....378
TPI....**12**
TPP....**12**
TPS....**12**
trace analyzer process....91
trace controller process....91
trace event....91
trace event type....91
trace event type mapping....92
trace filter....92
trace generation version....92
trace log....92
trace point....92
trace stream....92
trace stream identifier....92
trace system....92
traced process....92
TRACE_EVENT_NAME_MAX....252
TRACE_NAME_MAX....252
TRACE_SYS_MAX....252
TRACE_USER_EVENT_MAX....252
tracing....27, 105
tracing status of a trace stream....93
TRAP_BRKPT....307
TRAP_TRACE....307
TRC....**12**
TRI....**12**
TRL....**13**
TSA....**13**
TSF....**13**
TSGID....378
TSH....**13**
TSP....**13**
TSS....**13**
TSUID....378
TSVTX....378
TTY_NAME_MAX....252
TUEXEC....378
TUREAD....378
TUWRITE....378
TVERSION....378
TVERSLEN....378
TYM....**13**
typed memory name space....93
typed memory object....93
typed memory pool....93
typed memory port....93
TZ....**166**
TZNAME_MAX....252
T_FMT....246
T_FMT_AMPM....246
t_scalar_t....334
t_uscalar_t....334
UCHAR_MAX....259
ucontext_t....**398**
uid_t....368
UINTMAX_MAX....320
UINTN_MAX....319
UINTPTR_MAX....320
UINT_FASTN_MAX....319
UINT_LEASTN_MAX....319
UINT_MAX....259
ULLONG_MAX....260
ULONG_MAX....259
UL_GETFSIZE....399
UL_SETFSIZE....399
unbind....93
undefined....6
unspecified....6
UP....**14**
upper multiplexing....85
upshifting....93
user database....94
user ID....94
user name....94
user trace event....94
USER_PROCESS....420
USHRT_MAX....259
utility....94, 109
Utility Syntax Guidelines....203
utmpx....**420**
variable....95
variable assignment....109
VEOF....380
VEOL....380
VERASE....380
vertical-tab character....95
VFS....362
VINTR....380
VKILL....380
VQUIT....380
VSTART....380
VSTOP....380
VSUSP....380
VTDLY....382
VTn....382
warning
  OB....9
  OF....10
WCHAR_MAX....320, 424
WCHAR_MIN....320, 424
WCONTINUED....374



Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

WEOF .....422, 424, 426
WEXITED .....374
WEXITSTATUS .....327, 374
white space .....95
wide characters .....119
wide-character code (C language) .....95
wide-character input/output functions .....95
wide-character string .....95
WIFCONTINUED .....374
WIFEXITED .....327, 374
WIFSIGNALED .....327, 374
WIFSTOPPED .....327, 374
WINT_MAX .....320
WINT_MIN .....320
WNOHANG .....327, 374
WNOWAIT .....374
word .....96
WORD_BIT .....258-259
working directory .....96
worldwide portability interface .....96
WRDE_APPEND .....428
WRDE_BADCHAR .....428
WRDE_BADVAL .....428
WRDE_CMDSUB .....428
WRDE_DOOFFS .....428
WRDE_NOCMD .....428
WRDE_NOSPACE .....428
WRDE_NOSYS .....428
WRDE_REUSE .....428
WRDE_SHOWERR .....428
WRDE_SYNTAX .....428
WRDE_UNDEF .....428
write .....96
WSTOPPED .....374
WSTOPSIG .....327, 374
WTERMSIG .....327, 374
WUNTRACED .....327, 374
W_OK .....406
XSI .....**14**, 96
  conformance .....17, 21, 96
XSI options groups .....24
XSI STREAMS .....28
XSI system interfaces
  conformance .....21
XSR .....**14**
X_OK .....406
YESEXPR .....246
YESSTR .....246
zombie process .....96


Base Definitions, Issue 6 — Copyright © 2001-2003, IEEE and The Open Group. All rights reserved.

--`,,`-`-`,,`,,`,`,,`---
Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale

**ISO/IEC 9945-1:2003(E)**
**Base Definitions, IEEE Std 1003.1, 2003 Edition**
**The Open Group Technical Standard, Issue 6**



**ICS 35.060**

Price based on 18 pages

Copyright International Organization for Standardization
Provided by IHS under license with ISO
No reproduction or networking permitted without license from IHS
Not for Resale